This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

600077030

Mus. Bibl. III.

REFERENCES.

(a) The Emperor's Throne is always empty, except when he is perſonally preſent.

[illegible]

6000177030

Mus. Bibl. III.

THE
MODERN PART
OF AN
Univerſal Hiſtory,
FROM THE
Earlieſt ACCOUNT of TIME.

Compiled from

ORIGINAL WRITERS.

By the AUTHORS of the ANTIENT PART.

VOL. XXIX.

LONDON:
Printed for S. RICHARDSON, T. OSBORNE, C. HITCH,
A. MILLAR, JOHN RIVINGTON, S. CROWDER,
B. LAW, and Co. T. LONGMAN, and C. WARE.
M.DCC.LXI.

228 ; 171

THE

MODERN PART

OF AN

Univerſal Hiſtory,

FROM THE

Earlieſt ACCOUNT of TIME.

Compiled from

ORIGINAL WRITERS.

By the AUTHORS of the ANTIENT PART.

VOL. XXIX.

LONDON:
Printed for S. RICHARDSON, T. OSBORNE, C. HITCH,
A. MILLAR, JOHN RIVINGTON, S. CROWDER,
B. LAW, and Co. T. LONGMAN, and C. WARE.
M.DCC.LXI.

228 ; 171

BIBLIOTHECA · BODLEIANA ·

Modern Hiſtory:
BEING A
CONTINUATION
OF THE
Univerſal Hiſtory.

Hiſtory of the German Empire.

CHAP. I.

Containing the Hiſtory of Germany, *from the Election of* Conrad, *to the Succeſſion of* Otho.

INTRODUCTION.

WE have, in the Antient Hiſtory, traced the gradual decline of the Weſtern empire, which, after having been weakened by diviſions and inteſtine broils, was deluged by an inundation of fierce and warlike nations, who have likewiſe been deſcribed under the names of *Allemans*, *Gepidæ*, *Franks*, *Suevi*, *Heruli*, *Burgundy*, *&c.* We have ſeen how *Odoacer*, king of the *Heruli*, made ſuch a ſucceſsful expedition into *Italy*, that the emperor *Auguſtulus*, being in no condition to make head againſt him, was obliged to ſubmit, and his reſignation put an end to the empire in the Weſt. The *Heruli* were ſoon expelled by the *Oſtrogoths*, and theſe, in their turn, ſubdued by *Juſtinian*, who re-united this province to the

Eaſtern empire; but the popes found means to obtain the temporal, as well as ſpiritual, juriſdiction over a conſiderable part of it, while the reſt was erected into a kingdom by the *Lombards*, who were very troubleſome neighbours to the pontifs, and at length beſieged *Adrian* I. in his capital. In this emergency he had recourſe to *Charlemagne*, who came to his relief with a powerful army, defeated *Deſiderius*, and cauſed himſelf to be crowned king of *Lombardy*. The pope, in order to expreſs his gratitude to that victorious monarch, and ſecure the protection of ſuch a powerful ally, did, with the conſent of the *Roman* people, declare him emperor, and dignified his dominions with the appellation of the new Weſtern empire, after he had agreed that the pontifs ſhould reſide in *Rome*, while he himſelf ſhould chooſe his reſidence on the other ſide of the *Alps*, where he might be nearer the center of his territories.

THUS *Germany* became the ſeat of the Weſtern empire; the hiſtory of which it is now our purpoſe to diſplay: but, before we proceed to a detail of the events which compoſe it, the reader will, doubtleſs, be pleaſed to find ſome general account of this great body, in a ſummary ſketch of that conſtitution by which it ſubſiſts; that, from ſuch previous information, he may conceive a diſtinct idea of the politics which actuated particular ſtates, as well as the motives that influenced the reſolutions and conduct of the community.

The limits of Germany;

GERMANY is at preſent bounded on north by the *Baltic* ſea, *Denmark*, and the *German* ocean; on the ſouth by *Italy* and the *Swiſs*; on the eaſt by *Pruſſia*, *Hungary*, and *Poland*; and on the weſt by the *Low Countries*, *Lorraine*, and *Franche Compte*; ſo that it comprehends the *Palatinate*, *Cologn*, *Triers* and *Liege*, which formerly belonged to the *Gauls*, and is diſmembered of *Friezland*, *Groningen*, and *Overyſſel*, which are now incorporated with the *Low Countries*.

SINCE the reign of *Charlemagne*, this country is divided into *High* and *Low Germany*: the firſt, towards the ſouth, comprehending the *Palatinate* of the *Rhine*, *Franconia*, *Suabia*, *Bavaria*, *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, *Auſtria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, *Stiria*, *Tyrol*, the *Swiſs*, and the *Griſons*; while the provinces of *Lower Germany* towards the north conſiſt of the *Low Country* of the *Rhine*, *Triers*, *Cologn*, *Mentz*, *Weſtphalia*, *Heſſe*, *Brunſwic*, *Miſnia*, *Luſatia*, *High Saxony* upon the *Elbe*, *Low Saxony* upon the *Elbe*, *Mecklenburg*, *Lauenburg*, *Brandenburg*, *Magdeburg*, and *Pomerania*.

its diviſion;

GERMANY is likewiſe diſtinguiſhed by thoſe countries that border upon the *Rhine*, the *Danube*, the *Oder*, the *Elbe*, and the *Weſer*; and, thirdly, it is divided into certain generalities

ties or large provinces, called circles, comprehending the princes, prelates, counts, and cities, which, on account of their nearneſs to each other, may conveniently aſſemble about their common affairs. Under this appellation the members of the empire were divided by *Maximilian* I. into ſix parts, namely, *Franconia*, *Bavaria*, *Suabia*, the circle of the *Rhine*, *Weſtphalia*, and *Lower Saxony*: he afterwards added thoſe of *Auſtria*, *Burgundy*, the *Lower Rhine*, and *High Saxony*; ſo that the number was augmented to ten, and confirmed in the reign of *Charles* V.

EACH circle is provided with directors and a colonel; the firſt being inveſted with the power of convoking the general aſſembly of the ſtates belonging to the circle, and of regulating its public affairs, while the colonel is intruſted with the command of the ſoldiers, and the care of the artillery and munitions of war.

As all the members muſt contribute for the occaſions of the empire, each circle is taxed for the ſupport of the troops and other public neceſſities, at the rate of ſo many horſe and foot, or a certain monthly ſum, diſtinguiſhed by the name of *Roman months*; an appellation derived from the firſt uſe of that tax, which was levied for the ſupport of 20,000 foot and 4000 horſe, to accompany the emperor in his journey to *Rome*; and thoſe who could not furniſh ſoldiers, paid a monthly equivalent in money.

THE circle of *Auſtria*, of which the emperor, as archduke, is director, comprehends all the provinces depending upon the empire, which are poſſeſſed by the houſe of *Auſtria*; for the kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, together with ſeveral other ſtates, which they poſſeſs independent of the empire, are not compriſed in this circle.

THE circle of *Bavaria*, ſo called, becauſe that duchy conſtitutes the principal part of it, includes ſeveral other independent ſtates; the elector, as duke of *Bavaria*, and the archbiſhop of *Saltzburg*, being the directors.

THE circle of *Suabia*, which, more than any other, abounds with imperial towns, has for directors the biſhop of *Conſtance* and the duke of *Wirtemberg*.

THOSE of the circle of *Franconia*, denominated from the province of that name, are the biſhop of *Bamberg* and the margrave of *Bareith*, or *Culmbach*, who poſſeſſes the burgraviate of *Nuremburg*.

THE circle of *Upper Saxony* is under the ſole directorſhip of the elector; but as for that of *Low Saxony*, which is one of the moſt conſiderable circles in *Germany*, the king of *Sweden*, as duke of *Bremen*, and the elector of *Brandenburg*, king, prince, archduke, duke, marquis, landgrave, count, and baron. To him alone belongs the power of beſtowing the great fiefs of the empire, the inveſtiture of which he gives to the eccleſiaſtical princes by the ſceptre, and to the ſecular by the ſtandard or ſword: he receives the oath of allegiance from the electors, princes, and all the members of the empire; and all the dominions which divolve to the empire, by forfeiture or otherwiſe, are intirely at his diſpoſal: he grants pardons and remiſſions, inſtitutes or confirms univerſities and academies, and poſſeſſes other prerogatives, which are marks of ſovereignty. But he is obliged to conſult the electors, before he can alienate or mortgage the effects of the empire, grant the privilege of coining money, or confiſcate the eſtates of rebels. The general conſent of all the eſtates is neceſſary in regulating the affairs of religion, in making or annulling laws, fixing the value of money, proclaiming war within or without the empire, impoſing ſubſidies or general contributions, raiſing troops, building new fortreſſes, or putting garriſons in the old, and in making treaties and alliances. Nevertheleſs, if the affair is preſſing, no more than the conſent of the electors is required; and in truces or ceſſation of arms, the authority of the emperor is ſufficient. To theſe reſtrictions he ſubjects himſelf by a capitulation made at his election, which is a contract between him and the electors and princes introduced ſince the reign of *Charles* V. before which time, the ordinary conſtitutions of the empire ſerved in lieu of this capitulation. In the abſence of the emperor, the ſovereign power devolves to the king of the *Romans*, as perpetual vicar of the empire; but in default of the emperor and king of the *Romans*, the authority is transferred to the two vicars of the empire in *Germany*, namely, the elector of *Bavaria*, and palatine of the *Rhine* (for the right is conteſted), and the elector of *Saxony*, who each, in his own extent of principality, exerciſe the ſame functions in all things, except the grand fiefs, called the fiefs of the ſceptre and the ſword, which can be beſtowed by none but the emperor.

His reſtrictions;

his ſubſtitutes.

Revenue.

The domain poſſeſſed as emperor, and the revenues which he draws from the empire for the ſupport of his imperial dignity, have been formerly very conſiderable; but at preſent are ſo much reduced, as to be altogether inſufficient to maintain the poſts of the empire; ſo far are they from being able to ſupport his dignity, or contribute to the ſubſiſtence of his troops. There is not one town belonging to him as emperor; and in caſe the *Germans* ſhould elect a prince deſtitute of hereditary dominions, the city of *Bamberg* would be aſſigned to him as the place of his habitation, and the biſhop in that caſe be obliged to retire to *Villac*. The emperor's revenue conſiſts in aids, which are called *Roman months*, paid by the ſtates and members of the empire, in ſome other ſubſidies from the imperial towns, which amount to about 40,000 livres a year, in taxes of the chancery, and exactions from the *Jews*, diſtinguiſhed by the name of *oblation money*.

The councils.

BESIDES the *Aulic* council, which ſhall afterwards be mentioned, there are three others eſtabliſhed for diſpatching the affairs of the empire. The firſt is the council of ſtate, compoſed of a preſident and four and twenty counſellors, who are princes or counts of the empire, and other conſiderable noblemen, and ten ſecretaries for expediting letters and decrees. The ſecond is that of the finances, compoſed of two preſidents, one director, with fourteen aſſeſſors, and ſix ſecretaries. The third is the imperial council of war, conſiſting of two preſidents, who are generals, and ſeven counſellors, who are camp-marſhals, major-generals, and colonels, with an auditor-general, regiſters, and ſecretaries. The title of king of the *Romans*, as it is at preſent underſtood, was altogether unknown in the time of the firſt emperors, who were actually ſovereign princes of the city of *Rome*. *Charlemagne* having deſtined the ſucceſſion of the empire to his eldeſt ſon, beſtowed upon him the quality of king of *Italy*, a title which *Lewis the Debonair* and *Lotharius* I. likewiſe conferred upon their preſumptive heirs; an appellation equivalent to that of *Cæſar* among the antient emperors, and to that of king of the *Romans* in its preſent ſignification. This laſt title began to be in uſe about the tenth century, when it was ſuppoſed that the pope had the ſole right of creating the emperor. Accordingly many emperors contented themſelves with this appellation, until they were actually crowned at *Rome*; and in this ſenſe we muſt underſtand the ſecond chapter of the golden bull, which, ſpeaking of the election of a king of the *Romans*, mentions him only as a ſucceſſor in the empire, who could not be qualified as emperor till after his coronation by the pope.

The quality of king of the Romans.

AT preſent, the king of the *Romans* is he who is choſen by the princes electors, during the emperor's life, to conduct the affairs of *Germany* in the emperor's abſence, as vicar-general of the empire, and to ſucceed him on the imperial throne at his death, without any other election or confirmation. This is an expedient uſed by the emperor, when he wants to ſee the ſucceſſion ſecured during his own life, or is no longer in a condition to manage the reins of government. The king of the *Romans* is not crowned with an imperial, but with an open crown; nor does he receive the oath of allegiance, till after the death of the emperor; nor is he honoured with the epithet of *ſemper Auguſtus*; nor does he bear the ſpread eagle with two heads; nor does he exerciſe any power in the empire while the emperor is there in perſon, but, in his abſence, commands by virtue of his dignity.

The electoral college.

We have already obſerved that there are three colleges in the empire, a diſtinction which was eſtabliſhed in the diet of *Franckfort* in the year 1580. Of theſe, the chief is the electoral, which originally conſiſted of ſeven electors; an eighth was afterwards added; and it is at preſent compoſed of nine, in each of whom are united the two qualities of prince of the empire and elector. As the firſt, he is ſovereign in the extent of his own dominions, with certain reſtrictions, which render him dependent upon the emperor and empire. As elector, he has a right to elect the emperor and king of the *Romans*, and precedes all other princes of the empire, not excepting cardinals and kings. This college comprehends three archbiſhops and five ſecular princes; the firſt are thoſe of *Mentz*, *Triers*, and *Cologn*, who, according to the golden bull, are great chancellors of the empire; the ſecular princes are, the king of *Bohemia*, great cup-bearer; the duke of *Bavaria*, great maſter of the palace; the duke of *Saxony*, great marſhal; the margrave of *Brandenburg*, great chamberlain; and the count palatine of the *Rhine*, high treaſurer. The number of electors was augmented by the emperor *Leopold*, who erected the houſe of *Brunſwick* into a ninth electorate, under the title of elector of *Hanover*, on pretence of giving ſatisfaction to the proteſtants, who complained that their authority was diminiſhed, by the palatine electorate's paſſing into a catholick branch of that family. The ſecular electors have both an active and a paſſive voice, each having a right to chuſe and to be choſen emperor; whereas the eccleſiaſtic electors can only chuſe without having any right to be choſen. The three archbiſhops muſt have attained the age of thirty years, before they can obtain that dignity; but the ſecular elector is at age at eighteen. During his minority, his neareſt relation is appointed as his tutor or adminiſtrator, and exerciſes the electoral dignity, maintaining the rank, and wearing the habit, of an elector. We have already obſerved, that two of theſe electors are vicars general of the empire, which they govern upon the death or reſignation of the emperor, when there is no king of the *Romans*. Each exerciſes a ſeparate power in the provinces of his juriſdiction; except in the chamber of *Spire*, the acts of which are ſigned by the names of both, becauſe there juſtice is adminiſtred by all the ſtates of the empire. Each of theſe ſecular electors has a vicar, who performs his office in his abſence; and theſe vicariates are hereditary. The eccleſiaſtics acquire their electorate in the manner by which prelacies are obtained; but the ſeculars acquire it by collation or ſucceſſion. Collation takes place in default of male iſſue legitimate and laick, and is ſanctioned by the emperor; who is obliged to complete the number of electors, and confer the vacant place upon a *German* prince. The ſucceſſion ſubſiſts conformable to the ſalique law, according the right of ſeniority, being independent of all tranſactions, teſtaments, and other civil acts, which are uſed in other caſes for changing the order of ſucceſſion.

The privileges of electors.

THE electors have the right of poſſeſſing ſalt-works, and all ſorts of mines, in their own electorates; to coin gold and ſilver money; to levy the ancient taxes; to acquire the greateſt fiefs, in preference to all others, and to be inveſted *gratis*; to refuſe compliance with any privilege contrary to their own; to exerciſe a ſuperior and ſovereign juriſdiction in their dominions: tho' the vaſſals of all the electors, except thoſe of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg*, have a right to appeal to the imperial chamber; but the moſt characterizing diſtinction of the electors is their right of chooſing and depoſing the emperor.

The college of the princes.

THE next college comprehends all the other princes; either ſecular, as dukes, margraves, landgraves, burgraves, counts, *&c.* or eccleſiaſtic, ſuch as archbiſhops, biſhops, abbots, *&c.* that immediately hold of the empire. Thoſe, who compoſe this college, have the right of ſitting in the the diets or general aſſemblies with a deliberative and deciſive voice, and contribute to the neceſſities of the empire, according to the tax eſtabliſhed by the matricular book or regiſter of the ſtates. The archbiſhop of *Saltzburg*, and the archduke of *Auſtria*, are alternately directors of the college of the princes of the empire; and this alternative is not regulated by the different ſittings, but by the different ſubjects that are propoſed and diſcuſſed. Beſides theſe princes, there is a number of counts in the empire, who hold of the empire alone, and are divided into four claſſes; namely, thoſe of *Wetteraw*, *Suabia*, *Franconia*, and *Weſtphalia*, together with a great deal of free nobleſſe, diſtinguiſhed by that of *Franconia*, *Suabia*, and the *Rhine*. The princes of both orders hold immediately of the emperor and the empire, and generally receive their inveſtiture by the ſword, from the hand of the ſovereign ſeated on his throne; tho' the counts and barons of the chamber of *Spire* are inveſted with the ſtandard or enſign, repreſenting the arms of their reſpective countries. They have power to appoint judges for the adminiſtration of juſtice; which ſome of them exerciſe as ſovereigns, while others are limited to certain ſums, above which, all cauſes depending muſt be decided by appeal to the chamber of *Spire*. They are allowed to eſtabliſh new laws, create magiſtrates, grant letters of grace, reſpite, ſafe-conduct, majority, and legitimation. They have the right to ſucceed to baſtards, to raiſe and quarter ſoldiers, erect univerſities, coin money, make arms, and caſt artillery; to increaſe the number of their fortreſſes, and ſecure them with garriſons; make alliances among themſelves, as well as with ſtrangers, for their common defence; and, in a word, to reign in their own territories, as the emperor reigns in the empire.

The college of the imperial towns.

THE third college is that of the imperial towns, which, like the other two, aſſembles apart, in order to deliberate upon the propoſals that are made for the occaſions of the empire; and the cities, which compoſe it, are called imperial, becauſe they hold immediately of the emperor and empire. They, as well as the other colleges, have a right to ſit in the diets with a deliberative and deciſive voice. They regulate the form of government in their own juriſdiction, creating magiſtrates and officers of juſtice, and enacting laws, regulations, and ſtatutes, by their own proper authority. They have a right to coin money, to fortify their towns, to levy ſoldiers, and to exerciſe every act of ſovereignty, which is exerciſed by the princes of the empire in their different principalities. Formerly, the number of the imperial towns amounted to eighty-four or eighty-five; but is at preſent reduced to fifty-eight, ſeparated into two benches in the aſſemblies; namely, that of the *Rhine*, and that of *Suabia*. The firſt comprehends the cities of *Cologn*, *Aix la Chapelle*, *Lubeck*, *Worms*, *Spire*, *Franckfort upon the Maine*, *Wetſler*, *Gellenhauſen*, *Dortmund*, and *Friedberg*; while *Ratiſbon*, *Augſburg*, *Nuremberg*, *Ulm*, and two-and-thirty other cities, are comprehended in that of *Suabia*.

Of the Hans *towns.*

THE appellation of *Hans* or *Anſe*, which, in all probability, comes from the *German* word *Anzee*, ſignifying *near the ſea*, is given to a confederacy of towns, that engaged in an alliance for the mutual ſupport and improvement of commerce. About the year 1164 the city of *Bremen* formed the firſt ſcheme of this ſociety, with ſeveral other ſea-port towns in *Livonia*; tho' the number that firſt entered into the aſſociation is uncertain. Be that as it will, it afterwards increaſed to ſuch a point of importance, as to comprehend fourſcore principal trading towns; among which were many foreign places, that deſired admiſſion into the confederacy. Accordingly we ſee in the old liſt *Antwerp*, *Dort*, *Amſterdam*, *Rotterdam*, *Bruges*, *Oſtend*, *Dunkirk*, *Calais*, *Rouen*, *St. Malo*, *Bourdeaux*, *Bayonne*, *Marſeilles*, *Barcelona*, *Seville*, *Cadiz*, *Liſbon*, *Leghorne*, *Meſſina*, *Naples*, and *London*.

In the flouriſhing times of the ſociety, they choſe four towns, where they eſtabliſhed free ſtaples, or general factories, for the convenience of their ſhipping and the ſale of their merchandize; for the trade was chiefly carried on by barter or exchange. Theſe were *London* in *England*, *Bergues* in *Norway*, *Novogrod* in *Ruſſia*, and *Bruges* in *Flanders*. This *Anſeatique* alliance, which at firſt had no other aim than the ſecurity of commerce againſt pirates, and the mutual advantage of extending it among the towns concerned, by peaceable and friendly communication, became ſtrong enough to maintain an offenſive war againſt *Waldemar* III. king of *Denmark*; whom they obliged to ſue for peace, and cede to them, for a term of years, the iſle of *Schonen*, in order to indemnify them for the expence of their equipment. They afterwards fitted out a powerful fleet againſt *Eric* X. and gave him great diſturbance. In 1615 they obliged the duke of *Brunſwick* to raiſe the ſiege of that town, which he had inveſted, and next year entered into a general alliance with the States of the United Provinces. In the ſame manner they often engaged in treaties with other princes and ſtates, and particularly with different kings of *France*, who granted them ſeveral advantageous privileges in trade.

After the kings of *France*, *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Denmark*, had forbid their towns to continue members of this ſociety, the *Teutonick Hans* reſtricted their alliance to *Germany*, or, at leaſt, to the towns depending upon the empire, and diſtributed them under four metropolitans; namely, *Lubeck*, *Cologne*, *Brunſwick*, and *Dantzick*. The firſt comprehended the towns of *Hamburgh*, *Roſtock*, *Wiſmar*, *Stralſund*, *Lunenburg*, *Stetin*, *Anclam*, *Golnau*, *Gnepſwald*, *Colberg*, *Stargard*, *Stolpen*, and *Rugenſtald*. Under that of *Cologne*, were *Weſel*, *Emmeric*, *Druſburg*, *Oſnabrug*, *Dortmont*, *Soeſt*, *Herworden*, *Paderborn*, *Northauſen*, *Nimmegen*, *Zutphen*, *Ruremonde*, and ſeveral others of *Weſtphalia*, and the *Low Countries*. The metropolitan of *Brunſwick* included *Bremen*, *Magdeburgh*, *Hildeſheim*, *Goſlar*, *Minden*, *Erimbeck*, and others: and in the diviſion of *Dantzick* were all the *Hans* towns ſituated upon the *Baltick*, from the *Viſtula* as far as

Ruſſia, comprehending *Colm*, *Thorn*, *Elbing*, *Konigſ* *Riga*, &c.

LUBECK is the chief of all the *Hans* towns, from a eminence which it enjoys, not only on account of its cen ſituation, but alſo of its privileges and power. It convokes general aſſembly, is the depoſitory of the money contribu to defray the common expence; preſerves all the titles, a and archives, of the alliance; uſes its own ſeal to the lett ſent in the name of the community to foreign princes a ſtates, as well as to all their reſolutions and treaties: from citizens are generally choſen the ambaſſadors and deputies a pointed by the ſociety, and here the ſyndic of the allianc commonly reſides.

IN their aſſembly, the deputy of *Lubeck*, as preſident, ſi by himſelf, the reſt being ſeated on two benches, to the rig and left, and votes before all others: their affairs are dete mined by a majority; nevertheleſs, when there is a great opposition, the queſtion is generally thrown out: their ordinary aſſemblies are held every three years, about *Whitſuntide* and the extraordinary as often as the emergency of affairs requires [a].

The diet of the empire.

THE imperial diets are compoſed of theſe three colleges, which comprehend all the eſtates and immediate members of the empire. The diet is convoked by the emperor, after he has agreed with the electors upon the neceſſity of aſſembling it, and the place proper for the ſeſſion. In this aſſembly, the emperor is ſeated upon a throne; the electors of *Mentz*, *Bavaria*, and *Brandenburg*, being on his right hand, thoſe of *Cologn*, *Saxony*, and *Palatine*, upon his left, and the elector of *Triers* oppoſite to his perſon. The eccleſiaſtic princes are ſeated on benches to the right, the ſecular princes ſit upon the left, and the deputies of the imperial towns occupy others that croſs from the right to the left. The emperor's propoſal being made in the general aſſembly, the three colleges deliberate apart upon the ſubject; then, aſſembling together in one place, communicate their ſentiments, and concur in a reſolution, which is ſent to the emperor; with whoſe approbation it paſſes into a law, and is received as an imperial conſtitution.

The methods of adminiſtring juſtice.

THERE are two methods of adminiſtring juſtice in the empire; one is exerciſed in general, and the other in particular tribunals. All the princes, ſtates, and members of the empire, have a right to adminiſter juſtice in their own fiefs;

---

[a] HEISS, l. vi. p. 357.

except

REFERENCES.

(*a*) The Emperor's Throne is always empty, except when he is perſonally preſent.

(*b*) Formerly Precedency was regulated by Age; and the Eccleſiaſtic Princes, when they were of the Imperial Blood, had a raiſed Seat.

(*c*) The Biſhop of *Bamberg* proteſts againſt his Precedency.

(*d*) In 1674 the Diet ſuſpended his Vote, which was again admitted in 1714.

(*e*) The Biſhops of *Trent* and *Brixen* are ſubjected to *Auſtria*.

(*f*) In caſe he ſhould be of the *Roman* [illegible] in Suſpence, becauſe the Succeſſion is not ſettled.

(*p*) They take it by Turns, in this Order;

Firſt Day.	Second Day.	Third Day.
Weimar.	*Cobourg.*	*Weimar.*
Eiſenach.	*Gotha.*	*Eiſenach.*
Cobourg.	*Altenbourg.*	*Cobourg.*
Gotha.	*Weimar.*	*Gotha.*
Altenbourg.	[illegible]	

except in particular caſes, where an appeal lies to the imperial chamber of *Spire*, or the *Aulic* council. In the particular juriſdictions, they follow the laws of the empire; which are the antient conſtitutions, the golden bull, the pacification of *Paſſaw*, the treaties of *Weſtphalia*, the *Saxon* law eſtabliſhed by *Charlemagne*, and the *Roman* law eſtabliſhed by the emperor *Juſtinian*, which is obſerved in all places, where the other is not received. The general tribunals are thoſe of the imperial chamber of *Spire* and the *Aulic* council of the emperor, which exerciſe an univerſal and ſovereign juriſdiction over all the ſubjects of the empire. The firſt was heretofore ambulatory, and eſtabliſhed at *Augſburg* by *Frederick* IV. It was afterwards held ſucceſſively at *Franckfort*, *Worms*, *Nuremberg*, *Ratiſbon*, and *Eiſlengen*, till *Charles* V. fixed it at *Spire*. In conſequence of the treaties of *Weſtphalia*, it ought to be compoſed of a catholic judge, and four preſidents, named by the emperor, two of each religion, and fifty counſellors, ſix-and-twenty of which are catholics, and the reſt proteſtants. The judge muſt be a prince, count, or baron; two of the preſidents being of the ſword, and two of the gown. The counſellors are named and preſented in this manner; two catholics by the emperor, as many by each of the four catholic electors; two proteſtants by each of the three proteſtant electors; and the reſt by each of the circles of the empire. This is the regulation according to the treaties of *Weſtphalia*; but the imperial chamber is at preſent reduced to a much ſmaller number of officers, being compoſed of the elector of *Triers*, who is judge as biſhop of *Spire*, of one catholic and one proteſtant preſident, and eight catholic and ſeven proteſtant counſellors.

The imperial chamber at Spire.

THE *Aulic* council is compoſed of one catholic preſident, one vice-chancellor, preſented by the elector of *Mentz*, and nine counſellors of each religion; who, with the preſident, are nominated by the emperor. They are divided into two benches; one of which is occupied by the nobles, and the other by the lawyers. They hold their aſſemblies near the perſon of the emperor, whence it is called *Aulic*, or the council of the imperial court.

The Aulic *council.*

ALTHOUGH the ſentences of theſe councils are final, there are nevertheleſs ſome caſes in which the parties may appeal to the emperor, and demand a reviſion of the proceſs; particularly in thoſe cauſes which regard the duchies, principalities, counties, and other immediate fiefs of the empire. In both theſe tribunals, the emperor preſides as ſovereign judge, and, when he is preſent, pronounces ſentence; and, in his abſence,

Their deciſions not final in all caſes.

abſence, he, who repreſents his perſon as judge, has a right to wear an imperial ſceptre as a badge of his dignity [b].

Of the nobility.

In *Germany* are two ſorts of nobility: one free and immediate, holding only of the emperor and empire; the other mediate, which, tho' owning the emperor as chief of the empire, is likewiſe ſubjected to the juriſdiction of another prince. This laſt, tho' not in poſſeſſion of ſuch liberties as thoſe that are peculiar to the firſt, is nevertheleſs very conſiderable in *Germany*; for there is a great number of thoſe gentlemen of the ſecond rank, whoſe families pretend to be antient and illuſtrious as thoſe of the immediate nobles, and who, in marrying, prefer the pooreſt gentlewoman to the richeſt plebeian. As for the gentlemen of the firſt rank, may of them are deſcended from thoſe heroes who accompanied *Charlemagne* and his ſucceſſors in all the victories they obtained over the *Saxons* and other nations which they ſubjected to their empire. Many others, coming from the neighbouring ſtates to ſettle in *Germany*, were afterwards united with this body of nobility, becauſe they were of noble extraction: while others again, whoſe fathers had merited that rank by their perſonal virtue and exploits, were in the ſequel immatriculated among the antient nobility by patents obtained from the emperor; but theſe cannot be admitted into the chapters, from which are choſen the archbiſhops, electors of *Mentz*, *Triers*, and *Cologne*, together with the other biſhops and prelates who are princes of *Germany*; becauſe, before a perſon can be received into this chapter, he muſt prove his nobility in thirty-two deſcents both by father and mother.

The immediate nobility poſſeſs fiefs, which they hold only of the emperor and empire, and are intailed on heirs male; becauſe, by an expreſs clauſe in their charter, they are obliged to ſerve the emperor in perſon, upon all occaſions, with a certain number of ſervants, according to the ſtrength and revenue of the fief. Almoſt all their fiefs are ſituated in *Suabia*, *Franconia*, and along the *Rhine*, comprehending *Lower Alſace*; a diſpoſition made on purpoſe, that the nobility, being leſs diſperſed, might be the more ready on all emergencies, and more conveniently defend the frontiers on that ſide againſt foreign invaſion.

The emperor has beſtowed upon the immediate nobility the ſame privileges enjoyed by the other immediate ſtates of the empire, with power to raiſe taxes thro' the whole extent of their reſpective fiefs, and to exerciſe a civil and cri-

---

[b] Vide Puffend. Heiss. Morer.

minal juriſdiction, the laſt of which is without appeal; but, from the civil, there lies an appeal to the *Aulic* council, or imperial chamber of *Spire*.

Heretofore this nobility was admitted to the imperial diets, where they even pretended to take the rank of the cities; but, on account of the extraordinary expences incurred by their ſitting, the calling of them was gradually neglected, tho' they are left at liberty to aſſeſs themſelves in contributing to the public neceſſities of the empire.

This nobility forms a kind of ariſtocratical republic; for, tho' they are divided into three claſſes, they never fail, on important occaſions, to join their councils and their ſtrength for the preſervation of the whole. They have divided the circle of *Suabia* into five departments called quarters; that of *Franconia* into ſix; and that of the *Rhine* into four. All theſe quarters have their chiefs, which, in *Suabia* and *Lower Alſace*, are called directors; but in *Franconia*, and the *Upper* and *Lower Rhine*, they are diſtinguiſhed by the name of captains, being choſen ſometimes from one family, and ſometimes from another. A chief can regulate nothing without the advice of two or three other gentlemen, who are nominated as his coadjutors, and a lawyer to be conſulted in ſuch affairs as depend upon the interpretation of the law. With theſe counſellors, the director or captain examines the differences that are brought before them, and exerts himſelf for the preſervation of the privileges of the whole body. If it is neceſſary to repreſs the injuſtice or violence of any nobleman, the director or captain convenes the whole circle, or even all the three circles, to ſupport and give ſanction to his determination; and as to public affairs, the quarters uſually aſſemble once a year.

Having thus given a ſuccinct idea of the preſent conſtitution and government of *Germany*, it will not be amiſs to mention the preſent character of the people, as we find it deſcribed by modern authors of credit.

The character of the Germans.

The *Germans* of theſe days are ſaid to be laborious, ſimple, faithful, valiant, and well adapted for war; but at the ſame time cruel, mercenary, and addicted to pillage. They are ſtanch to the religion they embrace, ſlow in council, and truſty in their friendſhips; but withal diſguiſed in their enmity, diſtruſtful, ſuſpicious, and more given to exceſs in eating and drinking than any other nation in the world. Heretofore they were barbarous, and groſsly ignorant; but they have been civilized and poliſhed by their aſſiduous application to the ſtudy of arts and ſciences, in which they have made conſiderable progreſs. Yet their improvement is rather owing to indefatigable toil and and induſtry than to their natural vivacity, genius, and penetration, in which they are counted inferior to almoſt all their neighbours. Indeed this allegation ſeems to be juſtified by their works, which are not at all remarkable for ſpirit or imagination ; but commonly compoſed of tedious citations, compiled by dint of toil and perſeverance; ſo that they have incurred the imputation of carrying their genius not in the brain but in the back. They have nevertheleſs acquired ſome reputation in philoſophy and the belles lettres, and made very ingenious improvements in mechanics; but their hiſtories are not much to be depended upon, becauſe of their exceſſive credulity. This may have likewiſe contributed to that ſpirit of alchemy which hath engaged ſo many of their nation in ſearch of the philoſopher's ſtone. They are extremely fond of hunting, and ſo ridiculouſly vain, that every petty prince in the empire thinks his own family better than that of the king of *France*. The language is a dialect of the *Teutonick* ; ſome of them profeſs the roman catholic, and ſome the proteſtant, religion ; but all others are tolerated for the convenience of commerce and the advantage of the country[c].

---

[c] Vide BODIN. P. BOUHOURS. SCALIGER.

CONRAD I.

AS the affairs of *Germany* are interwoven with thoſe of *France*, during the reign of *Charlemagne* and his ſucceſſors, who are therefore naturally comprehended in the modern hiſtory of that kingdom, we ſhall begin with *Conrad*, the firſt *German* who ruled the empire, when it became a diſtinct ſovereignty, altogether independent of *France*, of which it had been hitherto reckoned an appendage.

SOME, indeed, are of opinion, that the commencement of the *German* empire does not properly take place till the reign of *Otho the Great*, when *Italy* was re-united to the imperial dominions[a] ; but, in order to maintain the connexion between this and the Ancient Hiſtory, it was neceſſary to take notice of *Conrad* and his ſucceſſor, who, tho' they were not in poſſeſſion of the kingdom of *Lombardy*, deſerve, without all queſtion, to be ranked among the *German* emperors (A).

BESIDES

---

[a] GOB. PERS. ex Meib. p. 246.

(A) At the death of *Lewis* IV. the empire of *Germany* comprehended *Franconia*, the province of *Bamberg*, *Suabia*, *Conſtans*,

Besides, the extinction of the *Carlovingian* race, when the empire was wholly detached from *France*, and the imperial dignity became elective, is ſurely as proper a period for an hiſtorian to begin with as the reign of *Otho*, in which the *Italian* dominions were recovered to the empire.

Although the ſucceſſors of *Charlemagne* had really poſſeſſed the empire, by right of hereditary ſucceſſion devolved from father to ſon, theſe princes uſually procured the conſent of their grandees, as a ſanction to their laſt wills, that no diſputes might attend the diſpoſitions they had made. What was at firſt no more than a political condeſcenſion in the emperors, was in time interpreted into a privilege of thoſe nobles; and hence is derived the right of thoſe electors, by whom the emperor is inveſted with the imperial dignity and power[b].

Thus authorized by cuſtom, the *German* noblemen aſſembling at *Worms*, upon the death of *Lewis* IV. made a proffer of the imperial crown to *Otho*, duke of *Saxony*; who declined the honour on account of his great age, and, with a generoſity almoſt peculiar to himſelf, recommended *Conrad*, duke of *Franconia* and *Heſſe*, whom (tho' his own enemy) he knew to be a prince of merit and capacity. In conſequence of this recommendation, the aſſembly elected *Conrad*, whom ſome writers pretend to have been ſon-in-law to *Lewis* IV. a circumſtance highly improbable, as *Lewis* died very young[c].

Conrad *is elected emperor.*

A.D. 912.

Be that as it will, he no ſooner received the imperial diadem than he took all the precautions neceſſary to ſupport his authority, in the midſt of a great many powerful princes, who envied his promotion. Several noblemen of *Lorrain*, who acknowleged *Charles the Simple* as their ſovereign, reſolved to put him in poſſeſſion of the dominions which had belonged to *Lewis* of *Germany*, on this ſide the *Rhine*; but the count *Des Retz*, being deſirous that *Lorrain* ſhould fall into the hands of *Conrad*, engaged thoſe of *Namure* and *Limbourg* in behalf of that prince; who, underſtanding that his preſence was neceſſary, marched into *Lorrain*, where, being well received by the lords of his party, he endeavoured to conciliate the affection of the natives, by conferring new titles, and other acts of liberality, in favour of the nobility and clergy [d].

---

[b] Heiss, l. ii. p. 153.

[c] Gob. Pers. p. 246.

ſtans, *Baſil*, *Bern*, *Lauſanne*, *Burgundy*, *Bezançon*, *Lorrain*, *Metz*, *Liege*, *Cambray*, *Arras*, *Flanders*, *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Utrecht*, *Cologn*, *Treves*, *Mentz*, *Worms*, *Spire*, *Straſbourg*, *Friezland*, *Saxony*, *Heſſe*, *Weſtphalia*, *Thuringia*, *Wetteravia*, *Miſnia*, *Brandenbourg*, *Pomcrania*, *Rugen*, *Stetin*, *Holſtein*, *Auſtria*, *Carinthia*, *Stiria*, the *Tyroleſe*, *Bavaria*, the *Griſons*, and in general all the countries ſituated among theſe provinces and their dependences (1).

(1) *Barre*. *Hiſt. d'Allemagne*, t. iii. p. 285.

Henry *duke of* Saxony *revolts.*

His ſtay in *Lorrain* was ſhortened by the revolt of *Henry* duke of *Saxony*, who was incenſed againſt him becauſe he had refuſed to give him the inveſtiture of *Thuringia* and *Weſtphalia*; tho' this refuſal was intirely owing to his apprehenſion, that the duke would become too powerful by ſuch an addition to his dominions. *Henry*, by the aſſiſtance of *Burchard* duke of *Suabia*, *Arnold* duke of *Bavaria*, and ſeveral other noblemen, ſaw himſelf at the head of an army which *Conrad* durſt not venture to encounter. He therefore had recourſe to other arts, by which he found means to detach *Burchard* from the *Saxon* party; and *Henry*'s forces being at the ſame time weakened by the retreat of *Arnold*, whoſe country was threatened with an invaſion by the *Hungarians*, he agreed to a ſuſpenſion of arms; in conſequence of which *Conrad* returned to *Franconia*.

Arnold *duke of* Bavaria *defeats the* Hungarians.

THE *Hungarians* having advanced with a great body of horſe as for as the river *Inn*, demanding tribute of the *Bavarians*, *Arnold* aſſembled his troops, which were reinforced by thoſe of *Erchanger*, adminiſtrator of the treaſury, and *Berthold* count *Walric*. Dividing them into two bodies, he placed the moſt conſiderable part in ambuſcade, and with the other retired before them into a marſhy place; where, their horſe being unable to act, they were charged with great impetuoſity, and utterly overthrown [e].

Erchanger *is executed at* Aldeingen.

THIS ſucceſs inflamed the ambition of *Erchanger* and *Berthold*; who, on pretence of being deſcended from *Charlemagne*, aſpired to the higheſt dignities, and actually turned their arms againſt *Conrad*; tho', finding themſelves unequal to the enterprize they had undertaken, they ſoon implored his clemency; but he was reſolved to inflict an exemplary puniſhment, and they were, after a fair trial in the aſſemby of *Altheim*, convicted of treaſon, and executed at *Aldeingen*.

Arnold *is defeated by* Conrad.
A. D. 914.

THIS rebellion was ſucceeded by that of *Arnold* duke of *Bavaria*, who took the field, and entered *Suabia* with a ſtrong army; upon which the emperor forthwith marched againſt him, at the head of ſuch troops as he could raiſe for the occaſion, and overthrew him in a pitched battle, in which *Arnold* was mortally wounded [f].

[d] Chron. WORM. [e] Ann. Boicæ Gent. part i. l. xiii.
[f] GOB. PERS. æt. vi. c. 46.

A. D. 916.

GESELBERT duke of *Lorrain*, and *Burchard* duke of *Suabia*, having received conſiderable ſuccours from *Charles the Simple*, were likewiſe reſolved to try their fortune againſt the emperor; but, engaging him in a diſadvantageous place, their army was cut in pieces, and *Eringer* and *Bertold*, the ſons of *Geſelbert*, being taken priſoners, were beheaded by order of the conqueror.

917. *The* Hungarians *compel* Conrad *to purchaſe a peace.*

THE *Hungarians* too, taking advantage of the troubles of the empire, after having compelled *Berenger*, king of *Italy*, to ſue for peace, in their return made irruptions into *Saxony*, *Thuringia*, *Franconia*, *Lorrain*, and *Alſace*, which they deſolated with fire and ſword, and obliged the emperor to purchaſe peace upon the moſt ſhameful conditions [g].

The emperor recommends the duke of Saxony *as heir to the throne, and dies.*

AFTER a reign of about ſeven years, *Conrad*, perceiving his end approaching, recommended to the princes and ſtates of the empire, even when his own brother *Everard* count of *Franconia* was preſent, *Henry* duke of *Saxony*, and ſon of *Otho*, as the moſt proper perſon to ſucceed him on the imperial throne [h]; tho' this very *Henry* had been one of his moſt inveterate enemies (B). The princes having approved of his choice, he, before his death, ſent to him, by the hands of his brother *Everard*, the crown, ſcepter, lance, ſword, and other regalia; thus nobly ſacrificing his reſentment to the advantage of the empire, and treating the ſon with the ſame generoſity which he himſelf had experienced from the father.

---

[g] Ann. Hildeſh. HERM. CONTRA. ad ann. 916. [h] HEN. BOD. SYNTAG. ex Meib. p. 490. HEISS, p. 155.

(B) He had even attempted to poiſon *Conrad* by means of a golden bracelet, which *Hatton*, biſhop of *Wurtzburgh*, was to have preſented to him in *Henry*'s name in token of reconciliation; but this attempt was diſcovered by ſome friends whom *Conrad* had at *Henry*'s court; ſo that their enmity increaſing, acts of hoſtilities were committed on both ſides. The emperor undertook the ſiege of *Merſbourg*; but *Henry* forced his lines, and routed his whole army; of which the carnage was ſo great, that the *Saxons* ſaid, by way of deriſion, they could ſcarce believe hell was large enough to hold the infinite number of *Franks*, which they ſent thither in one day (2).

(2) *Remarq. ſur Heiſs*, *l.* ii. *p.* 155.

HENRY I. ſurnamed *the Fowler.*

A. D. 919. Henry, *ſurnamed* the Fowler, *is elected emperor.*

THE emperor being dead, the dukes of *Bavaria*, *Franconia*, and *Suabia*, together with all the other ſtates of *Germany*, aſſembled the following year at *Fritzlar*; where *Henry* duke of *Saxony*, being preſent, was elected, and confirmed in the imperial dignity with univerſal applauſe. He was diſtinguiſhed by the epithet of *the Fowler*, becauſe he was much addicted to that amuſement, and was actually engaged in it when he received the intimation of his being recommended by *Conrad* as his ſucceſſor in the empire[i].

920. *Declines an invitation from the pope.*

Eſtabliſhes peace among the princes of the empire.

Defeats the Hungarians *near* Merſbourg.

Exterminates the Vandals.

Overcomes the Danes.

Subdues the Dalmatians, Bohemians, *and* Abotrites.

THE pope, diſturbed by the factions of ſeveral petty princes, who aſſumed the title in *Rome*, proffered to declare *Henry* emperor of the *Romans*; but this honour he declined, either becauſe he would not give himſelf the trouble of marching into *Italy* to ſubdue his competitors, or was reſolved to re-eſtabliſh the tranquility of his own empire before he would engage in that enterprize. With this view he had, in the beginning of his reign, endeavoured to promote a mutual reconciliation among all the princes, counts, and noblemen, of *Germany*, as the only ſure baſis of univerſal proſperity; nor was he diſappointed in his aim. Concord and harmony were diffuſed thro' the whole empire, and the affection of his ſubjects ſo happily conciliated, that when the *Hungarians*, according to cuſtom, invaded his territories with a powerful army, they unanimouſly took up arms in his defence, and drove the enemy out of the empire, with the loſs of eighty thouſand men left upon the field of battle, which was fought near the city of *Merſbourg*. He afterwards defeated the *Vandals*, who had made an irruption into *Saxony*, and purſued them as far as the city of *Brandenbourg*, which he beſieged and took in the middle of winter. The ſame people again having attempted to invade the empire, *Henry* attacked them upon the coaſt of the *Baltic*; where they were utterly exterminated, about one hundred and twenty thouſand being killed upon the ſpot. *Gonnen*, king of *Denmark*, met with the ſame fate. The *Sclavonians* and *Dalmatians* were ſubdued, as well as the *Bohemians*, whoſe king, *Winceſlaus*, he took priſoner; and, after long captivity, releaſed, and generouſly reinſtated in his dominions. In fine, he reduced the *Abotrites*, who had revolted, and was ſucceſsful againſt all the enemies of the empire. Among others, he repulſed

---

[i] HEISS, l. ii. p. 156. GOB. PERS. p. 246. HEN. BOD. p. 490. tom. ii. & iii.

Charles the Simple from the banks of the *Rhine*, whither he had come to ravage *Lorrain*, and the cities of *Mentz*, *Spire*, and *Worms*.

A.D. 921.

Surmounts all oppoſition.

AT length the two princes, after they had twice conferred with each other at *Bonn*, entered into a treaty called *Pactum Bonnenſe*, which is a famous epocha in hiſtory; and this is the only attempt that ever was made by *Charles*, or his ſucceſſors, in favour of their pretenſions upon the empire[k].

SOON after this accommodation, he held an aſſembly at *Coblentz*, compoſed of ſeveral *French* and *German* biſhops, where the treaty was confirmed; and, among other regulations, it was decreed, that there ſhould be no marriage between relations within the ſixth degree of conſanguinity; and that no layman ſhould receive tythes, which were wholly eccleſiaſtic[l].

ABOUT this time, *Conrad*, at the ſollicitation of ſome *French* noblemen, adviſed *Charles* of *France* to diſmiſs his favourite *Haganon*, who abuſed his confidence, and was odious to the whole kingdom; but this advice being rejected, duke *Robert*, to whoſe ſon *Hugh Charles* refuſed the abbey of *Chelles*, aſſembled a body of forces, took the town of *Laon*, in which he found the treaſures of *Haganon*, was crowned at *Rheims* by the archbiſhop *Hervè*; and, in order to ſupport his new dignity with the friendſhip of *Henry the Fowler*, demanded an interview with that prince. They accordingly met on the banks of the river *Roer*, that runs by *Juliers*, where they engaged in a league offenſive and defenſive, and made conſiderable preſents to each other.

Charles *is defeated by* Hugh *ſurnamed* the Abbot.

923.

CHARLES, alarmed at this alliance, extracted courage from neceſſity; and, aſſembling his troops, marched directly to *Attigni*, and attacked the army of his rival. The battle was maintained with great obſtinacy on both ſides; and, even after *Robert* was ſlain, his ſon *Hugh*, taking the command, exerted himſelf with ſuch valour, that *Charles* was worſted, and obliged to quit the field[m]. The malecontents afterwards elected *Raoul* duke of *Burgundy* their king; and *Charles*, ſeeing himſelf abandoned by many noblemen who had hitherto been attached to his intereſt, had recourſe to *Henry the Fowler*, in whoſe favour he promiſed to cede all his poſſeſſions in *Lorrain*. In conſequence of this engagement, *Henry* began to levy troops; and the malecontents of *France* being terrified at his preparations, *Herbert* count *de Vermandois*, one of their chiefs, amuſed *Charles* with proteſ-

Henry *eſpouſes the cauſe of* Charles,

---

[k] Pact. Carol. & Hen. Reg. ap. DUCH. t. ii. [l] Concil. t. ix. p. 579. [m] MABIL. t. xiii. A. BENEDICT. p. 374.

who is made priſoner by the malecontents.

tations of fidelity, and, on pretence of concerting meaſures for ſuppreſſing the rebellion, ſeduced him to *Peronne*, where he was apprehended, and committed cloſe priſoner to *Chateau-Thierri*.

The emperor paſſes the Rhine,

HENRY, being informed of this event, paſſed the *Rhine* with his army, and ravaged the country between that river and the *Moſelle*; but underſtanding that *Raoul* was advancing with a ſuperior force, he repaſſed the *Rhine*, and took poſſeſſion of an advantageous poſt, where he remained until he had the pleaſure of ſeeing almoſt all the noblemen of *Lorrain* forſake the banners of *Raoul*, who began to treat them with inſolence and contempt. This defection might have been very advantageous to *Henry*, had not he been prevented from turning it to account, by a ſevere diſtemper that reduced him to extremity; during which the *Lorrainers*, deſpairing of his recovery, reconciled themſelves to *Raoul*, by the mediation of *Herbert de Vermandois* and *Hugh the Abbot*.

ſubdues Lorrain,

HENRY no ſooner recovered his health, than, reſolved to puniſh them for their inconſtancy, he marched into *Lorrain*, retook ſeveral ſtrong places, purſued duke *Geſelbert* from town to town, and in a little time ſubdued the whole country. With regard to the laymen of *Raoul*'s party, he baniſhed ſome, kept others in confinement, and depoſed *Hugh the Abbot* from the biſhopric of *Verdun*, which he beſtowed on one of his own adherents. The *Lorrainers*, exaſperated at this arbitrary method of proceeding, formed a conſpiracy againſt *the Fowler*, and raiſed an army with ſuch ſecreſy and diſpatch, that he was fain to pacify them by redreſſing their grievances, and reſtoring the province to *Geſelbert*, who took the oath of allegiance, and did him homage accordingly.

and is reconciled to duke Geſelbert.
A. D. 926.

THE duke, however, not contented with ſuch a dependent ſituation, began to form new projects and cabals againſt *Henry*, who obliged him to appear at the diet of *Worms*; where he was deprived of his duchy, which was given to *Everhard*, a *Saxon* nobleman. *Geſelbert*, enraged at this event, had recourſe to arms; but, before he could commit any acts of hoſtility, he was ſeized and delivered to the emperor: yet ſo pliant was his diſpoſition, that, even during his captivity, he inſinuated himſelf into the good graces of *Henry*, who not only re-eſtabliſhed him in the duchy of *Lorrain*, but alſo gave him his own daughter in marriage[n].

He regulates the police of

To clear his dominions of thieves and banditti, he publiſhed a general amneſty in their favour, provided they would inliſt in his ſervice; and actually formed them into a regiment. He ordered that all his cities ſhould be garriſoned with a ninth part of the peaſants who inhabited the boroughs and villages, and that the other eight ſhould cultivate the lands, on condition of contributing towards the ſubſiſtence of the reſt, and of furniſhing yearly the third part of all their grain, for the magazines eſtabliſhed in every city, that there might never be any want either of ſoldiers or proviſion [o].

---

[n] WITTICH. l. i. p. 639.

his dominions;

SUCH was the zeal of this prince for the propagation of the Chriſtian faith, that he undertook, and actually effected, the converſion of the king of the *Abotrites* (C), and appointed the firſt biſhop in *Holſtein* to preach the goſpel among the *Vandals*, whom he had ſubdued [p]. He created a marquis in the city of *Brandenbourg* to defend his frontiers againſt the *Abotrites*, as he had done before in *Miſnia* and *Luſatia*, for ſecurity againſt the incurſions of the *Bohemians*; in imitation of *Charlemagne*, who had taken the ſame precautions in *Auſtria* and *Moravia* againſt the *Sarmatians*, *Poles*, and *Hungarians*. He likewiſe ordered his towns to be ſurrounded with walls, baſtions, and ditches, for the advantage of commerce, as well as the ſecurity of the inhabitants; and that the nobility might be inured to the exerciſe of arms, even in time of peace, he appointed tournaments, in which they vied with each other in diſplaying their dexterity and addreſs. But he expreſsly excluded from theſe liſts of honour, all thoſe who did not profeſs the true religion, as well as thoſe who had been guilty of perjury, treaſon, rape, ſacrilege, or murder.

converts the king of the Abotrites *to the Chriſtian faith.*
A. D.
927.

Secures his dominions;

AFTER having taken theſe precautions for the ſecurity of his dominions, he marched to the aſſiſtance of *Winceſlaus*, duke of *Bohemia*, whoſe dominions were invaded by *Ladiſlaus*, a *Poliſh* prince, who was obliged to retire at his approach: and he ſtayed ſome time at *Prague*, in order to eſtabliſh the young duke on his dominions, and protect the Chriſtian religion, which had greatly ſuffered by the efforts of *Draghomire*, the mother of *Winceſlaus*, a bigotted pagan [q].

marches to the aſſiſtance of the duke of Bohemia; *and*

HENRY's next expedition was into *Lorrain*, where he beſieged the caſtle of *Durefort*, belonging to count *Boſon*,

enters Lorrain.

---

[o] Annal. Saxon, ad. an. 927.

[p] Annal. GERN. HOPPENROD. ex Meib. tom. ii. p. 417.

[q] Hiſt. Bohem. t. iv. p. 58.

(C) *Abotrites*, a people bordering upon *Bulgaria*, in that part of *Dacia* contiguous to the *Danube* (1).

(1) *Maſcou.*

againſt count Boſon.

brother of king *Raoul*, who had ſeized by force ſeveral abbies of *Lorrain*; but he was perſuaded to reſtore the lands, make a ſubmiſſion, and ſwear allegiance to the emperor [r].

The Slaves *are defeated.* A. D. 929.

While *Henry* was thus employed in appeaſing the troubles of *Bohemia* and *Lorrain*, the *Slaves*, who inhabited *Pomerania*, made an irruption into *Saxony*, ravaged the province of *Lunenburg*, and taking the capital, put the inhabitants to the ſword. Being afterwards joined by the *Abotrites*, *Wilſes*, and *Vandals*, they found their army augmented to a very great number; and becoming more and more formidable, *Henry* ordered *Bernard*, duke of *Lunenburg*, and the count *Theutmare*, to march againſt them with a powerful body of forces. Theſe two generals undertook the ſiege of *Lunden* in *Scania*, and the barbarians marching to its relief, a battle enſued, in which they were utterly overthrown; ſo that of courſe this town of *Lunden* fell into the hands of the conquerors [s].

931. *He reforms ſome abuſes in a council held at* Erfort.

The truce with the *Hungarians* being expired, *Henry* aſſembled the ſtates of the empire, and after having recapitulated the victories he had obtained over the barbarians, which ſeemed to preſage his future ſucceſs, expatiated upon the diſgrace that would be entailed upon *Germany*, provided they ſhould commence tributaries to the *Hungarians*. His ſpeech had ſuch an effect upon the aſſembly, that they unanimouſly declared for war: but before he would undertake any thing againſt the enemy, he reſolved to take cognizance of ſome abuſes which had crept among the clergy, and which were accordingly reformed in a council held at *Erfort* in *Thuringia*.

The Hungarians *invade the empire with a vaſt army, which is defeated by the emperor.* A. D. 932.

These meaſures being taken for the repoſe of the church and ſtate, he began to make preparations for the war againſt the *Hungarians*; who having ſent deputies to demand the annual tribute, *Henry* refuſed to pay it with marks of diſdain, and in lieu of it ſent a mangy dog with a meſſage, importing, that if they expected any other tribute, they muſt come and look for it of themſelves. This haughty reply exaſperated them to ſuch a degree, that they joined the *Slaves*, and entering *Germany* with an army of 300,000 men, deſolated the country with fire and ſword. They ſeparated into two diſtinct bodies; one of which croſſed the *Rhine* in boats, and having pillaged *Alſace*, fell upon *Lorrain*, where they were defeated by the count *de Sunderhauſen*, and obliged to return to their ſecond army in *Saxony*, which was at that time employed in beſieging *Merſbourg*. *Henry* had marched againſt another body that ravaged *Thuringia*, which having ſurprized and utterly defeated, he reſolved to go to the relief of *Merſbourg*, where he found the enemy drawn up in order of battle. Although he was at that time very much indiſpoſed, and infinitely inferior to the *Hungarians* in number, he reſolutely attacked them without heſitation, and they being immediately put into diſorder, a terrible carnage enſued, inſomuch that they left above 40,000 men dead upon the field of battle, and a very conſiderable booty, by which the ſoldiers of the emperor were enriched [t].

---

[r] Barre, t. iii. p. 327.

[s] Witichind, l. i. p. 639.

He is invited to Italy, *whither he begins his march; but being taken ill returns to* Manſleben.

Henry, having ſubdued all his enemies, reſtored peace and concord to his ſubjects, and ſubjected the empire to proper regulations, began to taſte the fruits of his wiſdom and ſucceſs, when the pope and citizens of *Rome*, tired of the civil wars that had raged ſo long in *Italy*, implored the aſſiſtance of his arms, to deliver them from oppreſſion; and, in order to facilitate his compliance, invited him to come and receive at *Rome* the unction and imperial crown. Far from neglecting an occaſion ſo favourable to his views upon *Italy*, he forthwith ſet out at the head of his troops; but being ſeized with an apoplexy by the way, he was obliged to return to *Manſleben*; where, believing himſelf near his end, he convoked the princes of the empire, who, in his preſence, complied with his deſire, and ſettled the ſucceſſion on his ſon *Otho*. Soon after this nomination he died at *Manſleben*, in the 60th year of his age, and 17th of his reign; upon which occaſion it was ſaid, that the ableſt ſtateſman [u] and the greateſt king of *Europe* was dead: and really no prince ſurpaſſed him either in the qualities of the heart and head, or in any perſonal accompliſhment. He was extremely munificent to the church, and had the intereſt of religion very much at heart (D). He married *Mathilda*, daughter of *Theodoric*, count of *Aldenburg*, by whom he had three ſons,

Appoints his ſucceſſor.

A. D. 936.

---

[t] Engelhusius, p. 174. [u] Ann. Witichind, ex Meib. p. 642. t. i.

(D) *Henricus Bodo* relates, that *Rudolphus*, king of the *Burgundians*, being poſſeſſed of a lance, formerly belonging to *Conſtantine the Great*, who had fixed upon it a croſs made of the nails of that croſs on which Chriſt ſuffered, the emperor *Henry* obtained it from him, partly by threats and partly by intreaties; and, by virtue of this holy weapon, triumphed over all his enemies: that a vein of ſuperſtition ran through his character may be alſo gathered from the tranſports of joy and adoration, with which he received an hand of St. *Dennis*, ſent to him in a preſent by *Charles the Simple*.

Otho, *Henry*, and *Bruno*, and enjoyed the ſatisfaction of leaving to the eldeſt of theſe, who was already of age, the empire much more powerful, and the authority better eſtabliſhed, than he had received them from his predeceſſor[w].

---

[w] Bod. Syntag, ex Meib. p. 490.

CHAP. II.

The Reign of Otho I. *including the Tranſactions of the Weſtern Empire under this Prince and his Deſcendents.*

Otho *is elected and crowned at* Aix-la-Chapelle.

A. D. 936. THOUGH the princes of *Germany* had not been very well diſpoſed towards *Otho*, the great power he had derived from his hereditary ſucceſſion, together with his enterprizing ſpirit and perſonal qualifications, would have obliged them to adhere to the promiſe which they had already made in his favour (E). He was accordingly elected emperor at *Aix-la-Chapelle*, by the unanimous conſent of all the princes then preſent, among which number were the archbiſhops of *Mentz*, *Magdebourg*, *Triers*, and *Beſançon*; the biſhops of *Ratiſbon*, *Treſingen*, *Augſbourg*, *Conſtance*, *Eichſtet*, *Worms*, *Spire*, *Brixen*, and *Hildeſheim*, this laſt being the emperor's chancellor; the abbots of *Fulde*, *Herchfelt*, and *Erbach*, together with the king of *Bohemia*, and the dukes of *Saxony*, *Bavaria*, *Auſtria*, *Moravia*, and *Lorrain*[x]. All theſe took the oath of allegiance, and did homage to the new emperor, whom they promiſed to ſerve and aſſiſt againſt all his enemies. Then they accompanied him to the great church, where he was met by the archbiſhop of *Mentz* and the dioceſan, in their pontificals, aſſiſted by other biſhops and all the clergy, who having ſaluted him with the uſual ceremonies, he proceeded into the middle of the church, where he ſtood in ſight of the people, to whom the prelate addreſſed himſelf in words to this effect: "I here preſent to you, " *Otho*, choſen of God, formerly deſtined to the empire by " his father *Henry*, and now elected into that ſupreme ſta- " tion by all the princes here aſſembled. If this election is " agreeable to you, hold up your hands in token of your " approbation." This addreſs being received with univerſal applauſe, and a thouſand acclamations, *Otho* was conducted to the great altar on which the regalia were placed, when the archbiſhop girding on his ſword, "Receive (ſaid he) that " ſword, and uſe it againſt the enemies of Jeſus Chriſt, as " well as thoſe who unworthily profeſs his name; and em- " ploy the authority and power of the empire, which God " hath put into your hands, to confirm and preſerve the " peace of the church." Then putting on the mantle of ſtate, "Remember (continued he) with what fortitude and " fidelity you are obliged to maintain peace and tranquillity " to the end of your life." Laſtly, preſenting him with the ſcepter and mace, he added, "Warned by theſe em- " blems, inflict upon your ſubjects no other than paternal " chaſtiſement: extend your mercy and compaſſion to the " miniſters of God, to the widow and the orphan; and let " the balm of your pity never ceaſe to flow, that you may " acquire a never fading crown both in this life and that " which is to come." After this exhortation, he was anointed by the biſhops with the ſacred oil, and the archbiſhop ſet the crown upon his head. Then he aſcended the throne, on which he ſate during the ſervice; after which he was reconducted to the palace, where he dined in public, and was ſerved by the dukes and other noblemen, while the biſhops had the honour of ſitting at his own table.

---

[x] Witt. Ann. l. ii.

(E) He inherited from his father the duchy of *Saxony*, *Weſtphalia*, *Angria*, *Thuringia*, *Heſſe*, *Wetteravia*, the countries on the *Weſer* in the neighbourhood of *Minden*, and thoſe upon the *Elbe*, towards the confines of *Lunenburg*, comprehending the city of *Wittenberg*, *Miſnia*, *Luſatia*, the country on the eaſt ſide of *Pleſſe* and *Eſter*, the country of *Northeim*, and that whole tract in which the city of *Magdebourg* is ſituated (1).

(1) *Heiſs*, *b.* ii.

The ceremony of his coronation.

He began his reign with the moſt upright adminiſtration [y], being an implacable enemy to all cruelty and baſeneſs, and, for a little time, he ruled in tranquillity and peace; but this calm was not of long duration. The *Hungarians*, according to cuſtom, invaded *Franconia*, and ravaged the provinces of *Upper* and *Lower Saxony*, where they put a number of people to the ſword, without diſtinction of ſex or age. However, their progreſs was ſoon checked by *Otho*, who coming up with them in the plain of *Dortmund* in *Weſtphalia*, attacked and defeated them with great ſlaughter; then marching into *Lower Saxony*, fortified *Magdebourg*, and paſſed the *Elbe*, to reſtrain the *Slaves* and other barbarians

---

[y] Heiss, l. ii. Wittichind, an. lib. ii.

He ſends an army againſt Boleſlaus.

of the north, who were meditating a freſh irruption. After this expedition, being informed that *Winceſlaus*, who was inveſted with the dukedom of *Bohemia* by the emperor his father, had been murdered by *Boleſlaus* his own brother, who afterwards took poſſeſſion of the duchy by force, he was ſo incenſed at the inhumanity of the uſurper, that he ſent an army againſt him, under the command of *Æſic*, count of *Aſcania*, who engaged and at firſt defeated *Boleſlaus*, and believed that, by this victory, he had put an end to the war; but the uſurper having, in a few days, rallied and reinforced his troops, and making a ſudden aſſault upon the victors, cut in pieces the whole imperial army [z].

A. D. 937.

Otho was mortally chagrined at this misfortune, which, however, he endeavoured to repair, by levying a new army with all poſſible expedition. He accordingly carried on the war for the ſpace of fourteen years with great vigour and perſeverance, till at laſt he gained a complete victory over *Boleſlaus*, who was fain to ſubmit and own him for his ſovereign. But this was not the only war which at that time engroſſed the attention of the emperor.

The ſons of Arnold, *duke of* Bavaria, *refuſe to do homage to* Otho,

The death of *Arnold*, duke of *Bavaria*, produced a general revolution in that province. He left three ſons; *Everhard*, *Arnold*, and *Herman*, with a daughter called *Judith*, who was married to *Henry* of *Saxony*, brother of *Otho*. *Everhard*, as eldeſt, ſeized the whole duchy, and refuſed to do homage to the emperor, on pretence that he was not his vaſſal but ally: and although *Arnold* and *Herman* diſputed the duchy with *Everhard*, all three agreed to conſider *Bavaria* as altogether independent of *Germany*; a circumſtance which incenſed *Otho* to ſuch a degree, that he diveſted them of the duchy, and beſtowed the inveſtiture upon *Arnold*'s brother *Bertolf*, who willingly did homage for ſuch a preſent. Each pretender was ſuppored by his own party. Pope *Leo* VII. owned *Everhard* as duke of *Bavaria*, in a letter addreſſed to the biſhops and noblemen of *Germany*; and *Otho*, alarmed at this deciſion, ſet on foot a negociation to engage the three brothers to reſign their pretenſions; but they refuſing to comply with his deſire, he entered *Bavaria* with a powerful army, and having ſeized *Everhard*, ſent him into exile. *Arnold* and *Herman* were obliged to follow his court, and their uncle *Bertolf* remained in quiet poſſeſſion of *Bavaria* [a]. As for the eldeſt, he was obliged to paſs the reſt of his days in the allodial territories depending on *Bavaria*, ſituated in *Voigtland* and *Franconia*: but

who enters Bavaria *and baniſhes the eldeſt.*

938.

---

[z] Dubravius Hiſt. Bohem.

[a] Sigeb. ad. ann. 936.

each of his brothers afterwards obtained a palatinate. *Arnold* was put in poſſeſſion of the lordſhip of *Scheyern*, and became count palatine in *Bavaria*, and *Herman* acquired the ſame dignity in one of the provinces upon the *Rhine*.

Diſſenſion between Everhard, *duke of* Franconia, *and* Henry, *duke of* Brunſwick.

EVERHARD, duke of *Franconia*, was likewiſe inveſted with the ſame quality, by which he maintained a juriſdiction over the magiſtrates and receivers, and beſtowed thoſe places, and many others, upon his own friends and adherents. The *Saxons* grew jealous of his credit and power; and *Henry*, duke of *Brunſwick*, the emperor's brother, not only refuſed to ſubmit to his authority, but alſo inſpired the *Saxons* with the ſame ſentiments, which entailed upon them the reſentment of *Everhard*, who declared war againſt *Henry*, and burnt the town of *Elmen* upon the *Weſer*. *Otho* no ſooner heard of theſe proceedings, than he aſſembled the noblemen of his court; and bringing *Everhard* and his accomplices to a tryal, condemned each of them to carry a dog upon his ſhoulders, from the place of his habitation as far as *Magdeburg*. In this manner did the ancient nations of the north puniſh the ſeditious, who had diſturbed the public tranquillity. *Everhard*, however, was pardoned at the interceſſion of his friends; though the enmity ſtill ſubſiſted between him and the duke of *Brunſwick*, and in a little time broke forth in preparations of war: then *Otho* ſummoned both to appear at the diet of *Arenſberg* (F), which was at that time convened, but they did not think proper to obey the citation; and *Henry* was afterwards ſurprized by his antagoniſt in the town of *Baudewic*, and committed cloſe priſoner to a caſtle in *Alſace*; from whence, however, he was ſoon releaſed, after having entered into a league againſt his brother with *Everhard*, and *Sigebert* duke of *Auſtraſia*. Theſe, who were themſelves pretenders to the throne, took great pains to perſuade *Henry*, brother to *Otho*, that he had the beſt title to the imperial dignity, becauſe he was born after the elevation of his father to the throne; whereas the birth of *Otho* was not attended with ſuch advantage. He liſtened to theſe idle inſi-

Henry, *brother of* Otho, *joins* Everhard *and* Sigebert, *duke*

(F) In this diet it was debated, whether children could inherit the effects of their fathers, while their grandfathers were ſtill alive; and as this point could not be determined any other way, it was agreed that it ſhould be decided by duel. Accordingly an equal number of combatants being choſen on both ſides, they entered the liſts; and the champions of the children having obtained the victory, the proceſs was determined in their favour (1).

(1) *Barre Hiſt. D'Allemagne*, t. iii. p. 352.

of Auſtraſia, *and take the field againſt the emperor, by whoſe forces they are defeated.*

Henry *retires to* France. A.D. 941.

nuations; and an aſſociation being formed, they began to levy troops, and in a little time brought a conſiderable army into the field, but were intirely routed by the emperor; duke *Everhard*, who was general, being killed in the battle, which was fought upon the banks of the *Rhine*, and *Sigebert* drowned in that river, in attempting to make his eſcape. Mean while *Henry* taking refuge in the city of *Merſbourg*, and finding himſelf unable to defend it againſt his brother, was fain to ſubmit by capitulation; in conſequence of which he retired to the dominions of *Lewis*, king of *France*, who had declared war againſt the emperor in ſupport of his pretenſions. Peace was ſoon after concluded between that prince and the emperor, who was reconciled to his brother, and beſtowed upon him the duchy of *Lorrain*, which did not long remain in his poſſeſſion[b] (G).

The emperor makes himſelf maſter of Briſac, Mentz, *and* Chevremont.

SIGEBERT or *Giſelbert*, duke of *Auſtraſia* or *Lorrain*, had prevailed upon the noblemen of that province to make a tender of it to *Lewis*, king of *France*, who received their homage accordingly; and *Otho* hearing of this revolt, marched thither with an army and defeated the rebels. After this victory he undertook the ſiege of *Chevremont*, in the dioceſe of *Liege*, which, however, he was obliged to quit, in order to oppoſe the progreſs of the count palatine and the king of *France*, who had entered *Lorrain* and compelled his friends to retire to the other ſide of the *Rhine*. But *Lewis* being

---

[b] Ann. Trever.

(G) *Wittichindus*, who dedicates his annals to *Otho*'s daughter, gives an account of a rebellion raiſed by *Everhard* and *Tancmarus*, the emperor's natural brother; who being abandoned by his followers, and taking refuge in a church at *Heresbourg*, was ſlain at the altar by ſome of *Otho*'s ſoldiers. *Everhard* ſeeing their ſchemes thus miſcarry, artfully inſinuated himſelf into the good graces of *Henry*, *Otho*'s brother, who was at that time his priſoner, and perſuaded him to ſet up for himſelf, and take arms againſt the emperor. Accordingly, having in a little time joined their forces, they took the field againſt *Otho*, and were routed upon the banks of the *Rhine*. *Henry* retreated to *Mersbourg*, from whence he afterwards retired by capitulation; and having ſtrengthened his party by the acceſſion of *Giſelbert*, they once more gave battle, on the banks of the ſame river, to *Hermannus*, the emperor's general, by whom they were intirely defeated; *Everhard* being ſlain, and *Giſelbert* drowned, as we have obſerved above. *Otho*, commiſerating the diſtreſſes to which his brother being informed of a contract which the biſhop of *Laon* had made with his enemy *Herbert*, count of *Vermandois*, quitted *Alſace*, to prevent the effect of this treaſon; and *Otho* inveſted the city of *Briſac*, during the ſiege of which he was abandoned by a number of noblemen, and, among the reſt, by *Frederick*, archbiſhop of *Mentz*, and *Ruthard*, biſhop of *Straſbourg*; nevertheleſs, he continued his operations until the place was taken, and then marching into *Lorrain*; made himſelf maſter of *Metz*, where he found *Frederick* and *Ruthard*, whom he ſent into exile to the abbies of *Fulde* and *Corbie*.

After this ſucceſs, he ordered his general *Immot* to reinveſt *Chevremont*, which was defended by *Anfred* and *Arnold* with ſuch valour, that the beſiegers were fain to have recourſe to fraud; and having apprehended theſe two officers whom he had invited to a conference, he ſent them to the emperor, and the town immediately ſurrendered [c].

Origin of the Palatinate *of the* Rhine.

Tho' *Conrad*, the ſon of *Everhard*, inherited from his father the duchy of *Franconia*, with the counties of *Heſſe* and *Alſace*, he could not ſucceed him in the dignity of count palatine, becauſe *Otho* had taken it from his father, and conferred it on *Herman*, third ſon of *Arnold*, duke of *Bavaria*: but as this honour was unattended with any ſolid advantage, the emperor began to annex to it the lands and caſtles ſituated on the *Rhine*, whence he acquired the title of *Count palatine of the Rhine*: and, in proceſs of time, theſe counts made great acquiſitions by marriages, purchaſes, mortgages, and imperial donations, ſo as to form a very conſiderable province [d].

The Slaves *make an irrup-*

About this time the *Slaves*, being joined by *Boleſlaus*, made an irruption into *Bohemia*, and ſurprized the city of *Prague*, from which, however, they were expelled by the

---

[c] Barre, t. iii. p. 362.

[d] Hiſt. Palatinat.

ther was expoſed, took him into favour again, and it was not long before he engaged in another conſpiracy againſt his life; which being detected, he fled into another kingdom. *Otho* having thus quelled all his enemies at home, ſubdued the kingdom of *Burgundy*, and became formidable to all the nations around. Then, by the interceſſion and admonition of his holy mother, he was prevailed upon to pardon his brother *Henry*, by this time haraſſed with the fatigues and miſeries he had undergone, and actually made him duke of *Bavaria*, *Berthold* being then dead; in which capacity he did eminent ſervice againſt the *Hungarians*, and other enemies of the empire.

tion into Bohemia *and* Brandenburg.

valour of the inhabitants: nor did they meet with more ſucceſs in their attempts upon the margraviate of *Brandenburg*, where they were routed by count *Geron*, who having got their chiefs into his power, put them all to death, without exception [e].

Lewis, king of *France*, having loſt the eſteem of his ſubjects by his pride and indiſcretion, ſought to prevent the bad conſequences of diſaffection, by an alliance with the emperor, which he endeavoured to ſtrengthen by marrying his ſiſter *Gerberge*, who was widow of *Giſelbert*, duke of *Lorrain*. But his hopes were not of long duration; for *Otho*, perſuaded by the inſinuations of *Hugh the Great*, and *Herbert*, count *de Vermandois*, entered *France* with a powerful army, obliged *Lewis* to retire from *Champagne* into *Burgundy*, and received the oath of allegiance from *Hugh* and his confederates. Yet their ardour was ſoon cooled by the death of *Herbert*; and *Otho* was recalled to *Saxony*, to oppoſe the deſigns of his brother *Henry*, who, taking advantage of the emperor's abſence, quitted *Lorrain*, and by dint of preſents and promiſes, formed a very formidable conſpiracy among the *Saxon* officers and ſoldiers. His cauſe was eſpouſed by the counts *Bacco, Herman, Reenward, Wirende Werle*, and *Lothaire*; and meaſures were taken to aſſaſſinate the emperor at *Quidlembourg*, where he intended to celebrate the feſtival of *Eaſter*: but *Otho* being informed of their deſign, marched againſt them without loſs of time, and defeated their purpoſe in a moment. The count *de Werle*, in order to avoid the puniſhment he deſerved, made away with himſelf; the reſt of the conſpirators were beheaded, and *Henry* confined to the caſtle of *Ingelheim*: yet he found means to eſcape, and repairing to *Frankfort*, where the emperor paſſed his *Chriſtmas*, proſtrated himſelf at his feet in a mourning habit, and implored his pardon, which was immediately granted [f].

Otho *marches into* France; A. D. 942.

is recalled to quell a new conſpiracy formed by his brother Henry.

Otho having recompenſed the ſervices of thoſe who had never forfeited their fidelity, eſtabliſhed a tribunal at *Bonn*, to take cognizance of the injuſtice and oppreſſion which had been committed during the troubles, and made a progreſs from town to town, in order to determine differences, and regulate the policy of his dominions. He afterwards repaired to *Dueſbourg* in the duchy of *Cleves*, where having aſſembled the noblemen of *Lorrain*, *Franconia*, and *Saxony*, he ordered *Rutbert*, archbiſhop of *Triers*, and *Richard*, biſhop of *Tongres*, to be tried for felony, of which they were accuſed by *Conrad*, the new duke of *Lorrain*; but they juſti-

---

[e] Chron. Sclavic.

[f] Hiſt. Lorr.

A. D. 943.

He erects the ſee of Triers *into a principality.*

fied themſelves by oath, and were acquitted. *Rutbert* was afterwards in great favour with the emperor, who erected his ſee into a principality, by an authentic act, which raiſes the archbiſhops of *Triers* to an equality with ſovereigns, and inveſts them with the rights of regality through the whole extent of the dioceſe [g].

Marches into France *to the aſſiſtance of* Lewis *and the count of* Flanders.

About this time *Berthold*, duke of *Bavaria*, dying, *Otho*, at the ſollicitation of his mother, beſtowed that duchy on his brother *Henry*, who thenceforward behaved as a peaceable and loyal ſubject: and the tranquillity of his reign was not again interrupted, until he marched with a powerful army into *France*, to ſupport *Lewis* againſt his powerful adverſary *Hugh the Great*. He was joined by that king and the count of *Flanders* near *Cambray*, which they reſolved to attack; but underſtanding it was too well fortified to leave them any hope of ſucceſs, they turned aſide to *Rheims*, which ſurrendered in three days after it was inveſted. From thence they advanced to *Paris*, and ravaged the duchy of *France*, belonging to *Hugh the Great*; and, inſtead of beſieging the capital, marched to *Rouen*, by the advice of the count of *Flanders*. Having paſſed the river of *Andelle*, *Otho*, at the deſire of *Lewis*, ſent a detachment of his beſt troops, under the command of his nephew, to reconnoitre; and this young captain happening to meet a body of *Normans*, attacked them with ſuch fury, that they fled to the very gate of *Rouen*: but this flight was no other than a ſtratagem, to decoy the *Saxons* into an ambuſcade; for the walls and adjacent fields were filled with archers, who immediately appeared, and the *Normans* made a vigorous ſally at the ſame time; ſo that the troops of *Otho* being charged on all hands, were routed after an obſtinate diſpute: their commander was killed upon the draw-bridge, and almoſt all the *Saxons* were either taken or ſlain. Notwithſtanding this misfortune, he reſolved to beſiege the town, and continued his operations without effect, until his army was greatly diminiſhed by famine and diſtemper: then he formed the deſign of betraying the count of *Flanders* to the enemy, becauſe he had been involved in this dangerous ſituation by his miſrepreſentations; but the count being informed of his intention, withdrew his whole forces in the night, and the *Imperialiſts* and *French* perceiving the commotion, miſtook them for an army coming to the relief of *Rouen*. This apprehenſion filled the camp with diſorder: the ſoldiers immediately betook themſelves to flight; and the inhabitants of *Rouen* obſerving

945.

The allies undertake the ſiege of Rouen, *which they are obliged to abandon.*

---

[g] Ann. Trever. Flodoard. l. iv.

their confuſion, made a general ſally, in which a great number of the *Saxons* periſhed. Not contented with this piece of ſucceſs, part of the garriſon, conſiſting of horſe, harraſſed them in their retreat as far as *Amiens*, where *Otho* and *Lewis* paſſed the *Somme* with their army[h]. The emperor returned to *Saxony*, leaving his allies ſtill embarraſſed with the war; but at length, through his mediation, they agreed to a truce, during which he received ſuch a dangerous fall in the chace, that his life was diſpaired of, and he nominated his ſon *Ludolphus* as his ſucceſſor, in the preſence of the principal noblemen of his court aſſembled for that purpoſe; but when he recovered his health he revoked this deſignation.

A. D. 947.

Diſpute between Artaud *and* Hugh *about the archbiſhopric of* Rheims.

Otho being at *Aix la Chapelle*, was viſited by *Lewis* of *France*; and in the following autumn they met upon the *Chier*, to concert meaſures for appeaſing the troubles which agitated that kingdom, as well as for terminating the ſcandalous quarrel ſubſiſting between *Artaud* and *Hugh*, who diſputed with each other the archbiſhopric of *Rheims*. Theſe two prelates being ſummoned to appear at the council of *Verdun*, *Artaud* obeyed the citation; and as *Hugh* refuſed to come, was proviſionally confirmed in the ſee: but that his competitor might have no cauſe to complain, another aſſembly was convoked for the following year, in the church of St. *Peter* near *Monſon*; and *Hugh* ſtill continuing obſtinate, was excluded from the communion of the other biſhops, and ſuſpended from all acts of juriſdiction, until other meaſures ſhould be taken by a national ſynod, to be held next year at *Ingelheim* near *Metz*.

Proceedings of the aſſembly at Ingelheim.

At this aſſembly, where the emperor and king of *France* aſſiſted in perſon, the ſentence was confirmed in favour of *Artaud*, who was acknowleged as lawful archbiſhop of *Rheims*, and his adverſary was anathematized. Several canons were made to prevent ſimony, and the tythes from being received by laymen; and *Lewis*, in a ſet ſpeech, complained of *Hugh the Great*, who had raiſed a rebellion againſt him, and even deprived him of liberty. In conſequence of theſe complaints, *Otho* ordered *Conrad*, duke of *Lorrain*, to 948. aſſemble ſome troops, and accompany *Lewis* into the *Lyonois*; where being joined by *Robert*, archbiſhop of *Triers*, and *Adalberon*, biſhop of *Metz*, after they had expelled *Hugh* from the ſee of *Rheims*, they beſieged and took *Montaigu*, and then marched againſt *Laon*, which was defended by *Threbaut*, count *de Chartres*, whom they excommunicated: they likewiſe ſummoned *Hugh the Great* to come and give an account of what he had done to the prejudice of *Lewis* his ſovereign. As for *Conrad*, without waiting for the iſſue of that citation, he quitted *Laon*, and returned to *Lorrain*, after having re-united the city of *Monſon* to the dominions of the empire; and *Hugh the Great* was excommunicated by the pope's legate, in a council held at *Triers* *.

---

[h] Hiſt. de Normandie.

Otho *makes war with the* Danes.
A. D. 949.

THE *Danes* having taken up arms, and murdered the margrave, appointed by *Henry the Fowler*, in the town of *Sleeſwic*, and put to the ſword part of the *Saxon* colony ſettled in that place, *Otho* marched into *Denmark*, in the abſence of king *Harold*, who had gone to the aſſiſtance of *Sturbcon*, king of *Sweden*; and having defeated ſome troops that attempted to oppoſe his paſſage, penetrated into *Jutland*, without farther reſiſtance. *Harold* no ſooner heard of this irruption, than he returned to his dominions, and a battle enſued, the particulars of which are variouſly related: but, certain it is, the campaign ended in an accommodation, by which the king of *Denmark* agreed, that *Otho* ſhould keep a garriſon in *Sleeſwic*, to defend the frontiers of the empire, and that the Chriſtian religion ſhould be preached in the dominions of *Harold* ‡.

Mediates a peace between Lewis *and* Hugh.
950.

AFTER this expedition the emperor repaired to *Aix-la-Chapelle*, to regulate the affairs of the empire; and there he was viſited by *Lewis*, and his wife *Gerberge*, who intreated him to employ his good offices in terminating the troubles of *France*. He accordingly ſent *Conrad*, duke of *Lorrain*, with ſome biſhops and counts, to *Hugh the Great*, who being likewiſe tired of war, willingly liſtened to his propoſitions, and peace was ſoon concluded by virtue of his mediation.

Reduces Boleſlaus.
951.

In the courſe of the ſame year, the emperor's ſon *Ludolphus* was married to *Idda*, daughter of *Herman*, duke of *Suabia*, a prince of great power and rich poſſeſſions, which at his death devolved to his ſon-in-law. But, in the midſt of theſe rejoicings, *Otho* reſolved to chaſtiſe *Boleſlaus*, who, notwithſtanding his former defeats, was ſtill engaged in new enterprizes againſt *Germany*. *Otho* therefore took the field; and having inveſted the town of *Boleſlaw*, into which *Boleſlaus* had retired, carried it by aſſault. Yet he granted him peace, upon condition that he ſhould repair the churches, recal the exiled Chriſtians, expiate by canonical penance the crime of parricide, which he had committed upon the perſon of his brother *Winceſlaus*, and hold his dominions as fiefs of the empire [1].

---

* FLODOARD. l. iv. ‡ ANN. SAXON. [1] DITMAR. l. i. & ii.

A. D.
950.

In the midſt of theſe ſucceſſes, his aſſiſtance was implored by *Alix*, widow of *Lotharius*, king of *Italy*, who was perſecuted and ſtripped of her dominions by *Beranger* the younger; and her intreaties were reinforced by the ſollicitations of pope *Agapetus* II. who was afraid of being oppreſſed by the ſame power. In conſequence of theſe importunities, the emperor marched into *Italy*, at the head of a powerful army, married *Alix* (*Ethica*, his firſt queen, who was a princeſs of *England*, being dead), made himſelf maſter of *Pavia*, in which *Alix* had been kept priſoner, and, in fine, compelled *Beranger* to ſubmit; but he was ſo generous as to give him back a good part of his dominions, and to beſtow upon his brothers the marquiſate of *Friuli*, *Verona*, and ſome lands in *Bavaria*, reſerving to himſelf no more than the glory of his conqueſt. Yet, notwithſtanding theſe favours, *Beranger* abuſed his confidence, broke his word, and renounced his friendſhip.

The emperor eſpouſes Alix.
952.

His ſon Ludolphus *rebels.*

Ludolphus, ſon of *Otho* by *Ethica*, tho' he had already been declared ſucceſſor to the empire, being chagrined at his father's ſecond marriage, engaged in a confederacy againſt him with *Conrad* duke of *Franconia*, who was his own brother-in-law, and ſeveral other *German* noblemen; by whoſe aſſiſtance he took poſſeſſion of divers cities, and fixed his head-quarters at *Mentz*. The emperor, apprized of this revolt, marched directly againſt him, beleaguered that city; and, underſtanding that his ſon was fled, purſued him to *Ratiſbon*, the ſiege of which he undertook[k]. After a blockade of ſix weeks, the inhabitants, being reduced to extremity, began to treat about capitulation; but, before the articles were ſettled, *Ludolph*, by the interceſſion of the nobles, was permitted to retire with his followers, and almoſt the whole city was burned to the ground. Some time after this retreat, *Ludolph* took the opportunity, when his father was hunting, to throw himſelf bare-headed at his feet, which he bathed with his tears; and, after a pathetic pauſe, "Have pity," ſaid he, "upon your child, who returns like the prodigal ſon to his father. If you permit him to live, who hath ſo often deſerved to die, he will be faithful and obedient for the future, and have time to repent of his folly and ingratitude." The father, equally ſurpriſed and affected with this moving ſpectacle, raiſed him from the ground, while the tears trickled from his eyes, took him into favour, and forgave all his followers.

955.
Is reduced, pardoned, and dies.

---

[k] Annal. Germ. ex Meib. Witt. Annal. l. iii.

Otho *marches againſt the* Hungarians, *whom he cuts in pieces.*

Otho, after having put an end to the civil wars of *Germany*, was, in his return to *Saxony*, met by ambaſſadors from *Hungary*, who came on pretence of congratulating him on his victories; but, in effect, were ſpies ſent to obtain information of the ſtate of the empire. For, in a little time, he was informed by his brother *Henry*, that theſe barbarians had entered *Bavaria* with ſuch a numerous army as ſeemed to have left their own country quite unpeopled; and that they had deſtroyed a great number of churches and other edifices, and ſlain all the inhabitants of the towns and villages through which they paſſed. The emperor no ſooner received this information than he marched to the relief of that province, while the *Hungarians* were employed in the ſiege of *Augſburg*; and, notwithſtanding the inferiority of his number, attacked their army with ſuch vigour, that, after a very obſtinate engagement, which laſted a whole day, the barbarians were defeated, and cut in pieces with incredible ſlaughter [l].

A.D. 956. *He obtains a victory over the* Slaves.

Next year he turned his arms againſt the *Slaves*, who had made an irruption into the empire, under the command of *Stornefger*, and found them intrenched with their booty on the other ſide of the river *Ratz*; which having paſſed upon a bridge of boats, he defeated them in a pitched battle, in which their king loſt his life, and next day put to death ſeventy priſoners, in order to intimidate the barbarians by this example of ſeverity. Nevertheleſs they revolted again the following year, and, being again defeated, implored the clemency of *Otho*; who pardoned them, on condition that they ſhould enjoy nothing but the effects belonging to their wives.

Receives embaſſies from the Arabs *and* Ruſſians.

Sends an army into Italy *under the command of* Ludolphus, *who*

During this war with the barbarians, he received an embaſſy from *Abderame*, king of the *Arabs* of *Cordova*, to congratulate him upon his victories, and another from *Helen*, queen of the *Ruſſians*, with compliments of the ſame kind, and a requeſt, that he would ſend miſſionaries to inſtruct her ſubjects in the Chriſtian religion [m]. In the midſt of theſe felicitations, came deputies from the *Italians* to demand ſuccour againſt the tyranny of *Beranger*, and *Otho* ſent to their aſſiſtance an army under the command of his ſon *Ludolphus*; who, after having defeated the tyrant, made himſelf maſter of ſeveral places, and in a great meaſure delivered that country from oppreſſion: but, inſtead of applauſe, he met with nothing but ingratitude from the *Italians*, which roſe to ſuch a pitch of inſolence, that they even reproached him with his

---

[l] Ann. Boicæ gent.

[m] Adlzr. p. 1. l. iv.

dies of grief. A. D. 959.

The pope implores again the aſſiſtance of Otho; 960.

paſt conduct, and in particular with his revolt againſt his father. Theſe ſevere ſarcaſms overwhelmed him with grief and mortification, which ſoon brought him to his grave. His death, which was bitterly lamented by *Otho*, gave *Beranger* time to breathe, and take the field with *Peter Caudren*, ſon of the duke of *Venice*, who had been exiled for having embarked in ſome enterprize againſt the intereſt of that republic. Theſe aſſociates began to pillage the country, and even beſieged pope *John* XII. in the city of *Spoleto*; ſo that the *Italians* implored again the aſſiſtance of the emperor; as a recompence for which, *Valpert*, archbiſhop of *Milan*, would conſecrate him king of *Lombardy*, and the pope beſtow upon him the imperial crown. *Otho*, flattered by theſe propoſals, promiſed to march into *Italy*, as ſoon as he ſhould have regulated the affairs of *Germany*; which in order to diſcuſs, he aſſembled a diet at *Worms*, where his young ſon *Otho*, by his ſecond wife, was elected king of *Germany*, and afterwards crowned at *Aix la Chapelle*, tho' he had not yet attained the eighth year of his age [n]. Then he appointed *Herman Biling* generaliſſimo of the troops deſtined to act againſt the *Danes* and *Slaves* in his abſence, and left young *Otho* under the tutorage of the archbiſhops of *Mentz* and *Cologn* [o].

HAVING taken theſe precautions, and made ſuitable preparations for his march, he ſet out for *Italy* at the head of a powerful army, accompanied by his wife *Alix* and a great number of prelates; and, taking his route through *Bavaria*, paſſed the *Alps* without reſiſtance.

963. *who returns to* Italy, *is conſecrated, and elected em-*

ON his arrival at *Rome*, he was conſecrated by the pope, crowned emperor of the *Romans*, dignified with the appellation of *Auguſtus*, and received the oath of allegiance from the ſenate and the people; who ſwore to obey him as their ſovereign lord [p] (H). Upon this occaſion, he diſtributed immenſe largeſſes in jewels, gold, and ſilver; reſtored to the church all the demeſnes formerly granted by *Pepin* and *Charlemagne*;

---

[n] SIGON. de Reg. Ital. [o] DITMAR. l. ii. [p] FR. HEN. BOD. SYNT. ex Meib. p. 493.

(H) The ſame author relates the particulars of the expedition into *France*, which the emperor undertook in favour of *Lewis* his brother-in-law, who had been depoſed by *Hugh*, ſurnamed *the Great*, father of *Hugh Capet*. *Lewis* was reſtored by the arms of *Otho*, who beſieged *Paris*, took *Rheims*, and made himſelf maſter of *Lyons*. *Mezeray* and other *French* hiſtorians take notice of this invaſion; tho' *Heiſs* is wholly ſilent on the ſubject, in all probability, thro' fear of diſobliging the *French* among whom he lived.

which had been wreſted from it by the petty tyrants of *Italy*: at the ſame time letters patent were expedited and ſigned by himſelf, the biſhops and nobles, importing, among other things, that, according to the agreement formerly made with *Eugenius* and his ſucceſſor, the *Roman* clergy and nobility ſhould oblige themſelves, by oath, to hold no election canonical, and to conſecrate no pope until he ſhould, in the preſence of the emperor's ſon, or ambaſſador, make the ſame promiſe which had been voluntarily made by *Leo* III. on the ſame ſubject.

peror of the Romans.

Is acknowleged ſupreme head of the church.

BERANGER and his wife being retired to *Monteleone*, *Otho* marched thither; upon which they ſurrendered themſelves, were tried, and condemned to perpetual impriſonment at *Bamberg*, where they ended their days.

THE emperor had no ſooner withdrawn his army from *Rome*, than pope *John*, on pretence that *Otho* intended to diſpoſſeſs the church of the lands which had been granted it by his predeceſſors, introduced into the city *Albert*, the ſon of *Beranger*, who, with his father, had been his moſt outragious enemy, and indeed the occaſion of his imploring the aſſiſtance of *Otho*.

THESE news no ſooner reached the ears of the emperor, than he returned to *Rome* (the pope and his new patron having fled at his approach), obliged the ſenate and people to renew the oath and promiſe they had formerly made, and, in order to be revenged on *John*, convoked a council to try him for the ſcandalous life he was accuſed of having led; for it was not his piety that had raiſed him to the papal chair, into which he was thruſt at the age of eighteen, by the intrigues and bribery of his father *Alberic*, whoſe influence and power were at that time exceſſive (I). The council being aſſembled,

Calls a council, depoſes John XII. *and elects* Leo VIII. *to the papal chair.*

(I) The depoſition of the witneſſes, publicly read in council, contained the following particulars: that, in celebrating the maſs, he had not communicated; that he had ordained a deacon in a ſtable, without minding the canonical hours; that he had ſold divers biſhoprics, and one to a boy not more than ten years of age; that he had violated the widow of *Rainerus*; lain with his his own father's concubine, converted the holy palace into a brothel, and cauſed *John* the cardinal and ſubdean to be aſſaſſinated: that he was guilty of ſetting fire to houſes; that he had been ſeen exciting tumults in the ſtreets, with a helmet on his head, and a ſword by his ſide; that, in the courſe of his debauches, he had drank the health of the devil; and that, in playing at hazard, he had been ſeveral times heard invoking the names of *Jupiter* and *Venus* (1).

(1) *Gob. Perſ. æt.* 6. *c.* 51.

heavy complaints were preferred againſt him for the ſpace of three days by the archbiſhops and biſhops of *Italy*, as well as by the people of *Rome*. *Otho*, who aſſiſted in perſon, ordered him to be ſummoned to appear and anſwer to theſe accuſations; and he, refuſing to obey, was declared unworthy of the papacy, and depoſed: tho' many authors affirm, that, as this council could not be œcumenical, the depoſition was of no validity. Be that as it will, *Leo* VIII. was elected by the unanimous ſuffrages of all preſent, took the chair in that very aſſembly, and executed the decree by which *Otho* was recognized as emperor of the *Romans*, ſovereign and king of *Italy*, with all the rights and prerogatives for him and his ſucceſſors, which pope *Adrian* I. had granted to *Charlemagne*, including the right of inveſtiture of biſhoprics, and the election and confirmation of popes. This decree was confirmed by the oaths of all the clergy and people; ſo that, from this date, we may juſtly ſtile *Otho* emperor of the *Romans*, as he now acquired the ſame title by which it had been conferred on *Charlemagne*. Having ſettled theſe affairs at *Rome*, he ſet out to appeaſe ſome diſturbances at *Spoletto* and *Camerina*, which he erected into principalities; but, in his abſence, ſeveral prelates and noblemen at *Rome*, at the inſtigation of *Albert*, favoured the return of *John*; who depoſed *Leo*, and declared his election void. In a few days after his having thus re-aſſumed the papal chair, he was found in bed with a woman, and miſerably ſlain by a rival. Nevertheleſs his adherents ſtill perſiſted in refuſing to own *Leo* for pope, and proceeded to the election of *Benedict* V. who was accordingly promoted to the chair of St. *Peter*.

A. D. 964.

John *reſumes the papacy, annuls the election of* Leo, *and is murdered.*

He is ſucceeded by Benedict;

who is depoſed by the emperor.

The emperor, being informed of theſe tranſactions, marched back to *Rome*; which having beſieged and taken, he cited *Benedict* to appear before another council, which he convened for that purpoſe; and he, obeying the ſummons, preſented himſelf in his pontificals, and was queſtioned for his preſumption in uſurping the apoſtolic dignity, during the life of pope *Leo*, contrary to the oath which he had taken. *Benedict* owned his error, implored the compaſſion of the council, and humbled himſelf before *Leo*; who, at the deſire of *Otho*, pardoned his crime, permitted him to keep the deacon's orders, and ſent him into exile at *Hamburgh* ¶. Then *Otho*, having obliged the *Romans* to promiſe upon oath, that they would never chooſe a native of any other country than *Germany* for their emperor, and regulated the affairs of *Italy*, he returned to his own country, and held a diet at

---

¶ Hen. Wolt. Cron. Brem.

Cologne,

A.D. 965.

Diet of Cologne.

Cologne, in which was confirmed the diviſion of *Lorrain* into two provinces; the one, bounded by *Luxemburg* and *Franche Compte*, being given to *Frederick* count *de Bar*, brother of *Adalberon*, biſhop of *Mentz*, and *Bruno*, archbiſhop of *Cologne*, reſerving the other, which comprehended the duchies of *Brabant*, *Juliers*, and *Guelderland*, together with the provinces contiguous to the mouths of the *Rhine*, the *Meuſe*, and the *Schelde*[r] (K).

Leo *being dead*, John III. *is raiſed to the papacy by* Otho.

POPE *Leo* VIII. dying in the courſe of this year, the *Romans* ſent deputies to know the pleaſure of *Otho*, who ſupplied his place with *John* XIII. who was impriſoned by the *Romans*; but ſoon releaſed, and re-eſtabliſhed by the emperor, who returned to *Rome* for that purpoſe.

Otho *puniſhes the* Romans *for their inconſtancy and revolt.*

NOT contented with the re-eſtabliſhment of *John*, he reſolved to puniſh the *Romans* for their inconſtancy. The conſuls were exiled, the tribunes of the people were hanged, to the number of a dozen; the body of *Jefroi*, who had been ring-leader of the revolt, was dug up, dragged through the ſtreets, and thrown into the common ſewer; and his ſucceſſor as prefect was expoſed upon an aſs, with his head to the tail, and, after having been publicly whipt, confined in a dungeon.

Cauſes his ſon to be crowned emperor at Rome.

Receives an embaſſy from Nicephorus Phocas, *emperor of* Conſtantinople.

HAVING made theſe examples, the emperor eſtabliſhed a well-regulated policy in *Rome*, viſited the cities of *Italy*, and confirmed the donations of *Pepin* and *Charlemagne*[s]. Then he cauſed his ſon *Otho* to be crowned at *Rome*, as his aſſociate in the empire; and, this ceremony being performed, he repaired to *Capua*, where he was viſited by ambaſſadors from *Nicephorus Phocas*, emperor of the *Greeks*, who came to renew the alliance that formerly ſubſiſted between the eaſtern and weſtern empires. This negociation did not immediately ſucceed; for *Nicephorus*, who ſtill poſſeſſed ſome towns in *Calabria* and *Apulia*, demanded that *Otho* would relinquiſh ſome cities that he occupied in the ſame country, and aſſiſt him in expelling the *Saracens* from others which they had reduced. *Otho*, whoſe aim was to make himſelf maſter of *Apulia* and *Calabria*, in order to unite *Italy* and *Germany* into one empire, did not reliſh the demand of *Nicephorus*; but nevertheleſs took that opportunity of ſending a favourable anſwer to the *Greek* emperor, and of ſignifying his aſſent to a propoſal which *Phocas* had made, of a match between young *Otho* and his daughter *Theophania*. Notwithſtanding theſe advances to friendſhip and alliance, *Nicephorus* was ſo much incenſed at the refuſal of his other demand, and the preſumption of *Otho* in aſſuming the title of emperor, that he formed an execrable plan of revenge, which he was enabled to execute by his craft and diſſimulation. Ambaſſadors were ſent to *Conſtantinople*, to regulate the conditions and ceremony of the nuptials, and a place appointed at which the princeſs was to be received by the *Germans*; who, repairing to this rendezvous with a magnificent train, were all maſſacred or carried priſoners to *Conſtantinople*, except one or two who eſcaped with the news of this horrible treachery [t].

---

[r] BARRE. t. iii. p. 427.

[s] SIGON. de Reg. Ital.

(K) While the emperor was in *Italy*, count *Sigefroi* purchaſed the caſtle of *Luxembourg* from *Vigger*, abbot of *St. Maximin* of *Triers*, to whom he gave in exchange the fief of *Vitelne*, ſituated in the country of *Ardennes*. The contract was executed at *Triers*, in preſence of *Bruno*, archbiſhop of *Cologne*, and many other noblemen, of the clergy as well as laity. And this is the origin of the fortreſs, duchy, and illuſtrious houſe, of *Luxembourg* (2).

(2) *Ann. Trev. l. ix. p.* 467.

A.D. 966. *Treacherouſly uſed by the* Greeks.

968. Otho *ſends an army into* Calabria;

OTHO, incenſed at this enormous perfidy, ordered counts *Gonther* and *Sigefrid*, who were brothers, to march with the flower of his army into *Calabria*, where they defeated the *Greeks*, commanded the noſes of their priſoners to be cut off, and ravaged the whole country.

NICEPHORUS being ſoon after put to death by his ſubjects, *John Zemiſces*, his ſucceſſor, not only releaſed the *Germans*, who were priſoners at *Conſtantinople*, but alſo ſent *Theophania*, with a magnificent train and rich preſents, into *Italy*, where her marriage with young *Otho* was happily conſummated (L). The emperor, ſeeing his ſon married to his wiſh, and of age and capacity to govern his dominions, enjoyed in peace the proſperous ſtate of his affairs for two years; at the end of which he died apoplectic at the city of *Minleben*, in *Saxony*, after a reign of thirty years, during which he gave extraordinary proofs of uncommon generoſity, piety, and courage, and juſtly acquired the appellation of

972. *and dies at* Minleben.

---

[t] LUITPRAND. WITCHIND. de Corb. Ann. l. iii.

(L) About this time *Magdeburg* was erected into the metropolis of all *Vandalia*. The archbiſhops of this ſee have ſince been primates of *Germany*; but now, that it is in the poſſeſſion of proteſtants, it is conſidered as a ſecular principality (3).

(3) *Barre. Hiſt. d'Allemagne, t.* iii. *p.* 443. *Annal. de l'Emp. t.* i. *p.* 143.

Great [a]. While his father was alive, he married *Editha* (M), daughter of *Edmund*, king of *England*, who founded the city of *Magdeburg* (N); and afterwards took to wife *Alix*, who, at his death, retired into a convent (O).

OTHO II.

A. D. 975. Otho II. *ſucceeds his father, and is oppoſed by* Henry *duke of* Bavaria;

OTHO II. ſurnamed *the Sanguinary* on account of the great quantities of blood which he ſpilt, had been elected and crowned during the life of his father, whom he now ſucceeded in the empire, tho' he was at firſt oppoſed by *Henry* duke of *Bavaria*, his own couſin-german; who, being ſupported by ſome biſhops, cauſed himſelf to be proclaimed at *Ratiſbon*: however, he was ſoon reduced, and not only obliged to renounce his title, but alſo to relinquiſh his duchy, which was given by the victor to *Otho* duke of *Suabia*. This competitor being quelled, the emperor turned his arms towards the river *Elbe*, to oppoſe *Harold*, king of *Denmark*, who had eſpouſed the intereſts of *Henry*, and advanced with a large body of troops to ſupport his cauſe: but he was ſo hampered by *Otho*, that he ſued for peace, adding conſiderable preſents to his requeſt, and ſolemnly promiſing to pay an annual tribute; for which he gave his own ſon as an hoſtage [x].

---

[a] Annal. Saxon. p. 324.

[x] Barre. t. iii. p. 453.

(M) The continuator of *Bede*'s eccleſiaſtical hiſtory ſays, that *Henry the Fowler* ſent to *Athelſtan*, king of *England*, for his two ſiſters, *Adgetta* and *Egitta*, the laſt of whom he gave in marriage to his ſon *Otho*, and the other to a certain duke, whoſe territories lay near the *Alps*. The lady, whom *Otho* eſpouſed, is variouſly named by various authors, being ſometimes called *Adiva*, ſometimes *Eadittia*; by *Witchindus*, *Edidis*; by *Ditmarus*, *Edit*; and by *Matthew* of *Weſtminſter*, *Eadgeva*.

(N) His body was tranſported to *Magdeburg*, and buried in the cathedral church; where his tomb is ſtill to be ſeen, diſtinguiſhed by this inſcription:

Tres luctus cauſæ ſunt, hoc ſub
marmore clauſæ.
Rex, decus eccleſiæ, ſummus
honor patriæ (4).

(O) The annals of this reign are written by the famous *Wittichind*, who was a monk of *Corbie*, and lived in this age. His work is intitled *Annales de Geſtis Ottonum*, and publiſhed in the collection of *Meibomius* (5).

(4) *Annal. Sax. ubi. ſup.*

(5) *Sigeb. de Vir. Illuſt. c.* 139.

whom he defeats, with the duke of Carinthia, *and makes peace with the king of* Bohemia.

THUS ſatisfied, *Otho* marched againſt the duke of *Bohemia,* who had been one of the confederates of his competitor; and, having ravaged his country, returned to make head againſt *Henry* himſelf and the duke of *Carinthia,* with the biſhop of *Frevingen* ; whom having defeated and taken, he regained the city of *Paſſaw,* and concluded an advantagious peace with the duke of *Bohemia.* As for *Henry,* he was tried by an aſſembly convoked at *Quidlembourg* ; and, being convicted of treaſon, was, together with the biſhop of *Augſbourg,* exiled to *Utrecht,* where they were kept as priſoners of ſtate [y].

A. D. 977.

HE had ſcarce diſengaged himſelf from theſe troubles, when he was involved in a war with *Lotharius,* king of *France,* about the ſuperiority of *Lorrain,* to which the *French* monarch revived his pretenſions ; tho' the immediate cauſe of the quarrel was the countenance and ſupport which *France* gave to the two ſons of *Ranier* count of *Hainault,* who had been ſtripped of his dominions in the reign of the late emperor. Theſe two noblemen, looking upon the death of *Otho* I. as a favourable conjuncture, aſſembled ſome forces, marched towards their hereditary dominions, and, in a pitched battle near *Peronne,* defeated *Garnier* and *Rainaud,* the two noblemen to whom *Hainault* had been given : then they entered *Low Lorrain,* which they ravaged without oppoſition ; and being ſeconded by *Charles,* brother of *Lotharius,* and *Hugh Capet,* at the head of a good army, they took poſſeſſion of their father's country, after having expelled counts *Godfrey* and *Arnold,* who had endeavoured to obſtruct their progreſs [z].

THE emperor being intimidated by ſuch a powerful aſſociation, headed by the king of *France,* who took this opportunity to claim the ſuperiority of thoſe and many other countries, endeavoured to appeaſe that monarch by beſtowing, in fief, the duchy of *Lorrain* upon his brother *Charles.* The king of *France,* however, was not ſatisfied with this condeſcenſion, which he did not conſider as a ſufficient attonement for the loſs he had ſuſtained by *Otho*'s incroaching upon the right he had to certain parts of that duchy. He therefore reſolved to do himſelf juſtice ; and ſuddenly raiſing an army, marched directly to *Aix la Chapelle,* in order to take the emperor by ſurprize. *Otho* eſcaped with difficulty, and, inflamed with a deſire of revenge, aſſembled his forces to the number of ſixty thouſand men, with which he made an irruption into the territories of *Lotharius*, ravaged all *Champagne* and the *Iſle of France*; and, having granted peace to the *French* on his own terms, evacuated the country, tho' not without ſuſtaining a conſiderable loſs by an inundation of the river *Aſne*, in conſequence of which a great part of his army was deſtroyed [a] (P).

---

[y] Annal. de l'Emp. t. i. p. 145.

[z] BARRE. ubi ſup.

Geoffroy count of *Anjou*, ſurnamed *Griſegonelle*, or *Grey Coat*, who commanded the *French* army on this occaſion, propoſed to decide the quarrel by ſingle combat with *Otho* [b]; but this expedient was rejected by the imperialiſts, who would not ſuffer their ſovereign to expoſe his life to ſuch unneceſſary hazard. Be this as it may, certain it is, he concluded a peace with the king of *France*, and beſtowed the whole of *Low Lorrain*, with part of the other, upon *Charles*, brother of *Lotharius*, who did him homage on his knees for that country [c].

He marches into Italy, *and hazards a battle.*

A.D. 979.

Having adjuſted the affairs of *Germany*, his next expedition was into *Italy*, in order to chaſtiſe the *Romans*, and recover *Calabria* and *Apulia*, of which the *Greeks* had taken poſſeſſion, by the aſſiſtance of the *Saracens*, contrary to the treaty made by the two emperor's, by which theſe two provinces were given to *Otho* as the dowry of *Theophania* his wife. Immediately after the death of *Otho* I. the *Romans* reſolved to free themſelves from the *German* yoke, while his ſucceſſor was involved in domeſtic troubles. They raiſed one *Cencius* to the conſulate [d], elected a new pope called *Boniface* VII. who had gone to *Conſtantinople* to invite the *Greek* emperors *Baſilius* and *Conſtantine* to come and take poſſeſſion of *Rome*; and their fleet, being joined by the *Arabians* of *Africa*, had invaded and ſubdued the coaſt of *Naples* and *Calabria*.

Otho, in conſequence of theſe ravages, marched into *Italy*, entered *Rome* without oppoſition, and from thence going in queſt of the enemy, hazarded a battle, in which his enemies were at firſt put in diſorder; but the *Roman* troops and thoſe of *Beneventum* giving ground, and the *Saracens* rallying, his army was ſo totally defeated, that, being diveſted of all hope, he fled to the ſea-ſide, and finding a veſſel, embarked, and committed himſelf to the mercy of the waves. The ſhip being taken by corſairs, who did not know his quality, he was carried into *Sicily*, where he ranſomed himſelf for a large ſum of money, having deceived his captors by the facility with which he ſpoke the *Greek* language (Q).

---

[a] Barre. t. iii. p. 459.

[b] Annal. de l'Emp. t. i. p. 146.

[c] Chronogr. Sax. ad ann. 979.

[d] Baron. Onuph.

(P) Some authors affirm, that *Otho* was defeated by the *French*, who purſued his army for three days and three nights as far as the river *Meuſe*, and that *Lotharius* afterwards made peace with him againſt the inclination of his nobles (6). Others allege the emperor retired without loſs, and paſſed the river in a miraculous manner, following St. *Wolfgang*, who divided the waters, ſo that they marched over on dry ground (7).

(6) *Guil. de Nang. ad ann.* 978. *Leon d'Oſtie. p.* 2. *l.* iii. *p.* 158.

(7) *Brun. Annal. Boior.*

A. D. 980.

IT was not long before he levied new forces, and renewed the war; during which the *Saracens* in *Italy* were totally exterminated. Then he not only chaſtized the cowards who had abandoned him in the firſt engagement, but, having diſcovered that the inhabitants of *Beneventum* had favoured his enemies, and even furniſhed them with proviſions, he allowed his army to plunder the town for three whole days, and then ordered it to be ſet on fire. Nor did the *Romans*, who had likewiſe deſerted him, eſcape with impunity. Having invited the principal perſons of that city to an entertainment, he, in the midſt of their feſtivity, commanded the authors of his overthrow to be ſelected, and put to death in the preſence of the whole company[e]; a puniſhment, which, tho' perhaps juſt in the main, was inflicted in a manner unworthy of a Chriſtian prince, or a ſound politician. This, in all probability, was the origin of the epithet *Sanguinary*; tho' he was likewiſe diſtinguiſhed by the appellations of *Rufus* and *Terror Sarazinorum*.

Orders the Saxons *and* Thuringians *to make head againſt the*

BEING informed that the *Sclavonians*, taking advantage of his abſence, had invaded *Saxony*, and ravaged the biſhoprics of *Brandenburg*, *Havelberg*, and *Merſburg*, he ordered the *Saxons* and *Thuringians* to make head againſt them; and they, in obedience to his command, charged the enemy with ſuch valour and ſucceſs, in different encounters, that they

---

[e] BARRE. t. iii. p. 462.

(Q) *Gobelinus Perſona* alleges, that it was a *Grecian* ſhip in which *Otho* embarked; and that the maſter being prevailed upon, by the promiſe of a great reward, to carry him to the city of *Roſſario*, where the empreſs then was, he took the opportunity, while the ſhip was at anchor in the road, and the maſter heſitating, to throw himſelf into the ſea, and ſwim aſhore, where he was received by his wife and adherents (8).

(8) *Gob. Perſ. Coſmod. æt.* vi. *cap.* xlix.

were

ere obliged to retreat with the loſs of thirty-ſeven thouſand nen (R).

Sclavonians.

Soon after this invaſion, he died at *Rome* of a bloody flux [f], ccaſioned by a wound which he had received from a poiſond javelin, in the battle with the *Greeks*; and his death is ſaid to have been haſtened by his grief for the behaviour of the empreſs *Theophania*, who had in public expreſſed her joy at the victory of her countrymen, tho' it was obtained over her own huſband (S).

A. D. 983.

Dies at Rome.

OTHO III.

OTHO III. when he ſucceeded to his father, was no more than twelve years of age (T), for which reaſon he was ſurnamed *the Infant*; but that appellation being ſoon laid aſide, he acquired the epithet of *Rufus*, and at length was dignified with the title of *Wonder of the World.* His election produced great diſputes among the *Italians* and *German* princes, who had accompanied his father to *Rome*; ſome of whom openly declared in favour of *Henry* duke of *Bavaria*, and nephew to *Otho* the firſt. This prince, who aſpired to the empire, claimed the tutelage of young *Otho*, as his neareſt relation, and the government of the empire during his minority; on this pretence he aſſembled a body of troops, with which he entered *Cologne*; and, ſeizing the perſon of the emperor, who was in that city, under the care of archbiſhop *Warin*, conducted him, with a numerous train, to *Corbie*, and from thence to *Magdeburg*, where they were received amidſt the acclamations of the people [g]. The *Italians*, who wanted to ſhake off the *German* yoke, and have an emperor of their own country, ſet up a *Roman* nobleman called *Creſcentius*, who was at that time conſul, and governor of the city. But the greateſt part of the *German* princes eſpouſing the cauſe of *Otho*, who, tho' young, had already given marks of a fine genius, delivered him from the hand of *Henry*, and conveyed him to *Weiſſemſtadt*, where he was proclaimed with the

Otho III. *ſucceeds to his father, but is oppoſed by* Henry *duke of* Bavaria;

and by Creſcentius *in* Italy.

---

[f] Annal. Sax. l. iv.

[g] Barre. t. iii. p. 474.

(R) About this time *Hamburg* and *Bremen* were erected into an archbiſhop's ſee (9).

(S) *Otho* made a law, forbidding his ſubjects to believe an *Italian* upon his oath; and decreed, that, when a cauſe could not be determined by evidence, it ſhould be decided by ſingle combat (10).

(T) According to *Gobelinus Perſona*, he was but two years of age when his father died; but I have, with *Heiſs*, followed the authority of *Ditmar*, *Baronius*, and other hiſtorians.

(9) *Annal. de l'Emp. t.* ii. *p.* 147.

(10) *Mod. Hiſt. part* iii. *p.* 2. *c.* 5.

uſual ſolemnity[h]; his title being acknowleged through *Germany*, *Lombardy*, and all the other dominions of the empire, except the city of *Rome*, which had ſwerved from its duties in favour of the conſul *Creſcentius*. As for his education, it was committed to the care of the archbiſhop of *Mentz* and the biſhop of *Hildeſheim*. A. D. 984.

He vanquiſhes the Sclavonians *and* Danes. 987.

DURING the firſt years of his reign, *Lotharius*, king of *France*, invaded *High Lorrain*, and made himſelf maſter of *Verdun*[i], which however was, after his death, reſtored to *Germany*. The *Sclavonians* too, aſſiſted by the *Danes*, followed the example of the *Romans*, and revolted; but *Otho* had ſcarce attained the age of fourteen, when he began to exerciſe his courage and capacity againſt theſe rebels, whom he vanquiſhed in divers expeditions, and at length wholly ſubdued.

Conteſt in France *between* Charles *duke of* Lorrain *and* Hugh Capet.

LEWIS V. of *France* dying about this period, the conteſt began between *Charles* duke of *Lorrain*, uncle to the defunct, and *Hugh Capet*, a nobleman of great talents and influence, who found means to render his competior odious to his countrymen, to obtain a neutrality of the emperor, and, laſtly, to aſcend the throne of *France*, after having taken priſoner the unhappy *Charles*, who did not long ſurvive his misfortune[k].

OTHO, having now attained the years of diſcretion, viſited the towns upon the *Rhine*, confirmed the privileges of the biſhops and abbots, diſplayed his liberality among the monaſteries; from thence made a progreſs into the northern provinces, and tarried ſome time at *Wildeſhuſen*, where he made ſeveral regulations for the eſtabliſhment of good order and the reformation of the people, who were ſtill in a ſtate of ſavage ignorance and barbarity[l]. 988.

War with the Danes.

THE *Danes*, under their king *Sueno*, pillaged *Lower Saxony* without oppoſition, divided their fleet into two ſquadrons, one of which entered the *Weſer*, with a view to ſend out detachments, and lay the country under contribution; while the other, anchoring before *Staden*, took the city after a faint reſiſtance, and then defeated the emperor's lieutenant, count *Thierri*, who had aſſembled the militia in order to ſtop their career: but *Sigefroi*, who had commanded in *Staden*, and made ſhift to eſcape, rallied and reinforced the imperial troops, and attacking the enemy, who by this time were thinned by diſtempers, and incumbered in their booty, compelled them to retire on board their ſhips with the utmoſt precipitation. The other detachment met with a worſe 989.

---

[h] Annal. de l'Emp. t. i. p. 151.
[i] SPICIL. t. xii. p. 265.
[k] NANG. ad ann. 990.
[l] KRANTZ. l. xiv. Sax. Chron. 23.

fate; for, being bewildered in their excurſions, they forced one *Hurbert* to be their guide, and he, having led them into the midſt of a number of moraſſes, gave notice to the *Saxons*, who fell upon them with great fury, and retook the booty they had gained; ſo that *Sueno* returned to his own country with great diſcomfiture and diſgrace [m].

Treaty with Sweden. IMMEDIATELY after this expedition, war broke out between him and *Eric*, king of *Sweden*, who fitted out a powerful navy; and, giving battle to the *Daniſh* fleet, obtained a complete victory, in conſequence of which he united *Denmark* to his dominions. *Otho*, unwilling to be at variance with ſuch a powerful neighbour, made him tenders of friendſhip, which were immediately embraced, and they engaged in a treaty, by which it was ſtipulated that *German* miſſionaries ſhould be allowed to preach the goſpel in the dominions of *Eric*, and that none of the ſubjects of *Sweden*, *Denmark*, or *Norway*, ſhould, for the future, make incurſions into the territories of the empire [n].

A.D. 990. WHILE the emperor was employed in theſe tranſactions, *Creſcentius* neglected nothing to eſtabliſh his power in *Rome*, where he even impriſoned pope *John* XIV. becauſe he favoured *Otho*'s party; who, dying in confinement, was ſucceeded by *John* XV. This new pope was ſo perſecuted by the ſame tyrant, that he fled into *Tuſcany*, from whence he ſent legates to implore the emperor's protection. The *Romans*, remembering what they had ſuffered under the two former *Othos* for their cruelty to their popes, were ſo terrified at this appeal, that they immediately deputed ſome citizens of the firſt rank to wait upon *John*, and intreat him to return, with the moſt ſolemn aſſurances that they would, for the future, behave to him with all due reverence and reſpect. Tho' *John*, confiding in theſe proteſtations, returned to *Rome*, where he was honourably received, the emperor, who knew the caballing genius of the *Romans*, ſent the empreſs *Theophania*, his mother, into *Italy*, with a body of troops commanded by *Hugh* marquis of *Brandenburg*; and ſhe, being a woman of ſpirit and diſcernment, reſtrained the *Romans* and the reſt of the *Italians* within the bounds of their duty, for the ſpace of two years; at the expiration of which ſhe ſet out for *Germany*, leaving the marquis, whom ſhe had created governor of *Florence*, to obſerve the motions of that unſteady people. In her journey to *Frankfort* ſhe was taken ill, and died at *Nimeguen*; and, her body being tranſported to *Co-*

The empreſs Theophania *goes to* Italy.

---

[m] Annal. Paderb. ad ann. 989.

[n] Chron. Magdeburg.

logne, was interred with great funeral pomp, at which assisted in person.

A.D. 993. *War with the* Slaves.

AFTER this ceremony, he marched against the *Sl* who had revolted, and taken the city of *Brandenburg*; having expelled them from that place, obliged them t for peace, which he granted upon reasonable terms; b was not long before they were spirited up to another r by one *Chiezo*, an outlaw, under whose conduct they prised *Brandenburg*, and made themselves masters of se other places; which, however, were privately betraye the emperor by *Chiezo*, on condition that he should be doned, and restored to the possession of his effects. *Sclaves*, incensed at his perfidy, continued the war wit rious success, until, after having suffered divers repulses, again humbled themselves before the emperor, who gra them peace, in consideration of releasing all their pris without ransom, and surrendering the places which the possessed on the frontiers of the march of *Brandenburg* [o].

Diet of Magdeburg. 995.

OTHO, having thus triumphed over the *Slaves*, rep to *Halberstadt*, to assist at the dedication of a new ch built by bishop *Hildebrand*; from thence he made a ci thro' the different provinces of the empire, where he en new laws, and made regulations for the preservation o der and the public peace; which being established b care and discretion, he assembled a diet at *Magdeburg*, i der to demand supplies of troops and money for his ex tion into *Italy*, where his presence was necessary to p *Crescentius* for a fresh revolt, and quell the seditions w had risen in the cities of *Milan*, *Capua*, and *Beneven* These demands were backed by the remonstrances o nuncios, whom pope *John* sent thither to invite him to with a powerful army, in order to punish the rebels, the troubles of *Italy*, and receive the imperial crown; his departure was, moreover, earnestly sollicited by *dulphus*, archbishop of *Milan*, who had been expelled his diocese, and come to *Magdeburg* to implore the empe protection.

Otho *enters* Milan;

OTHO, having raised a considerable army in consequ of the supplies he received from the diet, began his marc *Italy*, and invested *Milan*; which being surrendered few days, he entered the city in triumph, and re-establ the archbishop, by whom he was crowned king of *bardy*. Thence he proceeded to *Pavia*, where he celeb the festival of *Easter*, and afterwards repaired to *Rave* where, hearing of the pope's death, he cauſed *Bruno*, a relation of his own, to be elevated to the papal chair; and this *Saxon* prelate, who aſſumed the name of *Gregory* V. ſoon after his elevation crowned his patron emperor of the *Romans*, with the ſame ſolemnity and pomp which had attended the coronation of his father and grand-father [p]. *and is crowned at* Rome *with great ſolemnity.*

---

[o] DITMAR. l. iv.

A.D. 996. THIS ceremony being performed, the conſul *Creſcentius* pardoned by the interceſſion of the new pope, and the troubles appeaſed at *Capua* and *Beneventum*, *Otho* ſet out on his return to *Germany*; and, viſiting in his route the principal places of *Lombardy*, ſtaid ſome time at *Modena*, where he did a very ſignal piece of juſtice upon the perſon of his empreſs *Mary*, daughter of the king of *Arragon*. That princeſs, incenſed at the repulſe ſhe had met from an *Italian* count, of whom ſhe was enamoured, accuſed him to the emperor of having made an attempt upon her honour; in conſequenne of which charge, he was tried, condemned, and beheaded: but, a few days after his execution, the counteſs found means to prove his innocence, and undeceive the emperor; who, being extremely ſhocked at the diſcovery of the truth, ordered the empreſs to be burned alive, and fined himſelf, for his over haſty judgment againſt the count, in a large ſum for the benefit of the widow [q] (U). *He does a very ſignal piece of juſtice at* Modena.

997. THE emperor, at his return to *Germany*, found the *Slaves* in poſſeſſion of *Bernbourg*; from whence having expelled them with great ſlaughter, he repaired to *Magdeburg*, and deprived the archbiſhop *Giſelarius* of the government of that country, becauſe he allowed himſelf to be ſurpriſed by the barbarians [r]. This expedition was ſcarce finiſhed when he underſtood that *Creſcentius*, having been again elected conſul in *Rome*, had expelled pope *Gregory*, and elevated another to the papal chair under the name of *John* XVI. (X). Enraged

---

[p] Chron. Hildeſh. t. iii. [q] BARRE. Hiſt. d'Allemag. t. iii. p. 506. [r] Annal. de l'Emp. t. i. p. 155.

(U) Several authors, in giving a detail of this tranſaction, introduce a miracle in favour of the deceaſed count; who, they ſay, laid injunctions on his wife to go and manifeſt his innocence to the emperor, by handling a red hot plate of iron in his preſence. She accordingly underwent this ordeal to the aſtoniſhment and conviction of *Otho*; and it was great pity ſhe had not tried the experiment before the death of her huſband. This ſtory is ſuppoſed to be fabulous (11).

(X) He was biſhop of *Placentia* (12).

(11) *Annal. de l'Emp. t. i. p.* 155. (12) *Titmar.*

Beſieges Rome, *and puts to death* John XVI. *and* Creſcentius.

A. D. 998.

at this inſult, the emperor returned with a powerful army to *Rome*; which having beſieged and taken, he ordered the antipope to be thrown from the top of the caſtle of *St. Angelo*, after his eyes had been put out, and his noſe cut off. *Creſcentius*, being alſo apprehended, was mounted upon a ſorry mule, and conducted through the city with his face towards the tail. Then being put to the torture, together with twelve of his accomplices, they were all hanged in a cluſter upon the higheſt tree that could be found, as an example to the reſt, who had ſupported or connived at their rebellion [s] (Y). The two uſurpers being puniſhed in this manner, and *Gregory* reſtored, the emperor, to prevent ſuch ſeditions and revolts for the future, publiſhed a decree, importing, that the *Germans* ſhould have the ſole right and

999. power of electing a *Roman* emperor among their own countrymen, excluſive of all other nations; and that the pope ſhould have no other authority on ſuch occaſions, than that of proclaiming the election at *Rome*, and of performing the ceremony of coronation, when the emperor ſhould think proper to go thither. This decree was ratified and confirmed by *Gregory*; and ſeveral hiſtorians affirm, that *Otho* and this pope, in order to ſecure the empire to the *German* nation, afterwards reduced the electors to the number of ſeven [t].

Then he returned to *Pavia*, where he made ſeveral conſtitutions and regulations for reſtoring and eſtabliſhing the peace of *Italy*. The new pope dying in the ſecond year of his papacy, he ſupplied his place with *Gerbert*, formerly archbiſhop of *Rheims*, who took the appellation of *Sylveſter* II. and prevailed upon *Otho* to renew and confirm the privileges which had been beſtowed upon the *Roman* church by *Pepin*, *Charlemagne*, and *Lewis the Debonnaire*.

Having ſettled the affairs of *Italy*, he ſet out for *Germany* by the way of *Bologna*, halted at *Ratiſbon*, entered *Thurin*-

---

[s] Heiss Hiſt. de l'Emp. t. i. p. 190.

[t] Barr. ut ſup.

(Y) The manner of this conſul's death is variouſly related. Some authors allege he was killed by treachery; and others affirm he fell valiantly fighting in defence of the caſtle, after having ſued in vain for the emperor's forgiveneſs: we are likewiſe told, that *Otho* took his widow for his miſtreſs, and afterwards did penance for his cruelty to the antipope (13).

(13) *Annal. de l'Emp. t.* i. *p.* 156. *Bar. t.* iii. *p.* 510. *Glab. l.* I.

gia, and viſited ſome towns in *Upper Saxony*; from thence he proceeded to *Poland*, which he erected into a kingdom at the ſollicitation of duke *Boleſlaus*, who did him homage, and agreed to hold his dominions as a fief of the empire [u] (Z).

Poland *erected into a kingdom.* 1000.

SOON after this excurſion, being informed that the *Saracens* had taken the advantage of his abſence to make an irruption into the *Campania* of *Rome*, ſurprize *Capua*, and ravage the neighbouring country, he haſtened into *Italy*, aſſembled his army at *Ravenna*, retook the city of *Capua*, expelled the barbarians, re-eſtabliſhed peace, and repaired to *Rome* with a ſmall number of troops. While he reſided in the capital, the *Tiburtines*, whom he had formerly chaſtiſed for ſedition, revolted again; ſo that he was obliged to go and beſiege the place, which ſurrendered at diſcretion. At his return, he found the gates of *Rome* ſhut againſt him; and altho' he was next day admitted, with a few noblemen and officers, a conſpiracy, formed by *Gregorio*, of the houſe of *Toſcanella*, had well nigh deprived him of his life: the *Roman* people openly rebelled againſt his authority, and it was with great difficulty he made his eſcape by the aſſiſtance of the marquis of *Tuſcany*, who had in vain attempted to effect an accommodation [x]. While he was buſied in aſſembling forces to revenge this indignity, he was poiſoned by a pair of gloves, ſent him in a preſent by the widow of *Creſcentius*, whom he is ſaid to have debauched under promiſe of marriage [y].

Marches into Italy.

A. D. 1001.

Is poiſoned by a pair of gloves; 1002.

THE empire loſt a great prince by the death of *Otho*, who was equally brave, reſolute, and juſt; and, after the example of his father and grand-father, remarkably liberal to the church: inſomuch that two thirds of the eccleſiaſtical benefices in *Germany* are ſaid to have been granted by theſe three emperors. He died at *Paterno*, in the 30th year of his age, after a glorious reign of 18 years; his body was carried

and dies at Paterno.

---

[u] BARON. ann. t. v. p. 962.

[x] DITMAR, l. iv. p. 44.

[y] Hiſt. de l'Egliſe, par BENED. Prelat.

(Z) *Otho* is ſaid to have opened the tomb of *Charlemagne* at *Aix la Chapelle*, where he found the body of that emperor ſeated on a throne of gold, in his imperial robes, with a golden ſceptre in his hand, and a crown, adorned with rich jewels, upon his head (14).

Had *Charlemagne* been interred in this manner, the *Normans*, who deſtroyed *Aix la Chapelle* before this period, would hardly have left him ſitting upon a throne of gold.

(14) *Ditmar*, *l.* iv. *p.* 44.

to *Aix la Chapelle*, at his own requeſt, and his bowels interred at *Augſburg* [z].

HENRY II.

A. D. 1002.

OTHO being dead without iſſue, three competitors ſtarted up; ſuppoſed equally qualified to wear the imperial crown; *Henry* duke of *Bavaria*, *Herman* duke of *Suabia* and *Alſace*, and *Ekkard* marquis of *Saxony*. The firſt of theſe, being grandſon to *Otho* II, by his daughter, was, by means of his ſuperior power, elected, confirmed, and conſecrated, at *Mentz*, by the archbiſhop *Wilgiſius*, under the name of *Henry* II. and he is ſaid to have been the firſt who was raiſed to that dignity by the votes of the ſeven electors; but this ſucceſs he did not attain, until his competitor *Ekkard* was aſſaſſinated by the counts *de Northien*, who were *Henry*'s partiſans [a].

Henry *duke of* Bavaria *is elected.*

Herman *declared an enemy of the empire.*

HE began his reign, by cauſing *Herman* duke of *Suabia* to be declared an enemy to the empire, in an aſſembly at *Mentz*; and, in conſequence of that declaration, he ravaged his dominions with the forces of *Germany* raiſed for that purpoſe: while his rival, reſolving to ſupport his pretenſions by force of arms, and being furniſhed with troops by the biſhops of *Conſtance* and *Coire*, advanced into *Alſace*, and took by aſſault the city of *Straſburg*; which, tho' part of his own dominions, had declared againſt his intereſt. He likewiſe propoſed to decide the conteſt by ſingle combat with *Henry*, who accepted the challenge; but his courage failed him, and he was in a little time obliged to yield to the ſuperior fortune of his adverſary [b].

1003.

THE new emperor, having laid *Suabia* under contribution, marched into *Saxony*; and at *Merſburg* received the oath of fidelity from duke *Bernard*, the archbiſhops of *Magdeburg* and *Bremen*, the counts palatine, *Boleſlaus*, king of *Poland*, and the deputies of the *Slaves*, who inhabited *Pomerania*.

BEING thus acknowleged through all the dominions and fiefs of the empire, he, in compliance with the repeated requeſt of his nobles, married *Cunegunda*, daughter of the firſt count of *Luxembourg*, and their nuptials were celebrated at *Paderborn* with great magnificence. Then he made a circuit among the provinces, where he exerciſed the virtues of equity and benevolence, deciding vexatious proceſſes, reſtoring the peace of families, and re-eſtabliſhing union among the nobility, which were divided by feud or faction. After having taken theſe wiſe ſteps for the advantage of his country, he repaired to *Aix la Chapelle*, where he was crowned a ſecond time for the ſatisfaction of ſeveral noblemen, and, in particular, of *Herbert* archbiſhop of *Cologne*, who alleged, that the firſt coronation had not been performed with due formality.

---

[z] GOB. PERS. Coſmod. æt. vi. c. 51. Chron. Magdeb. ex Meib. p. 280. HEN. BOD. p. 487. DITMAR Chron.

[a] Annal. Sax. p. 382.

[b] Vita Henrici auct. ADELB.

Henry *is crowned again at* Aix la Chapelle.

Herman *ſubmits.*

MEAN while *Herman*, tho' he made ſhift to ſurprize *Briſac*, and gained ſome other petty advantages, found great difficulty in keeping his partiſans together; at length, deſpairing of being able to cope with the power and authority of *Henry*, he made him a tender of his ſubmiſſion, by the canal of his friends. This being accepted, he came in perſon to *Bruchſal*, and on his knees aſked pardon of the emperor, who received him courteouſly, and granted him every thing he deſired, on condition that he ſhould repair the damage he had done to *Straſburg*[c].

NOTWITHSTANDING this accommodation, he renewed his intrigues, in conjunction with *Theodoric* duke of *Lorrain*, and publicly committed cruel outrages againſt ſome of the emperor's adherents in that duchy; ſo that *Henry*, in order to put a ſtop to theſe diſorders, aſſembled a diet of the *Lorrain* noblemen at *Thionville*; where it was reſolved to raze the caſtle of *Mulſberg* on the *Rhine*, and other precautions were taken to interrupt the junction and correſpondence of two ſuch powerful oppoſers.

Commotions in Italy.

IN the midſt of theſe deliberations, the emperor was informed of the commotions by which *Italy* was agitated. The people of *Lombardy*, determined to ſhake off the *German* yoke, had choſen *Hardouin* marquis of *Ivrea* king of *Italy*; but this election was declared null and void by *Arnold* archbiſhop of *Milan*, who intended that no king of *Lombardy* ſhould be choſen without his conſent; and, in an aſſembly of biſhops and abbots, decreed the crown to *Henry*, to whom he inſtantly ſent deputies with an account of the tranſaction, conjuring him to come without delay, and deliver the *Italians* from the tyranny of the uſurper. In conſequence of theſe ſollicitations, *Henry* ſent a body of troops, under the command of *Otho* duke of *Carinthia*; but *Hardouin*, having ſecured the paſſes of the *Alps*, attacked them with 15,000 men, in a confined place, where they could not be extended or drawn up in line of battle; and, after a very obſtinate engagement, obtained a complete victory[d].

---

[c] GUILLIM. de Epiſ. Argent. p. 50.

Conqueſts of the king of Poland.
A. D. 1004.

THE emperor, tho' very much mortified at this misfortune, could not quit *Germany*, where he was detained by freſh diſturbances. *Boleſlaus* duke of *Bohemia* being a weak and worthleſs prince, the king of *Poland* reſolved to ſeize this favourable conjuncture of retrieving *Cracovia*, of which his dominions had been diſmembred by the father of *Boleſlaus*. With this view he beſieged and took the town by aſſault; then pillaged *Sileſia*, and penetrated to the heart of *Moravia*, deſtroying the whole country with fire and ſword. He afterwards invaded *Luſatia*, and made himſelf maſter of *Meiſſen*; while *Boleſlaus*, inſtead of taking meaſures to oppoſe his progreſs, wallowed in riot and debauchery, and committed ſuch acts of oppreſſion, that his ſubjects revolted. They choſe in his room *Wlodowic*, a prince of the ducal houſe of *Bohemia*, who actually received the inveſtiture of the duchy from the emperor; but he dying ſoon after his election, the *Bohemians* ſupplied his place with *Jaromir*, brother of *Boleſlaus*, without the conſent or approbation of the *Poliſh* king, who was ſo much incenſed at their preſumption, that he re-eſtabliſhed the baniſhed duke by force of arms. This worthleſs prince, being now again in quiet poſſeſſion of his dominions, invited his principal noblemen to a banquet, where they were cruelly murdered: his ſubjects, exaſperated at this act of barbarity, complained to the king of *Poland*; who, on pretence of adjuſting the difference between him and his people, propoſed a conference, in the midſt of which all the duke's attendants were aſſaſſinated, his own eyes were put out, and he was ſent priſoner to the frontiers of *Poland*, while the king repaired to *Prague*, where he was joyfully received by the *Bohemians*, as their deliverer and protector.

An aſſociation againſt Henry.

ALTHO' *Henry* was not a little chagrined at theſe revolutions, he did not pretend to treat the king of *Poland* as an uſurper; but demanded that he would do him homage for *Bohemia*, and the other conqueſts he had made of the fiefs of the empire. To this demand he ſent no definitive anſwer. The emperor being informed that he had entered into a ſecret aſſociation againſt him, with *Hezelo de Schweinfurt* marquis of *Franconia*, *Erneſt* duke of *Suabia*, and *Henry*'s own brother, *Bruno* biſhop of *Augſburg*, he convoked a diet at *Merſbourg*, and in conſequence of the deliberations of that aſſembly, raiſed an army of *Bavarians*, *Lorrainers*, and *Franks*, with which he entered *Franconia*, took the town of *Mariclau*, and other ſtrong places, which were diſmantled, compelled *Hezelo* to fly for protection to the *Poliſh* king, and ordered *Erneſt*, who was taken priſoner in the courſe of the campaign, to be beheaded [e].

---

[d] SIGON. de Reg. Ital.

The Slaves *revolt.*

THESE diſturbances being quelled, *Henry* ordered the *Saxon* and *Thuringian* troops to march againſt the *Slaves* of *Holſtein*, who had revolted at the inſtigation of the king of *Poland*, pillaged the country between the *Oder* and the *Elbe*, and threatened *Saxony* with fire and ſword; while their allies, the *Poliſh* troops, made frequent irruptions into *Bavaria*. The emperor having repelled theſe barbarians, ravaged *Holſtein*, ſecured the frontiers with proper garriſons, and at his return to *Merſbourg* was reconciled to his brother *Bruno*; at the ſame he pardoned *Hezelo*, at the interceſſion of the archbiſhop of *Mentz* and the duke of *Saxony*: but, in order to prevent the bad conſequences of ſuch a turbulent genius, he ordered him to be confined in the citadel of *Givinkenſteim*, under the care of the archbiſhop of *Magdeburg* [f].

IN the courſe of this year, *Stephen*, duke of *Hungary*, who had married the emperor's ſiſter *Giſella*, and converted a great part of his ſubjects to the Chriſtian religion, received from pope *John* XIX. the title of king and apoſtle; and his dominions were divided into ten biſhoprics, of which *Strigonia* was appointed metropolitan, though, as yet, the idolaters of that country were much more numerous than the Chriſtians.

A. D. 1005.
Henry *paſſes the* Alps, *and is crowned at* Pavia.

HENRY being ſtrongly ſollicited by the archbiſhop of *Milan* to march againſt *Hardouin*, ſet out for *Italy* by the way of *Bavaria*, where he had the ſatisfaction of ſeeing *Henry* of *Luxemburg*, his brother-in-law, elected duke by the ſtates or parliament of that province: then leaving his wife *Cunegunda* to the care of the archbiſhop of *Magdeburg*, he paſſed the *Alps*, and marched towards *Verona*. *Hardouin* retired at his approach, while he proceeding to *Pavia*, was there crowned king of *Lombardy* by the archbiſhop of *Milan*; but *Hardouin* having ſome partizans in the town, they inflamed the populace to ſuch a degree, with artful inſinuations, that the whole city was involved in tumult. One multitude ran to the palace, in order to deſtroy the emperor, whom they loudly reviled as a tyrant and uſurper; while another croud ſecured the gates againſt the imperial troops, which were encamped without the walls. The *Germans*, who were within the city, aſſembled for the defence of their ſovereign, repulſed the ſeditious *Pavians* from the palace, while the ſoldiers in the camp, underſtanding the nature of the commotion, ſcaled the walls in great numbers, and committed a terrible ſlaughter in the ſtreets, until the emperor commanded them to deſiſt, and retired to the fortreſs of *St. Peter*. Thither the principal inhabitants repaired in a body, to implore his clemency, and lay the blame of the ſedition on a few partizans of *Hardouin*, who had practiſed upon the ignorance of the vulgar: and he generouſly accepted of their apology, obſerving that mercy was his favourite virtue, and that he would much rather find their obedience the reſult of affection, than the conſequence of fear [g].

---

[e] BARRE, tom. iii. p. 546.

[f] Annal. Saxo. p. 639.

He returns to Germany;

eſtabliſhes Jaromir *in* Prague;

purſues the Poles *into their own country.*

HAVING quelled the commotion, and received the ſubmiſſion of the other towns of *Lombardy* by their deputies, he repaired to *Milan*, where he found the inhabitants quiet, and in appearance devoted to his ſervice; and from thence he returned to *Germany*, by the country of the *Griſons*, puniſhing delinquents, and enacting ſalutary laws and regulations in the countries through which he paſſed. In his progreſs through the provinces, he convened an aſſembly of biſhops and nobility at *Dortmund*, in *Weſtphalia*, for the reformation of abuſes both in church and ſtate; and acquired ſuch a character of generoſity, juſtice, and moderation, that people came from all the neighbouring nations to ſettle in the empire. As *Boleſlaus*, king of *Poland*, ſtill continued in poſſeſſion of *Bohemia*, and ſet *Henry* at defiance, the emperor having declared war againſt that prince, by the advice of an aſſembly convoked at *Merſbourg*, marched againſt the uſurper, whom he expelled from that duchy, and entered *Prague* in triumph, where he eſtabliſhed *Jaromir*, brother of their former duke *Boleſlaus*; and gave orders for releaſing *Hezelo*, marquis of *Franconia*, at the deſire of a miniſter, who ſollicited his liberty in a pathetic addreſs from the pulpit. Then he aſſembled his nobles at *Magdeburg*, where it was reſolved to proſecute the war, with the utmoſt vigour, againſt the king of *Poland*, who continued to make incurſions as far as the river *Sala* in *Miſnia*; and, in conſequence of that reſolution, he paſſed the *Elbe* with an army of *Saxons*. After a fatiguing march, he found the enemy encamped between the rivers *Tober* and *Oder*, and croſſing the firſt of theſe in the night, fell upon them with ſuch fury, that they were intirely defeated [h]. *Boleſlaus* being no longer able to keep the field, ſued for peace; which being granted, he returned

[g] BARRE, ubi ſupra.

[h] Annal. Boic. p. 375.

to *Saxony*, and ſeverely puniſhed ſome *Slaves*, who had interrupted the public peace in his abſence. A.D. 1006.

It was now that he put in execution the ſcheme he had formed of erecting *Bamberg* into a biſhopric; which was confirmed by the pope, on condition that the biſhop ſhould hold it of the holy ſee, and pay a yearly acknowlegement of an hundred ſilver marks, and an horſe completely capariſoned: but the biſhop of *Wurtſburg* oppoſing the erection, as an expedient that would diſmember his dioceſe, *Henry* aſſembled a council at *Frankfort* upon the *Main*; where he proſtrated himſelf before the biſhops and prelates, who, to the number of thirty-five, ſubſcribed the confirmation of his holineſs [i].

Council at Franckfort.

1007. *The* Poles *invade* Pruſſia.

Boleslaus, weary of the peace, endeavoured, by falſe inſinuations, to decoy *Stephen*, king of *Hungary*, into an alliance againſt the emperor; but that project miſcarrying, he fell upon the *Pruſſians*, or *Boruſſians*, a ſavage people, who migrating from the ſource of the *Tanais*, had ſettled in the deſarts between *Poland* and the *Baltic*, where they lived in the utmoſt barbarity, feeding on horſe fleſh, and worſhiping ſerpents: yet they muſt have poſſeſſed ſomething worth having, as the *Poles* found their account in plundering the country.

About this period, *Otho*, duke of the *Low Lorrain*, and laſt known deſcendent of *Charlemagne*, being dead, *Henry* beſtowed the duchy upon *Godfrey*, count of the *Ardennes*. This donation gave umbrage to *Albert*, count of *Namur*, and *Lambert*, brother of the count of *Mons*, who had married ſiſters of the late duke, and were now patronized by the king of *France*, who wanted to revive his pretenſions upon *Lorrain*. They were likewiſe ſupported by *Baldwin*, count of *Flanders*, who began hoſtilities in their favour, and took *Valenciennes*, and other places upon the *Scheld*, belonging to *Low Lorrain*. *Henry*, incenſed at theſe outrages, aſſembled an army, and marched into *Flanders*, where he made a fruitleſs attempt upon *Ghent*; but he ravaged the country, and carried off a number of the nobility; ſo that *Baldwin* was fain to ſubmit, and was pardoned on condition that he would reſtore *Valenciennes*, defray the expences of the war, 1008. and give hoſtages for his future fidelity [k].

Troubles of Low *and* High Lorrain.

At the ſame time *High Lorrain* was involved in trouble and confuſion, on account of the biſhopric of *Metz*, which was uſurped by *Theodoric*, brother of the empreſs *Cunegunda*;

---

[i] Concil. tom. ix. p. 784.

[k] Annal. Flandric. l. ii.

while another brother, called *Adalberon*, ambitious of obtaining the archbiſhopric of *Triers*, oppoſed *Megingaude*, who was nominated to that ſee by the emperor. But theſe uſurpers were furniſhed with troops by *Frederic*, count *de Luxemburg*, and chiefly ſupported by their own brother *Henry*, duke of *Bavaria*, who was for his rebellious behaviour put to the ban of the empire.

A.D. 1010. *Commotions in* Saxony.

While the emperor was employed in appeaſing the troubles of *Lorrain*, *Saxony* was violently agitated by new commotions, excited by a quarrel between *Herman*, ſon of *Ekkard*, count of *Thuringia*, and *Guncelin*, marquis of *Miſnia*, which laſt, in an aſſembly of the *Saxon* noblemen, being convicted of having begun the hoſtilities, and of having engaged in ſecret connexions with *Boleſlaus*, king of *Poland*, the declared enemy of the empire, *Henry* diveſted him of his dominions, which were given to his rival, and committed him as a priſoner to the care of *Arnold*, biſhop of *Halberſtadt*. His brother *Bruno* promiſed to deliver the town of *Meiſen* to *Boleſlaus*, who ſent his troops thither for that purpoſe; but they were repulſed by the garriſon, whom their commander could not corrupt, and next day *Herman* entered and took poſſeſſion [l].

1011. *The imperial troops ravage* Sileſia.

The emperor reſolving to chaſtiſe *Boleſlaus* for his clandeſtine practices, ſent an army againſt him, under the command of *Jaromir*, duke of *Bohemia*, who advanced into *Sileſia*, beſieged *Glogaw*, and ravaged the open country; while *Henry* fortified *Lebus*, on the frontiers of *Brandenburg* and *Poland*, by which means he was maſter of the *Oder*, and in a condition to hinder *Boleſlaus* from making irruptions into *Luſatia* and *Brandenburg*.

Then he aſſembled a diet at *Coblentz*, in order to do juſtice upon the rebellious biſhops of *Metz* and *Triers*, and their brother the duke of *Bavaria*, who ſome time after came in perſon to *Aix-la-Chapelle*, where they threw themſelves at his feet, implored his clemency, and were taken into favour [m].

Henry *wants to abdicate his throne.* 1012.

The emperor, fatigued with theſe inceſſant troubles, cloyed with ſucceſs, ſick of human grandeur, and charmed with the tranquillity of a monkiſh life, entertained thoughts of abdicating the empire, and becoming a canon of *Straſbourg*: but theſe ſentiments were combated by the princes of the empire, who repreſented the neceſſity of his continuing upon the throne for the common good of *Germany*, in ſuch eager remonſtrances, that he ſuffered himſelf to be perſuaded, and contented himſelf with founding a rich prebend, the poſſeſſor of which was called *King of the Choir*. By this time *Boleſlaus* had ſurprized and deſtroyed the town of *Lebus*, ſo that *Henry* was obliged to march againſt him; but the *Pole* leaving part of his troops with his ſon *Meceſlaus*, whom the emperor defeated, retired with the reſt to make himſelf maſter of *Bohemia*, from whence *Jaromir* had been expelled by his ſubjects, on account of his cruelty and oppreſſive reign. Accordingly the *Pole* pillaged the country, and beſieged *Prague*, which ſurrendered to his arms; while *Jaromir* fled for protection to *Henry*, by whoſe aſſiſtance *Othalric*, the ſon of *Jaromir*, was put in poſſeſſion of the duchy, at the deſire of the *Bohemians*, who deteſted the father, whom the emperor ſent into exile at *Utrecht*. As for *Boleſlaus*, having intereſted himſelf in a quarrel between the duke of *Ruſſia* and his ſon, he reſolved to ſupport the latter by force of arms; but being afraid of leaving his kingdom unfurniſhed, while at variance with the emperor, he ſollicited *Henry* for peace, which was granted, after he had done homage for his dominions [n].

---

[l] Chron. Sax. p. 416. [m] Chron. Sax. apud Leibnitz, ad. an. 1012.

Othalric *is created duke of* Bohemia.

Boleſlaus *ſues for peace*. A. D. 1013.

DURING theſe tranſactions the *Slaves* revolted, and ravaged the northern banks of the *Oder* with fire and ſword, under their prince *Meſtiwoi*, who had been affronted by *Theodoric*, marquis of *Eaſtern Saxony*; but *Henry* was obliged to leave the care of this war to the diet convened at *Gruningen*, becauſe his own preſence was become neceſſary in *Italy*, in order to repreſs the inſolence of *Hardouin*, who had reaſſumed the authority in his abſence, and reigned without controul. He therefore aſſembled an army, repaſſed the *Alps* of the *Tyrol*, defeated *Hardouin* on the frontiers of the *Veroneſe*, and proceeding to *Rome*, was crowned with his wife *Cunegunda* by pope *Benedict* VIII. who aſked him on the ſteps of St. *Peter's*, *If he would always preſerve his fidelity to him and his ſucceſſors*; and was anſwered in the affirmative [o].

Henry *is crowned at* Rome. 1014.

IMMEDIATELY after this ceremony he founded a biſhopric at *Bobio*, where St. *Columban* died, made ſome regulations at *Pavia*, and having appeaſed the troubles of *Lombardy*, he ſet out on his return to *Germany*. In paſſing thro' *Burgundy*, he viſited the abbey of *Clugni*, where he was received as an aſſociate, and afterwards deſired he might be

Returns to Germany.

---

[n] BARRE, tom. iii. p. 582.

[o] MURATOR. anecd. t. ii. p. 204.

entered as a monk in the abbey of St. *Vall* at *Verdun*; upon which occaſion the abbot received him as a brother, on condition he ſhould obey him in all things, and then very prudently commanded him to continue at the helm of the government.

A. D. 1015.

In obedience to this order, he determined to bear the toils of empire. He quelled ſome diſturbances in *Suabia*, and afterwards convoked a diet at *Merſburg*, where *Boleſlaus*, being accuſed of having violated the treaty, and favoured the revolt of *Hardouin*, was ſummoned to appear before the ſtates of the empire.

1017.

The king of Poland *violates the treaty and again ſues for peace.*

Inſtead of obeying this call, the king of *Poland* began to levy troops, and endeavoured to engage the duke of *Bohemia* in his intereſt; and the emperor paſſing the *Elbe* with an army, attacked and defeated the ſon of *Boleſlaus*. This war continued for ſome time with various ſucceſs; and, at length, was terminated by a treaty of peace, concluded at *Bautzen*, at the earneſt ſupplication of *Boleſlaus*, who obliged himſelf to pay an annual tribute to the emperor for *Poland* and *Moravia*.

1018.

Rodolphus III. *king of* Tranſjurane Burgundy, *implores the emperor's protection.*

After the ratification of this treaty, *Henry* repaired to *Baſil*, where he was viſited by *Rodolphus* III. king of *Tranſjurane Burgundy*, who being inſulted by his own ſubjects, on account of his effeminacy, came to implore the emperor's protection, and even ceded to him all his dominions. In conſequence of this deed, *Henry* made a progreſs through the kingdom which he had thus obtained; but the people were ſo exaſperated at the condeſcenſion of *Rodolphus*, that he was extremely ill received, and had the mortification to be refuſed admittance into ſeveral towns; ſo that being provoked at theſe inſults, he permitted his troops to ravage the country, and ſet the villages on fire. His vengeance was afterwards completed by *Werner*, biſhop of *Straſbourg*, who, with a body of imperial troops, advanced as far as *Geneva*, againſt the noblemen who had revolted, over whom he obtained a complete victory [p]. While the biſhop was thus employed, *Henry* marched into *Lower Saxony* againſt duke *Bernard*, who harraſſed that province with his tyranny and exactions; but finding himſelf unable to cope with the emperor, he ſubmitted to his power and correction, and gave ſureties for his future behaviour.

The empreſs Cunegunda

Having quieted *Saxony*, he repaired to *Frankfort* upon the *Main*, in the utmoſt tribulation for the calumnies which began to be circulated againſt the empreſs *Cunegunda*, who, conſcious of her innocence, is ſaid to have demanded the trial, and to have undergone the fiery ordeal unhurt [q] (A).

---

[p] Herman. Contract. ad ann. 1018.

paſſes the fiery ordeal.

ALTHOUGH the towns of *Lombardy* enjoyed the moſt perfect tranquillity under the emperor's lieutenants, *Sicily*, *Apulia*, and *Calabria*, were ſtill expoſed to the invaſions of the *Saracens*, who at length fell upon *Tuſcany*, took *Euna*, and expelled the biſhop; but by the diligence of the pope, who levied forces by land, and armed barks to cut off their retreat, they were defeated and cut in pieces, and their princeſs, who was taken priſoner, afterwards beheaded, for inſulting his holineſs. But the occaſional invaſions of thoſe pirates were not of ſuch conſequence to *Italy* as the troubles occaſioned by the domination of the *Greeks*, who ſtill poſſeſſed part of *Apulia* and *Calabria*, which were governed by an officer called *Catapan*, appointed by the emperors of *Conſtantinople*. The people, harraſſed by the exactions of this lieutenant, took to their arms, under the command of *Mello*, prince of *Bari*, with a view to expel the *Greeks*; who having received a ſtrong reinforcement from *Conſtantinople*, threatened the revolters with death and deſtruction. *Mello* finding himſelf incapable of oppoſing ſuch a formidable power, had recourſe to the aſſiſtance of the *Normans*, who now began to appear in this part of the world, and who ſerved him ſo effectually, that he defeated the *Greeks* in a pitched battle: but theſe being again reinforced, were victors in their turn; ſo that *Mello*, and even pope *Benedict*, fled to *Germany*, in order to implore the protection of the emperor, who then reſided at *Bamberg* [r].

Commotions in Italy.

A. D. 1019.

The pope repairs to Bamberg.

HENRY II. tho' extremely well diſpoſed to ſuccour *Italy*, was for ſome time detained, by certain feuds which had broke out between the princes of the empire: but, in the mean time, at the deſire of his holineſs, he, by a freſh edict, confirmed the laws which he had formerly enacted at *Pavia*, and convoked an aſſembly at *Aix la Chapelle*, to adjuſt the meaſures for the expedition (B).

---

[q] BARRE, tom. iii. p. 613.

[r] Annal. de l'Empire, t. ii. p. 169.

(A) This year is remarkable for the death of *Ditmar*, biſhop of *Merſbourg*, the famous hiſtorian, who was a *Saxon* nobleman of the firſt rank (1).

(B) Theſe laws enacted or confirmed, plainly prove that *Henry* was at this period ſovereign of *Rome* and *Italy*, and that the pope poſſeſſed nothing but by grant from the emperor. The ſovereignty which the biſhops of *Rome* afterwards acquired, was owing to the diviſions of the empire, of which they took the advantage, to eſtabliſh their own authority.

(1) *Vit. Ditmar. per Reineccium, p.* 120.

Henry *marches into* Italy.

A. D 1021.

He reduces Apulia *and* Calabria, *and returns to* Germany 1023.

All the troubles of *Germany* being appeaſed, and the neceſſary preparations made for the occaſion, he ſet out for *Italy*, marching along the coaſt of the *Adriatic*; and ſent a detachment of 11,000 men, under the command of *Poppo*, archbiſhop of *Triers*, who penetrated into the country of the *Marſes*, now called *Abruzzo*; while *Pelegrin* of *Cologne* marched directly to *Rome*, to ſecure the perſons of *Pandolphus*, prince of *Capua*, and *Athenulphus*, abbot of *Monte Caſſino*, who had joined the *Greeks* in the pope's abſence. The abbot hearing of their approach, embarked at *Otranto* for *Conſtantinople*, and periſhed by ſhipwreck; and *Pandolphus* ſurrendering himſelf, was brought to the emperor's camp, tried, condemned, and pardoned, at the interceſſion of *Pelegrin*. *Henry* was then employed in beſieging the town of *Troy* in *Apulia*, which ſurrendered at diſcretion, after having been reduced to extremity; he afterwards reconquered all the places which the *Greeks* had taken in his abſence, ſubdued the provinces of *Calabria* and *Apulia*, which were obliged to give hoſtages for their fidelity, beſtowed the principality of *Capua* on the count *de Feana*, furniſhed the nephews of *Mello* with troops, to drive the *Greeks* from *Bari*; gratified his own followers with conſiderable rewards; appointed a new abbot of *Monte Caſſino*, and his army being conſiderably diminiſhed by ſickneſs, returned to *Germany*, leaving *Italy* to the enjoyment of that peace which he had eſtabliſhed *.

Has an interview with Robert, *king of* France.

Although *Henry*'s reign had been generally proſperous, the inceſſant troubles of *Germany* had kept him in ſuch continual agitation, that, till this period, he never could enjoy that tranquillity which ſeems to have been the conſtant object of his wiſh. But now that he had appeaſed all the diſturbances in his dominions, he reſolved to reap the fruits of his labours in quiet; and being deſirous of living on an amicable footing with his neighbours, he had an interview with *Robert*, king of *France*, in which theſe two princes contracted a particular friendſhip for each other, and concerted meaſures for reforming the abuſes which had crept into their dominions. This conference, at that time called the meeting of the two ſaints, was the laſt remarkable tranſaction of *Henry*'s life; for, ſoon after his return, he died at *Grone* in the month of *July*, after a proſperous reign of twenty-two years [t] (B). He was ſurnamed *the Lame*, *the Holy*, and *the Hungarian Apoſtle*, having derived the firſt of theſe appellations from an impediment in walking, and the other two from his devotion and liberality to the church (C). A.D. 1024.

---

* Glaber, l. iii. c. i. Chron. Caſſin, c. xlii.

CHAP. III.

Being a Detail of the German *Affairs, continued to the Death of* Henry V.

CONRAD II. ſurnamed *the Salick*.

Conrad II. *ſurnamed* the Salick, *choſen emperor.*

GREAT diſputes enſued upon the death of *Henry* of *Bavaria*, about the nomination of a ſucceſſor to the empire: at length the princes and ſtates aſſembling in the open fields between the cities of *Mentz* and *Worms*, elected *Conrad*, duke of *Franconia*, ſurnamed *the Salick*, becauſe he was born on the banks of the river *Sala* (D). The chief care of this new emperor was employed in re-eſtabliſhing juſtice, chaſtiſing vice, and rewarding virtue.

---

[t] BARRE, tom. iii. p. 627. HEN. BOD. SYNTAG. ex Meibom. p. 499. GOB. PERS Coſmod. æt. vi. cap. lii. p. 229. HEISS. l. ii. cha. vi. MACH. Hiſt. Fir. lib. i.

(B) Finding his end approaching, he ſent for the parents of the empreſs, and, in preſence of many biſhops and abbots, addreſſed himſelf to them in theſe words. *I reſtore your daughter a virgin, as I received her from your hands.* A very ſtrange declaration from the mouth of an huſband: but, it ſeems, both had made a vow of chaſtity, which by the bye was extremely ridiculous (1).

(C) *Henry*'s donations to the church (ſome of them at leaſt) ſeem to have been extorted from him, by the power and influence of the clergy: for *Meibomius* tells us, that when the biſhop of *Paderborn* pronounced a benediction upon him in public, for his generoſity to the church, the emperor turned his head on one ſide, and in a low voice curſed him for having extorted, by dint of importunity, ſo many grants to the detriment of his other ſubjects (2).

(D) At this election, beſides a great many eccleſiaſtic princes, were preſent *Benno*, duke of *Saxony*, *Albert*, duke of *Auſtria*, *Hetzel*, duke of *Bavaria*, *Erneſt*, duke of *Suabia*, *Frederic*, duke of *Lorrain*; *Goſilio*, duke of *Holland* and *Zealand*, *Enno*, duke of *Franconia*, and *Ulric*, duke of *Bohemia* (3).

(1) *Annal. de l'Empire*, t. i. p. 170. (2) *Meib. Reſ. Apol. Otton. IV.* (3) *Heiſs*, *liv.* ii. c. vii.

A. D. 1027.

THE *Lombards* revolting in the third year of his reign, he marched into *Italy*, and having reduced the rebels by force of arms, went to *Rome*, where on *Eaſter-day* he was conſecrated, and crowned emperor by pope *John* XX. with great ſolemnity, being accompanied by *Canute*, king of *Denmark* and *England*, and *Rodolphus* III. king of *Transjurane Burgundy* [u]. He had not been many days at *Rome*, when he was obliged to return into *Germany*, on account of ſome inſurrections; but before he attempted to quell them, he took care that his ſon *Henry*, at that time about twelve years of age, ſhould be declared his ſucceſſor, and ſolemnly crowned at *Aix-la-Chapelle*. Then he took the field againſt the authors of the rebellion, who were *Erneſt*, duke of *Suabia*, *Albert*, duke of *Carinthia*, and his own couſin *Conradin*, duke of *Worms*. Having defeated them in ſeveral engagements, in one of which *Erneſt* was ſlain, after having been put to the ban of the empire (E), he made the reſt priſoners, and brought them to a tryal before a general aſſembly of all the princes and members of the empire, who, by a ſolemn decree, deprived them of their dominions.

Cauſes his ſon Henry *to be declared his ſucceſſor, and crowned at* Aix-la-Chapelle.

THIS war being happily concluded, he turned his arms againſt *Miſico*, king of *Poland*, who had, without his conſent, aſſumed the name and quality of king, and by ſevere uſage compelled his own brother *Otho* to fly into *Germany*, and implore the emperor's protection. *Henry* complied with his requeſt, and put him at the head of an army, which he himſelf afterwards reinforced in perſon: then marching againſt *Miſico*, they drove him to ſuch extremity, that he was fain to take ſhelter with *Othalric*, duke of *Bohemia*. This prince, in defiance of all the rights of hoſpitality, offered to deliver up his gueſt to the emperor, who rejected the propoſal with diſdain, and conveyed the letter to *Miſico*, whom he adviſed to chooſe another aſylum. The unfortunate prince, ſenſibly touched with this inſtance of generoſity, repaired to the camp of the emperor, laid aſide his robes and enſigns of royalty, threw himſelf at his feet, and ſurrendered at diſcretion. *Henry* accepted of his ſubmiſſion, and reſtored his dominions, on the ſame terms on which his father

Marches againſt Miſito, *king of* Poland, *who ſurrenders at diſcretion.*

---

[u] BARRE, t. iii. p. 643. SIGON. l. viii. p. 194.

(E) *Ban* originally ſignified banner, afterwards an edict, and, laſtly, a declaration of outlawry, the form of which was this; *We declare thy wife a widow, thy children orphans, and ſend thee, in the name of the devil, to the four corners of the earth.*

ther

A. D. 1030.

ther *Boleſlaus* had poſſeſſed them; while *Otbalric*, ſtruck with his magnanimity, laid down his arms and ſued for peace [x].

Poland *is diſmembered.*

As for *Otho*, he was reconciled to his brother, and honoured with the title of duke; but being afterwards aſſaſſinated, the emperor, who ſuſpected *Miſico* of the murder, divided *Poland* into three provinces, one of which he left in the king's poſſeſſion, and the other two were put under the care of *Poliſh* governors, who were attached to the intereſts of the empire. This diviſion was the ſource of new revolutions that happened to *Poland*; for the governors, taking advantage of *Miſico*'s weakneſs and want of popularity, began to act as ſovereigns, and at length declared themſelves independent; ſo that *Sileſia* was diſmembered from the *Poliſh* dominions, and *Moravia* was retrieved by *Othalric*, duke of *Bohemia*. 1032.

War in Bohemia.

But this prince, notwithſtanding ſuch an acceſſion to his dominions, had well nigh been ruined by the indiſcretion of his ſon *Brztiſlaus*, who had carried off and married *Judith*, the daughter of count *Albert Otho*, ſurnamed *the Sincere*. The father, exaſperated at this outrage, complained in a moſt pathetic manner to the emperor, who forthwith entered *Bohemia* with an army, to take vengeance upon the raviſher; and an obſtinate battle would have enſued, had not *Judith*, like one of the *Sabine* women, interpoſed between the two hoſts, and by her charms and intreaties effected a peace, which was concluded in the tent of *Conrad*, at whoſe feet *Brztiſlaus* threw himſelf, and was immediately forgiven [y].

Incurſions of the Lutizians.

This treaty being concluded, he marched into *Saxony* againſt the *Lutizians*, a people inhabiting the duchy of *Mecklenbourg*, who lived in *Pagan* ignorance, and made incurſions into the territories of the empire. As they had committed flagrant outrages in *Saxony*, he purſued them to their own country, which he laid waſte with fire and ſword; put a great number of them to death, in revenge for the ſacrilege and barbarities they had been guilty of, and impoſed a conſiderable tribute upon their nation [z].

His expedition againſt Stephen, *king of* Hungary, *and* Eudes,

This war was ſucceeded by another with *Stephen*, king of *Hungary*, who having demanded the duchy of *Bavaria* in right of his wife, ſiſter and heireſs of *Henry* II. and met with a refuſal from *Conrad*, attempted to do himſelf juſtice by force of arms. The emperor, without waiting for an invaſion, entered *Hungary* with a powerful army, deſolating the country with fire and ſword; and *Stephen* finding himſelf unable to withſtand him, made his ſubmiſſion, and ſubſcribed to the terms of peace which *Conrad* was pleaſed to impoſe: nor was he leſs fortunate in the termination of his difference with *Eudes*, count of *Champagne*. *Rodolphus*, king of *Transjurane Burgundy*, had left *Conrad* his heir, in conſideration of his having married *Giſela* his younger ſiſter: but *Eudes*, count of *Champagne*, and ſon of *Bertha*, who was the elder ſiſter of *Rodolphus*, reſolved to have his ſhare in the ſucceſſion; and with that view maintained a bloody war againſt the emperor, who at length gained a battle near *Barle-duc*, in which the count was ſlain [a].

---

[x] Heiss. l. ii.

[y] Epitom. rer. Bohem. t. iii. c. i.

[z] Helmold. in Chron. Slav. l. i. c. xviii.

count of Champagne.

A.D. 1034.

By his death *Conrad* obtained peaceable poſſeſſion of all *Transjurane Burgundy*, and at *Soleurre* held an aſſembly of the biſhops and noblemen, who took the oath of allegiance, and acknowleged his ſon *Henry* III. as his ſucceſſor in that kingdom (F).

Rebellion in Poland, *which is invaded by the duke of* Bohemia.

While the emperor was employed in taking poſſeſſion of this fair inheritance, *Miſico*, king of *Poland*, died, and his ſon *Caſimir* being too young to manage the reins of government, his mother *Ricliza* aſſumed the regency. She governed with ſuch indiſcretion, that the ſubjects revolted, and ſhe and her ſon were obliged to fly to *Magdeburg* in *Lower Saxony*, with all the jewels and treaſure which had been amaſſed by the two preceding kings.

Brztislaus, duke of *Bohemia*, profiting by theſe inteſtine diſturbances, entered *Poland*, ravaged the country, made himſelf maſter of *Breſlau*, *Poſna*, *Uladiſlaw*, and even of the capital *Geſna*, from which he carried off an immenſe booty.

Conrad, who had received queen *Ricliza* with great hoſpitality, pretended to diſpoſe of the treaſure which his vaſſal, the duke of *Bohemia*, had got; and his demand being rejected,

1035.

---

[a] Sigebert, ad ann. 1033.

(F) On the death of *Rodolphus* ended the three laſt kingdoms of *Burgundy*, after having laſted 177 years after the foundation of the firſt, which was that of *Provence*, formed by the emperor *Lotharius*, in favour of his third ſon *Charles*. To this ſucceeded the kingdom of *Tranſjurane Burgundy*, erected in 888 by *Rodolphus* I. and both theſe were comprehended in that of *Arles*, which began in 930, by virtue of a treaty made between *Hugh*, king of *Italy* and *Provence*, and *Rodolphus* II. (1).

(1) *Barre*, *tom.* iii. *p.* 665.

rejected, he advanced into *Bohemia* with a body of troops, at ſight of which *Brztiſlaus* ſubmitted. As for young *Caſimir*, he took the habit of a monk at *Cluny*; but the *Poles*, tired of living in anarchy, ſent deputies to the pope, who granted a diſpenſation; in conſequence of which he was releaſed of his vows, and aſcended the throne of his anceſtors [b].

He is recalled into Italy *by a revolt of the biſhop of* Milan. A. D. 1038.

Having thus adjuſted his affairs on this ſide the *Alps*, and ſeen his ſon *Henry* married to *Gonilda*, daughter of *Canute*, king of *England*, he was recalled into *Italy*, by a new revolt of ſeveral cities and noblemen, headed by *Herbert*, biſhop of *Milan*, whom he had loaded with favours. His march was ſo ſudden and unexpected, that *Milan* was in a manner retaken by ſurprize, and the biſhop falling into his hands, was condemned to perpetual impriſonment. But, beſides this rebellion, he had another errand into *Italy*, which was to comply with a decree of the electors, importing, that every emperor ſhould go and be crowned at *Milan* and *Modena*, in order to make a diſtinction between the kingdoms of *Lombardy* and *Italy*.

Is ſeized with the gout and dies at Utrecht. 1039.

After all theſe expeditions he repaired to *Rome*, where he received the benediction of pope *Benedict* IX. who had ſucceeded *John* XXI. Then he returned into *Germany*, where he was ſeized with the gout in his legs, and died ſuddenly at *Utrecht*, in the 15th year of his reign, after having approved himſelf a generous, juſt, able, and magnanimous prince (G). His body was depoſited in the cathedral church of *Spire*, which he himſelf had built, together with a ſuperb palace for his ordinary reſidence [c].

---

[b] Du Glass, Hiſt. Polon. n. 191. [c] Gob. Pers. Coſmod. æt. vi. Glab. Rodulph. lib. iv. Hen. Bod. Syntag. ex Meib. p. 500.

(G) All thoſe who diſtinguiſhed themſelves in his ſervice, received marks of his generoſity: among others, a gentleman who had the misfortune to loſe a leg, was gratified with as many pieces of gold as one of his boots would contain, which the emperor told him were given to defray the expence of his cure (1).

(1) *Heiſs, liv.* ii. *c.* viii.

HENRY III.

Is ſucceeded by his ſon Henry III A.D. 1040.

HENRY III. ſurnamed *the Black*, ſon of *Conrad* and *Giſella* of *Suabia*, was elected in conſequence of his father's recommendation, and crowned at *Aix-la-Chapelle* by *Philigrino*, archbiſhop of *Cologn*.

who reduces Brztiſlaus *and* Ovo. 1043.

BRZTISLAUS, duke of *Bohemia*, refuſing to pay him the tribute which was due, he invaded his dominions, and obliged him to ſubmit. Then he turned his arms againſt *Ovo*, who had uſurped the crown of *Hungary*, and having driven him out of the kingdom, reſtored it to *Peter*, from whom it had been unjuſtly taken: but finding him extremely odious to his ſubjects, who declared, they would rather die than yield obedience to ſuch a cruel tyrant, he beſtowed the crown upon a nephew of king *Stephen*, who had retired to the court of *Bohemia*. This young prince was likewiſe expelled by the people, who were ſtrongly attached to *Ovo*, and who, not contented with his expulſion, entered *Auſtria* and *Bavaria*, pillaging and deſtroying the whole country.

THE emperor, incenſed at their preſumption, marched into *Hungary* with a conſiderable army; and *Ovo* being unable to withſtand his power, ſued for peace, which he obtained on the following conditions: that he ſhould pay forty talents of gold to the empire, indemnify *Auſtria* and *Bavaria*, for the damage they had ſuſtained by the irruption of the *Hungarians*, and releaſe all the priſoners [d]. Next year, however, *Henry* received ſuch complaints of *Ovo*'s cruelty and rapacity, that he again entered *Hungary*, defeated him in a pitched battle on the river *Raab*, took poſſeſſion of *Alba Regalis*, where he was acknowleged as ſovereign of the kingdom by the ſtates, aſſembled for that purpoſe, and afterwards reconciled them to their old prince *Peter*, who being re-eſtabliſhed in his kingdom, did homage for it to the emperor. As for *Ovo*, he endeavoured to excite freſh commotions after *Henry*'s departure; but being abandoned by his adherents, he retired to *Tranſylvania*, where he was apprehended and brought to *Peter*, who, by the advice of his noblemen, condemned him to be beheaded.

ROME had been ſome time diſtracted by different factions, particularly thoſe of the counts of *Tuſculum* and the *Ptolemei*. The firſt of which had thruſt *Benedict* IX. into the papacy, who, having continued ſome time in the chair, was depoſed by the *Ptolemei* and the people, who had ſubſtituted in his place *Silveſter* III. but, in three months, this antipope was depoſed in his turn by the *Tuſculi*, and his rival re-eſtabliſhed. *Benedict*, however, finding himſelf univerſally hated, voluntarily reſigned in favour of *John* archprieſt of the *Roman* church; and ſoon after, repenting of his reſignation, wanted to re-aſſume his former dignity. Theſe three popes, ſupported by their ſeveral partizans, maintained themſelves, each upon a different branch of the revenues belonging to the holy ſee, one reſiding at *St. Peter's*, another at *Santa Maria major*, and the third in the palace of the *Lateran*, and all of them living in the moſt profligate and ſcandalous manner. During this triumvirate, a certain prieſt called *Gratian*, partly by artifice, and partly by preſents, prevailed upon all three to renounce their pretenſions to the papacy; and the *Romans* out of gratitude to the man, who had delivered the church from ſuch a terrible ſchiſm, choſe him pope under the name of *Gregory* VI [e].

---

[d] ADLZREITTER, Annal. Boi. gent. p. 411.

THE emperor taking umbrage at this election, in which he had not been conſulted, marched with an army into *Italy*, was crowned at *Milan* by the archbiſhop; then repaired to *Placentia*, where he was viſited by pope *Gregory* VI. and afterwards convened a council at *Sutri*, in which the reſignation of the three popes was confirmed, *Gregory* VI. depoſed, and by conſent of the *Romans* as well as *Germans*, the papal chair was filled with *Heidiger*, biſhop of *Bamberg*, who aſſumed the name of *Clement* II. and afterwards put the imperial crowns on the heads of *Henry*, and *Agnes*, his empreſs (H).

Quiets the troubles of Rome, *which had been diſtracted by the factions of theſe pretenders to the papacy.* A. D. 1046.

THIS ceremony being performed, and the *Romans* having ſworn they would never for the future chooſe a pope without having ſent previous notice to the reigning emperor, *Henry* went to viſit the monaſtery of *Monte Caſſino*, which received valuable marks of his favour: from thence he proceeded to *Capua*, where he was viſited by the *Norman* princes, whom he confirmed in the poſſeſſion of *Apulia* and *Calabria*, which they had conquered from the *Greeks*: but when he expreſſed a deſire of ſeeing *Beneventum*, he was refuſed admittance; nor could he at that time puniſh the inhabitants for the inſult, as he had already ſent the beſt part of his troops to *Germany* with the empreſs. However, he prevailed upon the pope, who was along with him, to excommunicate the *Beneventines*, and beſtowed the city and its dependencies, as fiefs of the empire, upon the *Norman* princes, in caſe they ſhould ſubdue them by force of arms *.

---

[e] OTHON. FRISINGEN. l. ii. c. xxxii.

(H) *Agnes* was daughter of *William*, duke of *Poitou* (1).

(1) *Glab.*

Scarce was he returned to *Germany* from this expedition, when he received the news of *Clement*'s death; and ſoon after was informed, that a certain biſhop of *Bavaria*, called *Stephen*, had intruded himſelf into the chair, under the name of *Damaſus* II. who was alſo dead, in twenty-three days after his elevation. He learned at the ſame time, that the *Romans*, imagining he would leave to them the care of chooſing another pope, had diſpatched ambaſſadors to him for that purpoſe; but being reſolved to preſerve his right, he, without waiting for their arrival, nominated one *Bruno*, a *German* biſhop, who immediately aſſumed the veſtments of the ſovereign pontiff. This new pope, who was a modeſt man, and did not much reliſh the dignity that had been conferred on him, was, on his journey to *Rome*, perſuaded by one *Hildebrand* (I), a monk, belonging to the abbey of *Cluny*, that he ought not to wear his pontificals until he ſhould be elected at *Rome*, the emperor alone having no right to create a pope. Accordingly *Bruno* went thither as private man, being accompanied by this ſame *Hildebrand*, who had art and influence enough to raiſe underhand an oppoſition againſt him at firſt, and afterwards to diſpoſe the *Romans* to favour his election, that he himſelf might have the ſole merit of having raiſed him to the papal chair. This ſcheme ſucceeded to his wiſh: *Bruno*, who took the name of *Leo* IX. believing himſelf indebted to *Hildebrand* for his exaltation, favoured him with his confidence and affection; and thus

Nominates Bruno *to the popedom.*
A.D. 1048.

---

* Hiſt. de Conquetes des Normans, p. 32.

(I) *Hildebrand* is ſaid to have been a carpenter's ſon, who in amuſing himſelf with little pieces of wood, formed, by ſupernatural inſtinct, theſe words. *Dominabor a mari uſque ad mare*; which being perceived by a prieſt, he looked upon the child as a choſen veſſel, and perſuaded his father to beſtow learning upon him. He was afterwards employed as a ſcribe or ſecretary by the emperor, before whom he appeared in a dream, having two horns that reached up to heaven, with which he overturned his ſon *Henry* in the mud. The father, ſhocked at this apparition, ſent *Hildebrand* to priſon; from whence he was releaſed by the interceſſion of the empreſs, and afterwards became a monk (1).

(1) *Gob. Perſ. Coſmodi æt.* vi.

began

Is prevailed upon by Hildebrand *to confirm the election of* Victor II. *whom the* Romans *had choſen without his privity or conſent.*

A. D. 1054.

began the intrigues of that famous monk, who managed the *Romans* with ſuch addreſs, that afterwards, upon the death of *Leo*, they, at his inſtigation, choſe another pope of their own accord, with a view to detach the right of nomination from the emperor. The perſon he propoſed was *Gebehard*, biſhop of *Eichſtet*, who took the appellation of *Victor* II. and *Hildebrand*, foreſeeing that *Henry* would be offended at their preſumption, went to him in perſon as their deputy, when, by his inſinuation and addreſs, he prevailed upon him to confirm what they had done [f]. Perhaps he would not have found this taſk ſo eaſy, had not *Henry* been involved in a quarrel with the *Hungarians*, who had again rebelled againſt *Peter*, and ſet upon the throne his kinſman *Andrew*, after he had defeated the other, put out his eyes, and ſent him to priſon, where he died. For theſe reaſons the emperor ſent an army againſt him; and after having worſted him in ſeveral engagements, compelled him to ſue for peace. This treaty, however, was violated by the uſurper, who inſulted *Henry*'s ambaſſadors, and by a ſudden irruption ravaged the whole duchy of *Bavaria*; upon which the emperor took the field again, defeated him in a bloody battle, deprived him of a great part of his dominions, and obliged him to accept of peace, on condition that he ſhould pay a large yearly tribute in money, and furniſh him with a certain number of fighting men (K).

Subdues Hungary.

The duke of Bavaria *is diveſted of his dominions.*

AT this period, *Bavaria* was agitated by freſh troubles. *Conrad*, the young duke, governed his ſubjects with ſuch tyranny and violence, that *Gebehard*, biſhop of *Ratiſbon*, made repreſentations to him on the ſubject of his miſconduct; and the duke being incenſed at the freedom of his remonſtrances, pillaged and ſet on fire the town of *Packſtein*, which was under the prelate's juriſdiction. *Gebehard* complained of this outrage to the emperor, who ſummoned *Conrad* to appear at *Merſbourg*, and anſwer to the charge; and he being found guilty, was diveſted of his dominions, which were given to the emperor's ſon *Henry*, who in an aſſembly held at *Tribur*, in the dioceſe of *Mentz*, was about this time declared king of the *Romans* and future emperor, though no more than three years of age.

---

[f] LEO Oſtienſ. l. ii. c. ix.

(K) *Heiſs*, from I know not what authority, ſays *Henry* was unſucceſsful in this war, and obliged to abandon the crown of *Hungary* to the uſurper *Andrew*: but we have followed the *Saxon* chronicles in this particular, which are not contradicted by any other hiſtory of credit that hath fallen into our hands.

Conrad, expelled from his dominions, took ſhelter with the king of *Hungary*; and being furniſhed with ſome troops, marched into *Carinthia*, where joining ſome malecontent noblemen, who were diſquieted at the emperor's deciſion, he made himſelf maſter of the greateſt part of that province; but he was ſoon reduced by the forces of the emperor, who compelled him to retreat again into *Hungary*.

War of Flanders, A. D. 1055.

The revolt of *Conrad* was ſucceeded by the war of *Flanders*, kindled by count *Baldwin*, who ſeized the county of *Hainault*, invaded *Lorrain*, and plundered *Triers*, and other towns, ſituated upon the *Moſelle*. The emperor being impowered by the diet at *Aix la Chapelle* to retort theſe violences, marched into *Flanders*, and laid the whole country under contribution: in conſequence of this diverſion *Baldwin* quitted *Lorrain*, to defend his own territories; and being ſupported by the king of *France*, he protracted the war to the third campaign, when peace was reſtored to *Flanders* [g].

The emperor repairs to Italy.

The emperor having taken proper meaſures for the proſecution of this war, followed pope *Victor* into *Italy*, and aſſiſted at a council in *Florence*, where he complained that *Ferdinand*, ſovereign of *Caſtile*, *Leon*, *Galicia*, *Portugal*, and *Gaſcony*, had aſſumed the title of emperor, and refuſed to do him homage for part of his dominions which he held of the empire. In conſequence of theſe complaints, the pope ſent ambaſſadors to *Ferdinand*, who, inſtead of complying with his deſire of laying aſide the title of emperor, and doing homage to *Henry*, raiſed a conſiderable army, which paſſed the *Pyrenees*, under the command of the celebrated *Rodrigo*, ſurnamed *the Cid*, and penetrated as far as *Thoulouſe*, where the difference was compromiſed by commiſſaries, appointed to inveſtigate the pretenſions of both. The king of *Caſtile* reſigned the title of emperor, and *Henry* relinquiſhed his right of ſuperiority to the provinces in queſtion [h].

Henry's ſiſter, *Beatrice*, widow of *Boniface*, marquis of *Etruria*, married *Godfrey*, a *German* nobleman, and agreed that her daughter *Mathilda*, when marriageable, ſhould eſpouſe her huſband's ſon by a former venter. This match, concluded without the conſent or knowlege of the emperor, gave ſuch umbrage to that prince, that he reſolved to expel *Godfrey* by force of arms from the dominions of *Tuſcany*;

---

[g] Sigebert ad an. 1054.

[h] Orderic Vitalis, l. iv.

and this laſt, finding himſelf unable to cope with ſuch an antagoniſt, fled to *Baldwin*, count of *Flanders*, while his wife, going to juſtify herſelf to the emperor, was arreſted upon the road, and ſent priſoner into *Germany*.

Henry having made a progreſs through the different provinces of *Italy*, concluded an alliance with *Contarini*, duke of *Venice*; and repaſſing the *Alps*, marched into *Bavaria*, reduced a rebellion which had been raiſed by the noblemen of that country in favour of *Conrad*, who was lately dead, and ſummoned his own uncle *Gebehard*, biſhop of *Ratiſbon*, to the diet, where he was convicted of treaſon, and condemned to perpetual impriſonment; from which, however, he was ſoon releaſed.

The Sclaves *make an irruption into* Saxony.
A. D. 1056.

Great part of *Europe* being afflicted with a cruel famine, *Henry* eaſed the ſuffering provinces of their taxes, and ordered corn to be imported from other countries for their relief: but hunger was not the only misfortune his people derived from this calamity. The *Sclaves* of *Luſatia*, famiſhed in their own country, made an irruption into *Saxony*, where they obtained a complete victory over the imperial general; and having pillaged the whole province without reſiſtance, returned with a conſiderable booty: a misfortune which, being aggravated by ſeveral public calamities, ſuch as earthquakes, famine, and plague, made a very deep impreſſion upon his mind, overwhelming him with chagrin, and, in all probability, abridging the term of his life.

His ſon declared king of the Romans.

About this time he convoked a diet at *Goſlar*, where pope *Victor* II was preſent, and recommending his ſon, who was about five years of age, to their good offices, they received him as king of the *Romans*, and his father's ſucceſſor in the empire [i].

Grows melancholy and dies at Burfelt.
1056.

In a few days after this important point was ſettled to his ſatisfaction, he fell ſick and died at *Burfelt* in *Saxony*, in the 39th year of his age, and 16th of his reign. His body was carried to *Spire*, and magnificently depoſited in the cathedral, whither it was attended by a great number of perſons of the firſt quality (L).

HEN-

---

[i] Glab. Rad. lib. v. Gob. Pers. æt. vi. Barnard. Cor. Baron. Chron. Magdeburgenſ. Bremenſ. Annal. Paderborn. p. 547.

(L) *Henry* III. was firſt married to *Gonilda*, or *Cunegonda*, daughter of *Canute*, king of *England* and *Denmark*; and, after her death to *Agnes*, by whom he had *Henry* IV. *Conrad*, who died in his infancy, *Sophia*, married to *Solomon*, king of

HENRY IV.

Henry IV. *ſucceeds to the imperial crown.*

HEHRY IV. ſurnamed *the Great*, ſucceeded his father when he was no more than five years of age, his education being committed to the care of his mother the empreſs, who diſcharged that truſt with equal diligence and capacity. He was acknowleged emperor at a diet of the princes convoked at *Cologne*, where, by the mediation of pope *Victor* II. who was preſent at this aſſembly, *Baldwin*, count of *Flanders*, and *Godfrey*, marquis of *Etruria*, were reconciled to the empreſs.

DURING the firſt years of this reign, *Germany* was harraſſed by inteſtine troubles, occaſioned by the quarrels and feuds of private noblemen. The duchy of *Suabia* being vacant, by the death of *Otho de Schweenfurt*, the regent beſtowed it upon *Rodolphus de Rhinfeld*, although the late emperor had promiſed to confer it upon count *Berthold*, who loudly complained of this unjuſt preference, and intereſted his friends in his reſentment againſt the empreſs queen mother. The duke of *Bohemia* was attacked by the king of *Poland*, who renounced his dependence on the empire: even the *Hungarians*, who had been ſo formidable to *Germany*, were obliged to demand ſuccour againſt the *Poles*, and, notwithſtanding a reinforcement of imperialiſts, were defeated; ſo that thus king *Andrew*, with his queen, fled for refuge to *Ratiſbon*.

State of the empire.

THOSE wars were not the effects of political views, but generally produced from the effects of petty cauſes of reſentment; inſomuch that *Thierri*, count of *Holland*, took the field againſt the biſhops of *Cologn* and *Liege*, becauſe he had been perſonally inſulted at *Liege*, for having ſlain by accident a brother of the archbiſhop of *Cologn*, in a tournament [k].

As for the other nations of *Europe*, they had no connection with the affairs of *Germany*; nor was the empire embroiled in any external war; ſo that thoſe troubleſome ſpirits, which might have been evaporated in defence of the community, were now employed in fomenting diviſions at home, and it was not without great difficulty that the regent maintained her authority.

---

[k] Chronique de Hollande, &c. p. 150.

of *Hungary*, *Mathilda*, wife to *Rodolphus*, count *de Rhinfeld*, duke of *Suabia*, and *Itho*, married to *Leopold* IV. marquis of *Auſtria* (1).

(1) *Barre, tom.* iv. *p.* 61.

The empreſs dowager is deprived of the regency.

At length the dukes of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, uncles of the young emperor, together with the archbiſhop of *Cologne*, and other princes, carried him off by ſtratagem from his mother, who was taxed with having ſacrificed the welfare of the nation to the will of the biſhop of *Augſburg*, her miniſter and ſuppoſed gallant; and ſhe, being thus diveſted of the regency, fled to *Rome*, where ſhe took the veil [l]. As for the emperor, he was put under the tuition of the archbiſhops of *Cologne* and *Bremen*; and theſe two prelates were very aſſiduous in this employment, which, however, each exerciſed in a very different manner. *Hanno*, the archbiſhop of *Cologne*, endeavoured to inſpire him with the love of learning, and to ſeaſon his mind with the principles of virtue; but *Albert*, his collegue, in order to acquire an influence over his paſſions, and render himſelf neceſſary to him in his affairs, indulged him in all his pleaſures, and gave full ſcope to the licence of youth; during which he contracted bad habits, which he could not afterwards reſtrain [m].

A. D. 1602.

While he remained under the tutorage of his mother, *Alexander* II. had been raiſed to the papal chair, without the privity or conſent of the emperor, in conſequence of a decree of council, called by the ſole authority of *Nicholas* his predeceſſor, in which it was ordained, that, for the future, the popes ſhould be elected by the curates (now called cardinals) of *Rome*. The queen regent, in order to maintain the right of the imperial crown, convoked a diet, in which *Alexander* was depoſed, and another pope elected under the name of *Honorius* II. This ſchiſm gave riſe to new troubles in *Germany*, as well as in *Italy*, where *Alexander* was ſupported by *Godfrey* of *Lorrain*, who had married *Mathilda*, heireſs of *Tuſcany*, and by that match became one of the moſt powerful of the *Italian* princes [n].

1072.
Henry *takes the reins of government in his own hands;*

The emperor, at the age of twenty-two, began his adminiſtration by reſtraining the thefts, robberies, and extortions, which his ſubjects of the duchy of *Saxony* exerciſed upon ſtrangers as well as upon one another, in contempt of his authority, and to the prejudice of the public peace. With a view to facilitate this reformation, he took up his reſidence among them at *Goſlar*, and ordered ſeveral caſtles to be built and garriſoned, as a check upon the delinquents, and to protect the innocent from inſolence and rapine. But as theſe forts could not be raiſed without impoſing taxes upon the ſubject, the rich among the clergy, as well as laity, began to murmur, and traverſe his deſign on pretence of defending their liberty; which, they affirmed, he intended to invade. They were beſides irritated againſt him, on account of his debauches, and encouraged to rebellion by pope *Alexander* II. who, at the earneſt ſollicitation of *Hildebrand*, his confident and ſucceſſor, actually ſummoned the emperor to appear at *Rome*, to give an account of his looſe life, and anſwer to the charge of having expoſed the inveſtiture of benefices to ſale [o].

---

[l] Annal. de l'Emp. t. i. p. 185. [m] Chron. Magdeb. Bremenſ. ex Meib. p. 288. [n] Othon. Friſing. l. vi. c. 44.

is ſummoned by the pope, and controuled by the ſtates of Saxony;

THE emperor having rejected this citation with diſdain, the ſtates of *Saxony* engaged in an aſſociation, under the pretext of defending their liberties, and were ſo bold as to preſent him with a memorial, containing the following demands: that he ſhould order his new forts and caſtles in *Saxony* and *Thuringia* to be demoliſhed; that he ſhould reſtore to the owners the lands and moveables, which he had unjuſtly and forcibly taken away; that he ſhould re-inſtate *Otho* duke of *Saxony* in the duchy of *Bavaria*, from which he had been expelled (M); that he ſhould confirm to the *Saxons* their antient laws and immunities; that he ſhould not always reſide in one place, but make a progreſs through different parts of his dominions, to do juſtice every-where, and provide for the neceſſities of the church, the widow, and the orphan; that he ſhould diſmiſs the evil counſellors, and govern by the advice of the ſtates and princes, whoſe intereſt was inſeparably connected with the proſperity of the empire; and that he ſhould diſmiſs his concubine, and cohabit with his queen (N). They concluded with aſſuring him, he ſhould be reſpected, obeyed, and ſupported, with their lives and fortunes, provided he would comply with theſe requeſts; but, ſhould he perſiſt in his deſign to oppreſs them, they were reſolved to defend themſelves againſt violence and deſpotic power [p].

---

[o] Annal. de l' Emp. t. i. p. 188.

(M) This *Otho* had been accuſed of a deſign againſt the emperor's life, and, by a decree of the diet, ordered to appear at *Goſlar*, to maintain his innocence againſt the accuſer in ſingle combat; but he declined the duel, alleging, that his antagoniſt was his inferior in birth and quality (1).

The author of the *Chronic. Magdeburgenſ.* affirms, that *Otho* was diſſuaded from the combat, by his friends, upon information that he was doomed to loſe his life at *Goſlar*, whatever might be the iſſue of the duel.

(1) Heiſs, l. xi. c. 9.

To this remonſtrance the emperor anſwered with great coolneſs, that he would take an opportunity of convoking the diet, which ſhould deliberate and decide upon the ſubject of their complaints. This reply was ſo diſagreeable to the *Saxons*, who were not at all diſpoſed to refer themſelves to ſuch a tribunal, that they forthwith levied a ſtrong body of forces, with which they inveſted *Goſlar*; from whence *Henry* retired in the night, in order to aſſemble the other ſtates and princes of the empire, who readily aſſiſted him with their troops in this emergency (O). Notwithſtanding theſe ſuccours, which were conſiderable, he ſent a deputation to the *Saxons*, with propoſals of peace; which, while the ſtates aſſembled at *Wurtzburg*, were negociated at *Gerſtingen*, upon certain conditions which he promiſed to fulfill.

who beſiege Goſlar.
A. D.
1703.

Tho' he was, on this occaſion, very much indebted to the good advice and offices of the princes of the empire, he neglected them in points which were no leſs important, and allowed himſelf to be ſwayed by the evil counſels of ſome particular perſons, who had inſinuated themſelves into his favour. He was a young prince of violent paſſions, which often hurried him into indiſcretions, to the prejudice of his moral character; particularly, his incontinence was ſo great, that he ſeldom or never ſet eyes upon a beautiful young woman without endeavouring to ſacrifice her virtue to his appetite. The vigilance of his wife being an obſtruction to his amours, he conceived an unjuſt antipathy to that unfortunate princeſs, and even engaged one of his courtiers to undermine her chaſtity, that he might have a pretence for obtaining a divorce; but her conduct was ſo blameleſs and diſcreet, that his deſign miſcarried, and he in vain ſollicited the pope to diſſolve the marriage, which he ſaid had never been conſummated [q].

---

[p] Chron. Magdeb. ex Meib. p. 296. Heiss, Hiſt. de l'Emp. l. xi. c. 9.

(N) He married *Bertha*, daughter of *Otho* marquis of *Italy* (2).

(O) The aſſociation againſt *Henry* conſiſted of *Werner* archbiſhop of *Magdebourg*, *Burchar* biſhop of *Halberſtadt*, *Henry* biſhop of *Hildeſheim*, *Werner* biſhop of *Merſbourg*, *Heilberg* biſhop of *Minden*, *James* biſhop of *Paderborn*, *Frederic* biſhop of *Mimmegardefurt*, *Benno* biſhop of *Miſnia*, *Otho* duke of *Saxony*, the marquiſes of *Thuringia*, *Uko*, and *Dedo*, *Frederick* count palatine of *Saxony*, with ſeveral counts and other noblemen (3).

(2) *Chron. Hildeburg. ex Meib. p.* 452.

(3) *Heiſs, l. xi. c.* 9.

Henry *is deſerted by his friends on account of his miſconduct;* *ſends a challenge to the duke of* Suabia; *retires to* Worms.

THIS miſconduct gave ſuch umbrage, that he was abandoned by his beſt friends and moſt powerful adherents, even before the diſſolution of the aſſembly which he had convened, and which he diſmiſſed ſoon after the concluſion of the treaty with the *Saxons*; betaking himſelf to *Nuremberg*, where he propoſed to reſide. Here he underſtood, that one of his domeſtics, called *Reginger*, had deſerted from his ſervice, and informed the dukes of *Suabia* and *Carinthia*, that the emperor had tampered with him to aſſaſſinate theſe two noblemen. This report was of infinite prejudice to the emperor; who, finding himſelf forſaken by almoſt all his friends in conſequence of this malicious calumny, offered to prove his innocence by ſingle combat upon the body of *Rodolphus* duke of *Suabia*, who thought proper to refuſe the challenge, or at leaſt to refer it to the deciſion of the princes of the empire (P). Even this condeſcenſion was of no effect in his juſtification, and he found himſelf ſo perſecuted by his enemies, that he fled for refuge to *Worms*, where he was hoſpitably received by the inhabitants, notwithſtanding the ill offices of the biſhop, who had uſed all his influence in perſuading them to ſhut their gates againſt this unfortunate prince [r].

He finds means to appeaſe the princes, and acknowleges his faults.

WHILE he remained in this city, the princes of the empire aſſembling at *Mentz*, in order to deliberate upon the means of depriving him of his crown, and of chuſing another emperor in his place, he found means, by ſecret negociations, to prevail upon ſome of them to favour him with a conference at *Oppenheim*. There he intreated them to excuſe the irregularities of his youth, proteſted that he would for the future behave in a manner ſuitable to the dignity they had conferred upon him; and, in order to manifeſt his abhorrence of the crime which was laid to his charge, inſiſted upon fighting with *Reginger* himſelf. The propoſal was accepted, and a day appointed for the combat; but in the mean time his antagoniſt diſappeared, the princes were appeaſed, and *Henry* enjoyed ſome repoſe[*] (Q)

---

[q] ADZLR. p. 444. [r] HEIS, ubi ſup.

(P) At the ſame time a gallant cavalier, named *Coſheim*, begged permiſſion to fight with *Reginger*; but *Rodolphus* interpoſed, and prevented the combat.

THE *Saxons*, however, again revolted, and the emperor, aſſiſted by the princes, raiſed an army of ſixty thouſand men, with which he entered *Saxony*, ravaging the country, and abandoning the towns to the pillage of his troops. Notwithſtanding theſe advantages, he, at the interceſſion of ſome princes of the empire, granted a favourable peace to the rebels, diſbanded his troops, and even truſted his perſon to the *Saxons*, who conducted him in triumph to *Goſlar*, after having obtained in this treaty almoſt every thing they demanded in their former remonſtrance. One of the articles of this peace was the demolition of his caſtles in *Saxony*, in the execution of which the peaſants not only razed the ſuperb ſeat of *Harleſberg* to the ground, but alſo plundered the church belonging to it, deſtroyed the tombs, and violated the aſhes of the dead. The emperor, who was then at *Worms*, being informed of theſe abuſes, took the opportunity of laying his complaints before ſeveral princes, who were aſſembled at *Bamberg* for the celebration of *Eaſter*, when the archbiſhop of *Mentz*, in the name of the eccleſiaſtics, as well as of *Rodolphus* duke of *Suabia*, *Berthold* duke of *Carinthia*, and other ſecular princes, declared, that, God being offended, and the empire treated with indignity by the authors of that ſedition, they were ready to aſſiſt him in raiſing forces to reduce and chaſtiſe the rebels. He accordingly began to levy troops, and ſent a formal declaration of war to the ſtates of *Saxony* aſſembled at *Goſlar*.

The Saxons *rebel again; but are defeated by* Henry, *who grants them a peace.*

Harleſberg *deſtroyed, for which* Henry *declares war againſt the ſtates of* Saxony.

PREPARATIONS were made on both ſides for the war, the *Saxon* army being commanded by *Otho* duke of *Bavaria*, who had been proſcribed; and the imperial troops by *Henry* in perſon, who gave battle to the rebels, and totally defeated them in a bloody engagement; after which he made himſelf maſter of all *Saxony*, and diſmiſſed his troops, on condition that they ſhould re-aſſemble at *Gerſtingen* at a certain day, in order to put the finiſhing ſtroke to the war. Mean while he himſelf returned to *Worms*.

A. D. 1075. *Having defeated them, he makes himſelf maſter of their country;*

DURING this interval, the *Saxons* endeavoured at an accommodation; which was effected in the next campaign,

and grants a peace.

---

[*] LAMB. SCHAF. ad an. 1073.

(Q) He is ſaid to have been carried off by the devil; a very lucky interpoſition for *Henry*, who (as *Heiſs* juſtly obſerves) had conſulted his courage more than his dignity in this propoſal.

while both armies were in the field. The chiefs of the bellion aſked pardon of the emperor in public, and begge be re-admitted into his favour: their ſubmiſſion was acc ed, both armies were diſbanded, and *Henry* returned to city of *Worms* [t].

Hildebrand *is choſen pope without the knowlege of* Henry.

But he was not long ſuffered to enjoy the tranqu which was thus reſtored, being expoſed to another ſt from *Italy*, which was attended with much more dange conſequences. Cardinal *Hildebrand*, upon the death *Alexander* II. had been elected pope by the name of *Gre* VII. without the authority or knowlege of the empe who, hearing of this tranſaction, had convoked a die *Mentz*, and, by the advice of that aſſembly, ſent an am ſador to *Rome*, to complain of this encroachment upon right, and to inſiſt upon *Hildebrand*'s being depoſed, un he would ſollicit the emperor's confirmation. The p finding it his intereſt to temporize, had received the am ſador with great civility, proteſting that the papacy had b forced upon him by the people; but that he had no in tion to accept of the honour, without the approbation of emperor and princes of the diet, having delayed the c mony of his confirmation, until he ſhould have obtained ſanction.

A. D. 1075.

Henry, ſatisfied with theſe excuſes, had confirmed election; ſo that ſeeing himſelf firmly eſtabliſhed in chair, and univerſally acknowleged as pope, he began pontificate with a number of excommunications lev againſt the *German* princes, eccleſiaſtic as well as ſecu in particular, againſt the archbiſhops of *Saltzburg* and *men*, and the biſhops of *Bamberg*, *Spire*, and *Straſbou* becauſe they were either married or publicly kept co bines [u]. He moreover excommunicated every eccleſi who ſhould receive his inveſtiture from a laic, together the laic by whom it ſhould be conferred. This, howe was no more than an experiment, to try the thunder of holy ſee; which he intended to launch againſt the emp himſelf. For this purpoſe, he had ſent four legates *Germany* to hold a council, the convocation of which oppoſed and prevented by the biſhops, and their repre tatives had orders to treat the emperor as an excommu cated perſon until he ſhould clear himſelf from the charge ſimony, of which he had been accuſed before the preced pope. Nay, to ſuch a degree of animoſity was he incen againſt *Henry*, that he employed emiſſaries among the *S*

The pope tampers with the Saxons.

---

[t] Heiss Hiſt. de l'Emp.

[u] Barr. t. iv. p. 224.

ons, who, by their inſinuations, were prevailed upon to ſend ambaſſadors to *Rome*, to complain of the injury they had ſuffered in the laſt treaty with the emperor, and to beg that the pope would depoſe him on account of his immorality and miſconduct.

Henry *is reconciled to the pope.*

ALTHOUGH *Henry* had diſperſed the league that was formed againſt him, and reſtored peace to the empire, he dreaded new revolutions from the intrigues and reſentment of the court of *Rome*; which, in order to avert, he wrote a very ſubmiſſive letter to the pope, accuſing himſelf of ſimony and debauchery, and craving the forgiveneſs of his holineſs; who, after having rebuked him for his crimes, commended him for his candour, and abſolved him in conſequence of his penitence and contrition [x].

HE afterwards propoſed a cruſade, in order to deliver the holy ſepulchre from the hands of the infidels, offering to head the Chriſtians in perſon, and deſiring *Henry* to ſerve as a volunteer under his command: a project ſo wild and extravagant, that nothing but the enthuſiaſm of the times can exempt the memory of the propoſer from the imputation of frenzy and delirium.

Diſturbances in Hungary.

BUT this harmony ſubſiſting between *Gregory* and the emperor was ſoon interrupted by the diſturbances of *Hungary*, where *Solomon* had been dethroned by his brother *Geyſa*, and fled for refuge to *Henry*, by whom he was protected, after having done homage to him for his dominions. *Gregory*, who favoured *Geyſa*, exclaimed againſt this act of ſubmiſſion, and wrote a letter to *Solomon*, giving him to underſtand, that the kingdom of *Hungary* belonged to the *Roman* church, and demanding that he would acknowlege its dependence on the holy ſee, and not upon the king of *Germany*.

GREGORY, having thus laid the train, ſent new legates to the diet of *Goſlar*; which was aſſembled on account of the *German* princes, who had been taken priſoners in the laſt battle; and there, being ſeconded by the nuncio, they complained, that the emperor ſtill continued to beſtow (R) inveſtitures, without having publiſhed the decrees of the late council againſt theſe inveſtitures, as well as againſt ſimony, and the incontinence of the clergy. Then they demanded, that the princes, who were priſoners, ſhould be ſet at liberty; that the archbiſhops and biſhops, who were excommunicated, ſhould be deprived of their dignity and eſtates; and, that the emperor ſhould appear at *Rome*, on the firſt Sunday of *Lent*, to anſwer to the crimes laid to his charge; adding, that, if he ſhould fail to yield due obedience to the church, he muſt expect to be excommunicated and dethroned.

---

[x] Aquila Franca, l. i. p. 176. Annal. de l'Emp. t. i. p. 192.

(R) *Henry* IV. enjoyed in common, with almoſt all other princes, the right of nominating biſhops and abbots, and of inveſting them by the croſs and the ring; and tho' he had abuſed this power, by ſetting benefices to ſale, ſurely the pope had no right to releaſe his ſubjects from their oath of allegiance.

The emperor threatened.

He deposes Hildebrand, A. D. 1076.

Henry, incenſed at this preſumptuous declaration from the pope, whom he conſidered as his vaſſal, diſmiſſed the legates with very little ceremony, and called an aſſembly of all the dignified eccleſiaſtics at *Worms*; where, after due deliberation, they concluded, that *Gregory*, having uſurped the chair of St. *Peter* by indirect means, infected the church of God with a great number of novelties and abuſes, and deviated from his duty to his ſovereign in ſeveral ſeditious attempts, the emperor, by his ſupreme authority, derived from his predeceſſors, ought to diveſt the pope of his dignity, and appoint another in his place.

and is excommunicated.

In conſequence of this reſolution, *Henry* ſent an ambaſſador to *Rome*, with a formal deprivation of *Gregory*; who in his turn, convoked a council, at which were preſent 110 biſhops, who unanimouſly agreed, that the pope had juſt cauſe to depoſe *Henry*, to diſſolve the oath of allegiance which the princes and members of the empire had taken in his favour, and to prohibit them from holding any correſpondence with him on pain of excommunication; which was immediately fulminated againſt the emperor and all his adherents [y].

He knew that this ſtep would be attended with civil wars: he intereſted the *German* biſhops in his party: the prelates gained over the noblemen: *Henry*'s old enemies, the *Saxons*, ſeized this pretext of declaring againſt him; and even *Guelfe*, to whom he had given the duchy of *Bavaria*, ſupported the malecontents with that wealth which he owed to the emperor's bounty: at laſt, thoſe very princes and biſhops, who had joined in depoſing *Gregory*, gave up their emperor to be tried by the pope, and his holineſs was ſollicited to come to *Augſburg* for that purpoſe.

By this ſevere ſentence, which filled a great part of Chriſtendom with troubles and diviſions, and involved *Germany* in long and bloody wars, the emperor was reduced to ſuch extremity, that he ſet out for *Italy* in the middle of winter, with his wife and ſon *Conrad*, an infant, in order to humble himſelf before the pope, who was then at *Canoſa*, a place belonging to *Godfrey* and *Mathilda* (S), of whom mention hath already been made.

---

[y] Gob. Pers. Coſm. æt. vi. Chron. Magdeburg. Heiss Hiſt. de l'Emp. l. ii.

The barbarous treatment he received from the pope.

After a journey attended with great fatigue and inconvenience, *Henry* alone was admitted within the outer gate, and given to underſtand, that he had no favour to expect, until he ſhould have faſted three days, ſtanding from morning to evening bare-footed among the ſnow, and then aſked pardon of the pope for the offences he had committed. This penance was literally performed; and on the fourth day, being the twenty-fifth of *January*, he was forgiven, and received abſolution.

This extraordinary accommodation gave great diſguſt to the princes of *Italy*, who never could forgive the inſolence of the pope, nor the abject humility of the emperor. *Henry* himſelf was aſhamed of his own meanneſs, which, however, he excuſed as well as he could to the *Italian* cities and ſtates, by repreſenting the cruel neceſſity to which he had been reduced; and, in order to ſhew how ſenſible he was of the outrage he had ſuffered, he ſoon after declared himſelf the pope's mortal enemy *.

Henry *is depoſed*; A. D. 1077.

Gregory's revenge being thus re-inflamed, he exerted himſelf in embroiling the affairs of *Germany*, and ſucceeded ſo well in his endeavours, that the princes of the empire, under pretext of being diſcharged from their allegiance to

---

* Barr. t. iv. p. 245.

(S) This counteſs *Mathilda* was the true cauſe of all the wars, which, ſince this period, have raged between the emperors and popes. She, in her own right, poſſeſſed great part of *Tuſcany*, *Mantua*, *Parma*, *Reggio*, *Placentia*, *Ferrara*, *Modena*, *Verona*, and almoſt all that is now called the *Patrimony of St. Peter*, from *Viterbo* to *Orvieto*, together with part of *Umbria*, *Spoleto*, and the march of *Ancona*. Her mother, who was ſiſter of *Henry* III. had educated this powerful princeſs in the moſt implacable hatred towards the family of *Henry*, by whom ſhe had been maltreated. *Mathilda* paid the moſt ſubmiſſive obedience to pope *Gregory*, who was her director in all things, and, according to ſome authors, her gallant: nay, her attachment to him, and her hatred to the *Germans*, proceeded ſo far, that ſhe made over all her eſtates to the pope (4).

(4) *Annal. de l'Emp. t.* i. *p.* 195.

Rodolphus *elected emperor;*

Henry, by the pope's excommunication, deprived that prince of the ſovereign dignity, and in his place elected *Rodolphus* duke of *Suabia*, whom they ſolemnly crowned at *Mentz*.[a]

A. D. 1080. *takes the field againſt his rival* Rodolphus, *whom he defeats.*

The emperor, appriſed of this depoſition, ſet out from *Italy* with all imaginable diſpatch, and, taking the field with what troops he could aſſemble, attacked *Rodolphus*, whom he defeated in a battle fought near *Wurtzburg*, from which the duke narrowly eſcaped with his life. Next year, however, he was in a condition to take the field again, and another engagement enſued, in which, after an obſtinate diſpute, the emperor was a ſecond time victorious, and his adverſary intirely overthrown; ſo that *Henry* reduced the whole duchy of *Suabia*, from which he expelled *Berthold*, the ſon-in-law of *Rodolphus*, who had been left for the defence of the country. From this conqueſt, the emperor proceeded into *Saxony*, where he underſtood the partizans of his rival were re-aſſembling forces, and, giving them battle in the month of *January*, obtained a third victory, which was deciſive [b].

His enemies, finding themſelves unable to cope with him in the field, ſollicited the pope to excommunicate him a ſecond time; and *Gregory*, being very well diſpoſed to grant their requeſt, thundered out another ſentence againſt him, confirming at the ſame time the election of *Rodolphus*; to whom he ſent a crown, on which was engraven theſe words:

Petra dedit Petro, Petrus diadema Rodolpho [c] (T).

Henry *calls a national council at* Brixen, *by which*

Henry, in order to defend himſelf from the bad conſequences of this ſecond excommunication, called an aſſembly of the *German* biſhops at *Mentz*, and aſked their opinions about this pretended right of the pope to dethrone an emperor, and whether or no he might not, with juſtice, depoſe *Hildebrand*, and appoint another in his room. Nineteen biſhops then preſent, after having maturely conſidered the affair, propoſed that *Henry* ſhould call in the other biſhops to the conſultation, to be held at *Brixen*; where they accordingly met in a national council. Here it was the unanimous opinion of all, *Italians* as well as *Germans*, that the pope,

---

[a] Hiſt. Bell. Saxon. p. 135.

[b] Heiss, ut ſup.

[c] Barr. t. iv. p. 294.

(T) *Schiphowerus*, in his *Chronicon Oldenburgenſium Archicomitum*, ſays, the inſcription was, *Petra dedit Romam Petro, tibi papa coronam.*

the depoſition of Gregory *is confirmed, and* Clement III. *choſen pope.*

Rodolphus dies of a wound received in a battle againſt the emperor;

inſtead of having power over the emperor, owed him obedience and allegiance; and that *Gregory*, having rendered himſelf unworthy of the papal chair, by his miſconduct and rebellion, ought to be depoſed from the dignity he ſo little deſerved. On this ſuppoſition, thoſe prelates elected, in the room of *Hildebrand*, cardinal *Wiberti*, alias *Guibert* or *Gilbert*, archbiſhop of *Ravenna*, a perſon of unqueſtioned merit, who aſſumed the name of *Clement* III. The emperor promiſed to put this new pope in a condition to repair to *Rome* and expel *Gregory*; but, in the mean time, he was obliged to employ his whole forces to fruſtrate the new efforts of *Rodolphus*, who had already re-aſſembled ſome troops in *Saxony*. *Henry*, therefore, advanced againſt him with great expedition, and the the two armies, engaging near *Merſberg*, fought with great fury; the fortune of the day inclining towards *Rodolphus*, until his hand being cut off by *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, duke of *Lorrain*, who was in the ſervice of the emperor, the rebels were diſcouraged by the miſfortune of their chief, and gave up the advantage they had gained. That nobleman, perceiving his end approaching, ordered the hand he had loſt to be brought to him, and addreſſing himſelf to the officers then preſent, "Behold," ſaid he, "the hand with which I took the oath of allegiance to " *Henry*, which I have violated at the inſtigation of the " court of *Rome*, in perfidiouſly aſpiring to an honour, " which was not my due [d]." Having pronounced theſe words with marks of ſincere penitence, he expired, and was pompouſly interred at *Merſburg* in *Saxony*; his tomb being adorned with the figures of a crown, and other enſigns of royalty. The *Saxons* being afterwards afraid, that *Henry* would take umbrage at theſe honours paid to his rival, would have removed the ornaments; but were prevented by the emperor, who ſaid he ſhould be glad to ſee all his enemies as magnificently interred [e].

who afterwards marches into Italy. A. D. 1081. *Takes* Rome *after a long ſiege,*

THUS delivered from ſuch a formidable antagoniſt, he ſoon diſſipated the reſt of his party; and after having, in ſome meaſure, compoſed the diſturbances in *Germany*, he ſet out for *Italy*, in order to ſettle *Clement* in the papal chair; but, finding the gates of *Rome* ſhut againſt him, he was obliged to attack the city in form, and the ſiege continued upwards of two years and a half; at the end of which it was taken by aſſault, and with difficulty prevented from being plundered, in conſideration of a ſum of money

---

[d] Chron. Oldenburg. Archicom. ex Meib. p. 135. Chron, Magdeb. [e] KRANTZ. l. v.

and expels Gregory;

offered by the inhabitants, with which *Henry* obliged his ſoldiers to be ſatisfied.

GREGORY, dreading no fate ſo much as that of falling into the hands of *Henry*, eſcaped into the caſtle of *Saint Angelo*, which was extremely well fortified; and while he defended himſelf in that retreat, the emperor publiſhed the reaſons which had induced him to depoſe *Gregory* and ſubſtitute *Clement* in his place (U). The *Romans* acquieſced in his motives, and the new pope, being conſecrated with all the uſual ceremonies in the church of *St. Peter*, expreſſed his gratitude by crowning the emperor on *Eaſter-day*, in preſence, and with the applauſe, of the *Roman* ſenate and people; who took the oath of allegiance, as uſual on ſuch occaſions [f].

who retires to Salerno.

MEAN while the attacks were ſtill carried on againſt the caſtle of *St. Angelo*; but the emperor being called into *Lombardy* upon ſome particular affairs, *Guichard* duke of *Apulia* went to *Rome* in his abſence; and having found means to releaſe *Gregory* from his confinement, conducted him to *Salerno*, where he died the following year [g].

A. D. 1085. *Count* Herman *choſen king of the* Romans.

GERMANY being re-involved in new troubles, the emperor did not long enjoy the ſucceſs of this *Italian* expedition. The *Saxons*, who were his inveterate enemies, began to reimbroil the empire; and, ſeveral other princes joining in the conſpiracy, they, at the ſollicitation of *Gregory*, elected count *Herman* of *Luxemburg* king of the *Romans*, and marching into *Franconia*, made war upon thoſe who had adhered to the emperor. *Henry*, alarmed at theſe tranſactions, returned with all poſſible ſpeed to *Germany*, where underſtanding that, in ſome particular aſſemblies of the eccleſiaſtics, ſeveral decrees had been made contrary to his intereſt, in conſequence of the excommunications under which he laboured, he called a general aſſembly at *Mentz*; where, by the unanimous conſent of all the biſhops there preſent, whether *Italian*, *French*, or *German*, the decrees made by *Gre-*

---

[f] Chron. Verd. p. 287. [g] Annal. de l' Emp. t. i. p. 200.

(U) The *Romans* having promiſed to *Henry* they would oblige *Gregory* to crown him, that pope, in order to acquit them of their promiſe, offered to lower down the crown upon the emperor's head from the caſtle of *St. Angelo*; but *Henry* did not reliſh this pleaſant expedient (5).

(5) *Leo Oſtienſ. l.* iii. *c.* 39.

gory againſt *Henry* were annulled, and thoſe of the emperor againſt the pope approved and confirmed. The prelates, who eſpouſed the cauſe of the rebels, were deprived of their benefices, as well as count *Herman* of the title of king of the *Romans*, which he had unjuſtly obtained [h].

Gregory *dies.*
A. D. 1086.

Some days after this aſſembly broke up, *Henry* was informed, that pope *Gregory* was dead at *Salerno* [i], as we have already obſerved, and that the *Romans*, without paying the leaſt regard to *Clement* III. had reſolved to promote to the chair cardinal *Didier*, abbot of *Monte Caſſino*, who happened to be at *Rome*, and fled to his abbey from this elevation; upon which his election was delayed till the feaſt of *Pentecoſt* of the following year.

Herman *is defeated, and* Ecbert *elected in his room.*
1089.

Mean while the emperor, underſtanding that count *Herman*, although depoſed, was making ſtrong efforts to ſupport his pretenſions, he purſued him from place to place, compelled him to abandon his enterprize, and to fly into *Saxony* for refuge. The rebels, thus deprived of their king, elected in his room *Ecbert* marquis of *Thuringia*, who, like his predeceſſor, ſunk under the victorious arms of the emperor, and both came to an untimely end, *Herman* being killed by a ſtone, which was dropt upon his head from a high place, and *Ecbert* being ſlain in a mill, to which he had eſcaped after the loſs of a battle againſt the emperor [k].

Freſh diſturbances in Italy.
1091.

While *Henry* was employed in reducing theſe two competitors, his enemies were buſy in imbroiling his affairs in *Italy*. *Victor* III. who had ſucceeded *Gregory*, enjoyed his promotion but about ten months; but his ſucceſſor, *Urban* II. knowing that his election muſt give umbrage to the emperor, who had not been conſulted in the affair, and being moreover inſtigated againſt him, not only by the counteſs *Mathilda* of *Tuſcany*, who, after the death of her firſt huſband, had married duke *Welphon* of *Bavaria* (Y), but alſo by the *Normans*, he exerted himſelf ſo ſucceſsfully, in conjunction with theſe confederates, that a great part of *Italy* was ſeduced from its allegiance. *Henry*, appriſed of theſe tranſactions, paſſed the *Alps* with a good army, retook all the towns on this ſide the *Po*, and, among the reſt, made himſelf maſter of *Mantua*, after a ſiege of twelve months. He then reduced almoſt all the reſt of *Lombardy*, notwithſtanding the vigorous oppoſition of *Mathilda*, who put herſelf at the head of her troops, and perſonally faced him in the field (Z). The *Romans* ſeeing the progreſs, and dreading the reſentment of *Henry*, in order to appeaſe his wrath, took the opportunity of *Urban*'s abſence to recall *Clement* to *Rome*; upon which the other renewed his excommunications againſt the emperor and the antipope [l].

---

[h] Barr. t. iv. p. 303. [i] Gob. Pers. Coſmod. æt. vi. c. 55. [k] Barr. t. iv. p. 324.

(Y) This duke, otherwiſe called *Guelph*, gave his name to the faction of the popes, which was afterwards diſtinguiſhed by the name of *Guelphs*, while the word *Gibelin* was in the ſequel applied to the emperor's party, becauſe *Henry*, ſon of *Conrad* III. was born at *Gibeling* (7).

(7) *Annales de l'Emp. t.* i. *p.* 202.

Conrad *revolts.*

Mean while *Conrad*, the emperor's eldeſt ſon, diſobliged at ſome haſty expreſſions of his father, lent an ear to the inſinuations of *Mathilda* and the *Normans*, and revolted againſt him; he was joined in this rebellion by his mother-in-law, the empreſs *Adelaide*, daughter of *Udo* marquis of *Brandenburg*, whom the emperor had lately married (A). *Milan* and ſeveral other cities of *Lombardy* joined with this young prince, who aſſumed the title of king of *Italy*, and was actually crowned by *Anſelmo*, archbiſhop of *Milan*, with the conſent of pope *Urban*, *Welphon*, *Mathilda*, and ſeveral dukes and noblemen. Some time after this election, he married the daughter of *Roger* king of *Sicily*, and ſucceeded ſo well in his uſurpation, that the greateſt part of the cities and noblemen were alienated from their obedience to the emperor, who was reduced to the neceſſity of cantoning his army in ſome places of ſtrength, till his affairs ſhould take a more favourable turn [m].

All the provinces of Italy *declare againſt the emperor.*

A. D. 1093. 1095.

A cruſade reſolved upon.

Urban was at this time in *France*, holding the famous council of *Clermont* in *Auvergne*, in which two very important ſubjects were diſcuſſed; namely, the excommunication of

---

[l] Annal. de l'Emp. t. i. p. 203. [m] Heiss Hiſt. l. xi. c. 9. Oth. de Frisingh. in Chron. Sigebert.

(Z) This lady, who was the emperor's couſin, and had been very much indebted to his generoſity, is ſuſpected of having carried on an intrigue with pope *Gregory*, who perſuaded her to bequeath her lands to the holy ſee (8).

(A) *Henry*, who was of a very capricious diſpoſition, had maltreated and even confined the empreſs; who, eſcaping from her priſon, fled to *Rome*, and joined *Conrad* (9).

(8) *Lamber. Schafnab. ad ann.* 1077. *Waltram. Leo Oſtienſ.* (9) *Barr. t. iv. p.* 331.

Philip I. of *France*, and the reſolution to promote a cruſade, for the relief of the Chriſtians in the *Levant*, and the rerecovery of the *Holy Land* *. *Henry* conſidered the pope's abſence as a favourable opportunity of retrieving his affairs in *Italy* by the intrigues of *Clement* at *Rome*; but he found his ſon *Conrad* ſo well eſtabliſhed in his throne, and ſo powerfully reinforced by the alliance of the king of *Sicily*, that he deſpaired of reducing him to obedience, and returned to his *German* dominions. He was no ſooner arrived at *Cologne*, than he aſſembled the princes, who put *Conrad* to the ban of the empire, and declared his ſon *Henry* king of the *Romans*; upon which he was crowned at *Aix la Chapelle*, after having promiſed, upon oath, never to meddle in the affairs of the empire without the conſent of his father [n] (B). Mean-while the city of *Ratiſbon* was aſſigned as the place of his reſidence, and the emperor entertained hopes of enjoying that tranquility which hitherto he had never known; for the chiefs of the rebels were by this time dead, and an accommodation was made with the *Saxons* and *Bavarians*. But the very meaſures he took to re-eſtabliſh juſtice and good order, which had been baniſhed by the licence of war, produced freſh diſturbances and diſquiets, which inceſſantly harraſſed him in the latter part of his life.

A. D. 1099. Henry, *the emperor's ſecond ſon, is choſen king of the* Romans.

THE archbiſhop of *Mentz*, conſcious to himſelf of having been concerned in ſome conſiderable diſorders, of which the emperor intended to take cognizance, fled into *Thuringia*, and declared in favour of the other faction, which now began to revive, and beſtir itſelf, at the inſtigation of *Gebehard*, biſhop of *Conſtance*; for *Paſcal* II. who ſucceeded *Urban* in the papacy, had ſent a commiſſion to this prelate, to ſupport the pretenſions of *Henry*, whom he reſolved to ſet up in oppoſition to his father. Nothing chagrined the emperor ſo much as the preſumption of the *Roman* church, in electing popes in contempt of his authority; and his reſentment of this conduct, which he looked upon as downright rebellion, was the rock upon which he ſplit; for, after the death of *Clement*, he appointed ſucceſſively three antipopes, *Albert*, *Theodoric*, and *Maniulphus*; two of whom were ſhut up in cloiſters, and the third overtaken by ſudden death. Theſe meaſures, which he took in order to preſerve the rights of the empire, ſerved to foment the enmity of the *Romans*, ſo that *Paſcal* II. finding himſelf in peaceable poſſeſſion of the chair, called a council at *Rome*, where the emperor was ſummoned to appear; and, as he did not obey the citation, excommunicated anew, for having introduced the ſchiſms into the church. At the ſame time they confirmed all that *Urban* and *Gregory* had done to his prejudice[o]. But it was by the arts and induſtry of his adverſaries in *Germany*, that his own ſon *Henry* was engaged in a rebellion againſt him. The pretext, however, of this young prince, whoſe ambition had been flattered, was neceſſity and zeal for religion. He alleged, that the ſubjects, being diſcharged from their allegiance to his father, he was obliged to take the reins of government into his own hands; and that, the laws of the church being preferable to thoſe of nature, he could not acknowlege *Henry* for his father, until he ſhould be abſolved from the excommunication of the pope[p]. In vain did the emperor uſe paternal remonſtrances to diſſuade his ſon from proceeding to extremities. The breach became wider and wider, and at laſt they openly took the field againſt each other, and the armies met at *Ratiſbon*, when the father, finding himſelf too weak to hazard a battle, retreated towards *Bohemia*; while the ſon, marching to *Spire*, made himſelf maſter of that city, and ſeized upon the treaſures of the emperor, which were there depoſited.

---

* De his, vide Ant. Hiſt. vol. xvii. p. 146, & ſeq.

[n] Chron. Magdeb. Oſenburg. Archicom. GOB. PERS. ex Meib.

(B) *Gobelinus Perſona* ſays, that *Conrad* conſented to this election. He is ſaid to have been a prince of a mild diſpoſition, and virtuous life, and to have ended his days at *Florence*, A. D. 1101 (10).

(10) *Joh. Avent. l.* v. *Ann. Boic. Krantz. l.* v. *Sax. c.* xv. *p.* 472.

A. D. 1105. *He is perſuaded to take arms againſt his father;*

ELATED with this ſucceſs, he fixed a day for the princes to aſſemble at *Mentz*; and, underſtanding that the emperor was reſolved to be preſent with a very powerful army, he, in order to fruſtrate this intention, which might be fatal to his cauſe, had recourſe to an expedient, which was equally perfidious and effectual. Knowing the tenderneſs of his father's diſpoſition, he repaired to *Coblentz*, and throwing himſelf at the emperor's feet, begged pardon for his undutiful behaviour, which he imputed to the advice of evil counſellors. Being, in conſequence of this ſubmiſſion, immediately taken into favour, he perſuaded him to diſband his army, for fear of giving umbrage to the princes. Then they ſet out together for *Bingenheim*, where the ſon inſinuating that his father might run ſome riſque of being detained by the archbiſhop of *Mentz*, ſhould he enter that city, and unwilling to go thither and negociate a reconciliation between him and the princes of the diet, the emperor agreed to remain where he was, in expectation of that happy event; but he was next day confined to his chamber by this ungracious ſon, who forthwith repaired to the diet; at which the pope's legates having repeated the ſentence of excommunication, *Henry* IV. was diveſted of the imperial dignity, and his ſon proclaimed emperor with the unanimous conſent of the whole aſſembly [a] (C).

---

[o] BARON. ad ann. 1102.

[p] SPICILEG. t. xii. p. 446.

A. D. 1106. *who is ſolemnly depoſed;*

This ceremony being performed, the archbiſhops of Mentz and *Cologne*, together with the biſhop of *Worms*, were ſent as deputies to the father to intimate his depoſition, and demand the crown and other regalia. *Henry* received this deputation with equal ſurprize and concern; and deſiring to know for what reaſon he was ſo cruelly dealt with by his own ſubjects, the archbiſhop of *Mentz* replied, that on account of the ſchiſms he had introduced in the church, and the ſcandalous manner in which he had ſet biſhoprics to ſale, he had been deemed unworthy of partaking the holy communion, and conſequently of wearing the imperial crown. The emperor, extremely mortified at this inſolent declaration, "If (ſaid he) we have proſtituted the benefices of the church "for hire, you yourſelves are the moſt proper perſons to "convict us of that ſimony. Say then, I adjure you, in the "name of the eternal God, what have we exacted, or what "have we received, for having promoted you to the digni"ties you now enjoy?" When they acknowleged he was innocent as far as regarded their preferment: "and yet (continued he) the archbiſhoprics of *Mentz* and *Cologne*, being "two of the beſt in our diſpoſal, we might have filled our "coffers by expoſing them to ſale: nevertheleſs we beſtowed "them upon you out of our free grace and favour; and a "worthy return you now make for our benevolence. Do "not, we beſeech you, become partizans of thoſe who have "lifted up their hands againſt their lord and maſter, in defiance of faith, gratitude, and allegiance. Alas! we already "begin to ſink under the burden of years and ſorrow, and "but a little of our mortal pilgrimage is left unperformed. "Suffer that little to be concluded in peace, and ſeek not to "terminate our glory with miſery and ſhame." The deputies, unmoved by this pathetic addreſs, and inſiſting upon his complying with the purport of their errand, he retired into his chamber, where he put on his royal ornaments; then returning to the apartment which he had left, and ſeating himſelf in a chair of ſtate, renewed his remonſtrance to this effect. "Here are the marks of that royalty, with "which we were inveſted by God, and the princes of the "empire; if you diſregard the wrath of heaven, and the "eternal reproach of mankind, ſo much as to lay violent "hands on your ſovereign, you may ſtrip us of them by "force; we are not in a condition to defend ourſelves from "the inſult." This expoſtulation had no more effect than the former upon the biſhops, who forthwith ſnatched the crown from his head, and dragging him from his chair, pulled off his royal robes by force. While they were thus employed, "Great God! (cried he, the tears trickling down "his cheeks), thou art the God of vengeance, and wilt "avenge this outrage. I have ſinned, I own, and merited "this ſhame by the follies of my youth; but thou wilt not "fail to puniſh theſe traitors for their perjury, inſolence, and "ingratitude [r]."

---

[a] Ibid. Krantz. l. v, Saxon. c. 18, & 20. Barr. t. iv. p. 375.

(C) We find in the *Conſtitutions of Goldaſtus* a letter from the emperor to his ſon, couched in theſe terms: "Allow me to "remain at *Liege*, if not as an "emperor, at leaſt as a refugee. "Let it not be ſaid to my "shame, or rather to your's, "that I am forced to beg a "new aſylum in *Eaſter* time. "If you grant me this requeſt, "I ſhall think myſelf greatly "obliged to you for the fa"vour; if you refuſe me, I "will rather live as a cottager "in ſome foreign country, than "ſtroll about in this manner "from one diſgrace to an"other, through an empire "which was once my own "(11)."

(11) *Annal. de l'Emp. t. i. p.* 209.

ſtript of his royal ornaments;

Henry the ſon, having thus got poſſeſſion of the throne, was deſirous of acquitting himſelf in ſome ſhape of the violence which had been exerciſed upon his father, who juſtly complained, that he had been condemned unheard. With this view he convened, at *Ingelheim*, thoſe of the princes who were intirely devoted to his intereſt, in order to oblige the old emperor to make a voluntary reſignation in his favour. There, this unfortunate prince, looking upon himſelf as a dying man, is ſaid to have implored forgiveneſs of

---

[r] Ibid. Heiss Hiſt. l. xi. c. 9.

A. D. 1106.

and afterwards makes a voluntary reſignation of his crown.

all thoſe whom he had offended, and to have thrown himſelf at the feet of the pope's legate, who was preſent; beſeeching that prelate to abſolve him from the ſentence of excommunication; but his requeſt was refuſed, on pretence that he could receive abſolution from no other than the pope himſelf.

His extreme wretchedneſs.

To ſuch a degree of wretchedneſs was this unhappy prince reduced, by the barbarity of his ſon, that, being deſtitute of the common neceſſaries of life, he intreated *Gertrad*, whom he had created biſhop of *Spire*, to beſtow upon him a canonicate for his ſubſiſtence, in that very cathedral which had been founded, built, and endowed, by his anceſtors and himſelf. Here again he met with a repulſe from the biſhop, who told him, that he durſt not grant his requeſt without permiſſion from the pope; upon which the emperor ſhed a flood of tears, and turning to thoſe who were preſent, ſaid, with a deep ſigh, "My dear friends, at leaſt have pity on my "condition, for I am touched by the hand of the Lord." Thus was *Henry* IV. reduced from the higheſt pinacle of greatneſs, to the loweſt abyſs of indigence and mortification, being diveſted of his honours, deprived of ſupport, abandoned by his own ſon, his relations, and even thoſe whom his bounty had enriched; and, to crown his misfortunes, he was kept in cloſe confinement, by order of the new emperor.

He makes an effort to retrieve his affairs, but dies at at Liege. 1106.

In the midſt of theſe diſtreſſes, when every body thought his courage was utterly extinguiſhed, and his ſoul overwhelmed with deſpondence, he found means to eſcape from his keepers and reach *Cologn*, where he was received and recognized as lawful emperor. From thence he repaired to the *Low Countries*, where he found friends, who raiſed a conſiderable body of troops to facilitate his reſtoration, and ſent circular letters to all the princes in Chriſtendom, in order to intereſt them in his misfortune. He even wrote to the pope, giving him to underſtand he was inclined to an accommodation, provided it could be made without prejudice to his crown; but before any thing material could be executed in his favour, he died at *Liege*, in the 56th year of his age, and the 49th of his reign. His body was magnificently interred in the cathedral of that city; but, his ſon afterwards ordered it to be dug up, and depoſited in the chapel of *St. Afron*, where it remained five years unburied, on account of his excommuncation.

Such was the end of *Henry* IV. a prince of great courage and excellent endowments, who, had not he alienated the affections of his ſubjects by the exceſſes of his youth (C), and attracted the enmity and oppoſition of the *Roman* church, in obſtinately adhering to the rights of his prerogative, would have eclipſed the glory of all his anceſtors, and finiſhed his reign with honour and univerſal applauſe. There was an air of dignity in his appearance, that beſpoke the greatneſs of his ſoul: he poſſeſſed a natural fund of eloquence and vivacity, was of a mild and merciful temper, extremely charitable (D), and an admirable pattern of fortitude and reſignation. From the twelfth year of his age he had been continually engaged in war, commanded perſonally in threeſcore pitched battles, in which he was generally victorious, and ſurvived a great many ſecret attempts that were made upon his life [a] (E).

---

[a] Heiss, l. ii. c. ix. Gob. Pers. æt. vi. Chron. Magdeburg. Bremens. Oldenburg. Archecomit. ex Meibom. tom. ii. Baron, tom. xiii. p. 43. Leo Oſtienſ. Mach. Iſtor di Firenz.

(C) He is charged with having maltreated his wife, and even to have hired a perſon to ſeduce her from her conjugal faith, that he might have a pretence for obtaining a divorce. He is alſo accuſed of having entered into engagements with the *Danes*, by which he obliged himſelf to yield to them all the provinces that were contiguous to their kingdom, in conſideration of their aſſiſting him againſt all his enemies, particularly the *Saxons*. There are many more circumſtances of his profligacy and wickedneſs related; but as the authors of theſe ſtories are either monks or *Saxons*, they ought to be read with caution.

(D) He is ſaid to have entertained the blind, the lame, and the ſick, at his own table, and even to have lodged them in his own apartment, that he might be at hand to miniſter to their neceſſities.

(E) While he was at *Rome*, after the depoſition of pope *Gregory* VII. a perſon had placed himſelf upon a beam in the church, with a great ſtone, which he intended to have let fall upon *Henry*'s head, while he ſhould be employed at his devotion: but before he could execute his purpoſe, he fell down and daſhed his brains out, in ſight of the emperor. Some other people were taken in the very fact of endeavouring to thruſt a ſpear up through his body, while he was in the houſe of office; who being brought before him, he diſmiſſed them with impunity (1).

(1) *Heiſs, liv.* ii. *c. ix.*

HENRY V.

HENRY V. ſurnamed *the Young*, having (as above related) obtained poſſeſſion of the throne (F), was, in the beginning of his reign, ſo favourable to the clergy, in every particular, that he ſeemed to neglect intirely thoſe rights of the imperial authority, which his father had defended at the hazard of his honour, his fortune, and his life. Nevertheleſs, he ſoon changed his conduct; whether he thought himſelf ſufficiently eſtabliſhed upon the throne, to pull off the maſk which he had hitherto wore through policy, or that he found himſelf deceived in the intentions of the *Roman* church. The firſt mortification he received was from *Paſchal* II. who, about two months after the death of the late emperor, held a council at *Guaſtala* upon the *Po*, by which all the decrees of his predeceſſors againſt inveſtitures were renewed [t].

HENRY, though extremely piqued at theſe proceedings, diſſembled his reſentment, becauſe he did not as yet find himſelf in a condition to oppoſe the court of *Rome*, and invited the pope into *Germany*, where their difference might be brought to an amicable termination: but *Paſchal*, who was well acquainted with *Henry*'s haughty and implacable diſpoſition, inſtead of complying with his requeſt, thought proper to take a different route, and put himſelf under the protection of *Philip*, king of *France* [u].

Henry V. *invites the pope to a conference.*

THO' the emperor was very much diſturbed at the honourable reception which the pope had met with from that monarch, he did not chuſe to embroil himſelf with ſuch a powerful neighbour; but, on the contrary, ſollicited his friendſhip, and deſired that he would mediate an accommodation between him and his holineſs. A conference was accordingly held at *Chalons* in *Champaigne*, where nothing was agreed upon, becauſe the pope would not conſent to the article of inveſtiture, which *Henry*'s ambaſſadors would by no means give up [x].

---

[t] Conc. Gener. t. x. p. 748. [u] SUGER. vit Ludovici, c. ix. [x] SUGER. Abb. S. Dion. de vit. Lud. Groſ. DUCHESNE, tom. iv. p. 291.

(F) While he was at *Goſlar*, holding the diet, he was ſtruck with a ball of fire that wounded him in the right leg, broke off the point of his ſword, and ſhattered his buckler in pieces (1).

(1) *Gob. Perſ. Coſmod. æt.* vi.

A. D. After this unſucceſsful meeting, *Paſchal* held a
1107. at *Troyes*, and the emperor convoked a diet at *Ment*
German biſhops declared for the emperor's right of
ture, and the fathers of the council adhered to the
of the preceding popes, unleſs *Henry* ſhould, withi
repair to *Rome*, and leave his cauſe to the determi
a general council.

In the midſt of theſe diſputes the emperor would no
his other affairs. *Borziwoi*, duke of *Bohemia*, being
his dominions by his nephew *Suantopelkon*, had recour
aſſiſtance of the emperor, who ſummoned the uſurp
court, where he was put in irons, and furniſhed
with ſome troops, to re-conduct him to his own do
but *Suantopelkon*'s brother, *Otho*, being at the he
good army, oppoſed his re-eſtabliſhment; and the
finding means to detach *Henry* from his intereſt wit
large ſum of money, *Borziwoi* was obliged to tak
with *Boleſlaus*, king of *Poland*, who received him wi
hoſpitality.

He invades Hungary. The emperor, thus furniſhed with the ſinews of
ſolved, with the approbation of a diet convened at
fort, to puniſh *Coloman*, king of *Hungary*, for havi
concerned in the maſſacre of the *German* cruſards,
the preceding reign, and marching into his kingd
netrated to *Preſburg*, which he inveſted in vain;
army being greatly diminiſhed by ſickneſs, he rai
ſiege, and laid waſte the country. Mean while *Colo*
gaged in a league, offenſive and defenſive, with *B*
who not only ſent him a reinforcement of troops to
the progreſs of the emperor, but alſo, under pret
aſſiſting his gueſt *Borziwoi*, advanced into *Bohemia*,
the country under contribution; ſo that *Suantopelko*
had joined the emperor, was obliged to quit *Hung*
order to defend his own dominions [y].

Goes to war with the Poles, *and is worſted.* 1109. Henry, thus weakened, retired into *Bavaria*, in
to recruit his forces; and being inflamed with reſ
againſt *Boleſlaus*, for having fruſtrated his revenge
Coloman, he reſolved upon the conqueſt of *Sileſia*,
though at that time belonging to the *Poles*, had f
been part of the empire. With this view he adva
far as *Glogau*, which he inveſted; but the inhabitan
ing a gallant defence, he was obliged to raiſe the ſie
retire. He then attacked *Breſlau*, when *Boleſlaus*,
Poland, who had aſſumed the name of king, coming

---

[y] Hiſt. Bohem. l. x.

relief, a general battle enſued, in which the *Poles* were vanquiſhed, and obliged to ſend an ambaſſador to *Henry* to ſue for peace [z] (G). *Boleſlaus*, however, not reliſhing the terms which the emperor wanted to impoſe, reſolved to try once more his fortune in the field, and the two armies engaging near *Breſlau*, the *Germans* were defeated after a very obſtinate diſpute [a]. The loſs of this battle induced *Henry* to deſiſt from his enterprize upon *Sileſia*, and return to the diſcuſſion of his affairs with the pope. With this view he aſſembled a diet at *Ratiſbon*, which, after mature deliberation, granted him the neceſſary ſuccours to maintain the rights of his crown in *Italy*. Thus re-inforced, he croſſed the *Alps* with an army of 80,000 men, being alſo accompanied by a great part of the quality, and a number of perſons who underſtood the rights and conſtitution of the empire, that he might be in a condition to do himſelf juſtice, either by negotiation or force of arms: but before his departure, he married *Mathilda*, daughter of *Henry* I. king of *England*, with whom he received an immenſe ſum of money by way of dower, levied by a tax upon every hide of land in that kingdom. In his march through *Tuſcany*, he took ſome cities that attempted to diſpute his paſſage, and kept his *Chriſtmas* at *Florence*. From thence he ſent a ſplendid embaſſy to *Paſchal*, with ſolemn profeſſions of veneration for the holy ſee, and the pope did not fail to return the civility. Then a convention was held at *Sutri*, and a treaty of peace concluded to the intire ſatisfaction of the emperor; who obtained all, and even more than he demanded. But all theſe conceſſions were made merely with a view to amuſe him, until the pope could take more effectual meaſures for his own intereſt.

A. D. 1110. *Marches into* Italy, *and makes peace with the pope.*

---

[z] GOB. PERS. ubi ſupra.

[a] HEISS, l. ii. c. x.

(G) The name of this ambaſſador was *Scrobius*, to whom the emperor talked in very high terms, telling him, the *Poles* had no peace to expect, unleſs they would become tributary to the empire: and, in order to convince him that they were not able to ſupport a war againſt him, he ordered his people to ſhew his treaſures to the ambaſſador, who taking off his ring threw it into the heap, ſaying with a ſmile, "Here is "ſomething to augment the "ſtore." Upon which *Henry* replied in the *German* language, *Habdank*, which ſignifies I thank you; and the family of *Scrobius* was diſtinguiſhed by that name (1).

(1) *Heiſs*, *liv.* ii. c. x.

Makes his entry into Rome, A. D. 1111.

On the very day of the emperor's entry into *Rome*, w was alſo fixed for his coronation, ſeveral perſons belong to his train were inſulted, and even impriſoned by the po lace. When the treaty of peace was read, in preſence of princes of the empire and *Italian* prelates, it was forma oppoſed by theſe laſt, who were by the pope privately t tored for the purpoſe, and the debates which their obje tions occaſioned continued till night. The emperor fin ing himſelf duped, gave orders to ſeize the perſon of th pope, who had equivocated in ſuch a ſcandalous manner and the ſoldiers, employed in the execution of this orde ruſhing tumultuouſly into the churches, maltreated the ca dinals and biſhops without diſtinction. The conſul put t citizens in arms, and next day a battle enſued, in whic *Henry* fought in perſon with great courage. In a wor the *Romans* were defeated, and the carnage was ſo gre that the waters of the *Tiber* were ſtained with blood[b]. Th pope was taken priſoner, together with ſeveral cardinal biſhops, and principal citizens of *Rome*; and the emper having ordered the walls to be razed in ſeveral places, e camped in the open field, where he detained his priſone during the whole time of *Lent*, and the *Eaſter* holiday The pope was earneſtly intreated by his fellow priſoners renounce the right of inveſtiture to the emperor, and crow him according to his deſire, that they might obtain th liberty; but he reſiſted all their importunities, until *Hen* gave orders to behead his friends in his preſence: up which he thought proper to comply with the emperor's c mands, and the former accommodation was renewed and r tified[c] (H).

where his troops make dreadful havock.

The pope is prevailed upon to renew the treaty;

---

[b] Chron. Oldenb. Arch. ex Meib. p. 139. Ducheſne ſupra. [c] Iidem ibid.

(H) This accommodation contained theſe articles: that the emperor ſhould uſe the croſs and ring, in inveſting thoſe who were canonically elected with his conſent; and that they ſhould afterwards be conſecrated according to the forms of the church, but never before they ſhould have received the inveſtiture; that the archbiſhops and biſhops might without ſcruple conſecrate thoſe who ſho be in this manner inveſted the emperor; and, finally, t the pope ſhould never exco municate the emperor; nor, on any pretext whatſoever, fringe any condition of this tr ty. To theſe articles, the p and ſixteen cardinals ſolem ſwore upon the holy evan liſts (1).

(1) *Dodechin, in Append. ad Marian. Scot.*

Th

THIS treaty being concluded, the pope and the other priſoners were releaſed, and *Henry* was crowned on the firſt *Sunday* after *Eaſter*, when the pope dividing the hoſt, gave one half to the emperor, and took the other to himſelf, in token of perfect reconciliation (I). A new bull was publiſhed to confirm the treaty, leſt the pope ſhould afterwards pretend the former was extorted from him, during his confinement. Then the emperor, having confirmed the privileges of the *Romans*, and diſtributed largeſſes among the clergy, ſet out on his return to *Germany*, the pope, with ſeveral cardinals and prelates, accompanying him as far as the *Alps*. The firſt thing he did, when he arrived in his own dominions, was to beſtow a magnificent funeral upon the body of his father, which had remained ſo long unburied, merely becauſe that prince had maintained the right of inveſtiture, now ſolemnly confirmed by the pope himſelf. Indeed it ſoon appeared, that the court of *Rome* was not at all ſincere in the conceſſions which it had made; for though *Paſchal* himſelf ſtill preſerved the exteriors of friendſhip and good faith, his legates, and among the reſt the archbiſhop of *Vienne* in *Dauphiny*, did not fail to excommunicate the emperor in national councils. Nay, even the eccleſiaſtic princes of the empire refuſed to recognize or receive the bull touching the inveſtiture of benefices: and *Albert*, or *Adelbert*, whom the emperor had raiſed to the archbiſhopric of *Mentz*, intrigued ſo ſucceſsfully in favour of the pope, that the ſubſequent diet declared, his holineſs had a right to revoke that bull in council. It was accordingly annulled by a council of the *Lateran*, which ordered the bull to be burnt, and the emperor to be excommunicated [d], though the pope refuſed his aſſent to the decree, on account of the oath he had taken. The archbiſhops, biſhops, and chapters, finding themſelves thus authorized by the court of *Rome*, reſolved to maintain their power of filling their vacant ſees without the interpoſition of the emperor, and the whole empire was re-involved in trouble and diſſenſion.

and the emperor returns to Germany.

Is excommunicated by the archbiſhop of Vienne *in* Dauphiny.

A.D. 1112.

The council of Lateran *annul his treaty with the pope.*

A REBELLION breaking out in *Saxony*, *Henry* marched thither, ſecured the perſon of the archbiſhop, who had fo-

Troubles of Germany.

---

[d] GOBEL. PERS. æt. vi. c. 57.

(I) In dividing the hoſt, he pronounced an anathema to this effect. "As I divide the "body of the Lord, ſo may "he be divided from Chriſt "and his kingdom, who ſhall "attempt to violate this accom-"modation (1)."

(1) *Chronic. Belg.*

A. D. 1114. mented the diſturbance, and laid waſte the whole country; but in his return he was encountered, in a place called *Welpeſhold*, by *Lotharius*, duke of *Saxony*, *Frederic* count *Arneſberg*, and *Reynerus*, biſhop of *Halberſtad*, who had aſſembled a body of troops to oppoſe him; and after a very obſtinate battle, he was obliged to retreat with great loſs. After this battle *Lotharius* entered *Goſlar* in triumph, where an aſſembly of biſhops and noblemen being convened, *Henry* and his adherents were excommunicated. Indeed, by this time he was almoſt quite abandoned by his ſubjects, and muſt have fallen a victim to rebellion and the intrigues of *Rome*, had not his cauſe been ſupported by the valour and ſucceſs of his nephew *Frederic*, duke of *Suabia* and *Alſace*, ſurnamed *Monoculus*, whom he promoted to the ſupreme command of his army [e].

Henry *marches to* Italy. 1115. MATHILDA dying about this time, *Henry*, as her neareſt relation, claimed the ſucceſſion, notwithſtanding the ſteps ſhe had taken in favour of the holy ſee, alleging, that it was not in her power to alienate her eſtates, which immediately depended upon the empire. He therefore ſet out for *Lombardy*, and ſent ambaſſadors to *Rome*, beſeeching the pope to revoke the ſentence of excommunication which had been fulminated againſt him, expreſly contrary to their laſt agreement. *Paſchal* would not even favour his deputies with an audience; but, that ſame year, convoked a council at *Rome*, where his treaty with the emperor was condemned, and all the ſteps which had been taken by the national councils were confirmed.

1117. HENRY, ſhocked and incenſed at theſe proceedings, advanced towards *Rome*, in order to diſſipate the pernicious projects which were daily formed to his prejudice; and the pope, who was well acquainted with his diſpoſition, thought proper to retire into *Apulia*. In this march he ſecured ſeveral towns and caſtles, and gained over divers noblemen to his intereſt, particularly *Ptolemy*, count of *Tuſculum*, the chief of the adverſe party, who prevailed upon the *Roman* people to decree a triumph to the emperor. He was accordingly received at *Rome* with extraordinary magnificence; and doubting the validity of his former coronation, which had been performed by a perſon who had retracted all he had done upon that occaſion, he reſolved that the ceremony *Is again crowned at* Rome. ſhould be repeated, and was actually crowned a ſecond time in the church of St. *Peter*, by the hands of *Maurius Burdi-*

---

[e] OTHON. Friſing de Geſtis Frederic I. c. 10.

nus, archbiſhop of *Prague*, who had attended him in this expedition [f].

Paſchal *dies, and is ſucceeded by* Gelaſius II. *whom the emperor expels, and appoints* Burdinus *in his room.*

HENRY having retired into *Tuſcany*, on account of the heats, *Paſchal* privately returned to *Rome*, where he died in two days; and on the third after his deceaſe, cardinal *Cajetan* was elected in his room, under the name of *Gelaſius* II. without the privity of the emperor, who, enraged at their preſumption, made long marches, in order to ſurprize this new pope, who made his eſcape to *Gaeta* with great difficulty. *Henry*, however, declared his election void, and in his place appointed *Burdinus*, who aſſumed the name of *Gregory* VIII, revoked the ſentence of excommunication againſt the emperor, and confirmed his right of inveſtiture. But all theſe meaſures ſerved no other purpoſe than that of giving a handle to *Gelaſius* for excommunicating *Henry*, together with the antipope he had ſet up [g].

Henry *ſets out for* Germany.

THIS was all the fruit he reaped from his expedition into *Italy*; for ſeeing the true pope protected by all the princes of *Apulia*, againſt whom he had not a ſufficient number of troops to make head, he returned to his *German* dominions, leaving a guard with *Gregory* at *Rome*, where *Gelaſius*, having made an effectual attempt to eſtabliſh himſelf, was fain to deſiſt, after his life had been in imminent danger. He then retired into *France*, and died at the abbey of *Cluny*, when the cardinals then preſent elected the cardinal archbiſhop of *Vienne*, legate of the holy ſee in *France*, who, as we have already ſaid, had excommunicated the emperor in the national councils. The noblemen of *Saxony* and *Weſtphalia* entered into an aſſociation, to defend themſelves againſt the reſentment of the emperor; and having levied troops, under the command of duke *Lotharius*, *Frederic* count *Palatine*, and the marquis *Rodolphus*, they ſent deputies to *Henry*, demanding that he would acknowlege *Calixtus* for pope, and reſtore to the right owners the fiefs and eſtates he had ſeized by violence and injuſtice. *Henry* refuſing to give them audience, they took the field with a conſiderable army; and the emperor aſſembling troops to chaſtiſe them for their preſumption, hoſtilities immediately enſued. The operations of the campaign were carried on with various ſucceſs, until the ardour on both ſides began to abate, and ſteps were taken towards an accommodation [h].

Calixtus *is choſen pope*, A. D. 1119.

---

[f] HEISS, l. ii. c. 10. DUCHESNE, tom. iv. p. 310. PETR. DIAC. l. iv. c. 6.

[g] BARON, ad ann. 1118, p. 122.

[h] BARRE, tom, iv. p. 500.

between whom and the emperor a negociation is ſet on foot;

MEAN while the new pope called an aſſembly at *Rheims*; and the ſtates of the empire meeting that ſame year at *Tribur*, between *Mentz* and *Worms*, gave the emperor to underſtand, that they were quite tired with this long quarrel, which had been ſo troubleſome to the empire. In conſequence of this remonſtrance, a negociation was ſet on foot: the emperor abated ſomewhat in his pretenſions, with regard to the form of inveſtitures, the pope promiſed to take off the ſentences of excommunication, writings were exchanged, and a day fixed for an interview at *Monzon*. Towards this place the emperor advanced with an army of 30,000 men; and the pope taking umbrage at ſuch a train, halted by the way in a ſtrong caſtle, from whence he ſent his legates to *Henry*, deſiring to know if he ſtill perſiſted in the ſentiments he had lately profeſſed: but when he underſtood that the emperor had changed his mind, denied his own hand writing, and become inexorable on the article of inveſtiture, he ſet out on his return to *Rheims* without delay; nor could the repeated intreaties of the emperor prevail upon him to ſtay one ſingle day, until the princes could be conſulted. He had conceived ſuch a terrible idea of the treatment his predeceſſor had met with at *Rome*, that he purſued his journey with incredible expedition, detained the council a few days longer, until a decree was paſſed, prohibiting eccleſiaſtics from receiving the inveſtiture of biſhoprics and abbies from the hands of laics; and the emperor, with the antipope and all their adherents, were again excommunicated ‡.

but miſcarries.

A. D. 1120.

Calixtus *repairs to* Rome, *and ſhuts up the antipope in a convent.*

NEXT year *Calixtus* arrived at *Rome*, where he was honourably received. Upon which *Gregory* VIII. retired to *Sutri*, a ſtrong town, garriſoned by the emperor's troops, who were not, however, able to protect him from the enmity of his rival; for the princes of *Apulia* ſent an army to beſiege the place of his retreat: and he at length fell into the hands of his competitor, who ordered him to be mounted on a camel, with his face towards the tail, and conducted through the public ſtreets of *Rome*, amidſt the ſcoffs and inſults of the populace; after which proceſſion, he was ſhut up in a convent for life (K).

---

‡ Act. Concil, p. 478.

(K) In this proceſſion, the antipope was cloathed with raw and bloody goats ſkins: and afterwards a picture was hung up in the palace, repreſenting him trampled upon by the true pope (1).

(1) *Sug. Abb. de Vit. Lud. Groſs. ex Du Cheſne, tom.* iv. *p.* 312.

Foments a rebellion in the empire which is terminated by accommodation.

In the mean time the archbiſhop of *Mentz*, inſtigated by the intrigues and authorized by the decrees of *Rome*, formed a powerful league againſt the emperor and his partizans, who were branded with the name of ſchiſmatics: armies were raiſed on both ſides, and a great deal of blood muſt have been ſpilt, had not the wiſeſt and moſt conſiderable of each party interpoſed and effected an accommodation. The emperor was unanimouſly ſupplicated to give peace to the empire. That prince referred himſelf intirely to the deciſion of the ſtates; and a diet being aſſembled at *Wurtzburg*, it was decreed, that an embaſſy ſhould be immediately ſent to the pope, deſiring he would convoke a general council at *Rome*, by which all conteſts might be determined [k].

The affair of inveſtitures ſettled to the mutual ſatisfaction of Henry *and the pope.* A.D. 1122.

In compliance with this requeſt, *Calixtus* called the famous council, which was opened during *Lent*, and at which were preſent 300 biſhops, and about 700 abbots. The ambaſſadors being heard before this grand aſſembly, the affair of inveſtitures was at length regulated with their conſent, in the following articles: that the emperor ſhould leave the chapters and communities at liberty to fill up their own vacancies, without his beſtowing inveſtitures with the croſs and ring; that he ſhould reſtore all that had been unjuſtly taken from the church; that all elections ſhould be made in a canonical manner, in preſence of the emperor or his commiſſaries; and whatever diſputes might happen, ſhould be referred to the deciſion of the emperor, aſſiſted by the metropolitan and his ſuffragans; that the perſon elected ſhould receive from the emperor the inveſtiture of the fiefs and ſecular rights, not with the croſs, but with the ſceptre, and that he ſhould pay allegiance to him for theſe rights only; laſtly, that for this ceremony ſix months ſhould be allowed to thoſe who lived at a diſtance from the empire [l].

This treaty being read and ratified by the diet at *Worms*, the cardinal of *Oſtia*, the pope's firſt legate, who had accompanied the ambaſſadors in their return, gave abſolution to the emperor, and all his ſchiſmatic adherents [m]; then ſaid maſs in his pontificals, and adminiſtered the ſacrament to *Henry*, as the laſt mark of a perfect reconciliation.

Thus ended that tedious conteſt which had raiſed ſo many diſturbances, and coſt ſuch a world of blood and treaſure. But as, in this accommodation, no mention had been made of the emperor's right to create or intermeddle in the election of popes, *Calixtus* was no ſooner dead, than the cardinals, clergy, and people of *Rome*, without the particip of *Henry*, proceeded to a new election, which was ca on with ſuch diſorder, that two perſons were choſen a ſame time, namely, *Theobald*, who was called *Celeſtin*, *Lambert*, cardinal biſhop of *Oſtia*. He aſſumed the app tion of *Honorius* II. and was confirmed in the papacy, u the voluntary reſignation of his competitor.

---

[k] Barre, t iv. p. 518.

[l] Arn. Buch. in Notis ad Wilhelm. Hedam, p. 154.

[m] Gob. Pers. ubi ſupra.

Honorius II. *is elected pope*, A. D. 1124.

Henry *is engaged in a civil war*,

AFTER his accommodation with *Rome*, the emperor engaged in a civil war, by the revolt of *Holland* (L), wh he reduced by force of arms, as well as the city of *Wor* which had alſo rebelled. Nevertheleſs, the ſpirit of ſe tion ſtill continued to ſpread from town to town; ſo that himſelf was obliged to fly from *Ruffac*, at the hazard of life, in conſequence of a ſudden inſurrection of the peopl

and dies at Utrecht. 1125.

IN a little time after this misfortune, which made a d impreſſion on his ſpirits, he died at *Utrecht*, aged forty-f after a reign of eighteen years, and his body was interre *Spire*, among his anceſtors [n]. He married *Maud*, daug of *Henry* I. king of *England*, by whom he had no iſſue; that his heirs were *Conrad*, duke of *Franconia*, and *Fr ric*, duke of *Suabia*, who were his own ſiſter's ſons, and certainly intended that one of them ſhould be his ſucce in the empire. *Henry* is ſaid to have been haughty, cr and avaricious [o]; but he was certainly a wiſe, politic, and ſolute prince; and, excluſive of his unnatural behaviou his father, of which he ſincerely repented in the ſequel, may be juſtly ranked among thoſe emperors who did diſgrace the diadem they wore.

---

[n] Chron. Magd. ex MEIB. p. 325.

[o] Idem. p. 326

(L) A little before the death of *Calixtus*, *Henry* made a ſudden irruption into *France*, at the inſtigation of his father in-law *Henry*, king of *England*, but was forced to retreat without having obtained any advantage. Though all the *German* authors (*Krantz* excepted) are ſilent with reſpect to t expedition, it is particula mentioned by the *French* w ters, and an exact detail of preparations made by *Lewi Groſs*, to oppoſe this invaſi is given by *Sugerius*, abbot *St. Denis*, who was an eye-w neſs of the whole (1).

(1) *Sug. de Vit. Lud. Groſs. ex Du Cheſne, t. iv. p.* 312, *et ſequent.*

CHA

CHAP. IV.

Deducing the ſame Subject to the Succeſſion of Henry VI.

LOTHARIUS II.

Lotharius is choſen emperor.

AFTER the death of this emperor, it was believed that the ſtates would confer the empire upon one of the ſons of his ſiſter, they being princes of great courage, generoſity, and power, and very much eſteemed by the principal members of the empire. But *Albert*, archbiſhop of *Mentz*, who bore an implacable enmity to the memory of the late emperor and all his adherents, having obtained the regalia from *Henry*'s widow, by cajoling her with a promiſe of preſerving them for one or other of her nephews, found means to influence the princes of the empire to give their ſuffrages in favour of *Lotharius*, duke of *Saxe-Supplemburg* [p], who had befriended and ſupported him in all his conteſts with the late emperor. He was accordingly crowned at *Aix-la-Chapelle*, in preſence of the pope's nuncio, while his two competitors neglected nothing in their power to ſupport their pretenſions to the throne. *Frederic*, duke of *Suabia*, being actually elected king of the *Romans*, by ſome princes, noblemen, and cities of the empire, and the other ſolemnly crowned at *Milan* by the archbiſhop of that city [q]. The firſt expedition of the new emperor was againſt the *Bohemians*, whom he hated, becauſe they had aſſiſted the late emperor againſt him, while he was in rebellion. But his pretence for marching into *Bohemia* at this juncture, was a quarrel between *Otho* and *Sobieſlaus*, brothers of the deceaſed duke, who had left the guardianſhip of his children to *Sobieſlaus*, although *Otho* was his elder brother. This preference, given contrary to the cuſtom of nations, was reſented by *Otho*, whom, however, *Sobieſlaus* expelled by dint of arms. Thus injured he repaired to the diet at *Ratiſbon*, in order to ſollicit redreſs. The emperor intereſting himſelf in his cauſe, marched into *Bohemia*, where, though he ſuſtained ſome damage and diſgrace, he compelled *Sobieſlaus* to ſue for peace, which was granted, on condition that he ſhould reſtore *Moravia* to *Winceſlaus*, the ſon of *Otho*, releaſe the priſoners he had made, and do homage to the emperor

for

---

[p] Geſt. Ludov. vii. ex DUCHESNE. [q] AVENTIN. Ann. Boi. l. vi. p. 492. [r] Hiſt. Bohem. l. ii.

Surmounts all oppoſition. for *Bohemia* [r]. In a word, after a ſhort oppoſition, which, however, was obſtinate and bloody, the two princes dropped their pretenſions, and were reconciled to *Lotharius*, who honoured them with his friendſhip, particularly *Conrad*, whom he loaded with extraordinary proofs of eſteem and benevolence [s].

A. D. 1130. *Eſpouſes the cauſe of* Innocent II. HONORIUS II. dying on the 24th of *February*, *Innocent* II. ſucceeded him that ſame day in the papacy, by virtue of a canonical election; notwithſtanding which, cardinal *Petrus Leonis*, who had a powerful faction at *Rome*, was proclaimed pope by the name of *Anacletus*: the other finding himſelf too weak to oppoſe this rival, retired into *France*, where his intereſt was openly eſpouſed by *St. Bernard*, who perſuaded *Lotharius* to declare in his favour. He likewiſe propoſed and effected an interview between the emperor and his holineſs at *Liege* [t]; where, after ſome diſputes upon the article of inveſtiture [u], *Lotharius* acquieſced in the pope's refuſal to part with that prerogative, and even undertook to re-eſtabliſh *Innocent* in *Rome* (M).

and having re-eſtabliſhed him in the papal chair, is crowned at Rome. 1133. THIS expedition being concerted, the pope ſet out for *Italy*, taking *France* in his way, where he received a conſiderable ſum for the expence of his journey: then proceeding to *Placentia* he waited for the emperor, who in a few days joined him with his army, and conducting him to *Rome* re-eſtabliſhed him in the chair, in ſpite of all the efforts and oppoſition of the antipope. It was, perhaps, with a view to give more weight to this re-eſtabliſhment, and to excite other people, by example, to honour the true pope, that the emperor at his coronation [x], which was ſoon after performed, kneeled before *Innocent*, who was ſeated upon a throne; and having promiſed obedience to the holy ſee, received the crown in that poſture. After this ſolemnity the emperor returned to *Germany*, where, by the advice of one *Werner Urſperg*, alias *Ernerius*, he ordered that juſtice ſhould

[s] Annal: de l'Empire, t. i. p. 215. [t] SUG. Abb. vit. Lud. Groſs. ex Du Cheſne, p. 318. [u] Conr. Urſperg. ex MEIB. de jure Inveſtit. Eſpic. [x] Ann. Boior. JOAN AVENT. lib. vi. p. 495.

(M) The emperor hearing of the pope's approach, mounted his ſteed and rode forth to receive him: at meeting *Lotharius* alighted, and running to *Innocent*, lifted him in his arms from his horſe, and accompanied him to the place where he was to lodge (1).

(1) *Heiſſ. Hiſt. liv.* ii. c. xi.

be adminiſtered in the empire according to the digeſta or code of *Juſtinian* *, the uſe of which had been laid aſide five or ſix hundred years. Theſe laws were introduced in *Italy*, *Germany*, and afterwards in *France* and *Spain*, in lieu of peculiar ſtatutes and particular cuſtoms (N).

The emperor had no ſooner quitted *Italy*, than *Roger* duke of *Apulia*, who had lately erected his dominions into a royalty, under the name of the kingdom of *Sicily*, raiſed an army in favour of *Anacletus*, and made himſelf maſter of almoſt all the places belonging to the holy ſee; upon which pope *Innocent* retired to *Piſa*, and again implored the aſſiſtance of *Lotharius*, who did not forſake him in his adverſity. On the contrary, he levied a powerful army, and, dividing it into two parts, gave the command of one to his ſon-in-law the duke of *Bavaria*, and put himſelf at the head of the other. All the places of *St. Peter's Patrimony* were ſoon retaken, and the true pope re-conducted in triumph to *Rome*, a circumſtance which is ſaid to have haſtened the death of *Anacletus*, who died of grief at the ſucceſs of his competitor.

Reſtores Innocent, *who had been expelled by the duke of* Apulia.
A. D. 1137.

The emperor afterwards drove *Roger* from city to city, and at length obliged him to retire into *Sicily*; then ſubduing the provinces of *Apulia* and *Calabria*, and all *Roger's Italian* poſſeſſions, he formed them into a principality, and beſtowed it, with the title of duke, upon *Renaud*, a *German* prince, and one of his own relations.

On his return to *Germany*, after this glorious expedition, he was ſeized with a dangerous diſtemper at *Verona*, notwithſtanding which he proceeded on his journey, in hopes of being recovered by his native air; but death overtook him among the *Alps*, near *Trent*, in the twelfth year of his reign. This prince is celebrated on account of his paſſionate regard for public peace, and the adminiſtration of juſtice; tho' from the great number of commentaries that were made upon the *Pandects*, he is taxed with having introduced chicanry inſtead of facilitating the inveſtigation of truth.

Makes a conqueſt of his dominions in Italy, *and dies at* Trent.
1138.

---

* De hoc, vide Ant. Hiſt. vol. xvi. p. 548, & ſeq.

(N) In the ſummer of the year 1135, the heats were ſo exceſſive in *Germany*, that the corn and fruits of the earth withered in the field, and the moſt conſiderable rivers, even the *Rhine* itſelf, became dry, ſo that almoſt all the cattle periſhed for want of water (1).

(1) *Note upon Heiſs, l.* xi. *p.* 290.

CONRAD III.

Conrad III. *elected.* A.D. 1139.

THE princes of the empire aſſembling at *Coblentz*, in order to chooſe a new emperor, unanimouſly elected *Conrad* duke of *Franconia*, nephew of *Henry* V. and conducted him to *Aix la Chapelle*, where he was crowned by cardinal *Thiery*, the pope's legate, he officiating for the archbiſhop of *Cologne*, who was not at that time in prieſt's orders[y].

Henry *duke of* Bavaria *refuſes to deliver the regalia, and is diveſted of his dominions.*

Henry duke of *Bavaria*, ſurnamed *the Haughty*, who had married the only daughter of *Lotharius*, and received the duchy of *Saxony* as her dower, was not preſent at this election, which he conſidered as a violation of his right, becauſe *Lotharius*, who died without iſſue male, had put the regalia into his hands, and even deſigned him for his ſucceſſor in the empire. In conſequence of this deſignation, he refuſed to ſurrender the royal ornaments to *Conrad* after he had been lawfully elected: upon which the princes, aſſembled at the diet of *Goſlar*, publicly diveſted him of his duchies of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*; the firſt of which they gave to *Albert* marquis of *Brandenburg*[z], and the other to *Leopold* marquis of *Auſtria*; an alienation which made ſuch a deep impreſſion on the mind of *Henry*, that he died that ſame year of grief and mortification (O).

Guelph, *with the aſſiſtance of* Roger, *king of* Sicily, *takes the field againſt* Conrad.

About this time, *Roger* king of *Sicily* had made himſelf maſter of the dominions which belonged to the empire in *Apulia*. That he might be able to maintain his conqueſt, he excited *Welph* or *Guelpho*, brother of *Henry the Haughty*, to make war with the emperor for the recovery of the two duchies which had been confiſcated, and furniſhed him with a conſiderable ſum of money for the expence of his army. After ſeveral engagements that were not deciſive, *Guelphe* was beſieged by the emperor in the caſtle of *Weinſberg*, and, reſolving to make a ſally, gave for the word *Hievvelf*. *Frederic* duke of *Suabia*, brother to the emperor, and general of his troops, having diſcovered this word, gave to his own army that of *Hiegibelin*, the name of a village in *Suabia*, in which he himſelf had been educated. This was the origin of the *Guelphs* and *Gibelins*, which afterwards grew into ſuch vogue in *Italy*, where the pope's party was diſtinguiſhed by the name of the firſt, and that of the emperor by the other (P). *Guelph*, however, ſuſtained great loſs in this ſally, and, having defended himſelf to the laſt extremity, was obliged to ſurrender at diſcretion. The emperor, however, inſtead of uſing his good fortune with ſeverity and rigour, gave the duke liberty to retire unmoleſted; but the ducheſs, ſuſpecting this exceſs of generoſity in *Conrad*, who had been known to entertain a particular enmity againſt her huſband, ſent a gentleman to the emperor, intreating him to grant a ſafe conduct for her, and the other women belonging to the caſtle, that they might come out with as much as each could carry, and be conducted to a place of ſafety. The emperor complied with her requeſt, and this evacuation was made in the ſight of the whole army, who expected to ſee them come forth with jewels, gold, and ſilver; but they were not a little ſurprized when they ſaw the ducheſs, and other ladies of quality, ſtaggering under the load of their huſbands, who had offended the emperor. *Conrad* was ſo much moved with this ſpectacle, which was an undoubted proof of their tenderneſs and courage, that the tears ran down his cheeks; he applauded their conjugal fidelity, entertained them at dinner, and came to an accommodation with *Guelph*, and his other enemies, notwithſtanding the efforts of his own generals, who oppoſed his generoſity on this occaſion [a].

---

[y] Gob. Pers. Coſmod. æt. vi. cap. 59. Krant. Sax. l. vi. cap. 8.

[z] Ann. Boior. Joan. Avent. lib. vi. pag. 499.

(O) The emperor gave his widow in marriage to his own brother, together with the duchy of *Auſtria*, the princes of which (tho' it is the youngeſt duchy of the empire) aſſume the title of archduke (2).

In the ſecond year of this emperor's reign, died *Johannes de Temporibus*, who is ſaid to have been armour-bearer to *Charlemagne*, and to have lived 361 years (3).

(2) *Krantz. l.* vi. *Sax. c.* 8.

(3) *Gob. Perſ. Coſmod. æt.* vi. *c.* 59.

Origin of Guelphs *and* Gibelins.

A. D. 1141.

MEAN while this civil war furniſhed ſeveral towns of *Italy* with an opportunity of withdrawing themſelves from the dominion of the empire, and ſetting up for independent republics. Even the *Romans* formed a deſign of re-eſtabliſhing the antient commonwealth, and of retrieving the ſovereignty of the city, together with the patrimony of the church. They had already renewed the order of ſenators, and the rank of patrician, to which they had promoted one *Jordanus*, in-

---

[a] HEISS, l. ii. c. 12.

(P) This is the moſt probable of ſeveral accounts given of the origin of theſe names (4).

(4) *See Blond.* 2. *dec.* 7. *Sigon. l.* xi. *Krant. Sax. l.* viii. *c.* 8.

Jordanus *heads a ſedition at* Rome. A. D. 1144.

veſting him with the ſame authority which *Charlemagne* had poſſeſſed in that ſtation. This new patrician, accompanied by the ſenators and the people, went to pope *Lucius* II. and repreſenting that the popes originally applied themſelves to eccleſiaſtic affairs, contented with the tythes they received for their ſubſiſtence, they deſired him to deſiſt from intermeddling in politics, and leave the care of the adminiſtration to thoſe, to whom it properly belonged. Nay, they went ſo far as to take poſſeſſion of the revenues of the city, and turn out the pope's officers, who had been appointed to collect them. *Lucius*, with his cardinals and clergy, vehemently oppoſed this innovation, and, after obſtinate diſputes, it was agreed, that recourſe ſhould be had to *Conrad*, who was at the diet at *Spire* when the ambaſſadors arrived. But before his deciſion could be obtained, the pope put himſelf at the head of ſome troops he had levied, and beſieged the ſenators in the capitol, from which he received ſuch a wound with a ſtone, as in a few days put an end to his life; ſo that the ambaſſadors returned without an anſwer. *Lucius* was ſucceeded by *Eugenius* III. who, tho' diſturbed by thoſe ſeditious people in the beginning of his papacy, found means to reduce the rebels to reaſon, and re-eſtabliſh the authority of St. *Peter*'s chair. Quiet being thus reſtored to the city, the pope applied himſelf vigorouſly to the famous cruſade, which was at that time ſet on foot againſt the *Saracens* for the defence of the *Holy Land*; an enterprize in which the emperor *Conrad* was engaged by the admonitions of St. *Bernard*, from whoſe hands he actually received the croſs.

Pope Lucius II. *is killed by a ſtone.*

AT a general diet convened at *Frankfort*, the preparations for the cruſade were adjuſted, the emperor's ſon *Henry* was elected king of the *Romans*, and an imperial council eſtabliſhed at *Rotweil* (Q), to govern the empire under his

---

(Q) This council, which is ſtill in force at *Rotweil*, tho' deprived of its former authority, muſt be compoſed of twelve gentlemen, or, in default of gentlemen, the members muſt be choſen from among the citizens of *Rotweil*, and the preſident muſt be the count *de Schaltz*, to whoſe family that honour belongs in fief. Its juriſdiction extends over the provinces of *Suabia*, *Franconia*, *Auſtria*, and the *Rhine*. Nevertheleſs, the archbiſhops of *Triers* and *Cologne*, the archdukes of *Auſtria*, the knights of the *Teutonic* order and of the order of *Malta*, the ſubjects of the duke of *Deuxponts*, and of the duke of *Wirtemberg*, the abbot of *St. Blaiſe*, the counts of *Hanau*, and ſome others, have a right to decline pleading before this tribunal (5).

(5) *Munſter*. *l.* iii.

authority. In this aſſembly, *Henry the Lion*, duke of *Saxony*, demanded the duchy of *Bavaria*, which had been taken from his father, and beſtowed on *Henry* of *Auſtria*; and even threatened to retake it by force, in caſe his remonſtrances ſhould not avail. *Conrad* replied, with great moderation, that the affair ſhould be diſcuſſed and equitably decided at his return from the *Holy Land*; and in the mean time he deſired *Wiebold*, abbot of *Corbie*, who had a great ſhare of his confidence, to keep a vigilant eye over the *Saxons* in his abſence, and to perſuade the duke to undertake a cruſade againſt the pagans of the north.

Conrad *engages in a cruſade*; A. D. 1147. *which is unſucceſsful.*

THE winter being conſumed in making preparations for the eaſtern expedition, *Conrad*, accompanied by his nephew *Frederic Barbaroſſa*, duke *Guelf*, and many other noblemen, ſet out for *Paleſtine*, at the head of ſixty thouſand horſe, in excellent order; but the undertaking was not crowned with ſucceſs, one half of his troops having periſhed by the treachery of *Comnenus*, the *Greek* emperor, who ordered lime to be mixed with the meal which he furniſhed for their ſubſiſtence [b], and the remainder having been intirely defeated by the *Turks*; he made ſhift, however, with the wreck of his army, to make head againſt the *Saracens* for ſome time, and then returned to his own dominions (R).

THE bad ſucceſs of this undertaking filled the empire with grief, conſternation, and clamour, and intailed the reproaches and curſes of the people upon St. *Bernard*, who had not only preached up the cruſade, but, by virtue of a pretended commiſſion from heaven, promiſed victory, honour, and wealth, to all thoſe who ſhould embark in the expedition. They reviled him with the appellations of falſe prophet, impoſtor, and incendiary; and accuſed him of having drained their country of all the riches and men, who could have defended it againſt the inſults and encroachments of their enemies.

Another cruſade is formed

YET, notwithſtanding theſe complaints, which were extremely juſt, ſuch was the epidemic madneſs of the times, that another cruſade was formed againſt the *Moors*, who

---

[b] KRANT. Sax. l. vi. c. 14. GOB. PERS. Coſm. æt. vi. c. 59.

(R) *Conrad* having joined his forces with thoſe of *Lewis the Young*, they undertook the ſiege of *Damaſcus*, and ſuſtained a furious ſally; in which the emperor, with his own hand, cleft a *Turk* through the middle, to the aſtoniſhment and terror of the *Mohammedans*, who, at ſight of this atchievment, fled with great precipitation (6).

(6) *Geſta Ludov. VII. ex du Cheſne, p.* 406.

againſt the Moors; were in poſſeſſion of *Portugal:* a great number of *Germans* from the neighbourhood of the *Rhine* and the *Weſer* took the croſs; and, embarking in a fleet of two hundred *Engliſh* and *Flemiſh* veſſels, ſet ſail for *Spain,* to the aſſiſtance of king *Alphonſus Henriquez.* After having been diſperſed by a violent ſtorm, they entered the *Tagus*; and, joining the *Spaniſh* forces, inveſted the city of *Liſbon,* which, after a ſiege of five months, was taken by aſſault[c].

and a third againſt the pagans of the north. A.D. 1148. ABOUT the ſame time, the *Saxons* engaged in a third cruſade againſt the pagans of the north, and raiſed two armies, amounting to one hundred thouſand men, under the command of *Conrad* the *Saxon,* and *Henry* duke of *Saxony*; who, penetrating into *Sclavonia,* deſtroyed the country, and converted the natives, with fire and ſword, to the Chriſtian religion.

AT *Courad*'s return from *Paleſtine, Henry the Lion* renewed his demands touching *Bavaria,* and, as he did not receive a definitive anſwer, had recourſe to arms; but the emperor took ſuch meaſures as defeated his deſign againſt *Bavaria,* and he was fain to deſiſt, for the preſent, from his pretenſions.

DURING the remaining part of *Conrad*'s reign, nothing extraordinary happened, except the revolt of *Guelph*; who, in his return from the *Holy Land,* was inſtigated and bribed by *Roger* king of *Sicily,* to rebel againſt the emperor: but he was afterwards reconciled to him through the mediation of *Frederic* duke of *Suabia,* who was nephew to both[d].

He ſettles the ſucceſſion, SOON after this accommodation, he was very much afflicted with the death of *Heury* his eldeſt ſon, who had been elected king of the *Romans* before he ſet out on his expedition againſt the *Saracens* (S). This event made the deeper impreſſion, as *Frederic,* the only ſurviving ſon, was yet in his nonage. He therefore convoked a diet at *Bamberg,* where, on account of his ill ſtate of health, he recommended his nephew *Frederic* duke of *Suabia* to ſucceed him in the empire, a prince of great courage and capacity, and in every reſpect worthy of the throne: the recommendation was therefore approved by all the princes, and the regalia depoſited in his hands. *and dies.* 1152. Soon after this ſettlement of the ſucceſſion, *Conrad* died at *Bam-*

---

[c] MARIAN. Hiſt. HEISS, l. x.

[d] AVENT. l. vi.

(S) We have here followed *Heiſs,* in oppoſition to *Krantz,* who ſays *Henry* ſurvived his father, and was poiſoned in the reign of *Frederic.*

berg, after having reigned about thirteen years, with virtue and reputation [e] (T).

FREDERIC I. ſurnamed *Barbaroſſa*.

Frederic Barbaroſſa is elected emperor;

AFTER the death of *Conrad*, the princes of the empire, aſſembling at *Frankfort*, elected, according to his recommendation, his nephew *Frederic*, who was crowned at *Aix la Chapelle*, at the age of twenty-nine. He was the firſt emperor of that name, and honoured with the appellation of *Father of his Country*, on account of his invariable affection and attachment to the glory of the empire, tho' he was likewiſe diſtinguiſhed by the name of *Barbaroſſa*, or *red beard*. He was no ſooner elected, than almoſt all the princes of *Europe* ſent ambaſſadors to *Merſbourg*, to congratulate him on his elevation. The king of *Denmark* went thither in perſon for the inveſtiture of his dominions, which was granted by *Frederic*, who crowned him with his own hand, and received the oath of allegiance from him, as vaſſal of the empire. The emperor's next ſtep was to ſend the archbiſhop of *Triers* and biſhop of *Bamberg* ambaſſadors to *Rome*, to receive the crown in his name, as he could not go thither in perſon, before he ſhould have pacified and determined the differences which ſubſiſted among the princes of the empire. Of theſe the moſt conſiderable was the quarrel between *Henry* duke of *Saxony*, and *Henry the Lion*, who took the title of duke of *Bavaria*. This young *Henry* demanded the duchy as his inheritance; the other refuſed to reſign it; and almoſt all the princes of *Germany* took arms in favour of one or other of theſe competitors [f].

receives homage from the king of Denmark;

adjuſts a difference between

IN order to compoſe all theſe diſturbances, the emperor called a diet at *Spire*, where, by the advice of the princes there aſſembled, he decreed, that *Henry* duke of *Saxony* ſhould be re-

---

[e] OTHON. FRISING. de Geſt. Fred. l. ii. BARR. t. iv. p. 708.

[f] Ann. Boior. JOAN. AVENT. ubi ſup. Hiſt. de Hen. Leon. ex MEIB. t. i. p. 431.

(T) *Conrad* married *Gertrude*, daughter of *Berenger*, prince of *Saltzbach*, by whom he had two ſons and one daughter. *Henry* the eldeſt, who had been elected king of the *Romans* at *Franckfort*, died in the year 1150. The ſecond, called *Frederic*, was duke of *Franconia* and *Rotembourg*, and lived till the year 1166, when he died of the plague. The daughter, whoſe name was *Judith*, married *Lewis* landgrave of *Thuringia* (7).

(7) *Barre*, t. iv. p. 708.

Henry *duke of* Saxony, *and* Henry *of* Auſtria;

eſtabliſhed in the duchy of *Bavaria*, and, in order to ſatisfy the other, he erected *Auſtria* into a duchy, releaſing him from the homage and oath of fidelity to the duchy of *Bavaria*, of which it formerly held [g]. At the ſame time the duke of *Auſtria*, in conſideration of this independency, yielded to *Henry* duke of *Saxony* the duchies of *Tuſcany* and *Spoleto*, together with the iſland of *Sardinia*.

compells Sueno *to do homage for the kingdom of* Denmark; A. D. 1153.

THIS affair being compromiſed, he acted as umpire in the difference between *Sueno* and *Canute*, who had, by force of arms, for ſome time diſputed the crown of *Denmark*. *Canute*, after repeated efforts, being vanquiſhed by his competitor, repaired to the diet which was then ſitting at *Merſbourg*, and ſollicited the protection of the emperor, promiſing to do homage for the kingdom, provided he would declare in his favour. *Frederic*, allured by this promiſe, intereſted himſelf in the cauſe of *Canute*, and ſent ambaſſadors to *Sueno*, deſiring that prince would come to *Merſbourg*, where he wanted to confer with him on matters of the laſt importance. *Sueno*, who had formerly ſerved as a volunteer with *Frederic* in the army of *Conrad*, complied with his requeſt; and arriving at *Merſbourg*, with a ſplendid retinue, was nobly received by the emperor, who nevertheleſs compelled him to ſubſcribe to ſuch articles as he propoſed: and peace was concluded between the two princes, on condition that *Sueno* ſhould retain the kingdom of *Denmark* as a fief of the empire, and gratify *Canute* with certain territories in *Jutland*, *Zeeland*, and *Scania*.

THE next ſtept which *Frederic* took was to hold a diet at *Wirtzbourg*, where he liſtened to the complaints of the noblemen of *Apulia*, whom *Roger* king of *Sicily* had ſtripped of their eſtates, and expelled from their country; and he reſolved, with the concurrence of the aſſembly, to march into *Italy*, with all convenient ſpeed, in order to chaſtiſe that tyrant for having injured the vaſſals of the empire, as well as to receive the imperial crown.

quarrels with the pope;

IT was not long before the emperor, in imitation of his predeceſſors, quarrelled with the pope. He had raiſed the biſhop of *Zeitz* to the archbiſhopric of *Magdeburg*, becauſe the votes were equally divided between other two competitors. *Eugenius* III. at that time pope, diſapproved of his depriving one ſee of a biſhop, in order to put him in another, when there was no neceſſity for ſuch a tranſlation; but *Frederic*, who was perfectly well acquainted with the agreements which had been made between his predeceſſors and former popes, ſupported his creation; and when *Eugenius* ſent legates into *Germany* to depoſe the archbiſhop [h], they were obliged to make a very expeditious retreat.

---

[g] HEN. BOD. SYNT. ex Meib. 505.

THE pope dying, *Anaſtaſius*, who ſucceeded him in the chair, reſolved to tread in the footſteps of his predeceſſor, and ſent cardinal *Gerardus* into *Germany* to determine that affair. But the legate having ſpoken diſreſpectfully in preſence of his imperial majeſty, who was as jealous of his honour as expert in the management of his affairs, he was diſgracefully chaſed out of *Germany*, and died of chagrin on his return to *Rome*.

A. D. 1154.

but is afterwards reconciled to the holy ſee.

MEAN while *Frederic*, reflecting upon the miſchievous conſequences of a breach with the pope, ſent the new archbiſhop of *Magdeburg* to *Rome*, where he pleaded his own cauſe ſo effectually, that the pope was ſatisfied, and inveſted him with the *Pallium* [i].

THE emperor, in order to manifeſt his independence of the pope, repudiated, by his own authority, his wife *Adelaide*, on account of the conſanguinity ſubſiſting between him and her, which not only did violence to his conſcience, but ſeemed to threaten future doubts and diſputes touching the legitimacy of his children.

A new ſedition at Rome.

1155.

IT was about this time, that ſeveral cities of *Italy* revolted from the emperor, in imitation of ſome others which had already taken the ſame ſtep, and the *Romans* themſelves renewed their attempts upon the pope's ſovereignty at *Rome*. Their ſedition proceeded to ſuch a length, that a cardinal was actually murdered; upon which *Adrian* IV. who had by this time ſucceeded *Anaſtaſius*, put the city under an interdiction. The people at length ſubmitted; the interdiction was taken off; but, the difference being afterwards reinflamed, the pope was fain to take refuge at *Viterbo*, where he waited for the emperor, whom he had invoked to his aſſiſtance [k].

FREDERIC, ſtimulated by theſe conſiderations, put himſelf at the head of a gallant army, accompanied by *Henry the Lion*, his uncle *Welſon*, and a great number of the nobility, and marched into *Italy* by the way of *Tyrol*. After having held an aſſembly in the plain of *Roncalie*, compoſed of the noblemen of the empire, together with the grandees and conſuls of almoſt all the *Italian* cities, who went thither to make their ſubmiſſion, and ſollicit redreſs of grievances, he reduced ſome towns of *Lombardy* which had revolted, chaſtiſed

---

[h] OTHON. FRISING. de Geſt. Fred. l. ii. c. 9.

[i] BARRE, t. v. p. 15.

[k] Id. ibid.

A dangerous feud in Germany.

others which had tyrannized over their neighbours, and proceeded to *Pavia*, where he was crowned king of *Italy* [l]. But while he proceeded on his conqueſts, he was not a little chagrined to learn, that *Germany* was re-involved in troubles, by a quarrel between the archbiſhop of *Mentz* and duke *Herman* count palatine of the *Rhine*, who had taken arms againſt each other, and reſolved to drive things to the utmoſt extremity (U).

An interview between the pope and the emperor;

FREDERIC, alarmed at theſe diſturbances, made haſte to conclude his expedition; and as his chief buſineſs was to re-eſtabliſh the pope in *Rome*, preſſed him to an interview at *Sutri*, whither his holineſs repaired upon a mule, in expectation that the emperor would hold his ſtirrup, and help him to diſmount; but this humiliation *Frederic* would not undergo, until he was convinced that it was no more than a compliment, which his predeceſſors had paid to the pope, whom they looked upon as the repreſentative of Chriſt [m] (X).

who re-eſtabliſhes his holineſs in Rome, *where he is crowned.*

THE emperor re-conducted the pope to *Rome*, where he received the imperial crown from the hands of his holineſs, and the *Romans* gave no interruption to the ceremony; but ſoon as *Frederic* had retired to his camp, the ſedition was renewed; and taking up arms, they beſieged the pope in the palace of the *Vatican*; but the emperor, on the firſt notice of this inſurrection, haſtened to his ſuccour, cut in pieces all that oppoſed his way, diſperſed the multitude, and quieted the commotion [n].

FREDERIC, having puniſhed the *Romans* for their rebellion, paſſed the *Tyber*, and encamped at *Ponte Lucano*, to which place he was accompanied by the pope, who did not think himſelf ſafe in *Rome*. Here he was preſented by the *Tiburtines* with the keys of their city, which he delivered to his holineſs, in conſequence of being told that the town belonged to the holy ſee. From hence he marched to *Spoleto*, which he took, plundered, and burned, becauſe the inhabitants refuſed to releaſe count *Guido*, whom they had apprehended in his return from *Apulia*, where he had been tranſacting buſineſs for the emperor. While *Frederic* ſtayed a few days at *Ancona*, in order to refreſh his troops, deputies arrived in his camp from the patriarch of *Jeruſalem*, with complaints againſt the knights hoſpitallers; but he left that affair to the cognizance of the pope. At the ſame time came ambaſſadors with preſents from the *Greek* emperor, who propoſed a treaty of alliance, and deſired *Frederic* to march into *Apulia* againſt *William* king of *Sicily*, who had ſucceeded *Roger*, and was their common enemy. *Barbaroſſa* immediately called a council, in which it was reſolved to ſend *Guibald*, abbot of *Corbie*, as plenipotentiary to *Conſtantinople*: and in the mean time the exiled noblemen of *Apulia* returned to their own country, under the protection and countenance of the emperor, whom their enemies durſt not venture to incenſe.

---

[l] OTHON. FRISING. de Geſtis Fred. l. ii. c. 21. [m] KRANT. Sax. lib. vi. c. 16. HEISS, l. ii. c. 13. [n] BARRE, ut ſup.

(U) The count *Palatine*, aſſiſted by the counts of *Leinengen*, *Sparnhim*, *Kalſelenbogen*, *Kirchberg*, *Dideſheim*, and others, plundered, ſacked, and burned, the city of *Mentz*, after having ravaged the whole country around it (8).

(X) The emperor went to hold the ſtirrup on the left ſide, when the pope expreſſing his ſurprize, *Frederic*, with an air of pleaſantry, ſaid he was not well acquainted with the office, and therefore hoped his holineſs would excuſe him. The pope, however, was not ſatisfied with this apology, and went away without beſtowing upon him the kiſs of peace; but, returning nex day, the emperor performed his part to a miracle, and every thing was ſet to rights (9).

(8) *Heiſs, l.* ii. *c.* 13. (9) *Krant. Sax. l.* iv. *c.* 16.

Returns to Germany, *and puniſhes the perturbators of the public peace.*

A. D. 1156.

Another breach between Frederic *and the pope, on account of*

THE affairs of *Italy* being thus ſettled, the emperor returned to his *German* dominions, and ordered the princes, who had taken up arms againſt each other, to be ſummoned to the diet at *Worms*; where, having taken their trial, they were condemned to the puniſhment allotted for the perturbators of the public peace (Y). In a little time after this event, a breach happened between *Adrian* IV. and the emperor. The biſhop of *Lunden*, having been robbed and taken priſoner in the imperial dominions, had complained of the outrage, without being redreſſed; and the pope, eſpouſing his cauſe, ſent legates to demand juſtice of the emperor, whom they found at *Beſançon*, where he had convoked a diet. There they took an opportunity of reading aloud the letter of his holineſs, which, among other things, imported, that he had, out of his free grace and favour, conferred upon *Frederic* the ſovereign authority of *Rome*, and the kingdom

---

(Y) Each count was condemned to carry a dog on his back, from one county to another; each gentleman to bear a joint-ſtool; and the common people to ſhoulder cart-wheels. The archbiſhop of *Mentz* was excuſed on account of his old age (10).

(10) *Heiſs, ubi ſup.*

the biſhop of Lunden; A. D. 1157.

of *Italy*. Every body from theſe words concluded, that the pope had actually beſtowed upon him the empire as a fief of the holy ſee, and what confirmed this conjecture was the behaviour of one of the legates, who, hearing this donation queſtioned, exclaimed, "If not of his holineſs, of whom then doth he hold it?" This ſaucy interrogation had like to have proved fatal to him and his followers (Z), who were forthwith turned out of the aſſembly, and ordered to take the ſpeedieſt and ſhorteſt way back to *Rome* [o]. The emperor, in his own vindication, wrote circular letters, by way of manifeſto, in which he publicly gave the lie to all thoſe

[o] GOD. PERS. Coſm. æt. vi. c. 60.

(Z) The legate had no ſooner pronounced theſe words, than *Otho* count palatine of *Bavaria* unſheathed the ſword which he wore as marſhal of the empire, and, advancing towards him, would, in all probability, have had no regard to his function, had not he been reſtrained by the emperor (1).

But, that the reader may have an idea of the provocation, we ſhall literally tranſlate the pope's letter from the *Annals of John Aventinus*: "The *Roman* empire was tranſlated from the *Greeks* to the *Germans*; but the king of the *Teutones* was not called emperor before he was crowned by the apoſtolic power. Before his conſecration he was king, after it he became emperor. Of whom then but us doth he hold the empire? From the election of his own princes he enjoys the name of king; from our conſecration he derives the appellations of emperor, *Auguſtus*, and *Cæſar*; therefore thro' us he governs. Recollect what hath happened of old. *Zacharias* promoted *Charles* to the imperial dignity, and gave him the name of *Great*, and decreed that the king of the *Germans* ſhould thenceforward for ever be emperor, and champion of the apoſtolic chair; that he might reduce *Apulia* to the dominion of the biſhop of *Rome*, to whom (as well as the city itſelf) it formerly belonged. *Rome* is the ſeat of our empire; whereas the emperor's is at *Aix*, in the foreſt of *Ardenne*. Whatever he hath as emperor, he hath from us; for, as *Zacharias* transferred the empire from the *Greeks* to the *Germans*, ſo can we tranſfer it from the *Germans* to the *Greeks*. It is in our power to beſtow it upon whom we will. Beſides, we are appointed by God to rule over kingdoms and nations, that we may deſtroy, pluck up, build, plant, *&c.*" Then he brands the *Germans* for their want of valour; obſerving, that they could not drive *Roger* out of *Italy*, nor ſubdue the *Frieſlanders* and *Danes* (2).

(1) *Heiſs, ubi ſup.* (2) *Johan. Avent. Ann. Boior. p.* 506.

who ſhould preſume to ſay, that he held his crown of any other than God himſelf[p]; while the pope employed the *German* biſhops to repreſent to the emperor the injury he had ſuſtained in the perſons of his legates. To theſe repreſentations *Frederic* replied with warmth, that he held his crown of God and the princes of *Germany*, and that he would rather reſign it altogether than ſuffer it to be debaſed in his poſſeſſion. The biſhops, finding him obſtinately determined to ſupport his dignity, adviſed his holineſs to pacific meaſures; and he, wiſely following their advice, ſent another deputation of legates, with a reſpectful letter, in which he explained away the meaning of his former expreſſions. *Frederic*, who was a prince of great penetration, plainly perceived, that, notwithſtanding this gloſs, the court of *Rome* waited for nothing but a favourable opportunity of declaring itſelf in another ſtile; and therefore, that he might be the better prepared for ſuch a declaration, he reſolved with all ſpeed to diſcuſs the affairs which might thwart him in his own dominions. With this view he attacked *Boleſlaus* duke of *Poland*, who had revolted; him he reduced to obedience, and obliged to pay the arrears of tribute which he owed. In the next place he engaged *Uladiſlaus*, duke of *Bohemia*, more firmly in his intereſt, by erecting anew that duchy into a kingdom[q]. *Henry* IV. had conferred the title of king upon a former *Uladiſlaus*, duke of *Bohemia*, but the duchy itſelf had never till now been acknowleged as a kingdom. Then he made progreſs through the towns of the *Lower Rhine*, in order to eſtabliſh proper regulations touching the adminiſtration of juſtice, and built the tower of *Anweiller* upon the *Queich*, at the diſtance of two leagues from *Landau*. He likewiſe took meaſures for ſecuring the fidelity of the king of *Hungary*; and having thus eſtabliſhed peace through all *Germany*, as well as the neighbouring countries, he reſolved to repaſs the *Alps* with a powerful army, in order to finiſh the reduction of the revolted towns. In the mean time he ſent *Reinald*, his chancellor, and *Otho* count palatine of *Bavaria*, as his commiſſaries into *Italy*, with orders to exact the oath of allegiance from the towns of *Lombardy*, and they executed their commiſſion with equal ability and ſucceſs. While they were thus employed in *Italy*, *Frederic* lay encamped at *Augſburg*, where he was attended by the ambaſſadors of *Waldemar* I. king of *Denmark*, who deſired he might be confirmed in his kingdom, which he promiſed to hold as a fief of the empire; and the emperor

which is compromiſed.

The emperor reduces Boleſlaus, *duke of* Poland; *erects* Bohemia *into a kingdom*; *ſecures the king of* Hungary *in his intereſts*; *marches into* Italy; A. D. 1158.

---

[p] Ann. Boior. Joan. Avent. l. vi. p. 507.

[q] Barre, t. v. p. 61.

complied with his requeſt, on condition that he ſhould come, at an appointed time, and receive the inveſtiture in perſon.

FREDERIC at this juncture ſurpaſſed all his predeceſſors, ſince the reign of *Otho the Great*, in power and glory. He had, by force of arms, compelled *Boleſlaus*, duke of *Poland*, to do him homage, and pay tribute to the emperor. He had received aſſurances of ſubmiſſion and fidelity from *Geiſa* king of *Hungary*, and *Henry* II. of *England* had ſent him magnificent preſents: he had honoured *Uladiſlaus* of *Bohemia* with the title of king, confirmed the ſovereignty of *Waldemar*, and eſtabliſhed peace and content through all the provinces of *Germany*.

HIS army conſiſting of warlike troops, well armed and diſciplined, being aſſembled at *Augſburg*, he divided it into ſeveral columns, for the conveniency of marching by as many different routes; and, having happily paſſed the *Alps*, reduced the town of *Breſcia*, which had the preſumption to oppoſe his paſſage. While he remained in the territory of this town, he was joined by the knights of ſeveral towns and caſtles in *Italy*, with their military contingents, and made ſeveral wholeſome regulations for the preſervation of good order and military diſcipline. Theſe previous ſteps being taken, he proceeded to action. *Milan* was beſieged, and ſurrendered at diſcretion; he was crowned king of *Lombardy* at *Mouza*; built the town of *Lodi*, on the river *Adda*; and having made himſelf maſter of all the other cities of *Lombardy*, which had rebelled, he, in an aſſembly held on the plain of *Roncalie*, ordered a minute inquiry to be ſet on foot concerning the rights of the empire, and exacted homage of all thoſe who held of it, even without excepting the biſhops. Grievances were redreſſed, magiſtracies reformed, the rights of regality diſcuſſed and aſcertained, new laws enacted for the maintenance of public tranquility, and the encouragement of learning, which now began to revive in the ſchool or univerſity of *Bologna*; and, above all things, ſub-vaſſals were not only prohibited from alienating their lands, but alſo compelled, in their oath to their lords paramount, to except the emperor nominally, when they ſwore to ſerve and aſſiſt them againſt all their enemies.

gives umbrage to the pope;

THE pope, taking umbrage at this behaviour towards eccleſiaſtics, ſent a grand embaſſy of legates to complain of his diſreſpect; when *Frederic* juſtified what he had done, by ſaying it was but reaſonable they ſhould do homage for the fiefs they poſſeſſed; and obſerving that Jeſus Chriſt himſelf, tho' lord of all the ſovereigns upon earth, had deigned to pay mſelf and St. *Peter* the tribute which was due to

DERIC having ſent commiſſaries to ſuperintend the
n of new magiſtrates at *Milan*, the inhabitants were ſo
d at this infringment of their old privileges, that they
d the imperialiſts, revolted, and refuſed to appear be-
e emperor's tribunal; ſo that he reſolved to chaſtiſe
everely, and ſent to *Germany* for a reinforcement of
, which ſoon after arrived with the empreſs. Mean
e ravaged *Liguria*, declared the *Milaneſe* rebels to the
, inveſted *Crema*, which was in alliance with *Milan*;
ving taken that town, after an obſtinate ſiege, com-
d it to be plundered and burnt.

the midſt of theſe tranſactions *Adrian* died, and a *who dies.*
aroſe in the election of a ſucceſſor. The greateſt part A. D.
-and-twenty cardinals, who were on the ſpot at his 1159.
elected *Roland*, chancellor of the church, who aſ- *A ſchiſm*
the name of *Alexander* III. and the reſt choſe *Octa- ariſes.*
of *St. Cæcilia*; who, ſeeing the papal robe delivered
competitor, flew upon him and tore it away by force;
cauſing himſelf to be adored under the name of
IV. was at once approved and proclaimed by the
. *Alexander*, and the cardinals who had elected him, Alexan-
oſſeſſion of the caſtle of *St. Angelo*, the governor of der *con-*
was their friend: there they were inveſted, and for *ſecrated.*
ays detained as priſoners, until the people, being un-
ed, ſet them at liberty, with loud acclamations of
g *live pope* Alexander;" who was conſecrated in a vil-
ear *Rome*.

E emperor, however, notwithſtanding the majority of
by which *Alexander* had been elected, did not fail to
e in favour of *Victor*, who had been formerly attached
intereſt; whereas the other was an adherent of *William*
of *Sicily*, whom *Frederic* had long conſidered as his
l enemy: but, that he might not want a ſpecious pre-
for ſupporting *Victor*, he convoked a council at *Pavia*, *The em-*
cide upon the merits of both elections; the two com- *peror calls*
rs were ſummoned to appear, and the emperor, having *a council*
d it in perſon, immediately withdrew, that his preſence *at* Pavia;
t not reſtrain the liberty of opinion[r].

EXANDER, looking upon himſelf as a true pope, would *is excom-*
cknowlege a council convoked without his participation; *municated*
at they confirmed the election of *Victor*, who was adored *by* Al. x-
e emperor, and owned as pope with all the uſual ſo- ander;

---

[r] GOB. PERS. æt. vi. c. 60. MACH. Hiſt. d Fir.

lemnities.

A. D. 1160.

lemnities. On the other hand *Alexander*, who was at th
time at *Anagni*, having, without effect, had recourſe to a
monitions, excommunicated the emperor with all his a
herents, and ſent ambaſſadors to the kings of *France* a
England to juſtify his conduct, and engage them in his i
tereſt [s]. Theſe two kings, having inquired into the mer
of his cauſe, took him into protection; the *Milaneſe*, a
all the reſt of *Lombardy*, declared in his favour: but, no
withſtanding this ſucceſs, he did not think himſelf ſafe eith
in *Rome*, or any other part of the dominions belonging to t
church, becauſe the emperor's party was very powerful. H
therefore retired into *France* [t], where he was honourably recei
ed by *Lewis the Young*, and ſome time after his arrival he call
a council at *Clermont*, in *Auvergne*, where he again thu
dered out his bulls againſt *Victor* and his patron (A).

who retires into France.

MEAN while the emperor, taking the field againſt the
habitants of *Milan* and the other rebels, obtained over th
ſeveral advantages; but at length received a very mortify
check; for, having cut off their communication with t
town, he reduced them to the neceſſity of either fighting
ſurrendering at diſcretion; and this ſituation driving them
deſpair, they attacked his troops with ſuch fury, that he w
obliged to retire with great loſs. Incenſed by this diſgra
he ravaged the country, and, reſolving to make himſelf ma
of the city at any rate, committed the ſiege of it to the c
of one of his generals; while he himſelf repaired to ot
places, where his preſence was more neceſſary. Tired, h
ever, with the obſtinacy of their reſiſtance, he returned
the ſiege, redoubled his efforts, and, the greateſt part of
inhabitants being already dead of famine, the city ſurr
dered at diſcretion. He granted life and liberty to the p
ple; but he abandoned the town to pillage, and, ſparing
thing but churches, ordered it to be intirely razed to
ground, which was plowed and ſown with ſalt, in mem
of its rebellion. *Placentia* was diſmantled in this exp

Milan *is taken and demoliſhed.* 1163.

---

[s] KRANT. Sax. l. vi. c. 18.

[t] MEZER. Abreg. Chr
t. i. p. 378.

(A) Pope *Alexander* was met at *Torcy*, on the river *Loire*, by the two kings *Lewis* and *Henry*, who received him with great ſubmiſſion. They alighted from their horſes, and, each takin
rein in his hand, conducted
mule to the place where he w
to lodge (12).

(12) *Mezer. Abreg. Chron. t.* i. *p.* 379.

tio

tion, and the other rebellious towns reduced to the obedience of the victor.

THE *Genoeſe* having declared themſelves independent of the empire, *Barbaroſſa* threatened to turn his arms againſt their city; but they thought proper to deprecate his wrath, by means of ſeaſonable ſubmiſſions, and promiſing to equip a fleet for his uſe in the conqueſt of *Sicily*, *Apulia*, and *Capua*, which he had projected. In recompence for this ſervice and condeſcenſion he gave them as a fief the *Riviera*, from *Monaco* to *Portovenere*, inveſted them with the power of electing conſuls, and gratified them with ſeveral other privileges, which they had not before enjoyed.

HE then appointed well-affected governors for almoſt all the cities of *Lombardy*, diſmantled the town of *Bologna*, which in other reſpects he favoured as a ſeminary of the ſciences, and received the ſubmiſſion of *Imola*, *Faenza*, and all the places in *Ancona*, *Tuſcany*, and *Romania*.

WHILE *Frederic* in this manner ſurmounted all oppoſition in *Italy*, *Waldemar*, king of *Denmark*, and *Henry the Lion*, duke of *Saxony*, declared war againſt the *Wandales*; who, after being twice defeated, ſued for peace, and *Henry* was gratified with a ceſſion of *Mecklenbourg*, which he peopled with colonies from *Germany*, *Flanders*, and *Brabant*.

An aſſembly convoked at St. Jean de Laune.

THE emperor, hearing that pope *Alexander* had taken refuge in *France*, ſignified to *Lewis* a deſire of ſeeing the ſchiſm terminated by a council, which was accordingly convoked at *St. Jean de Laune*; and in the mean time he wrote to the kings of *Bohemia* and *Hungary*, and to the archbiſhops and princes of the empire, to give their appearance at this aſſembly, which he and the king of *France* propoſed to grace with their own preſence. With this view, after his glorious campaign in *Italy*, he returned into *Germany*, at that time diſtracted with particular feuds, which he appeaſed with his uſual addreſs. Then he ſet out for *Beſançon* on his way to the council, and the king of *France* began his journey to *St. Jean de Laune*; but *Alexander* refuſed to go thither, and retired to the abbey of *Bourgdren*, in *Berry*, contenting himſelf with ſending deputies to defend his cauſe in the aſſembly. As for the two ſovereigns, they ſeemed cautiouſly to avoid a perſonal interview: when the king of *France* appeared in the council, the emperor was not preſent, and when the *Germans* gave *Lewis* to underſtand that *Frederic* was coming, he mounted his horſe, and fled with great precipitation, in the fear of being ſurprized by the emperor, who was attended by a conſiderable body of troops.

THIS

The king of Denmark *arrives at* Mentz.

THIS aſſembly having proved ineffectual, *Frede.*
to *Mentz*, where he was viſited by *Waldemar* ki
mark, of whom he wanted to exact an oath of fi
that prince aſſerted the independency of his crown,
reſolution and perſeverance, that the emperor wa
with his doing homage for *Wandalia* only, on
however, that neither he nor his ſucceſſors ſhould
to aſſiſt at the diets of the empire, or furniſh any
in time of war, or, laſtly, receive the inveſtiture o
vince from the emperor.

THIS affair being diſcuſſed, *Barbaroſſa* chaſtiſ
zens of *Mentz*, who had murdered their archbiſh
pelled the abbot of *St. James*, and his monks, wh
accomplices in the crime, razed the city walls, and
a ſucceſſor to the defunct: he afterwards enlarged
and fortified, the town of *Haguenau*, in which he
the treaſury of the empire, and a college of juſt
greatly increaſed its wealth and importance.

A. D. 1164.

The towns of Italy *again revolt; and the antipope* Victor *dies at* Lucca, *and is ſucceeded by* Paſchal III.

THE remembrance of the rigour with whic
puniſhed the city of *Milan*, was a ſpur that excit
of the *Italian* towns againſt him; and this being
by the under-hand machinations of pope *Alexa*
once more ſhook off the imperial yoke, and obli
to take refuge with *Frederic*; who, upon the ne
general revolt, reſolved upon another *Italian* expedi
judging it expedient that *Victor* ſhould go thither b
the antipope complied with his direction, and diec
year at *Lucca* [u], where the cardinals of his factic
ately elected [x] *Paſchal* III. who was acknowleged
a diet, which the emperor ſome time after convokec
burg for that purpoſe (B).

THE emperor, having paſſed the *Alps* with his
trice, was joined at the antient *Lodi* by the *Ital*
men and their troops, and proceeded to *Pavia*,

---

[u] GOB. PERS Coſm. ubi ſup. MACH. Hiſt. di Fir. Lud. VII. DUCHES. t. iv. p. 417.

(B) At this council it was decreed, that no perſon ſhould be deemed pope, unleſs created with the conſent of the emperor, and contenting himſelf with the office of Chriſt's apoſtle, and St. *Peter*'s ſucceſſor, without pretending to rival tl
power. Every memb
himſelf, by oath, to o
no perſon for pope,
on theſe terms, eve
emperor's death (13).

(13) *Avent. Ann. Boior. l. vi. p.* 512.

iſſued orders for demoliſhing the town of *Tortona*, becauſe the inhabitants had rebuilt their walls, which he had formerly levelled to the ground; and here he underſtood, that the *Venetians* and *Romans* had formed a league againſt him, in conjunction with the inhabitants of *Vicenza*, *Verona*, *Padua*, and other towns, who complained of being oppreſſed by the governors and officers of the emperor.

FREDERIC, finding himſelf too weak in *Italy* to cope with ſuch a powerful aſſociation, endeavoured to weaken it by policy, and, by means of private emiſſaries, tampered with ſome particular ſtates, which, however, he could not detach from the general confederacy. Failing in this attempt, he reſolved to ſtrengthen the attachment of his own adherents, by granting favours, privileges, and immunities, to the noblemen and cities that continued ſtanch to his intereſt. In particular, he created *Baraſon*, king of *Oriſtagno*, one of the four bailiwicks of *Sardinia*, for which he did him homage, exempted *Mantua* from ſome taxations and military ſervice, and inveſted *Pavia* with the right of electing its own magiſtracy. At the ſame time he ſent receivers to all the towns of *Lombardy*, who exacted the taxes that were due, and raiſed contributions among the people, with ſuch oppreſſive cruelty as rendered his government deteſtable, and prepared the *Italians* for a general revolt.

AT his return to *Germany*, he convoked a diet at *Wurtſburg*, in order to concert meaſures for healing the ſchiſm that divided the church; and there he and all the princes and biſhops, together with the ambaſſadors of *Henry* king of *England*, ſolemnly ſwore they would never acknowlege *Alexander* as the legal ſucceſſor of St. *Peter*. Injunctions were laid upon all the monks, clerks, and lay ſubjects of the empire, to take the ſame oath, on pain of forfeiting their dignities and benefices, and of being declared enemies to their country.

ABOUT this time pope *Alexander*, at the earneſt ſollicitations of his friends, ſet out for *Italy* by ſea, and, arriving at *Meſſina*, was, by the ſhips of *William* king of *Sicily*, conducted to *Oſtia*; from whence he journeyed to *Rome*, where he lived a whole year in tranquility. *Frederic* having ordered *Charlemagne* to be canonized, and confirmed the privileges of *Aix la Chapelle*, marched into *Italy*, with a conſiderable army, after the archbiſhops of *Cologne* and *Mentz*, whom he had previouſly detached with a ſtrong body of troops to reduce the diſaffected towns of *Lombardy*.

ON his arrival at *Lodi*, he held a grand council, in order to deliberate upon the operations of the campaign; and here he determined a difference which had long ſubſiſted between the republics of *Genoa* and *Piſa*. When the council broke up he proceeded to *Bologna*, which he laid under contribution, together with *Imola*, *Faenza*, and *Forli*; but *Ancona* would not ſubmit to his exactions, until after it was beſieged and reduced to extremity. While he was employed in the ſiege of this place, the towns of *Lombardy*, reduced to deſpair by the violence and rapacioufneſs of him and his commiſſaries, entered into an aſſociation for their mutual defence, and even compelled *Lodi*, by force of arms, to engage in the ſame league: the inhabitants of *Milan* rebuilt their walls, and, taking the field, inveſted the caſtle of *Trea*, in which the emperor had depoſited all the treaſure he had amaſſed. The place, tho' ſtrong and well defended, fell into the hands of the beſiegers, who carried off the money and the garriſon priſoners to *Milan*, and razed the fortifications to the ground.

THIS ſucceſs encouraged the *Romans* to take arms againſt the two archbiſhops, who were encamped near *Tuſculum*; but the event did not anſwer their expectation: for tho' they advanced in good order againſt the imperialiſts, with an amazing odds in point of number, they were defeated, in a pitched battle, by *Rainald*, archbiſhop of *Cologne*, who carried the ſtandard in his own hand, and ſung a *German* hymn, in which he was joined by the whole army.

THIS victory was ſucceeded by a conſiderable advantage, which *Frederic* gained over *William* II. king of *Sicily*, who had inveſted a caſtle belonging to his imperial majeſty. *Barbaroſſa*, who was ſtill before *Ancona*, put himſelf at the head of his cavalry, and beat up *William*'s quarters; ſo that he was compelled to raiſe the ſiege, and return to *Sicily* with great precipitation.

ANCONA was no ſooner reduced than the emperor marched towards *Rome*, into which he was obliged to effect his entrance by force: *Alexander*, after having made ſeveral fruitleſs efforts to oppoſe him, ſtole away to *Beneventum*, in the habit of a pilgrim, and *Frederic*, with his empreſs, was crowned by *Paſchal* the antipope, who had waited for the emperor's arrival at *Viterbo* [y].

HITHERTO every thing ſmiled upon *Frederic*; but the plague, being introduced among his troops, made ſuch havock, that he was obliged to make a haſty retreat into *Tuſcany*, and from thence into his *German* dominions [z], where his preſence was alſo required on account of a commotion in Saxony. But it was not without the utmoſt danger and difficulty, that he effected his retreat. At *Pavia* he put all the rebellious towns of *Lombardy* to the ban of the empire, and, tho' his army was very much reduced by the diſtemper, he, with the aſſiſtance of his *Italian* friends, made incurſions into the country poſſeſſed by his enemies, and ravaged the territory of *Milan*.

---

[y] Ann. Boior. JOH. AVENT. l. vi. p. 573.

[z] Hiſt. Lud. VII. ubi ſupra.

These petty expeditions, which conſumed the remains of his troops, ſerved no other purpoſe than that of exaſperating the confederates and their patron pope *Alexander*, who was by this time rendered more formidable by ſuccours, which he received from *Manuel* emperor of the *Greeks*. In a word, the towns of *Lombardy*, thus ſupported, pulled off the maſk, and not only appeared in open rebellion, but alſo inſiſted upon ſeizing the perſon of *Barbaroſſa*, whoſe army was by this time quite exhauſted with malady and fatigue.

In this extremity he began a negociation with the friends of pope *Alexander*, and muſt have ſubmitted to that pontif, becauſe all the paſſes were ſecured by his enemies, had not the count *de Morienne* granted him a paſſage at the earneſt ſollicitations of his relation *William* marquis *de Montferrat*. Nevertheleſs, the *Milaneſe* purſued him to the mountains, and preſſed him ſo cloſely, that he cauſed ſome of their hoſtages, who were in his power, to be hanged: and theſe executions put a ſtop to their progreſs. He afterwards narrowly eſcaped from *Suza*, where a conſpiracy was formed againſt his life, and at laſt arrived in *Alſace* with the wreck of his army.

His back was no ſooner turned, than the *Italian* cities again withdrew themſelves from their allegiance, and entered into an aſſociation for the defence of their liberty; and the inhabitants of *Milan*, taking the advantage of *Frederic*'s being employed in the empire, began to rebuild their town, which was in a little time brought to perfection.

The confederates likewiſe built a new town between *Aſti* and *Tortona*, in order to block up the emperor's road, ſhould he again attempt to paſs the *Alps*, and to overawe the marquis of *Montferrat*, and the inhabitants of *Pavia*, who ſtill continued ſtaunch to his intereſt. This they called *Alexandria*, in honour of the pope, to whom the property of it was preſented at *Beneventum*, and it became tributary to the holy ſee.

Frederic having appeaſed the troubles of *Saxony*, where the nobles had taken arms againſt their duke, convened a diet at *Wirtſburg*, in order to reform ſome abuſes which had crept into the church, and diſpoſe the princes and noblemen in favour of his eldeſt ſon *Henry*, who was elected king of *Romans*, and in the ſequel acquired the crown of *Naples* *Sicily*, by his marriage with *Conſtance*, daughter of *R*[illegible] and *Beatrix de Rethel*, a relation of *Philip Auguſtus*, kin[illegible] *France*.

Caliſtus III. *ſucceeds* Paſchal. A. D. 1169.

Paschal dying in the midſt of theſe tranſactions, *liſtus* III. was elected by the cardinals of his party; but emperor underſtanding that all *Italy* was tired with length of this ſchiſm, which was diſagreeable to his frie as well as his enemies, began to be afraid of a general volt, and to prepare for another expedition. The confederacy of the *Lombard* towns grew every day ſtronger and ſtronger; the *Greek* emperor had ſent a ſecond embaſſy, with magnificent preſents, to the pope, promiſing to unite [illegible] *Greek* and *Roman* churches under his auſpices, provided, [illegible] would gratify *Manuel* with the imperial crown; and *Frederic* dreading his compliance, reſolved to ſend deputies with pro- poſals of peace to his holineſs. Accordingly the biſhop of *Bamberg*, being intruſted with this commiſſion, ſet out [illegible] *Italy*, and was received by *Alexander* in a full conſiſtory; but as the emperor neither acknowleged the pope, nor ſub- mitted to the holy ſee, his propoſals were rejected.

Mean while *Frederic*, the emperor's young ſon, was elect- ed king of *Germany*, with the unanimous conſent of the diet aſſembled at *Bamberg*, and conveyed to *Aix la Chapelle*, where he was crowned by *Philip*, archbiſhop of *Cologne*; and about the ſame time *Henry* duke of *Saxony* departed, at the head of a cruſade, for *Paleſtine*, to aſſiſt the Chriſtians of the eaſt, who were cooped up between two very formidable enemies; namely *Noradin*, of *Aleppo*, and *Saladin*, ſoltan of *Egypt*. He embarked upon the *Danube* at *Vienna*, croſſed the province of *Servia*, was hoſpitably received at *Conſtantinople*, from whence he ſailed to *Ptolemais*, where he underſtood that the death of *Noradin* had reſtored peace to the Chriſtians of the eaſt. The deſign of his cruſade being thus anſwered, he viſited *Jeruſalem*, was regaled by the ſoltan of *Egypt*, who loaded him with preſents, then returned by the way of *Conſtantinople*, where he received ample proofs of *Manuel*'s friendſhip and generoſity, and at length ſafely arrived in his own dominions.

As for the emperor, he aſſembled a diet at *Worms*, in which he complained of the pope's conduct, and the rebellious towns of *Lombardy*; and it was reſolved, that he ſhould be furniſhed with the neceſſary ſupplies for another expedition into *Italy*. In the mean time *Chriſtian*, archbiſhop of *Mentz*, as chancellor of the empire, was ſent thither with a body of troops to protect *Como*, *Pavia*, *Crema*, and other places, which ſtill held for the emperor, as well as to overawe and confirm thoſe which wavered in their allegiance.

THIS prelate held a council at *Vienna*, in order to decide the difference between the republics of *Genoa* and *Piſa*, touching the property of the iſland of *Sardinia*; and the *Piſans*, refuſing to ſtand to his award, were put to the ban of the empire. The *Florentines*, who were their allies, underwent the ſame fate, and a ſharp war broke out between the republics of *Piſa* and *Florence* on one ſide, and thoſe of *Genoa* and *Lucca* on the other.

CHRISTIAN hearing that *Manuel*, emperor of *Conſtantinople*, maintained a correſpondence with the inhabitants of *Ancona*, marched thither and inveſted the place, while the *Venetians*, who wanted to break with the *Greek* emperor, blocked up the town by ſea with a powerful fleet; but, notwithſtanding all their vigilance, the *Greek* deputies found means to introduce a reinforcement, and the beſiegers were fain to relinquiſh their enterprize.

BAFFLED in this attempt, *Chriſtian* marched into the duchy of *Spoleto*, and took the town of *Ferri*, which belonged to the *Roman* church; but, while he was thus employed, the confederate towns convoked an aſſembly at *Modena*, in order to concert meaſures for ſupporting the war: thither the pope ſent legates, to encourage them in their deſign of ſhaking off the imperial yoke; the chiefs bound themſelves, by oath, to maintain the league to the laſt extremity; they wrote circular letters to all the towns of *Lombardy*, exhorting them to join for the defence of the *Italian* liberty; and their remonſtrances had ſuch effect, that ſeveral neutral towns declared for the confederacy, and others abandoned the intereſt of the emperor.

FREDERIC, alarmed at the news of this defection, would have paſſed the *Alps* immediately, had not he been detained by the troubles of *Bohemia*, excited by the weakneſs of king *Ladiſlaus*, and the tyranny of his favourite *Vegeſlaus*, who had rendered himſelf odious to the whole nation. The emperor, in conſequence of the complaints he received from the *Bohemian* noblemen, ſummoned their king to appear at the diet of *Nuremberg*, to give an account of his conduct; and he refuſing to obey this order, marched at the head of an army to *Prague*, where he diveſted *Ladiſlaus* of the adminiſtration, and beſtowed the regency upon his kinſman *Sobieſlaus*, who had formerly been miniſter, and diſgraced by the intrigues of the queen. This affair being ſettled, and peace eſtabliſhed through the whole empire, he appointed the rendezvous of his army at *Ratiſbon*, where a diet wa ſembled at the ſame time : there he explained the motiv his expedition into *Italy*, and, having received the nece ſupplies, began his march by the way of *Mount Cenis*. took and deſtroyed *Suza*; the towns of *Aſti*, *Tortona*, *mona*, and *Como*, ſubmitted without reſiſtance; then h veſted *Alexandria*, which was defended with great vig by the inhabitants, who, at length, in a general ſally, the imperialiſts to flight, ſo that *Frederic* was obliged to the *Po*, and take refuge in the *Paveſan*. Here his preſ was the more neceſſary, as the city of *Pavia* was by this t cloſely beſieged by the confederate army, and even almoſt duced to extremity. Notwithſtanding the ſuccours he fo means to throw in, the calamities of the inhabitants daily creaſed, and, to put the finiſhing ſtroke to his diſgr *Henry the Lion*, duke of *Saxony*, retired with his troops, ſpite of all the remonſtrances of *Frederic*, who had recou to the moſt abject ſubmiſſions, in attempting to alter his pu poſe. His pretence was the terror of excommunication; b in effect, he had been cajoled by the pope, who flattered hi with the hope of aſcending the imperial throne.

THE departure of this duke compelled the emperor to treat with the confederates, and a congreſs was opened by the mediation of the conſuls of *Cremona* : to this aſſembly, which was held between the two camps, the pope ſent three deputies; but, both ſides being extremely irritated and inflexible, the meeting, after much altercation, broke up, and all hope of a pacification vaniſhed. The ſiege of *Pavia* was raiſed; the emperor detached parties, from time to time, to ravage the territory of *Alexandria*, and the *Lombard* troops marched thither to ſupport that place, in caſe it ſhould be re-inveſted.

MEAN while *Chriſtian*, archbiſhop of *Mentz*, carried on his operations with great ſucceſs. He took and ruined a great number of caſtles in the march of *Ancona*, and reduced the city and whole duchy of *Spoleto*; then he repaired, by the emperor's order, to the court of *William* king of *Sicily*, to eſtabliſh a peace, and offer *Frederic*'s daughter in marriage to that prince, who declined the match, leſt he ſhould give offence to his holineſs.

DURING theſe tranſactions, the emperor received a reinforcement of troops from *Germany*, under the command of *Philip* count *de Heimberg*, archbiſhop of *Cologne*; and advancing againſt the confederates, who were poſted at *Signano*, an obſtinate battle enſued, in which *Frederic* was totally defeated, and narrowly eſcaped with his life : his camp and baggage were taken, a great number of his ſoldiers killed, taken, and drowned in the *Po*, and the wreck of his army fled for protection to the walls of *Pavia*.

This defeat, which muſt have been very mortifying to a prince like him, accuſtomed to victory, was ſtill aggravated by the alienation of his own ſubjects, many of whom about this time abandoned his intereſt, and by the loſs of a battle fought at ſea againſt the *Venetians*, in which his eldeſt ſon prince *Henry*, who commanded his fleet, was taken priſoner (C). Tho' he was, in conſequence of theſe misfortunes, very well diſpoſed to an accommodation with the pope, his pride would not yet allow him to make the firſt propoſal. He therefore rallied his troops, and exerted himſelf with ſuch vigour in repairing his loſs, that he was next year in a condition to hazard another battle, in which his enemies were defeated. Being an excellent politician, as well as a great general, he ſeized this favourable opportunity of ſignifying his deſire of peace to pope *Alexander*, who received his ambaſſadors with great joy, and an accommodation was concluded; in conſequence of which there was an interview between them at *Venice*[b] (D).

Another revolt in Italy, *where the emperor is defeated by land and ſea.* A.D. 1175.

1176.

He concludes a peace with pope Alexander.

The

[b] Gob. Pers. ibid. Mach. Hiſt. di Fir.

(C) The pope, in honour of this victory, ſailed out into the open ſea, accompanied by the whole ſenate; and, after having pronounced a thouſand benedictions on that element, threw into it a ring, as a mark of his gratitude and affection. This is the origin of that ceremony, which is annually performed by the *Venetians*, under the notion of eſpouſing the *Adriatic* ſea (14).

(D) As the particulars of this accommodation are very differently related by different hiſtorians, it will not be amiſs to gratify the reader with a detail of them from *Romuald*, biſhop of *Salerno*, who was eye-witneſs of every incident. "*Frederic*," ſays he, "having gained a ſecond victory over the *Lombards*, was very much importuned by the princes of the empire to make peace with pope *Alexander*, for the repoſe of the church as well as of his own dominions. Thus ſollicited, he ſent an embaſſy conſiſting of the archbiſhops of *Mentz* and *Magdeburg*, the biſhop of *Worms*, and the Sieur *Paſy*, his own ſecretary, with full power to conclude an accommodation. They found the pope at *Anagni*, who received their propoſals with great joy, as he himſelf had been for a long time deſirous of peace; and the articles were ſoon agreed upon: Nevertheleſs the emperor, diſapproving of ſome particulars concerning the *Lombards*, the pope agreed to hold

(14) *Note ſur l'Hiſt. de Heiſs, l.* xi. *c.* 13.

" another

The emperor's arrival at that city being notified, he was waited upon by the doge, the patriarch, the biſhop, the clergy, and the ſenate, who conducted him in their barge to *St. Mark's*, where the pope and cardinals waited his coming. *Frederic*, when he approached his holineſs, who was ſeated, bowed down with profound reverence, and kiſſed his feet; a condeſcenſion which brought tears into the eyes of the pope, who claſped him in his arms, and gave him the kiſs of peace; then, the emperor taking him by the hand, they entered the church together, where, maſs being celebrated by the pope himſelf, *Frederic* re-conducted him to the door, ſtill walking on his left hand, and held the ſtirrup while he mounted his mule [c]. Some time after theſe firſt civilities, the pope, the emperor, and all the princes, aſſembled in the palace of the patriarch, where *Alexander* harangued in *Latin* upon the peace which had been concluded; then *Frederic* made a ſpeech on the ſame ſubject in the *German* tongue, which was interpreted by the archbiſhop of *Mentz*; not that the emperor was ignorant of the *Latin*, but becauſe he was reſolved to maintain the dignity of the *German* empire. The deputies of both ſolemnly ſwore to the obſervation of the treaty, which included the king of *Sicily*, and the ratifica- A.D. 1177.

---

[c] Chron. Gauf. Vosiens. t. ii. Biblioth. Labb.

"another congreſs at *Ferrara*, "in order to remove all objection; but in the mean "time *Fredric*, being perſuaded by ſome evil-minded perſons, that his ambaſſadors "had betrayed him in the "treaty, he was greatly incenſed, diſowned them and "all they had done, and declared for *Caliſtus*: his plenipotentiaries, finding themſelves in this predicament, "endeavoured to juſtify their "conduct by a fair repreſentation of all their tranſaction; "but the emperor, obſtinately "refuſing to ratify the peace, "they plainly told him, that as "*Alexander*'s behaviour on this "occaſion had been honeſt and "ſincere, and what he propoſed fair and equitable, they had "concluded a peace with him, "in conſequence of the commiſſion with which they were "inveſted; and that if his imperial majeſty ſhould perſiſt "in refuſing to ratify it, they "ſhould be obliged, for the "ſake of their conſciences, to "acknowlege *Alexander* for the "true head of the church, and "to look upon *Caliſtus* as an "impoſtor. This declaration "had ſuch an effect upon *Frederic*, that he reſolved to ratify the peace, and for that "purpoſe immediately diſpatched them to *Venice*, whither he in a little time followed them in perſon (15).

(15) *Romuald, Salern. p.* 226.

tions were exchanged with all imaginable expreſſions of joy, which laſted during the whole time of their ſtay at *Venice*, from the beginning of *Auguſt* till the thirteenth of *September*, on which the emperor ſet out for *Ravenna*[d] (E).

An accommodation with the revolted cities.

This reconciliation was attended with the ſubmiſſion of all the rebellious towns in *Italy*, which had entered into an aſſociation for their mutual defence. By an agreement at *Conſtance*, the emperor granted a general pardon, and left them at liberty to uſe their own laws and forms of government; while they took the oath of allegiance to him, as their lord and ſovereign.

Caliſtus *humbles himſelf, and is pardoned by* Alexander.

Calistus the antipope, finding himſelf forſaken, in conſequence of the peace between the pope and the emperor, made his ſubmiſſion to *Alexander*, who received him with great humanity; but in order to prevent, for the future, thoſe ſchiſms, which ſo often attended the election of popes, he called a general council, in which it was decreed, that no pope ſhould be deemed duly elected, without having two thirds of the votes in his favour.

Henry the Lion *raiſes diſturbances in the empire;*

While theſe things were in agitation in *Italy*, *Henry* duke of *Saxony* raiſed freſh troubles in the empire. He was a proud, haughty, and turbulent prince, who not only oppreſſed his own ſubjects, but alſo committed outrages againſt all his neighbours. He was at open war with *Ulric*, biſhop of *Halberſtadt*, whom he had expelled from his ſee, and with *Philip*, archbiſhop of *Cologne*, who headed a faction againſt him in *Weſtphalia*, in conſequence of his finding his dominions ravaged by the duke at his return from *Italy*. *Frederic*, on his arrival in *Germany*, was not ſorry to hear of theſe violences, becauſe he longed for an opportunity of being revenged upon *Henry*, for his having abandoned him ſo cruelly in his *Italian* expedition. He forthwith convoked a diet at *Worms*, where the duke, who did not think proper to appear in perſon, was accuſed of having violated the rights of the biſhops and noblemen; of having oppreſſed and robbed his vaſſals; of having expelled lawful biſhops, and ſupplied their places with his own creatures; of having ſeized the hereditary fiefs belonging to the count *de Wincebourg*, and his relation, *Otho d'Aſloï*; and of having furniſhed the count *de Lipſtadt* with troops to ravage *Weſtphalia*. Tho' the duke was not preſent to anſwer to theſe articles of impeachment, and might have been legally condemned in his abſence, the emperor deferred the trial till the next diet to be held at *Magdeburg*, where he was charged by *Thierri*, marquis of *Alſace*, with having ſent the *Sclaves* to pillage his dominions, and defied to ſingle combat by that nobleman; but he would not deign to give his perſonal appearance, and rejected the challenge becauſe it was ſent by an inferior. Nevertheleſs he deſired to have an interview with the emperor, and excuſed himſelf ſo effectually to *Frederic*, that he promiſed the duke ſhould be acquitted, on condition he would pay five thouſand marks of ſilver to the imperial treaſury. This propoſal he declined, and was ſummoned for the third time to the diet of *Goſlar*, where he was put to the ban of the empire, and *Philip*, archbiſhop of *Cologne*, ordered to put the ſentence in execution. That prelate, being joined with the troops of *Godfrey* duke of *Brabant*, *Philip* count of *Flanders*, *Otho* count of *Guelderland*, and many other noblemen, entered *Weſtphalia*, and laid waſte the country with fire and ſword; while the biſhop of *Halberſtadt* laid the churches under interdiction, and launched an anathema againſt the duke.

---

[d] Sigon. l. iv. de Regno Ital.

(E) Some hiſtorians allege, that the pope, at this meeting, ſet his foot on the emperor's neck, and treated him with inſolence and contempt (16); but it is not at all probable, that a prince of *Frederic*'s ſpirit would have ſuffered ſuch an inſult to paſs unpuniſhed; eſpecially as it does not appear, that he was reduced to the neceſſity of making ſuch abject ſubmiſſions.

(16) *Mezer. ab Reg. Chronol.* v. i. p. 379.

is put to the ban;

Mean while *Henry* was not idle; he aſſembled his forces and fell upon *Thuringia*, of which he made himſelf maſter, after having defeated the landgrave of *Heſſe*, duke *Bernard*, *Herman* count palatine, and *Widekinde* count *de Waldeck*: his troops afterwards obtained a victory over thoſe of the archbiſhop at *Hareſfeld*, by the valour of his general *Bernard* count *de Lipſtadt*, who retook all the towns in *Weſtphalia*, which the duke and his adherents had loſt; and made the biſhop of *Halberſtadt* priſoner, after having burned the town to aſhes.

The emperor, alarmed at theſe ſucceſſes, convened a diet at *Wirtzbourg*, where he was ſollicited in behalf of the duke of *Saxony*, by the ambaſſadors of the pope and the king of *England*, who was father-in-law to *Henry the Lion*. In conſequence of their intreaties, he delayed proceeding againſt him, and ſummoned a general aſſembly of the empire at *Gelnhauſen*, in *Weteravia*, where *Henry*, ſtill refuſing to appear, was formally condemned, and ſtripped of all his dominions, which were beſtowed on different noblemen.

diveſted of his dominions;

Frederic, in conjunction with thoſe among whom the fiefs of *Henry* were diſtributed, aſſembled an army to execute the ſentence of the diet; and, marching into *Saxony*, reduced that whole province; while the duke, abandoned by his friends, was obliged to take refuge in *Holſtein*. *Bernard de Anhalt* being eſtabliſhed in the poſſeſſion of this dukedom, the emperor entered *Bavaria*, where he met with no oppoſition, and at *Ratiſbon* ſolemnly confirmed the inveſtiture of that duchy, which *Otho de Wittelſpach* had already received at *Gelnhauſen*. While *Frederic* was thus employed in *Bavaria*, *Philip*, archbiſhop of *Cologne*, beſieged and made himſelf maſter of *Brunſwick*. The town of *Lunenburg* was inveſted, and the emperor, having detached *Waldemar*, king of *Denmark*, from the intereſts of *Henry the Lion*, by propoſing a double match between his two ſons and two daughters of his *Daniſh* majeſty, that prince equipped a fleet, with which he blocked up the mouth of the *Trave*, while *Frederic* beſieged the city of *Lubec* by land. This town being taken, and a treaty of alliance concluded with *Waldemar*, the emperor conquered all the *Lower Saxony*, together with *Holſtein*, from whence *Henry* had been compelled to retire, and then marched to the neighbourhood of *Lunenburg*, where he was viſited by the unfortunate duke, who threw himſelf at his feet, and begged, with great humility, that ſome of his dominions might be reſtored. *Frederic*, touched with his condition, referred him to the diet of *Quedlemburg*, where a very dangerous diſpute ariſing between him and duke *Bernard*, the emperor was fain to diſſolve the aſſembly, and delay the examination of his caſe, till the meeting of another diet at *Erfurt*. There duke *Henry* endeavoured to acquit himſelf of the crimes which had been laid to his charge; but, as it was impracticable to withdraw his fiefs, which were already diſpoſed of to different noblemen, *Frederic* adviſed him to reſide in *England*, until he ſhould be able to perſuade the princes to relinquiſh his dominions which they had ſhared; and in the mean time he promiſed, that no attempts ſhould be made upon the territories of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg*, which he would protect in behalf of his children. *Henry*, in compliance with this advice, retired to *England*, where he was hoſpitably entertained by his father-in-law *Henry* II. and there his wife bore him a fourth ſon called *William*, from whom the preſent houſe of *Brunſwick* is deſcended *.

and compelled to take refuge with his father-in-law Henry II. *king of* England.

---

* Ann. Boior. Avent. l. vi. p. 515. Barre, t. v. p. 301.

Pope Alexander *dies, and is ſucceeded by* Lucius III.

A. D. 1181.

Pope *Alexander* III. dying at this period, the cardinals, without the participation of the reſt of the clergy, elected *Ubaldo*, biſhop of *Oſtia*, a native of *Lucca*, who aſſumed the name of *Lucius* III. and was ſoon after his elevation expelled by the *Romans*, becauſe he would not ſwear to the obſervation of ſome cuſtoms, to which his predeceſſors had always adhered [f]. They were ſo much exaſperated at his refuſal, that they pillaged his lands, and chaſed him from place to place; ſo that he was obliged to ſollicit the aſſiſtance of *Chriſtian*, archbiſhop of *Mentz*, whom the emperor had left to maintain the peace of *Italy*.

That prelate accordingly came to his ſuccour with a body of *German* troops, which in a little time would have reduced the *Romans*, had not his ſucceſs been anticipated by death, which overtook him at *Tuſculum*. Thus deprived of his protector, the pope ſent nuncios to the emperor, and other ſovereigns, from whom he received conſiderable ſums of money, with which he purchaſed peace, and re-entered *Rome*. But he was obliged to quit that city a ſecond time. The inhabitants took arms again, they burned and plundered all his lands, and their rebellion raged to ſuch a pitch of fury, that they put out the eyes of a number of the clergy, and ſent them with mitres on their heads, in deriſion, to *Lucius*, who denounced an anathema againſt the authors of ſuch barbarity, and retired to *Verona* [f].

Diet at Mentz.

Mean while the emperor had convoked a diet at *Mentz*, in order to concert meaſures for prolonging the truce of *Italy*; and to this aſſembly the king of *England* ſent ambaſſadors, to demand the re-eſtabliſhment of *Henry the Lion* in ſome part of his hereditary dominions: but this affair, being duly conſidered, was found intangled with ſuch difficulties, that *Henry* was exhorted to exert his patience for ſome time, until the reſtitution of his territories could be gradually effected by means of argument and perſuaſion.

Otho de Wittelspach, who had taken poſſeſſion of *Bavaria* and its dependencies, began his adminiſtration with ſuch prudence, and took ſuch meaſures for the advantage of his people, that commerce in a little time flouriſhed through the whole province; the ſubjects became wealthy, and his court was diſtinguiſhed for magnificence; ſo that the emperor, growing jealous of his power, declared *Ratiſbon* a free town, independent of his dominion, erected *Stiria* into a duchy, holding of the empire only, and diſmembred his territories of the duchy of *Meranca* and principality of *Tyrol* [g].

---

[f] Pagi in Brev. Rom. Pontif. in Lucio III. t. viii.

AFTER theſe tranſactions he convoked a diet at *Conſtance*, where the deliberations turned upon the affairs of *Lombardy*; and as *Henry* king of the *Romans* aſſured his father, that the *Italian* cities would accept of peace upon reaſonable conditions, the emperor ſent three miniſters to treat with the deputies of the *Lombard* towns at *Placentia*; where a congreſs being opened, the treaty was in a very little time concluded and ratified, to the ſatisfaction of all parties. Among other articles it was agreed, that the emperor might exact the oath of allegiance from his *Italian* vaſſals; who ſhould be obliged to march to his aſſiſtance, in caſe of his being attacked in his journey to *Rome*, which is called the *Roman* expedition: that the ſaid vaſſals, and the towns, ſhould be exempted from all other impoſition, but that of ſupplying him with proviſion and forage in his march: that they ſhould enjoy the privilege of raiſing troops and fortifications for their own defence, and decide all cauſes, without appeal, in their own courts of juſtice, unleſs the ſum in litigation ſhould exceed fifty marks of ſilver: and laſtly, that in thoſe towns, where the biſhop had the title of count, he ſhould preſerve the right of creating conſuls; but, where the biſhop was not in poſſeſſion of that title, the right ſhould be reſerved to the emperor [h].

A. D. 1183.

Treaty of Placentia.

As the inhabitants of *Alexandria della Paglia* were not comprehended in this pacification, which the *Italians* for a long time conſidered as the baſis of their public liberty, they were obliged to ſend deputies to deprecate his imperial majeſty's wrath at *Nuremberg*, where they were pardoned, and taken into protection, on condition of changing the name of their city into *Cæſarea*, and holding their privileges of his good will and pleaſure.

SOON after this tranſaction, *Frederic* aſſembled a diet at *Mentz*, and, in preſence of a great number of princes and noblemen, again ſolemnly declared his ſon *Henry* king of the *Romans*, and afterwards knighted him and his brother prince *Frederic*, according to the rules and ceremonies of chivalry. The affairs of *Germany* being regulated at this meeting, the emperor repaired to *Italy*, in order to accommodate ſome differences with the pope, touching the ſee of *Triers*, which was diſputed by two competitors, and the

1184.

---

[g] ADLZR. Ann. Boic. Gent. ad an. 1182.

[h] SIGON. Hiſt. de Regno Ital. l. xiv. ad an. 1183.

ſucceſſion of the counteſs *Mathilda*, which was an eternal bone of contention between the empire and the church; and he was moreover actuated with the deſire of ſeeing his ſon *Henry* receive the imperial crown.

Frederic *repairs to* Verona.

INDUCED by theſe motives, he viſited his holineſs at *Verona*, where a council was convoked to rectify the errors and abuſes which had crept into the church. Being here ſollicited in favour of *Henry the Lion*, by *Lucius*, and another embaſſy from *England*, he conſented to the return of that nobleman to *Germany*, and promiſed to put him in poſſeſſion of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg*, which had been preſerved for his uſe: but as the pope would neither terminate the ſchiſm at *Triers*, according to his inclination, nor compromiſe the affair of *Mathilda*'s dominions, nor even compliment his ſon *Henry* with the imperial crown, he took his departure for *Milan*, where that young prince was crowned king of *Lombardy* with the uſual ſolemnities; and, in a little time after his coronation, ſet out for *Germany* to appeaſe ſome troubles excited by the tyranny and avarice of *Philip*, archbiſhop of *Cologne*, whom he accordingly reduced to order.

Henry *is crowned at* Milan.

MEAN while *Frederic* returned to the council of *Verona*, at which appeared *Heraclius*, patriarch of *Jeruſalem*, imploring ſuccour for his king *Baldwin*, who was by this time old and infirm, and in danger of loſing all his dominions, by inteſtine diviſions, and the victorious arms of *Saladin*, ſoltan of *Egypt*. His remonſtrances, however, had little effect upon the princes of the weſt, who were too much embroiled with their own affairs to undertake an expedition into *Paleſtine*; and the emperor in particular, inſtead of engaging in a cruſade, in conſequence of the exhortations of the pope, who took umbrage at his ſtaying ſo long in *Italy*, reſolved to aſſert the rights of the empire to the long diſputed ſucceſſion called the *Patrimony of St. Peter*. With this view he ſent *Henry* king of *Sardinia* with an army into *Tuſcany*; and that prince having ſeized *Aquapendente*, *Chieſſi*, *Bolſena*, *Bagnarca*, and ſome other towns, inveſted *Orvieto*, the ſiege of which laſted two whole years. Mean while *Frederic*, in perſon, made a circuit round the towns of *Lombardy*, and took an exact account of their privileges, which, in general, he confirmed: then he marched into *Romania*, beſieged and took *Faenza*, where he met with oppoſition, and compelled the greateſt part of *Tuſcany* to ſubmit to the empire; ſo that the ſucceſſion of the counteſs *Mathilda* was almoſt wholly reduced under his dominion, when pope *Lucius* died at *Verona*, and was ſucceeded by *Lambert Crivelli*, archbiſhop of

The emperor ſupports his right of ſovereignty in the towns of St. Peter's Patrimony.

A. D. 1185.

of *Milan*, who aſſumed the name of *Urban* III. and kept his archbiſhopric even after his elevation to the papal chair[i].

The emperor's ſon Henry *married to* Conſtance *ſiſter of* William *king of* Sicily. A. D. 1186.

MEAN while a match was concluded between the emperor's ſon *Henry*, and *Conſtance*, ſiſter and heireſs of *William* king of *Sicily*; and the nuptials were actually celebrated with extraordinary magnificence in that very city of *Milan*, which *Frederic* had but a few years before utterly deſtroyed[k].

THIS match was by no means agreeable to pope *Urban* III. who foreſaw that it would certainly one day furniſh the king of the *Romans* with pretenſions upon *Sicily*; and his reſentment hurried him ſo far, that he even ſuſpended from their functions the biſhops who had aſſiſted at the celebration of the nuptials; which were no ſooner conſummated than *Frederic*, underſtanding that the inhabitants of *Cremona* had raiſed an army to hinder *Crema* from being rebuilt, aſſembled a body of forces, marched to *Cremona*, and, having diſmantled the town, carried off a great number of priſoners; ſo that they were obliged to implore his clemency, and they were forgiven at the interceſſion of their biſhop. As for *Milan*, the emperor's reſidence in that city was of great advantage to the inhabitants; he extended its juriſdiction over all the caſtles ſituated between the *Adda* and the *Oglis*, and ordered that all law-ſuits, which might happen in its territory, ſhould be judged, without appeal, by the conſuls of *Milan*[l] (G).

FREDERIC, having thus eſtabliſhed his authority in *Lombardy*, left the government of that kingdom to his ſon *Henry*, and returned to his dominions in *Germany*; where he ſeized all the revenues of the biſhopric of *Mentz*, becauſe *Bertrand*, the biſhop, favoured *Folmar*, pretender to the archbiſhopric

---

[i] BARRE, t. v. p. 345.

[k] BARON. t. xii. ad an. 1186.

[l] SIGON. de Reg. Ital. l. xv. ad an. 1185.

(G) In the courſe of this year (1186) *Bertrand*, biſhop of *Metz*, introduced into *Germany* the cuſtom of keeping archives, in which were regiſtred the acts and deeds upon which private fortunes depend. Before this period, all cauſes relating to property were judged by living witneſſes, and the deciſion of the moſt part was left to the iſſue of ſingle combat. Theſe combats were fought in the biſhop's court-yard, or before the town-houſe, in the preſence of the biſhop's officers, who adjudged the victory, and puniſhed the vanquiſhed either with mulct or mutilation (17).

(17) *Meur. p.* 439.

of Triers, againſt *Rodulphus*, who was countenanced by the emperor.

Frederic *foments a war between* **Bugeſlaus** *duke of* **Pomerania,** *and* **Canut,** *king of* **Denmark;**

This tranſaction was followed by a difference with *Canut* king of *Denmark*, who refuſed to do homage for *Wandalia*, which had been conquered by his father *Waldemar*. *Frederic*, incenſed at this refuſal, inſtigated *Bugeſlaus*, on whom he had beſtowed the inveſtiture of *Pomerania*, to make war upon his *Daniſh* majeſty; but *Bugeſlaus*, knowing himſelf unable to cope with ſuch an antagoniſt, contented himſelf with committing hoſtilities again *Jarimar*, ſovereign of the iſle of *Rugen*, and uncle to *Canut*; who having recourſe to the aſſiſtance of the *Danes*, he was ſupplied with a fleet of ſhips, and obtained a complete naval victory over the *Pomeranians*. *Abſalom*, archbiſhop of *Lunden*, and miniſter of *Canut*, who commanded the victorious fleet, ſailed to the mouth of the river *Pena*, made an attempt upon *Demmin*, and ravaged the country. Next year his *Daniſh* majeſty embarked in perſon, entered the river *Zwina*, then plundered part of *Pomerania* and *Wandalia*, and at laſt, ſurpriſing *Bugeſlaus* in his own dominions, compelled that prince to ſue for peace, which he could obtain on no other condition than that of doing homage to *Canut*, and holding *Pomerania* as a fief of *Denmark* [m].

whom the emperor endeavours in vain to entrap. A. D. 1187.

The emperor, whoſe ſituation would not allow him to reinforce *Bugeſlaus* with troops, was not a little mortified at the iſſue of this war, by which the ſovereignty of *Pomerania* was loſt to the empire; and he reſoved to retrieve, by ſtratagem, that which he could not regain by force of arms. With this view he ſent an embaſſy to *Denmark*, inviting *Canut* to be preſent at the nuptials of his ſiſter *Chriſtina*, who was betrothed to the emperor's ſon *Frederic*, and had reſided for ſome years in *Germany* for her education. Had *Canut* viſited the imperial court upon this occaſion, *Frederic* would have compelled him to relinquiſh the ſovereignty of *Pomerania*, and do homage not only for *Wandalia*, but alſo for the kingdom of *Denmark*. But the *Dane*, remembring the emperor's behaviour to his father *Waldemar*, refuſed to quit his own kingdom, or even to pay the remainder of his ſiſter's dowry, until the ceremony ſhould be performed: a refuſal which exaſperated *Frederic* to ſuch a degree, that he ſent back the princeſs with the moſt mortifying marks of ſcorn and contempt [n], and *Canut*, in revenge for this inſult, made incurſions into the northern parts of *Germany*.

---

[m] Huitfel. Hiſt. Dan. t. i. ad an. 1187.

[n] Id. ibid.

Emeric,

Frederic *depoſes* Sobieſlaus *duke of* Bohemia, *and gives the inveſtiture of that dukedom to* Frederic.

EMERIC, having quarrelled with his brother *Bela*, king of *Hungary*, fled for refuge to count *Sobieſlaus*, duke of *Bohemia*, who, inſtead of granting him protection, or referring the affair to the cognizance of the emperor, ſent him back to his brother under a ſtrong eſcorte: a ſtep which gave ſuch umbrage to *Frederic*, who hated *Bela*, that he ſummoned *Sobieſlaus* to the diet, to give an account of his conduct in this affair. The duke, declining to appear before this tribunal, was condemned as contumacious, and deprived of his dominions, the inveſtiture of which was given to *Frederic*, ſon of *Uladiſlaus*, whom he had ſucceeded in the dukedom.

THE new duke, being furniſhed with ſome troops by the archbiſhop of *Saltzburg*, marched into *Bohemia* before *Sobieſlaus* could put himſelf into a poſture of defence; and, while that prince retired into *Luſatia*, he made his entrance into *Prague*, and was received with loud acclamations by the people, who were diſguſted at the adminiſtration of his rival. In a little time after his acceſſion, he was ſummoned to attend the emperor at a diet in *Ratiſbon*, and afterwards in a circuit round the towns of *Suabia*; and *Sobieſlaus*, taking the advantage of his abſence, aſſembled an army, by dint of the friends he ſtill had in *Bohemia*, and, marching to the foreſt of *Hercinia*, ſecured the paſſes in order to prevent *Frederic*'s return. Notwithſtanding this precaution, his rival entered the country by the way of *Ratiſbon*, with a conſiderable body of *German* troops, and, a battle enſuing, *Sobieſlaus* obtained the victory. *Frederic* however, having rallied his forces, and being joined by *Conrad*, marquis *de Znain*, in *Moravia*, retrieved his honour, and, in a pitched battle, vanquiſhed *Sobieſlaus* in his turn.

HAVING thus effectually quelled his rival, who never appeared in the ſequel, he poſſeſſed his dominions in quiet, until he gave umbrage to the *Bohemians* by raiſing ſtrangers to the magiſtracy of *Prague*, and other unpopular meaſures, which created a ſpirit of diſcontent and diſaffection; in conſequence of which the nobility depoſed him, while he aſſiſted at the diet in *Ratiſbon*, and made a proffer of the crown to his old friend *Conrad*, marquis *de Znain*, who was accordingly choſen ſovereign of *Bohemia*.

whom he ſupports againſt all oppoſition.

BUT this dignity he did not long enjoy; for the emperor, being appriſed of theſe proceedings, intereſted the princes in the affair, and the *Bohemians* were put to the ban of the empire. The execution of this ſentence, however, was ſuſpended; becauſe *Conrad*, foreſeeing the tempeſt that was brewing againſt him, relinquiſhed his acquiſition, and the

Bohemians ſent deputies to deprecate the wrath of the emperor, who commanded them to take the oath of allegiance anew to *Frederic*, as their lawful ſovereign, and he was accordingly reinſtated in his dominions [o].

A difference between the emperor and the pope.

MEAN while every thing tended to a rupture between the emperor and the pope. The laſt being diſguſted at the marriage of *Henry*, king of the *Romans*, with *Conſtance* of *Sicily*, as well as at *Frederic*'s ſeizing the dominions of the counteſs *Mathilda*, endeavoured, not only to detach the towns of *Lombardy* from the emperor's intereſt, but alſo to foment a difference between him and the *German* prelates, who had ſome cauſe of diſſatisfaction, in his taking the ſpoils of defunct biſhops, and exerciſing ſome other acts of ſeverity againſt the members of the church. The emperor perceiving his drift, and dreading the conſequence of a quarrel with the clergy, aſſembled a diet at *Gelnhauſen*, where he found means to remove the diſcontents of the eccleſiaſtical princes, and engage them in his intereſt againſt the pope, to whom they wrote a very ſharp remonſtrance, containing a detail of the ill offices his holineſs had done the emperor and empire, in protecting the *Cremoneſe*, his declared enemies, in ſtirring up the other towns of *Lombardy* againſt his authority, in protracting the ſchiſm in the church of *Triers*, and in levying heavy exactions from the churches of *Germany*. They, therefore, intreated him to alter his conduct, redreſs theſe grievances, and be heartily reconciled to the emperor, whoſe deſigns he had hitherto ſought to traverſe and oppoſe.

URBAN, far from complying with this advice, was ſo incenſed at their having abandoned his cauſe, that he reſolved to excommunicate the emperor; but he died before the ſentence could be fulminated, and was ſucceeded by *Albert*, cardinal and chancellor of the *Roman* church, who took the name of *Gregory* VIII. and lived but two months after his elevation [p]. This pontif left his quality of apoſtolical legate to *Philip*, archbiſhop of *Cologne*, who exerted all his endeavours to detach the *German* churches from the emperor's party, and fortified the city of *Cologne*, to defend himſelf againſt the effects of his indignation: but his ambition was humbled by *Frederic*, who, in an aſſembly at *Worms*, repreſented the evil conſequences of his conduct in ſuch a light, that a decree was made, prohibiting the importation of proviſion and neceſſaries into *Cologne*; *Folmar* and his adherents, who had taken refuge with the archbiſhop, were put to the ban of the empire, and *Philip* given to underſtand,

Philip, *archbiſhop of* Cologne, *creates diſturbances in the empire.*

---

[o] BARRE, t. v. p. 378.

[p] PAGI ad an. 1187.

ſtand, that troops would be ſent into his territory, in caſe he ſhould continue to protect the refugees.

Frederic *makes war againſt* Humbert, *count of* Savoy.

THIS diſturbance was ſucceeded by a war with *Humbert*, count of *Savoy*, who had always eſpouſed the cauſe of the pope againſt the emperor; and for that reaſon intailed upon himſelf the reſentment of *Barbaroſſa*. The ſees of *Turin* and *Geneva* were detached from the county by *Frederic*, who erected them into fiefs of the empire, ſo that the biſhops would no longer hold of *Humbert*, until they were reduced by force of arms: and this compulſion, enforced againſt the imperial decree, excited the indignation of *Frederic*, who, in his laſt paſſage to *Italy*, took, pillaged, and burnt, the caſtle of *Suſa*, together with all the archives it contained. *Henry* king of the *Romans*, being joined by the *Milaneſe*, who hated the houſe of *Savoy*, entered *Piedmont*, took the caſtle of *Veillani*, and reduced great part of the country; but the progreſs of the war was checked by the death of *Humbert*, whoſe ſon *Thomas* I. was left a minor, under the tutorage of *Boniface*, marquis of *Montferrat*, who obtained of *Henry*, king of the *Romans*, the revocation of the imperial decree, by which the biſhopric of *Turin* was erected into a fief of the empire [q]. In conſequence of this revocation, the biſhop ceded the juriſdiction and rights of ſignory in that city to the count of *Savoy*, on condition that this laſt ſhould do homage to the emperor; which homage was afterwards renewed at *Baſil* to the emperor *Philip*, who beſtowed upon *Thomas* the inveſtiture of all the countries, lands, and ſignories, which he had inherited from his anceſtors (H).

---

[q] SIGON. de Reg. Ital. l. xv.

(H) The quarrels between the biſhops and counts of *Geneva* and *Savoy* were not ſo eaſily terminated: on the contrary, they became every day more and more embroiled, as is generally the caſe with all thoſe diſputes which turn upon rights acquired by intrigue, inſinuation, or force of arms. The biſhops and counts enjoyed, by turns, the favour of the popes and emperors, who iſſued contradictory bulls and decrees occaſionally in behalf of their favourites (1).

The biſhops and counts of *Geneva*, like the other noblemen of *Burgundy*, took advantage of the wars between the emperors and holy ſee, to render themſelves independent. The counts made the government hereditary in their families, and acted as ſovereign princes: the citizens, by way of balancing this power, intruſted the biſhops, by commiſſion,

(1) *Hiſt. General. de Savoy*, t. i. p. 246.

FREDERIC was employed in making regulations fo establishment of peace and good order in *Germany*, the news arrived of *Jerusalem*'s being taken by soltan *din:* a circumstance which filled all *Europe* with grief consternation; so much was the spirit of the times influe by that religious knight-errantry, which sought to wre *Holy Land* out of the hands of the infidels.

A.D. 1188. The emperor takes the cross.

CLEMENT III. who succeeded *Gregory* VIII. in the chair, no sooner received these melancholy tidings, tha ordered a crusade to be preached up through all the d ent countries of Christendom. The emperor assembling a at *Mentz*, in order to deliberate with the states of the pire on this unhappy event, took the cross, and his exa was followed by his son *Frederic*, duke of *Suabia*, with eight of the first noblemen in *Germany*, ecclesiastics as we laymen. In consequence of this engagement, the pope reconciled with the emperor. The time was fixed fo departure of the crusards; the rendezvous appointed at *tisbon*; and, in order to prevent the inconvenience of great a multitude, *Frederic* decreed, that no person sh inlist himself, who could not afford to expend three m of silver. Notwithstanding this prohibition, such was zeal of the *Germans*, that the adventurers assembled to number of one hundred and fifty thousand fighting well accoutred, and provided with necessaries for the e dition.

THE emperor, in order to raise money for this occa alienated several fiefs belonging to his own family, and posed a general tax upon the lands, effects, and moveal of those who did not take the cross; but this exact

with the administration of justice, the *police*, and defence of their privileges; but they were soon obliged to oppose the enterprizes of these defenders. The bishops, as they grew powerful, erected themselves into temporal lords of the city, by virtue of commissions obtained of the emperors, and left nothing to the counts but the jurisdiction of the country that depended upon the town; so that they were restricted to the sovereignty of the territory which is now called the *Genevois*, hence are indifferently den nated counts of *Geneva*, o the *Genevois*. It was at le agreed, that the bishops sh possess the jurisdiction and nories of the town, with power of coining money; the count should not build fortress without the bish consent; that he should homage to the bishop, and point a lieutenant at *Genev* judge civil causes (z).

(z) *Spon. t.* i. *p.* 57.

kno

known by the name of the *Saladine Tythe*, not anſwering his purpoſe, he obtained permiſſion of the pope to diſpenſe, for a certain ſum, with the attendance of thoſe who had enliſted themſelves in a hurry, and afterwards repented of the engagement. Mean while he diſpatched *Henry* count *de Dier* to ſummon *Saladin* to reſtore the *Holy Land*, and the wood of the true croſs, which he had taken from the Chriſtians of the eaſt; or to declare war againſt him, ſhould he refuſe to comply with theſe demands. At the ſame time he ſent ambaſſadors to the ſoltan of *Iconium* and the emperor of *Conſtantinople*, requiring a free paſſage through their dominions. Dreading the commotions that might be raiſed in his abſence by *Henry the Lion* and his adherents, he revoked the proſcription of that nobleman, effected a reconciliation between him and his enemy duke *Bernard*, and ſolemnly promiſed that he ſhould be reſtored to the poſſeſſion of all his dominions, provided he would return to *England*, and reſide in that kingdom until the cruſade ſhould be finiſhed. *Henry* aſſented to the propoſal, and retired to the court of his father-in-law, after having bound himſelf by oath to deſiſt from all attempts to interrupt the peace of *Germany*, during the emperor's abſence [r].

Settles the ſucceſſion of his hereditary dominions

Then he made a progreſs through the principal cities of *Germany*, accompanied by his ſon *Henry*, to whom he intended to leave the government of his dominions; and, that he might neglect no ſtep tending to the preſervation and peace of the empire, he regulated his ſucceſſion in ſuch a manner, as that none of his children ſhould have cauſe to complain, or a pretext to diſturb the peace of his country.

Sets out for Paleſtine, *and defeats the* Turks.

He in perſon marched at the head of thirty thouſand men, by the way of *Vienna*, to *Preſburg*, where he was joined by the reſt of his army. Thence he proceeded, through *Hungary*, into the dominions of the *Greek* emperor, who, notwithſtanding his profeſſions of friendſhip, had been detached from the intereſts of *Frederic* by *Saladin*'s promiſes and inſinuations, and took all opportunities of harraſſing the cruſards in their march. The emperor, incenſed at his perfidious dealing, laid the country under contribution, took and plundered *Philippopolis*, defeated a body of *Greek* troops who attacked him in his march, and compelled *Iſaacus Angelus*, emperor of *Conſtantinople*, to ſue for peace. He wintered at *Adrianople*, croſſed the *Helleſpont* in the ſpring, refreſhed his troops for a few days at *Laodicea*, defeated the *Turks* in ſeveral battles, took and pillaged the city of *Iconium*, and croſſed

---

[r] *Barre, tom. v. p.* 392.

Mount Taurus; ſo that all *Aſia Minor* was filled with the terror of his name, and the Chriſtians of that country were elevated with the moſt flattering hope of relief and advantage from his aſſiſtance: but they were diſappointed in their *Is drowned.* A. D. 1190. expectation. This great prince, who was an expert ſwimmer, in order to refreſh himſelf from the ſultry heat of ſummer, plunged into the river *Cydnus*, where, unable to cope with the current, he was unfortunately drowned; but his body was retrieved, and buried in the city of *Tyre* [s].

He was ſucceeded in command by his ſon *Frederic* duke of *Suabia*, who, having performed the laſt offices to his father at *Tyre*, proceeded on his march, and joined the army of the eaſtern Chriſtians, at that time engaged in the ſiege of *Ptolemais*: but, before that city was taken, he died of an infectious diſtemper, which proved fatal to the greateſt part of his army, the wreck of which returned to *Germany*, with the landgrave of *Thuringia*, the duke of *Guelderland*, and the count of *Holſtein*, except a few that remained with *Leopold* duke of *Auſtria*.

Thus periſhed *Frederic* I. in the ſixty-ninth year of his age, and thirty-eight of his reign, a prince of an enterpriſing ſpirit and great capacity, who had the peace of his country always at heart, and who ſupported the dignity of the empire with equal courage and reputation (I).

---

[s] Otho a Sancto Blaſio. Godef. Monach. Tagen. Deſcript. Expedit. Aſiat.

(I) He had no children by his firſt wife *Alix*, daughter of the marquis of *Urſbourg*, from whom he had obtained a divorce; but he had five ſons and two daughters by the empreſs *Beatrice*, daughter of *Renaud* count of *Burgundy*. *Henry* the eldeſt was already elected king of the *Romans*, and appointed his ſucceſſor in the empire: he beſtowed upon *Frederic* the ſecond ſon the duchy of *Suabia*, together with that part of *Bavaria* which he had inherited of his brother *Welf*, together with the county of *Pſullendorf*; to his third ſon *Conrad* he gave the duchy of *Rottemberg*, and to *Otho* that of *Burgundy*, which was the patrimony of the empreſs; and, laſtly, on *Philip* the youngeſt ſon he ſettled all the eſtates and countries which he had recovered and diſengaged from the hands of the eccleſiaſtics. One of his daughters was married to *Conrad* marquis of *Miſnia*, and the other to *Mathew* firſt duke of *Lorrain* (1).

(1) *Heiſſ. Hiſt. c.* 13.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Deducing the Hiſtory of Germany *to the Election of* Rodolphus, *Founder of the* Auſtrian *Greatneſs.*

HENRY VI.

Henry VI. *ſucceeds as emperor, and by right of his wife inherits the kingdom of* Sicily.

HENRY VI. ſurnamed *the Severe*, received almoſt at the ſame time the news of his father's death, and of that of his uncle-in-law *William* king of *Sicily*. After his father's departure for *Paleſtine*, this young prince had found it very difficult to maintain his authority in the empire. *Henry the Lion* duke of *Saxony*, without paying the leaſt regard to the oath he had taken, returned to *Germany*, which was now unfurniſhed of her beſt troops, and entered into an aſſociation with ſome diſcontented noblemen, who engaged to aſſiſt him in recovering his dominions. The chief of theſe aſſociates was *Hartwick* archbiſhop of *Bremen*, who expected the aſſiſtance of *Henry* in his turn, to reduce the *Dillimarſes*, a people who had withdrawn themſelves from the dominion of the ſee of *Bremen*, and claimed the protection of *Waldemar* biſhop of *Sleſwic*. Accordingly *Henry*, as a mark of gratitude to *Hartwick*, entered *Holſtein* with a body of troops, furniſhed by the archbiſhop and other noblemen, took *Bardewic* by aſſault, plundered and burnt the town, and carried off the principal inhabitants into captivity. *Lubec*, *Hamburgh*, and other places, intimidated by this example, opened their gates to the conqueror, and the whole country was filled with conſternation. The king of the *Romans* taking the field, in order to ſtop the progreſs of *the Lion*, made an unſucceſsful attempt upon *Brunſwic*, then marching into the territory of *Bremen*, with a view to chaſtiſe *Hartwick*, the author of the war, he ravaged the country, and attacked the army of *the Lion*, who was defeated near *Ferden*[t]. In conſequence of this battle, the archbiſhop fled to *England*, and *Henry*, humbled by his bad ſucceſs, had recourſe to the interceſſion of the archbiſhops of *Mentz* and *Cologne* with the king of the *Romans*, who, in an aſſembly at *Fulde*, granted him peace, on condition that *Brunſwic* ſhould be diſmantled, the citadel of *Lawenberg* razed to the ground, and *Lubec* equally divided between *Henry* and *Adolphus* count of *Holſtein*; that *the Lion* ſhould give his ſon *Lotharius* as an hoſt-

Henry the Lion *again diſturbs the peace of the empire.*

Is defeated by the king of the Romans; *and obtains peace.*

---

[t] GERARD. STERD. ad. ann. 1190.

age, and that *Henry* his heir, attended by fifty knights, ſhould accompany the king of the *Romans* in his march to *Italy*.

After this reconciliation with *Henry* duke of *Saxony*, who pledged his own ſon as hoſtage of his faith, the emperor levied an army, and marched into *Italy*, with his wife *Conſtance*, in order to be crowned by the pope, and afterwards to go and recover the ſucceſſion of *William*, who had died without legitimate iſſue.

But *Tancred* count of *Leccio*, and natural brother of the empreſs, had been declared king of *Sicily* by the great chancellor, at the head of a party, who dreaded the proſpect of being under the dominion of the emperor. *Henry*, foreſeeing the difficulties that would attend his endeavours to recover the ſucceſſion, reſolved to conciliate the affection of the *Lombard* towns, which would be a bulwark againſt the power and intereſt of his rival. With this view he confirmed to the inhabitants of *Cremona*, *Bergamo*, and *Bologna*, the privilege of coining money, with certain reſtrictions. He ſettled in perpetuity to the churches of *Reggio* and *Padua* the fiefs of which they were poſſeſſed: then croſſing the *Appennines*, he engaged in a treaty with the *Piſans* againſt *Tancred*, and confirmed and augmented all the privileges of *Genoa* by an authentic deed, in conſideration of which, the *Genoeſe* promiſed to equip a fleet for his ſervice, to be uſed in the reduction of *Sicily* [u].

The emperor and empreſs are crowned at Rome. A. D. 1191.

Soon after his arrival in *Italy*, pope *Clement* died, and was ſucceeded by *Celeſtin* III. in the eighty-ſixth year of his age, who being conſecrated at *Eaſter*, next day crowned the emperor and his wife. A very remarkable circumſtance happened in the ceremony; for the pope had no ſooner placed the crown upon *Henry*'s head, than he kicked it off again, as a teſtimony of the power inherent in popes, to give and take away the imperial dignity according to the emergency of affairs [x].

He inveſts Naples, *but is obliged to raiſe the ſiege.*

Henry, after the coronation of himſelf and his empreſs, put the pope in poſſeſſion of the town of *Tuſculum*, according to a promiſe he had made before he received the imperial crown, and this place being delivered to the *Romans*, in conſequence of a treaty ſubſiſting between them and *Clement* III. they razed it to the foundation, and expelled the inhabitants; but, ſometime after its deſtruction, the town of *Fraſcati* was raiſed from its ruins. The emperor, having thus performed his promiſe, purſued his enterprize againſt the baſtard *Tancred*, notwithſtanding the remonſtrances and prohibition of the pope, who, though he conſidered *Tancred* as an uſurper, and wanted to ſee him deprived of the crown of *Sicily*, which he claimed as a fief of the holy ſee, was, nevertheleſs, much more averſe to the emperor's poſſeſſing that kingdom, becauſe ſuch an acceſſion would have rendered him too powerful in *Italy* for the intereſts of the church. *Henry*, however, without paying the leaſt regard to his threats and repreſentations, took almoſt all the towns of *Campania*, *Apulia*, and *Calabria*, inveſted the city of *Naples*, and ſent for the *Genoeſe* fleet to come and form the blockade by ſea; but before their arrival, he was obliged to raiſe the ſiege, in conſequence of a dreadful mortality among his troops, which, among others, ſwept off *Philip* archbiſhop of *Cologn*, *Otho* duke of *Bohemia*, and the greateſt part of the nobility who ſerved in this expedition: as for *Henry* ſon of *the Lion*, he had, before this period, eſcaped by ſtealth in a ſhip from *Oſtia*. The emperor himſelf was ſeized with the diſtemper, of which he recovered with difficulty. In the mean time, the towns which had ſubmitted to his power, ſeeing his army greatly diminiſhed, and himſelf incapable of action, took this opportunity to ſhake off his dominion, and make their peace with *Tancred*, whoſe reſentment they dreaded. In particular the inhabitants of *Salerno*, where the empreſs reſided, delivered that princeſs to *Tancred*, who afterwards reſtored her to the emperor, in conſequence of the pope's interpoſition.

---

[u] Caffari. ann. gen. l. iii. ap. Murat. t. vi.

[x] Rog. Hoved. an. Angl. p. 689.

HENRY, being no longer in a condition to maintain the war againſt his rival, repaired to *Genoa*, where he entered into new engagements with the inhabitants, concerning the equipment of another fleet for the conqueſt of *Naples*; then he viſited *Placentia*, *Cremona*, and *Breſcia*, on which he beſtowed particular marks of favour [y]. Having ſecured the fidelity of the *Lombard* towns, he paſſed the *Alps*, knighted *Lewis* IV. of *Bavaria* at *Worms*, declared his brother *Conrad* duke of *Suabia*, gave *Tuſcany* to his ſecond brother *Philip*, with the territories of *Spoleto*, and the *Ecrainer*, which he wreſted from the houſe of *Guelph*, and built an houſe at *Coblentz* for the knights of the *Teutonic* order [z] (K). A.D. 1192. Now

---

[y] SIGON. l. xv.

[z] ADLZREITT. ann. Boic. Gent. p. i. l. xiii. ad. ann. 1192.

(K) About this time was knighthood, the occaſion of eſtabliſhed the *Teutonic* order of which we ſhall explain for the reader's

Now that his wealth and dominions were ſo conſiderably augmented, and his authority eſtabliſhed beyond the reach of

---

reader's ſatisfaction. *Frederic Barbaroſſa*, in his expedition to the *Holy Land*, had been accompanied by a great number of *German* gentlemen volunteers, who wanted to ſignalize themſelves in the cauſe of their religion. Theſe, upon the death of *Frederic*, elected his ſecond ſon *Frederic* duke of *Suabia*, and *Henry* duke of *Brabant*, captain generals of their nation; and under theſe chiefs performed ſuch gallant exploits at the taking of *Acra*, *Jeruſalem*, and other cities, that *Henry* king of *Jeruſalem*, in conſideration of their great ſervices, erected them into an order of knighthood, under the title of *St. George*, becauſe all of them fought on horſeback: however they afterwards aſſumed the name, and put themſelves under the protection, of the Holy Virgin, who was already patroneſs of an hoſpital erected upon *Mount Zion*, for the benefit of *German* pilgrims. Their ſtatutes were formed on the plan of thoſe belonging to the knights *Templars*, and the knights of *St. John*, ſo as to be adapted for an order that was deſigned to be partly military, partly charitable, that, after having employed one part of their lives in defence of the *Holy Land*, they might devote the remainder to the exerciſe of hoſpitality, in favour of the poor pilgrims of their nation. Thoſe ſtatutes, among other articles, ordained, That the knights ſhould be deſcended of noble families; that they ſhould be called brother knights of the Bleſſed Virgin; that they ſhould take an oath to defend the Chriſtian church in general, and the *Holy Land* in particular; that they ſhould protect the clergy, the widow, the orphan, and the poor, in diſtreſs; that they ſhould ſerve and aſſiſt all thoſe who were qualified for being admitted into their hoſpital, and, in general conform themſelves to all the rules of the order. The emperor *Henry* not only granted his protection to this order, but alſo employed his good offices with the pope to confirm the inſtitution; accordingly *Celeſtin* peruſed and improved the ſtatutes. He ordained that their habit ſhould be white with a black croſs ſewed upon it; that they ſhould bear the ſame croſs upon a white banner, and wear it on their atchievments and armour; and live according to the rule of *St. Auguſtine*. He likewiſe confirmed to them the gift of that *German* hoſpital upon *Mount Zion*, from whence they derived their title and foundation, and granted to them the ſame privileges which were enjoyed by the knights of *St. John*. In conſequence of the bull which he publiſhed on this ſubject the king of *Jeruſalem*, and *Frederic* duke of *Suabia*, being empowered by his imperial majeſty, created the firſt knights of this order to the number of forty, of whom *Henry de Walpot* was choſen grand maſter. The emperor beſtowed upon them the right of poſſeſſing in perpetuity all the of all oppoſition and controul, he reſolved to render the empire hereditary in his houſe, and ſecure the crown to his ſon *Frederic*. With this view he aſſembled the princes at *Gelnhauſben* in *Weteravia*, where he explained his intention, which was fulfilled by an irrevocable law, importing, That, in order to avoid thoſe diſturbances which had always attended the election of emperors, the crown ſhould become hereditary, and devolve to heirs male or female.

He ſettles the affairs of the empire.

At his return to *Germany*, he took all the neceſſary precautions for ſettling the peace of the empire, ſo as that it ſhould not be diſturbed in his abſence. He applied himſelf particularly to the adminiſtration of juſtice, and in perſon ſat to hear and determine the complaints of his ſubjects, with ſuch patience and perſeverance, as attracted univerſal admiration. One of his favourites having taken the freedom to tell him that he fatigued himſelf too much with giving audience, which often interfered with his neceſſary meals, he replied, That a private man was at liberty to eat when he would; but that a prince ought never to ſit down till after he had diſcuſſed the affairs of the public [a] (L).

Henry *ſuſpected of being concerned in the murder of* Albert *biſhop of* Liege.

Notwithstanding this indefatigable care and apparent integrity, he found it a difficult taſk to acquit himſelf of the ſuſpicion of being concerned in the murder of *Albert* biſhop of *Liege*. That prelate had been regularly elected by the canons, and confirmed by the pope, in oppoſition to *Lotharius*, who had received the inveſtiture of the biſhopric from the emperor: but he did not long ſurvive his conſecration; for he was murdered at *Rheims*, by two *German* knights, who had inſinuated themſelves into his confidence, and who were ſaid to have been employed on this occaſion by his competitor, with the conſent and privacy of the emperor. The arch-

---

[a] Heiss. liv. ii. c. 14.

the lands and provinces they ſhould conquer from the Infidels; and *Philip* king of *France* was their great benefactor, and allowed them to bear a flower de luce at the four extremities of the croſs (2). Theſe knights, after having been expelled from the *Holy Land*, ſubdued *Pruſſia*, *Pomelia*, and a part of *Pomerania*, which they loſt again, after *Albert* of *Brandenburg* their grand maſter had changed his religion (3).

(L) He had a natural fund of eloquence; his perſon was elegant, his port majeſtic, his converſation gay and lively, and his manner obliging (4).

(2) *Heiſſ. Hiſt. liv. xi. c.* 14. (3) *Not. upon Heiſſ. ubi ſup.* (4) *Heiſſ. ibid.*

biſhop of *Mentz*, together with the noblemen of the
and the *Meuſe*, exaſperated at this barbarous aſſaſſination
tered the territories of the count of *Horſtade*, brother o
tharius, and deſtroyed the country with fire and ſ
The emperor, in order to appeaſe their indignation, and j
himſelf at the ſame time, called an aſſembly at *Cobl*
where he declared himſelf innocent of the crime, ſoothe
malecontents with fair promiſes, took meaſures for puni
the aſſaſſins who eſcaped into *France*, ratified the pope'
ciſion againſt *Lotharius*, whom he diveſted of his biſho
and thus the ſee of *Liege* becoming vacant, was filled
Albert de Cuck, to the ſatisfaction of all parties [b].

War between Henry the Lion *and* Rodolphus *count of* Holſtein;

SCARCE was this affair terminated, when a war brok between *Adolphus* duke of *Holſtein* and *Henry the Lion*, ſeized and refuſed to reſtore *Holſtein* to the right owner, cording to the treaty concluded at *Fulde*. He alleged t the agreement was the effect of compulſion, therefore obligatory. *Adolphus*, having no reaſon to expect a ſuccours from the emperor at this conjuncture, when h whole endeavours were employed in raiſing an army for t conqueſt of *Sicily*; deſpairing, I ſay, of obtaining aſſiſtanc from that quarter, he had recourſe to *Bernard* duke o *Saxony*, and *Otho* marquis of *Brandenburgh*, whoſe inter it was to bridle the power of *Henry the Lion*; and being reinforced with a conſiderable body of troops by thoſe noblemen, and his own nephew the count of *Daſlaw*, he marched into *Holſtein*, where he repulſed the forces of *Henry*, and ſoon reduced the whole country to his obedience: then he made himſelf maſter of *Staden* and *Lubec*, and received from the emperor the inveſtiture of them and ſome other places which he conquered from his adverſary.

who afterwards acts againſt Bernard *duke of* Saxony;

THESE acquiſitions excited the jealouſy of *Bernard* duke of *Saxony*, who pretending that he had the beſt right to thoſe dominions which had formerly belonged to *the Lion*, broke with *Adolphus*, ſeized *Holdeſloi* and ſome other places in that neighbourhood, and even threatened to beſiege *Lubec*, tho' it was an imperial town. In return for theſe acts of hoſtility *Adolphus* having formed a league with *Bernard de Ratzeburg*, and *Guecelen* count *de Swerin*, inveſted *Lawenburg*, belonging to *Bernard*, which being reduced to extremity, the inhabitants deſpairing of ſuccour from their own duke, applied to *Canut* king of *Denmark*, offering to put the city under his protection: but, before the *Daniſh* troops arrived, they were compelled by neceſſity to ſurrender. *Adolphus* afterwards, in conjunction with the biſhops of *Norway*, the nobility of *Pomerania*, and ſeveral princes of *Lower Saxony*, eſpouſed the cauſe of *Waldemar* biſhop of *Sleſwic*, who pretended to the crown of *Denmark*, and actually ſupplied him with a fleet and army, which enabled him to paſs into that country, and aſſume the title of king; but, by the prudent conduct of *Canut*, who kept himſelf on the defenſive, and tired out the confederates with delays and procraſtination, the league was diſſipated, the pretender taken priſoner, and *Adolphus* purſued from *Sleſwic* into his own country, where he was obliged to ſue for peace, which he obtained of *Canut* on very hard conditions[c].

---

[b] BARRE, tom. v. p. 440.

and eſpouſes the cauſe of a pretender to the crown of Denmark.

It was at this period of time that *Richard* king of *England*, on his return from *Paleſtine*, where he had acquired great reputation againſt *Saladin*, was ſhipwrecked on the coaſt of the *Adriatic*, and aſſumed the habit of a pilgrim, that he might ſecurely travel through the dominions of *Leopold* duke of *Auſtria*. But that prince, whom he had affronted at the ſiege of *Ptolemais*, having diſcovered him in ſpite of his diſguiſe, cauſed the unfortunate monarch to be apprehended, loaded with chains, and treated with the utmoſt indignity. The emperor was no ſooner informed of the capture than he demanded the priſoner, whom *Leopold* delivered, upon promiſe of receiving a good ſhare of his ranſom. Notwithſtanding a ſolemn embaſſy from *England* to demand the liberty of her prince, who was detained without any plauſible pretence, in oppoſition to the dictates of honour, humanity, and the law of nations, he, at the diet of *Haguenau*, preferred ſix articles of accuſation againſt *Richard*, importing, That he had engaged in a league with *Tancred*, in order to maintain that uſurper in the poſſeſſion of the kingdom of *Sicily*; that by quarrelling with the king of *France* he had prevented the conqueſt of *Jeruſalem*; that he had invaded the kingdom of *Cyprus*, and employed the arms of the cruſards in pillaging a Chriſtian prince; that he had inſulted the duke of *Auſtria* during the ſiege of *Ptolemais*; that he had been acceſſary to the death of the marquis of *Montferrat*, who had been aſſaſſinated in *Paleſtine*; and that he had concluded a truce with *Saladin*, contrary to the intereſts of Chriſtendom.

Richard *king of* England *is arreſted by the duke of* Auſtria;

and accuſed before the diet of Haguenau.

The king of *England* obſerved, that, although he was accountable to no perſon for his actions, and did not conſider the members of that aſſembly as his judges, yet as his honour was concerned, he would wave his royal prerogative, and

---

[c] Id. ibid.

vindicate his character from theſe baſe and cruel aſ
He affirmed that he had not raiſed *Tancred* to the t
Sicily, but treated with him as with a king in actua
ſion of the crown; that the jealouſy of the *French* k
the ſole cauſe that obſtructed the ſucceſs of the cr
Paleſtine, and that he ought to bear the blame, as h
tired the firſt from the ſcene of action; that he h
the kingdom of *Cyprus* from an uſurper and tyrant,
provoked his reſentment; but ſurely he could not
taxed with having been actuated by ambition and a
that occaſion, inaſmuch as he had voluntarily ce
iſland in favour of *Gui de Luſignan*, to indemnify hin
loſs of *Jeruſalem*: that the duke of *Auſtria*, in loa
with ſhackles, had effectually revenged a ſuppoſed
for which he might have demanded ſatisfaction in
honourable manner; that his conduct and charact
to have ſcreened him from the imputation of being
to the murder of the marquis of *Montferrat*, who
the very article of death, acquitted him of all ſuſpicio
kind, by deſiring his wife to deliver the city of *Tyr*
hands, a legacy which he ſurely would not leave to
whom he had ſuſpected as the author or accompli
own murder; and, laſtly, with reſpect to the intelli
was ſuppoſed to have maintained with *Saladin*, he
reminded them of the ſhare he had in the victory
over that Infidel prince. He accuſed the duke of *A*
of having abandoned him from a motive of jealou
he was on the eve of beſieging *Jeruſalem*; and ad
the truce he had made could not be the effect of a
ſelf-intereſted view, ſeeing that of all the booty he h
from the caravan of *Babylon*, he had reſerved nothin
ſelf but the ring upon his finger.

A.D. 1193. *The emperor promiſes to ſet* Richard *at liberty, but afterwards inſiſts upon his paying an exorbitant ranſom.*

THIS defence appeared ſo ſatisfactory to the
princes, who were moreover affected with the miſf
ſo great a king, that they unanimouſly intreated the
to ſet him at liberty; and *Henry* promiſed to com
their requeſt: but this favourable diſpoſition was
by the intrigues of *Philip* king of *France*, who had
diſturbances in *England*, by encouraging *John* to
brother's crown, and now dreaded the releaſe of *Ri*
an effectual obſtacle to his conqueſt of *Normandy*,
invaded during the captivity of its ſovereign. He
ſent the biſhop of *Beauvais* as embaſſador into *Ger*
order to repreſent to the emperor the great advant
might be derived from the captivity of *Richard*; and
nuations of that prelate quadrated ſo exactly with

geſtions of his own avarice, that he refuſed to enlarge his priſoner without a moſt exorbitant ranſom, amounting to an hundred and fifty thouſand marks of ſilver, of which one third ſhould be given to *Leopold* duke of *Auſtria*. He moreover inſiſted upon *Richard*'s tranſporting the money at his own riſque, upon ſetting at liberty the king of *Cyprus* and his daughter, and upon beſtowing his niece *Eleanor* of *Bretagne* in marriage upon the eldeſt ſon of the duke of *Auſtria*. Hard as theſe conditions may ſeem, they were embraced by *Richard*, who thought he could not pay too dear for that liberty by which alone his crown could be ſecured: for by this time his brother *John* had ſet up for himſelf, and embroiled the whole kingdom of *England*. He for that reaſon wrote to his mother queen *Elinor*, deſiring ſhe would take meaſures for raiſing the ranſom without delay; while the king of *France* offered a very conſiderable ſum to the emperor, provided he would protract *Richard*'s captivity for another year. *Henry* ſuffered himſelf to be ſwayed by this ſordid conſideration, and, ſacrificing his honour to his intereſt, refuſed to releaſe his priſoner, even when queen *Elinor* arrived at *Worms*, with one hundred thouſand marks of ſilver, and hoſtages for the reſt of the ranſom. He renounced the agreement he had made, and referred the matter to the diet at *Spire*, where he ſtill equivocated and ſought to delay the deliverance of the king of *England* to the diet, which was ſummoned to meet at *Mentz* the following year: but the *German* princes, aſhamed of his proceedings, freely explained their ſentiments on that ſubject, and, as their honour was concerned, inſiſted upon his performing the articles of the treaty which they had guarantied. *Henry*, either perſuaded by their reaſons, or apprehenſive of their reſentment, received the ranſom, and releaſed his priſoner, who ſet out immediately for the *Low Countries*, at which he arrived without having halted by the road: nor was this expedition unneceſſary; inaſmuch as *Henry*, repenting of what he had done, ſent a body of light horſe in purſuit of *Richard*, whom they in vain endeavoured to apprehend [c].

The king of England *ſubmits to the hard conditions that are impoſed upon him;*

and is releaſed by the interceſſion of the German *princes at the diet at* Spire.

LEOPOLD duke of *Auſtria*, whoſe proportion of the ranſom was ſtill unpaid, threatened to wreak his vengeance upon the hoſtages. *Richard*, knowing the brutality of his diſpoſition, remitted the money, which was not raiſed without great difficulty, as *England* had been impoveriſhed by the cruſade; and with this laſt payment he ſent his niece *Elinor*, according to the agreement which had been made.

Leopold *duke of* Auſtria *is ſeized with remorſe in his laſt moments.*

---

[c] RYMER's Act. Pub. t. i. p. 72, & ſeq. ROGER DE HOVED.

But, before ſhe arrived at *Vienna*, *Leopold* died of a fall from his horſe, and in his laſt moments ordered the hoſtages to be releaſed, conſcious of the injuſtice he had done, in detaining *Richard*, in oppoſition to all the dictates of equity and honour. His ſon and ſucceſſor *Frederic* ſcrupled at firſt to obey theſe directions; but the lay lords and biſhops of his dominions interpoſing, and giving him to underſtand that the corpſe of his father ſhould not be buried until the will ſhould be performed, and the pope threatening to excommunicate him ſhould he perſiſt in his obſtinacy, he diſmiſſed the hoſtages, and ſent back the princeſs *Eleanor*, who had not been ſo lucky as to captivate his inclinations [d].

THE emperor, who meditated another expedition into *Italy*, and foreſaw future quarrels with the pope, reſolved, if poſſible, to fortify himſelf with the friendſhip of the king of *England*, to whom he forthwith diſpatched an embaſſador to aſk pardon for the injuries he had done that monarch, and promiſe reſtitution of the ſum he had exacted for his ranſom.

The biſhop of Prague *elected duke of* Bohemia.

THE crown of *Bohemia* becoming vacant by the death of *Conrad de Znaim*, who had ſucceeded *Frederic*, a competition aroſe between *Winceſlaus* and *Primiſlaus*, which laſt compelled his rival to fly for protection to the emperor, who eſpouſed his cauſe, and put *Primiſlaus* to the ban of the empire: but, the other dying before he could be eſtabliſhed in his dominions, the ſtates of *Bohemia* elected *Henry* biſhop of *Prague*, who was confirmed by the emperor in the poſſeſſion of the ducal crown [e].

Henry the Lion *endeavours to excite freſh troubles.*

THOUGH the troubles of *Bohemia* were thus appeaſed, *Saxony* ſtill continued in agitation. *Henry the Lion* exerted all his endeavours to recover the poſſeſſion of his dominions on the other ſide of the *Elbe*. He formed ſchemes, propoſed alliances, and tried to intereſt *Canut* king of *Denmark* in his cauſe; but, failing in all his projects, he ſought to regain the good graces of the emperor; and for this purpoſe effected a match between his ſon the duke of *Brunſwic* and *Agnes* daughter of *Conrad* count *Palatine*, the emperor's uncle, a marriage which, inſtead of appeaſing, gave ſuch offence to *Henry*, that he would have ſummoned *Conrad* to the firſt diet to give an account of his conduct, had not ſome noblemen interpoſed in his behalf, and promiſed in his name, that the count ſhould appear at the imperial court. There he acquitted himſelf in ſuch a manner, that the emperor approved of the ſtep he had taken, and received into his favour the duke of *Brunſwic*, with whoſe conduct he had hitherto no great reaſon to be ſatisfied. The *Palatine*, finding him ſo well diſpoſed, perſuaded *Henry the Lion* to ſollicit his forgiveneſs; and the emperor, having promiſed to favour him with an interview at *Solfeden*, the old duke ſet out for that place, but was obliged to halt by the way, in conſequence of a dangerous fall from his horſe. The emperor was no ſooner informed of the accident than he went to viſit him without ceremony, embraced him tenderly at meeting, conferred with him ſeveral times in private, and having no longer cauſe to doubt his ſincerity, gratified his ſon with the honours of the *Palatinate*, on condition that he ſhould attend the emperor in his expedition into *Sicily* [f] (M).

---

[d] BARRE, t. v. p. 461.

[e] HEISS. Polon. l. vi. ad. ann. 1191.

Is reconciled to the emperor.

The emperor returns to Italy, *and takes poſſeſſion of the* Two Sicilies. A. D. 1194.

Henry having made all the neceſſary preparations, returned to *Italy*; but firſt detached a conſiderable part of his army towards *Naples*, under the command of his lieutenant *Berthold*, in order to make the firſt attempt, in which he obtained ſome advantages. *Venafro*, in the territory of *Labour*, was taken and pillaged: *Rocca* and *Sexti* met with the ſame fate; and ſeveral other places ſubmitted without oppoſition. *Tancred*, in order to oppoſe the progreſs of the imperial general, paſſed over from *Sicily* with a numerous army; but, being afraid to hazard a battle, he returned to *Palermo*, in conſequence of the death of his ſon *Roger*, which made ſuch an impreſſion upon his ſpirits, that, in a few days, he himſelf died of grief, and his other ſon *William*, though an infant, was declared king of *Sicily*.

This ſucceſs, together with the news of *Tancred*'s death, induced him to follow in perſon, with a ſtrong body of troops, after having ſent a deputy to inform the *Piſans* and *Genoeſe* of his intention, that they might have their fleets in readineſs at his arrival. Matters being thus diſpoſed, he paſſed the *Alps* and repaired to *Genoa*, where he communicated his inſtructions to the conſul *Albert d'Olivaro*, who commanded the conjoined fleets, with which he ſailed towards the coaſt of *Naples*, while the emperor marched thither by land. In his route he joined *Muſcanuwellus*, to whom the command of his firſt army had devolved at the death of count *Berthold*, who was killed at the ſiege of *Monte-Rodona*, and thus reinforced, he ſoon made himſelf maſter of *Naples*, *Apulia*, and *Calabria*, after having taken by ſtorm the city of *Palermo*, where he cruelly revenged upon the citizens the inſult offered to the perſon of his empreſs, whom they had detained priſoner in his firſt expedition. His ſeverity on this occaſion, and the cruelty he exerciſed in other towns, which had preſumed to oppoſe him, frighted the reſt into ſubmiſſion; *Naples* ſubmitted, and, in a very ſhort time, he found himſelf in peaceable poſſeſſion of the *Two Sicilies* [g].

---

[f] Barre, t. v. p. 465.

(M) *Henry the Lion* did not long ſurvive this reconciliation: for he died at the age of 70, in the month of *Auguſt* that ſame year, leaving three ſons, namely, *Henry*, who ſucceeded him in the duchy of *Brunſwic*; *Otho*, who remained ſome time as an hoſtage with the emperor; and *William*, who lived in the ſame quality with the duke of *Auſtria* (5).

(5) *Ann. Paderborn. ad. ann.* 1193.

Tancred's widow with her infant ſon and two daughters, had retired into *Sicily*; but the emperor purſued them ſo cloſely, that they were obliged to ſurrender themſelves upon certain terms of accommodation, which he himſelf propoſed. Yet they were no ſooner in his power, than, without any regard to his promiſe, he ſtripped them of all their effects, ordered the infant to be caſtrated, and his eyes to be put out, and confined the mother, with her two daughters, in a monaſtery [h].

A. D. 1195. *The empreſs is delivered of a ſon;*

In the midſt of theſe tranſactions the empreſs, though near the age of fifty, became pregnant; and, in order to avoid all ſuſpicion of impoſture, was delivered in the open field near *Palermo*, in preſence of a multitude of people, when ſhe brought forth a prince, who was called *Frederic*, and in the ſequel mounted the imperial throne. *Henry* having totally ſubdued the *Two Sicilies*, and ſeized the immenſe treaſures which had been amaſſed by *Tancred* and his predeceſſors, appointed regents of his own nation, and ſettled the affairs of his new kingdom; then returned to *Germany*, and carried along with him the principal lords and prelates of the *Two Sicilies*, as pledges of the fidelity of their fellow ſubjects; but this precaution did not avail, for the *Sicilians*, unable to bear his tyranny and impoſition, raiſed a rebellion, which incenſed him to ſuch a degree, that he ordered all the hoſtages to be deprived of their eyeſight.

But, before he ſet out for his *German* dominions, he was informed of the death of his brother *Conrad*, duke of *Suabia* and *Alſace*, which affected him nearly; and he beſtowed the provincial prefecture of *Suabia*, together with the duchy of *Tuſcany*, and the fiefs of the counteſs *Mathilda*, which duke

---

[g] Krantz Sax. l. vii. c. 6. [h] Otho a Sancto Blaſio, c. 40.

Guelph had bequeathed to the emperor, upon his ſurviving brother *Philip*, who married *Irene*, daughter of the *Greek* emperor. On his return to *Germany*, he ſent an embaſſy to *Richard* king of *England*, to propoſe an alliance againſt *France*, in conſideration of which he would give him an acquittance for the whole ranſom, part of which was ſtill unpaid; and the king of *England*, in conſequence of this intimation, refuſed to conclude a treaty with the *French* king, although it was at that time pretty far advanced.

Soon after this tranſaction the emperor beſtowed upon *Henry* duke of *Brunſwic* the inveſtiture of the *Palatinate*, vacant by the death of *Conrad*, whoſe daughter *Henry* had married.

who is elected king of the Romans.
A. D. 1196.

His next care was to create his ſon *Frederic* king of the *Romans*, though he was at that time in his cradle [i]; and the princes of the empire proceeded to the election rather thro' fear than affection [k].

Pope *Celeſtine*, diſturbed by the power and diſpoſition of *Henry*, who kept him in eternal diſquiet, importuned him in the moſt preſſing manner to ſuccour the Chriſtians in the *Holy Land* with a good number of troops, and put himſelf at their head, in imitation of the emperor *Frederic* his father. In conſequence of theſe ſollicitations he ſent thither an army under the conduct of the archbiſhop of *Mentz*, and the princes of *Auſtria*, *Brabant* and *Thuringia* [l], while he himſelf, with the empreſs, and his ſon the king of the *Romans*, repaſſed into *Sicily*, that he might extinguiſh the remains of the rebellion, and more conveniently provide for the neceſſities of the holy war.

He ſends troops to the Holy Land;

He had in an aſſembly at *Straſburgh* liſtened to the harangue of the pope's legate with great attention, and publicly proteſted that he would employ his whole power, and even expoſe his own life for the accompliſhment of ſuch an holy enterprize. With theſe ſentiments he convoked a general diet at *Worms*, where he ſolemnly declared his reſolution, and expatiated upon the ſubject with ſuch energy of eloquence, that almoſt all the aſſembly complied with his exhortations in taking the croſs: nay, to ſuch a degree of enthuſiaſm did this ſpirit of knight-errantry prevail, that *Margaret* queen-dowager of *Hungary* enliſted herſelf in the cruſade, and actually ended her days in *Paleſtine* [m].

---

[i] Ann. Boior. Jo. Aventin. l. vii. p. 525.

[k] Lunig Arch. Imp. part gen. Cont. ii. p. 144.

[l] Ann. Boior. ibid.

[m] Roger ad. ann. 1196.

Such a multitude of ſoldiers from all the provinces of the empire engaged in this expedition, that the emperor divided them into three large armies, one of which, under the command of *Conrad* archbiſhop of *Mentz*, took its route through *Hungary*, where it was joined by queen *Margaret*; the ſecond, which was aſſembled in *Lower Saxony*, embarked in a fleet furniſhed by the inhabitants of *Lubeck*, *Hamburgh*, *Holſtein*, and *Friezland*: and the emperor conducted the third into *Italy* in order to puniſh the *Norman* noblemen, who had rebelled againſt his regency.

The revolt began among the people of *Palermo*, who called *Richard* count *d'Acerra* to their aſſiſtance; but all his endeavours miſcarrying, he left them expoſed to the ſeverities of the regents, and retired to *Campania*, where he was apprehended and impriſoned by count *Diapold*, one of the emperor's deputies. The biſhop of *Worms* had been ſent to diſmantle *Naples* and *Capua*, and this demolition incenſed the inhabitants to ſuch a degree, that they could not conceal their reſentment, but began to concert meaſures for ſhaking off the *German* yoke, which they found inſupportable. Things were in this tickliſh ſituation when the emperor arriving at *Naples* diveſted all the *Neapolitans*, *Calabrians*, and *Sicilians*, of the offices they enjoyed, together with the fiefs they held of the crown, and diſtributed them among his own adherents. He likewiſe extended his ſeverity to the clergy, by diſannulling their exemptions from military ſervice, and, in a word, rendered himſelf ſo odious to his *Italian* ſubjects, that they formed a conſpiracy againſt him, and took up arms at *Palermo*, under the conduct of *Roger* count *de Moliſſa*, who found means to engage almoſt all the towns of *Sicily* in the rebellion.

chaſtiſes the revolters of Sicily *and* Naples;

Henry, alarmed at this general defection, was fain to enter into a negotiation with the malecontents, and propoſe a conference at *Capua*, where he promiſed to redreſs all their grievances, and reinſtate them in the poſſeſſion of their eſtates and privileges: but they had no ſooner diſmiſſed their troops in conſequence of this accommodation, than he diſregarded all his promiſes and proteſtations, tranſported part of his army into *Sicily*, apprehended a great number of thoſe who had appeared in arms againſt him, ſome of whom he puniſhed with death, while the reſt were either tranſported to *Germany* or detained in priſon.

These cruelties, while they intimidated great part of the *Sicilians*, inſpired a number of enterprizing men with a kind of deſperate reſentment; in conſequence of which they fortified themſelves in the iſland of *Lipari*, under the command of count *Jordani*, a *Sicilian* nobleman, ſaid to have been privately encouraged by the empreſs *Conſtance*, who could not without horror and indignation behold her countrymen ſo unworthily treated, and was moreover piqued at the indifference of the emperor.

JORDANI himſelf aſpired at the crown, and had taken his meaſures ſo well, that he might have defied the whole power of *Henry*, had he not been betrayed by one of his own people, who, in conſideration of an extraordinary bribe, introduced the *German* troops into the iſland. *Jordani* was taken, after having made a gallant reſiſtance, and put to death with the moſt cruel tortures; all his adherents were alſo executed [n], and *Henry*, having thus extinguiſhed the embers of rebellion, permitted his army to embark for *Paleſtine*, under the conduct of *Conrad* biſhop of *Wurtzburg*.

THE empreſs thinking this was a favourable conjuncture for recovering the liberties of *Sicily*, and proſecuting her deſigns againſt *Henry*, who was now almoſt wholly unfurniſhed with troops, inſtigated *Renaldo* and *Landulphus*, counts of *Aquini*, to promote a general inſurrection. *Landulphus* accordingly harangued the people of the neighbouring towns, aſſembled at *Sora*, who, being inflamed by his diſcourſe, reſolved at once to ſhake off the emperor's yoke, and unanimouſly choſe the count for their general. He forthwith aboliſhed all the taxes which had been impoſed by the emperor, and, his army increaſing every day, he applied the ordinary revenue to the ſubſiſtence of his troops. Mean while the malecontents of *Sicily* levied a ſmall army, and being joined by the inhabitants of *Palermo*, with the empreſs at their head, went and beſieged the emperor in a ſtrong caſtle, to which he had retired on receiving the news of this ſudden revolt. During this ſiege they ſent circular letters to all the towns, inviting them to join for the advantage of the commonweal; and *Henry*, finding himſelf abandoned by the whole kingdom, was obliged to ſue for peace, which was granted, upon conditions not at all favourable to his intereſt.

is beſieged by the empreſs Conſtance;

WHETHER the empreſs, doubting his ſincerity upon this occaſion, adminiſtered a doſe of poiſon to this vindictive prince, or he really heated himſelf into a fever by violent exerciſe in hunting, certain it is, he died, ſoon after the treaty, at *Meſſina*, in the ſeventh year of his reign [o].

and dies at Meſſina.
A. D. 1197.

[n] RICARD. et Germ. Chron. ad. ann. 1196. ap. MURAT. t. vii. RELIUS de Reg. Napol. & Sicil. fol. NUCT. Hiſt. Alex. Comm. l. ii.

[o] BARRE, l. v. p. 499.

HENRY was a prince poſſeſſed of many good qualities: he was prudent, penetrating, eloquent, active, and brave, but at the ſame time cruel and perfidious. His warlike exploits ſpread the terror of his name even into the court of *Alexis* emperor of the *Greeks*, to whom he had actually ſent ambaſſadors to demand tribute, or, in caſe of meeting with a refuſal, to denounce war; for he intended to ſubdue that empire, and extend his own into *Aſia*, from which all the troops he had ſent thither, together with a great number of gentlemen, who had taken arms in the ſame cauſe, returned into *Europe*, upon the news of his death, leaving the *Saracens* in poſſeſſion of the *Holy Land*.

THIS emperor had made repeated efforts to perpetuate the ſucceſſion in his own family, and for that purpoſe actually obtained a decree of the princes, partly by giving up his right of ſucceſſion to the effects of the clergy, in favour of their chapters and churches, and partly by releaſing the nobles from their feudal dependence. Theſe laſt too he is ſaid to have bribed with the ranſom which he extorted from *Richard* I. of *England*, whom he detained in captivity, on his return from *Paleſtine*, in oppoſition to hoſpitality and good faith.

PHILIP and *OTHO*.

Philip *duke of* Suabia *takes upon himſelf the adminiſtration of affairs.*

PHILIP duke of *Suabia* was on the road to *Sicily*, when he was informed of the death of his brother the emperor. In a few days after he was met by a meſſenger, who, by the direction of the late emperor, was diſpatched to him with his regalia and laſt will, in which he had committed to his tuition his ſon *Frederic* king of the *Romans*, together with the adminiſtration during the minority of that young prince. At the ſame time he was informed that the inhabitants of *Sicily* and *Apulia* had mutinied, and maſſacred the greateſt part of the *German* troops; but, judging that his preſence would be more neceſſary in *Germany*, and that he had no time to loſe, he marched thither with his troops, in order to preſerve the empire to his nephew.

Pope Innocent *declares himſelf* Philip's *enemy.*

IN the mean time pope *Innocent*, who had ſucceeded *Celeſtin*, and was a ſworn enemy to the houſe of *Suabia*, thinking this a favourable opportunity for diveſting it of the imperial crown, wrote letters to the archbiſhops of *Triers* and *Cologn*, exhorting them to proceed to the election of a king of the *Romans*, of ſome other family; and omitted nothing which he thought could divide the princes of *Germany*. He even abſolved them from the oath of fidelity they had taken to the late emperor in favour of his ſon; and ſuch was his animoſity againſt the uncle, that he was heard to ſay, "*Philip* ſhould either loſe the empire, or he himſelf forfeit the "papacy." In compliance with the pope's repeated inſtances, the archbiſhops of *Triers* and *Cologn*, aſſiſted by the biſhops of *Paderborn* and *Minden*, together with *Henry* count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, *Herman* landgrave of *Thuringia*, the dukes of *Brabant* and *Limbourg*, the count of *Dachbourg*, and other noblemen, met at *Cologn*, and elected *Berthold* duke of *Zeringia* king of the *Romans*: but he, for certain reaſons, refuſing that dignity, they ſubſtituted in his room *Otho* duke of *Saxony*, who was at that time in *Poitou* with his uncle the king of *England*, and ſent the counts of *Dachbourg* and *Leiningen*, to intimate his election, and requeſt him to return to *Germany* without delay[p].

Otho *is elected king of the* Romans.

OTHO was no ſooner informed of his election, than he ſet out with all expedition; and having aſſembled the chiefs of his party, together with a good number of troops, which were reinforced by thoſe of his brother *Henry* count *Palatine*, made himſelf maſter of *Aix la Chapelle*, where he was crowned by the archbiſhop of *Cologn*. On the other hand, the archbiſhops of *Mentz*, *Magdeburg*, *Beſançon*, the biſhops of *Munſter*, *Ratiſbon*, *Freiſengen*, *Augsburg*, *Conſtance*, *Eichſtet*, *Worms*, *Spire*, *Brixen*, and *Hildeſheim*, the abbots of *Fulde*, *Hirſchfeldt*, and *Kempton*, the king of *Bohemia*, the dukes of *Saxony*, *Bavaria*, *Auſtria*, and *Moravia*, the marquis of *Rothembourg*, and ſeveral other princes, aſſembled at *Arnſberg*, where they confirmed the election of *Frederic*, at that time but three years of age, and choſe his uncle *Philip* king of the *Romans*, that he might exerciſe the office of guardian with more authority[q].

Frederic's *election is confirmed by another party, and* Philip *choſen king of the* Romans. A. D. 1198.

THESE two elections divided the empire into two powerful factions, and involved all *Germany* in ruin and deſolation. The pope threw himſelf into the ſcale of *Otho*, ſent a legate to *Cologne* to confirm his election, and excommunicated *Philip* and all his adherents. *Otho*, excluſive of his friends in *Germany*, was ſtrongly ſupported by his uncle *Richard* king of *England*, for which reaſon *Philip* of *France*, the inveterate enemy of that monarch, declared for *Philip*, tho' not before he had made a fruitleſs attempt for himſelf, by the means of *Marguariti*, the blind admiral of *Sicily*, who promiſed to diſpoſe the *Italians* in his favour, but was aſſaſſinated before he could bring his project to bear.

---

[p] MEIB. Apol. pro Otton. IV. tom. iii. p. 116. KRANTZ. l. viii. c. 15.

[q] *Urſperg. Geſt.* Philip.

Philip is crowned at Mentz.

Ravages Alſace. A. D. 1199.

Wins over the king of Bohemia;

PHILIP, aſſembling a body of troops, marched into *Alſace*, deſtroyed the harveſt, burned *Molſheim*, razed the caſtle of *Haldenburg*, and pillaged all the lands belonging to the biſhop of *Straſbourg* and the count of *Dachbourg*, while *Otho* extended the limits of his dominions along the *Rhine* and the *Moſelle*, until his army being weakened by deſertion, he was obliged to retire. Then *Philip* repaired to *Mentz*, where he was crowned by the archbiſhop of *Tarentum*, who officiated for the archbiſhop of *Mentz*, at that time in *Paleſtine*, and the archbiſhop of *Triers*, who, by this time had quitted the party of *Otho*, aſſiſted at the ceremony [r].

AFTER his coronation, he burned the towns of *Bonn*, *Andernach*, and *Coblentz*, ravaged the whole country; and entering *Lower Saxony*, undertook the ſiege of *Brunſwic*, which, however, he was obliged to raiſe; for *Henry* count *Palatine* no ſooner underſtood that his capital was in danger, than he marched thither with a conſiderable army, and compelled *Philip* to retreat to *Goſlar*, where he ſpent part of the winter. He marched into *Alſace* a ſecond time, where he made himſelf maſter of ſeveral places, and at laſt accommodated matters with the biſhop, who admitted him into *Straſburg*, where he received the oath of allegiance from the inhabitants. About the ſame time he brought over to his party *Primiſlaus* king of *Bohemia*, who had formerly engaged in the intereſts of *Otho* with remarkable (N) ardour, and joined *Herman* landgrave of *Thuringia*, who, though firſt couſin to *Philip*, had taken the field among his enemies. *Herman*'s lands were pillaged, and *Primiſlaus* detached from the intereſts of *Otho*, by a match that was agreed upon between *Philip*'s daughter, ſtill in the cradle, and the infant ſon of the *Bohemian* king.

HENRY count *Palatine*, to whoſe young ſon this princeſs had been promiſed in marriage, incenſed at the projected alliance, now, for the firſt time, declared for his brother, and aſſembled a ſtrong body of troops, with which *Otho* made an irruption into *Franconia*, and inveſted the city of *Wirtzburg*, which held for *Philip*. This prince haſtened to the ſuccour of the town, and a deciſive battle muſt have enſued, had not the noblemen of both armies interpoſed, and effected an accommodation between *Philip* and *Henry*, who abandoned the cauſe of his brother, in conſideration of receiving the inveſtiture of *Brunſwic*, which he had in vain ſollicited of *Otho* [s].

---

[r] Ann. Trev. tom. ii. p. 96.

(N) Such was the eagerneſs with which *Primiſlaus* engaged in the intereſts of *Otho*, that he was thence denominated *Ottocarus*, a ſurname which deſcended to many of his ſucceſſors (6).

(6) *Hiſt. Bohem. l.* xv.

and Henry *count* Palatine.

A.D. 1200.

Otho *is abandoned by the king of* England.

Besides the defection of *Henry*, he forfeited the friendſhip of his uncle *John* king of *England*, who, having ſucceeded his brother *Richard* on the throne, not only refuſed to pay the legacy which that prince bequeathed to *Otho*, but alſo concluded a treaty with the *French* king, by which he expreſsly reſtricted himſelf from aſſiſting his nephew, directly or indirectly; and this article he religiouſly obſerved, notwithſtanding the remonſtrances of the pope, who wrote to him in favour of *Otho* [t].

The empreſs Conſtance *dies in* Sicily.

While *Germany* groaned under all the miſeries of a civil war, the empreſs *Conſtance* reſided in *Sicily*, as regent and guardian to her infant ſon, who had been crowned with the conſent of pope *Celeſtin*, which was not, however, obtained, but by means of a large ſum of money; and that pontif dying, there was a neceſſity for ſending deputies to ſollicit the inveſtiture anew from his ſucceſſor, *Innocent* III. who taking the advantage of this favourable conjuncture for aggrandizing the ſee of *Rome*, inſiſted upon her relinquiſhing ſome rights which, he pretended, were prejudicial to the church; namely, that of filling up vacant benefices, the legation (O) granted to the kings of *Sicily*, and the right of appeal, to the excluſion of the *Roman* tribunal. But, before theſe conceſſions could be made, *Conſtance* died, leaving the regency of the kingdom, during the minority of her ſon, to pope *Innocent*; ſo that he was enabled to act according to his own inclination [u].

1201.

Pope Innocent III. *declares for* Otho, *and excommunicates* Philip

Having thus executed his deſigns upon *Sicily*, in favour of the holy ſee, he declared for *Otho* in three different bulls iſſued on the ſubject of the ſchiſm of the empire, wrote to the archbiſhops of *Cologne* and *Mentz*, as well as to the different provinces of *Germany*, explaining the motives that induced him to exclude *Philip* and *Frederic* from the imperial throne; and, in a letter to *Otho*, expreſſed himſelf in theſe terms. "By the authority of almighty God, devolved to

---

[s] Barre, tom. v. p. 514.

[t] Roger Hoved. p. 799, 802.

[u] Geſt. Innocent, n. 21, 22. l. i. p. 410, & ſeq.

(O) For an account of this famous legation, ſee the Modern Hiſtory of *Italy*.

and all his adherents.

"us in the perſon of St. *Peter*, we receive you as king of "the *Romans*, and ordain that you ſhall henceforth be re"ſpected and obeyed accordingly; and, after the uſual pre"liminaries, we will ſolemnly beſtow upon you the imperial "crown [x]."

NOTWITHSTANDING this intimation, which was communicated to all the princes of *Germany*, and the arrival of the pope's legates, who, in an aſſembly at *Cologne*, declared him king of the *Romans*, and excommunicated *Philip* with all his adherents; I ſay, notwithſtanding theſe endeavours, *Otho*'s party ſenſibly diminiſhed, while that of his rival daily acquired new ſtrength and authority. The noblemen of *Philip*'s party complained of the pope's conduct in a letter to his holineſs, repreſenting, that he had intermeddled in the election of a king of the *Romans*, contrary to the rights of the *German* princes, and the duty of his own pontificate, which originally depended upon the imperial crown; and the king of *France* expoſtulated with him to the ſame purpoſe, earneſtly intreating him to renounce the intereſts of *Otho*, who had always been an inveterate foe to the *French* nation. But the houſe of *Suabia* was ſo much dreaded and deteſted by the popes, whom it had always hampered in *Italy*, that *Innocent*, far from paying the leaſt regard to theſe ſuggeſtions and intreaties, redoubled his efforts to detach the princes and prelates from the cauſe of *Philip*; and, in his anſwer to the *French* king's letter, declared, that *either* Philip *ſhould loſe the empire, or he himſelf forfeit the papacy* [y].

A. D. 1202.

A new cruſade is ſet on foot.

ALL theſe diſſenſions and diſturbances in *Europe* did not prevent the formation of a new cruſade, which the pope ordained to be preached up for the recovery of the *Holy Land*. Thoſe who took the croſs were moſtly *Germans* and *French*, and the firſt exploit they performed was the reduction of *Zara*, in *Hungary*, which they beſieged at the inſtigation of *Dandolo*, doge of *Venice*, from whoſe dominion that town had withdrawn itſelf. While they were employed in this ſiege, they received an embaſſy from king *Philip*, exhorting them to reſtore his father-in-law *Iſaacus Angelus*, emperor of *Conſtantinople*, who had been dethroned and deprived of his eye-ſight by his own brother *Alexis*, ſurnamed *Comnenus*. They undertook this enterprize, in conſideration of ſome advantages ſtipulated with young *Alexis*, the ſon of the dethroned emperor, who had made his eſcape into *Germany*, and was then in their army; and, taking *Conſtantinople* by aſſault, expelled the uſurper, releaſed old blind *Iſaac*, and, at his deſire, ſet his ſon *Alexis* upon the imperial throne [z].

---

[x] Coll. Decret. t. ii. ep. 18.

[y] De Negot. Imp. ep. lxiii.

Conſtantinople *taken.*

A.D. 1203. *Troubles in the northern parts of* Germany.

DURING theſe tranſactions in the eaſt, the northern parts of *Germany* and *Denmark* were re-involved in troubles by the reſtleſs ambition of *Adolphus*, count of *Holſtein*, who ſtill perſevered in his deſign of reducing *Dithmarſie* to his obedience, notwithſtanding the bad ſucceſs of his firſt attempt. With this view he invaded that province, which he laid waſte with fire and ſword, until *Canute*, king of *Denmark*, ſent thither a body of forces, under the command of his brother *Waldemar*, who defeated *Adolphus*, and compelled him to return to *Hamburg*. And although his affairs aſſumed a better aſpect, in conſequence of the aſſiſtance of *Otho*, margrave of *Brandenburg*, who obtained a victory over the *Daniſh* general, this ſmile of fortune was not of long duration: the *Danes* reduced the cities of *Lubec* and *Hamburg*, made *Adolphus* priſoner, conquered all the country that depended upon the empire on the north ſide of the *Elbe*, and annexed *Holſtein* to the crown of *Denmark* [a].

1204. *The inconſtancy of the* German *princes.*

GERMANY was at that time in no condition to oppoſe the *Daniſh* conqueſts: *Philip* and *Otho*, the two competitors for the empire, were wholly ingroſſed in maintaining the attachment of their friends, who nevertheleſs abandoned and eſpouſed their intereſts by turns, according to the dictates of caprice, ambition, or reſentment. *John*, archbiſhop of *Triers*, changed ſides twice in the courſe of one year: *Primiſlaus*, or *Ottocarus*, king of *Bohemia*, forſook the cauſe of *Philip*, which, on the other hand, was reinforced by the acceſſion of *Henry*, duke of *Low Lorrain* and *Brabant*, whom he loaded with favours.

THE whole empire was by this time become a ſcene of blood, confuſion, and anarchy. Every nobleman was at variance with his neighbour. The neareſt relations, renouncing the ties of conſanguinity, burned the houſes, pillaged the vaſſals, and deſtroyed the families of one another. The people were oppreſſed by their lords; the ſoldiers were guilty of the moſt flagrant outrages; and as neither of the pretenders could pay his troops regularly, both were obliged to connive at theſe diſorders.

Philip *ravages* Thuringia.

PHILIP, reſolving to humble the landgrave of *Thuringia*, who, tho' his relation, had exerted himſelf with remarkable ardour in the cauſe of *Otho*, marched into his country, which gia, *and reduces* Bohemia *into a province.*

---

[z] Chron. Sanct. Mart. An. 1203.

[a] MEURS. Hiſt. Danor. t. ii.

he laid under contribution; beſieged and took the town of *Wizenſee*, and, defeating the *Bohemians* who came to his aſſiſtance, entered that kingdom, the greateſt part of which he ſubdued: *Bohemia* was reduced into a province, and *Primiſlaus* forbid to aſſume the title of king: tho' pope *Innocent* afterwards, at the recommendation of *Otho*, granted him the royal dignity, and took his kingdom under the protection of the holy ſee.

Otho *is forſaken by his beſt friends.*

THIS chain of ſucceſs intirely changed the face of affairs, ſo that by force, or otherwiſe, the principal princes of the oppoſite party were obliged to ſue for peace; and *Philip* being a prince of a mild diſpoſition, they found their account in having recourſe to his clemency. The landgrave himſelf was the firſt who ſollicited an accommodation, and was ſo favourably dealt with, that he actually eſpouſed the intereſt of *Philip*. This was a very ſenſible mortification to *Otho*, who was already deſerted by his own brother *Henry* count palatine. Even the archbiſhop of *Cologne*, who had preſided at *Otho*'s election, and crowned him at *Aix la Capelle*, now abandoned his cauſe, without any regard to his own oath of allegiance, or the excommunication of the pope.

Philip'*s ſecond coronation.*

PHILIP, elated with ſuch a powerful acceſſion to his party, reſolved, after the example of his rival, to confirm his election by a ſecond coronation; which was ſolemnly performed at *Aix la Chapelle* by the hands of the archbiſhop of *Cologne* [b], who had ſet the crown on *Otho*'s head, and who, on account of having thus changed his ſide, was excommunicated by the pope.

HIS holineſs, however, beſides the gratification of his enmity againſt the houſe of *Suabia*, found other advantages in fomenting theſe troubles in the empire, during which he conquered, and confirmed to the church of *Rome*, the greateſt part of the patrimony which it at preſent poſſeſſes, and found means to be acknowleged ſovereign lord of thoſe provinces which formerly held of the empire (P).

MEAN

---

[b] ARN. LUB. l. vii. c. 1. GOD. MON.

(P) In the courſe of this year was inſtituted a new military order of *German* knights, to defend the Chriſtians of *Livonia* againſt the infidels. The patent was obtained from *Otho* of *Saxony*, and pope *Innocent* confirmed the inſtitution: the habit of the order was a white mantle; their arms two ſwords, *gules*, *ſaltere*, with a *mullet* of the ſame colour. They obliged themſelves to aſſiſt frequently at maſs, to lead a ſingle, chaſte, and ſober life, to fight againſt the infidels, and defend the intereſts of the holy ſee. In recompence for their ſervices, the

ſ.: popes

MEAN while *Philip*, without minding his efforts and fulminations, redoubled his attention to the main point; and, reinforcing his army, compelled his antagoniſt to quit the field, and ſhut himſelf up in the city of *Cologne*; which being inveſted, and very hard preſſed by the beſiegers, *Otho*, ſeeing no ſafety but in deſpair, reſolved to make a ſally with the flower of his troops, in order either to raiſe the ſiege or accompliſh his eſcape. He accordingly attacked the beſiegers with great fury; but all his followers were either killed or taken priſoners, the new archbiſhop of *Cologne* being among the laſt; and *Otho* himſelf eſcaped into *Saxony* [c], from whence he fled into *England*.

Otho *flies into* England.
A. D. 1205.

PHILIP, being now undiſputed maſter, continued the ſiege of *Cologne*, which ſurrendered to him by capitulation. There he eſtabliſhed the archbiſhop *Adolphus*, whoſe competitor he kept in cloſe confinement; and having no other powerful enemies to deal with, he now employed himſelf in ſecuring the friends, and ſtrengthening the alliances he had made. He beſtowed one daughter in marriage upon *Wenceſlaus*, king of *Bohemia*, and matched another with the duke of *Brabant*'s eldeſt ſon; diſtributed large preſents in money and effects; and, being naturally of an affable and engaging temper, behaved in ſuch a manner as gained the hearts of all his ſubjects. He even ſent ambaſſadors to the pope to propoſe an accommodation [d]; which was the more acceptable to his holineſs, as *Philip* yielded to him ſeveral countries which belonged to the empire (Q).

Philip *propoſes an accommodation to the pope;*

---

[c] KRANT. l. vii. c. 26. [d] Abb. Urſp. ex MEIB. Apol. &c.

popes granted them the full enjoyment of all they ſhould conquer from the pagans; and they were diſtinguiſhed by the appellation of *Enſiferi*, on account of their long ſwords (1)

(Q) *Innocent*, not contented with the emperor's yielding the duchy of *Spoleto* and the marquiſate of *Ancona* to the holy ſee, demanded one of *Philip*'s daughters in marriage for his own nephew: and this is the origin of nepotiſm, an eſtabliſhment to which hitherto the popes had not attempted to aſpire (2).

Heiſs alleges, that *Philip* gave his daughter *Beatrice* in marriage to *Otho*, in conſequence of an accommodation with that prince; but, as no ſuch accommodation is mentioned by any hiſtorian of credit, we, with *Krantz*, *Otto de Sancto Blaſia*, the abbot of *Urſperg*, and others, poſtpone the marriage till after *Philip*'s death.

(1) *Barre Hiſt. d'Allemagne, tom. v. p.* 554. (2) *Abb. Urſp. Cuſpinian. in Hiſt. Phil. Suevi. Haldric. Mut. in Meib. Apol. pro Ottone IV.*

WHILE this reconciliation was upon the carpet, and each of them ſeemed bent upon outwitting the other, *Philip* underſtanding that the king of *Denmark* had marched with an army to the confines of *Saxony*, in order to aſſiſt *Otho* [e], aſſembled a great body of troops, and repaired in perſon to *Bamberg*, where, while he waited for their junction, he was taken with a ſlight indiſpoſition, by which he was confined to his chamber. There being engaged in a converſation with *Conrad*, biſhop of *Spire*, who was his chancellor, and *Henry Cruchs*, count of *Walburg*, he heard the voice of the count palatine *Otho* of *Wittleſbach* at the door, and ordered him to be admitted into his apartment. That nobleman, after ſome diſcourſe with the emperor, went out, and taking the ſword of his gentleman who ſtood waiting for him at the door, unſheathed it, and re-entered the chamber, where he began to puſh as if for his own amuſement. *Philip* reprimanded him for the freedom of his behaviour, ſaying that was no place for ſuch a diverſion; to which the palatine abruptly replied, 'This is the only place,' and with theſe words ran him through the neck. The chancellor was ſo frighted with this aſſault, that he hid himſelf; but the count of *Walburg* immediately attacked the aſſaſſin, who wounded him in the cheek, and eſcaped into the biſhop's palace; and while they were engaged, the emperor died by loſs of blood [f].

is murdered by Otho *of* Wittleſbach.
A. D. 1208.

THE palatine was inſtigated by revenge to this deteſtable action. The emperor had promiſed to give him one of his daughters in marriage, and afterwards refuſed to keep that promiſe, becauſe he was declared infamous in full diet by the princes and ſtates of the empire, on account of a murder which he had baſely committed at the court of *Bavaria* (R). This untimely fate of *Philip* was regretted by all that knew him; for he was a prince endowed with a great many amiable qualities. His countenance was comely, his perſon elegant, he was prudent, affable, mild, eloquent, liberal, pious, and intrepid. His body was depoſited in the church of *Bamberg*, where it remained a long time, until he was removed and interred at *Spire*, by order of his nephew the emperor *Frederic* II.

---

[e] ARN. LUB. l. vii. c. 14. KRANTZ Sax. l. vii. c. 28.
[f] Iid. ibid.

(R) This account of the aſſaſin's motives we take from *Krantz* and *Arnoldus Lubicenſis*; but in the *Chronica Auguſtenſis*, publiſhed by *Freherus*, we are told, that *Philip*, before he aſcended the throne, had promiſed to marry the daughter of *Otho*, count *Wittleſbach*, whom he afterwards rejected; and that the father was prompted to revenge by this affront.

OTHO IV.

Otho's *election renewed.*

OTHO, being certified of *Philip*'s death, called a diet at *Halberſtadt*, in order to treat about the affairs of the empire, and there his former election was renewed by the princes of *Saxony*, *Thuringia*, and *Miſnia*, and afterwards confirmed by thoſe of *Suabia*, *Bavaria*, and *France*, at another aſſembly held at *Frankfort*. It was here that *Philip*'s daughter, *Beatrice*, appeared in perſon, to demand juſtice upon the murderer of her father, where her tears and ſupplications had ſuch an effect upon the whole aſſembly, that they confiſcated the dominions, and ſet a price upon the head of the aſſaſſin, who was ſoon after ſlain on the banks of the *Danube*, by *Henry de Calat*, who cut off his head and threw it into the river [g]. As for *Beatrice*, ſhe was taken into protection, and afterwards to wife, by *Otho*, with the unanimous conſent of all the princes, after the impediment of conſanguinity had been removed by a diſpenſation obtained from the pope [h].

He marries Beatrice, *daughter of* Philip;

gratifies the pope in all his demands;

This emperor, in order to acquire the good graces of his holineſs and the clergy, which he knew would greatly contribute to his eſtabliſhment on the throne, not only promiſed to gratify the pope in all his demands, but alſo to aboliſh the cuſtom of ſeizing, for the emperor's uſe, the effects and lands of the deceaſed clergy; but as theſe promiſes were made ſolely with a view to cajole the pope and the biſhops, he afterwards refuſed to perform them, and in the ſequel ſuffered ſeverely for breaking his word.

A. D. 1209.

The new election of *Otho* to the empire no ſooner reached the ears of *Innocent* III. who looked upon him as his friend, and a prince intirely devoted to the holy ſee, than he ſent legates with letters of congratulation, in which he offered to crown him if he would come to *Italy*. Tempted by this propoſal, the emperor convoked a diet at *Haguenau*, in which his journey being reſolved upon, he appointed *Rodolphus*, count of *Hapſburg*, prefect, vicar of the empire, and principal avoyer of all *Upper Germany* (S), with power to maintain the

---

[g] Meib. Apol. &c. p. 127.

[h] Krantz, l. vii. c. 31.

(S) An avoyer was originally the advocate of a monaſtery, and in times of confuſion the avoyers became captains and pro-the imperial rights, inſpect the finances, levy ſubſidies, tributes, tolls, and taxes, and, in a word, to repreſent the perſon of the emperor in his abſence. Having thus provided for the tranquility of the empire, he repaired to *Augſburg*, where he had ordered his troops to aſſemble; and from hence diſpatched the patriarch of *Aquileia* before him, to examine the rights and privileges of the *Italian* towns, to prepoſſeſs the people in his favour, and to remove all difficulties that might retard him in his journey. Next year he ſet out for *Lombardy*, where he was received as ſovereign of the kingdom [i]. From thence he went to hold a diet at *Bologna*, where he exacted large ſubſidies of men and money; and, having formed a powerful army, he repaired to *Rome*, where the pope received him with all the demonſtrations of the moſt perfect friendſhip. There he was crowned by his holineſs, after he had yielded to the church the *Patrimony of St. Peter*, that is, the lands of the counteſs *Mathilda*, and taken an oath of obedience to the pope [k].

is crowned at Rome;

THESE condeſcenſions were owing to the ſame motives which had induced him to make the promiſe we have already mentioned to the *German* biſhops; for, in a little time, it plainly appeared he had only amuſed them for his own ends; and fortune ſoon favoured him with an opportunity of declaring himſelf. A number of his ſoldiers, who were encamped under the walls of *Rome*, having entered the city one day for their amuſement, a quarrel happened between them and the inhabitants, which roſe to ſuch a degree, that the citizens, taking arms, killed upwards of a thouſand imperialiſts upon the ſpot.

THE emperor complained to the pope of this outrage, for which he did not receive the ſatisfaction he expected; and tho' he did not think proper to ſhew his reſentment at that time, he afterwards manifeſted his diſpleaſure, as well for that inſult, as for the injuſtice of the pope, in taking advantage of the troubles of *Germany* to ſeize *Apulia*, together with the marquiſate of *Ancona* and the county of *Spoleto*, after having expelled the officers of the emperor. Mean while he departed from *Rome*, apparently in friendſhip with the pope; and, arriving in *Lombardy*, made *Milan* his head-quarters, and cantoned his troops in the neighbourhood, where they paſſed the winter. In the ſpring he took the field again, reſolved to re-eſtabliſh, by force, his right and authority in thoſe countries, of which the empire had been deprived. After ſome victories, he retrieved all that had been withdrawn from his poſſeſſion, and made hoſtile incurſions into *Apulia*, ravaging the dominions of *Frederic* king of the *Two Sicilies*, who was under the protection of the holy ſee [l].

---

[i] MUT. Chron. l. xix. OTT. Sanc. ex MEIB. Apol. CAR. SIG. l. xvi. [k] HULD. MUT. l. xix.

protectors of convents, to whom the ſaid convents gave lands in conſideration of their protection; but, when theſe monaſteries erected themſelves into principalities, the avoyers became noblemen (4).

(4) *Annales de l'Emp. t. 1. p. 113.*

winters in Lombardy; A.D. 1210.

From theſe conqueſts, however, the emperor's ruin may be dated; for *Innocent* III. enraged at his proceedings, thundered out an excommunication againſt him, which he ordered *Sigefrid*, archbiſhop of *Mentz*, to publiſh through the whole empire. This prelate being likewiſe incenſed againſt *Otho*, for having broken the promiſe he had made touching the eſtates of deceaſed eccleſiaſtics, not only proclaimed him through all *Germany* as a perſon excommunicated and proſcribed, releaſing and diſcharging all the princes, ſtates, and cities, from their oath of allegiance, but alſo convoked a diet, in order to proceed to a new election. At this aſſembly, which was held at *Bamberg*, were preſent the king of *Bohemia*, the dukes of *Bavaria* and *Auſtria*, *Herman* landgrave of *Thuringia*, and other princes, eccleſiaſtic as well as ſecular: they elected *Frederic* duke of *Suabia* and king of *Sicily*, at that time about ſeventeen years of age, who, in his infancy, had been proclaimed king of the *Romans*, at the deſire of *Henry* VI. his father [m]. They at the ſame time intimated this election to the pope, and ſent ambaſſadors into *Sicily* to acquaint *Frederic* with his elevation.

is excommunicated, and dethroned in favour of Frederic, *ſon of* Henry VI. A.D. 1211.

Otho, alarmed at this revolution, returned to *Germany* without delay, and called a diet at *Nuremberg*, where, among others, duke *Henry* count palatine of the *Rhine*, his own brother, with the dukes of *Brabant* and *Lorrain*, were preſent. The members of this aſſembly, after mature deliberation upon the reaſons that *Otho* gave for recovering the eſtates and countries of *Italy*, which the pope had unjuſtly poſſeſſed himſelf of, to the prejudice of the empire, approved of what he had done, and exhorted him to denounce war againſt thoſe princes, who, out of complaiſance to the pope, had, contrary to all reaſon, proceeded to a new election.

returns to Germany, *and makes war upon the revolters*;

The emperor, by the aſſiſtance of theſe princes, finding himſelf in a condition to make head againſt the rebels, began with depriving the king of *Bohemia* of his realm, which he beſtowed upon his ſon, who had complained to the the king his father had diſowned him as well as hi who was born marchioneſs of *Miſnia,* and that he ried the king of *Hungary*'s daughter. The emper ſame time declared war againſt *Herman,* marquis o *gia,* after having put him under the ban of the while he ordered *Henry* count palatine, *Henry* duk *bant,* and ſome other princes, to attack and de archbiſhopric of *Mentz*; ſo that the archbiſhop wa to fly for refuge into another country [n].

---

[l] Meib. Apol. &c. p. 141.

[m] Heiss, l. ii. c. 16.

joins the king of England *againſt* France, *and is defeated.* A. D. 1213.

AFTER this ſucceſs the emperor never doubte ſhould be able to re-eſtabliſh himſelf on the thro that he might the ſooner accompliſh his purpoſe, he it was neceſſary to weaken the ſupport of which the his partizans in the empire availed themſelves. *Philip Auguſtus,* king of *France,* againſt whom h tained another grudge on account of a wager whic formerly made with that prince, who refuſed to ſta agreement (T). This he looked upon to be a fa opportunity, becauſe *Philip* was at war with his uncle, the king of *England*. Theſe two princes, therefore, joined their forces, which were augmented by all the allies they could engage in the expedition; ſo that the confederate army amounted to one hundred and fifty thouſand men. They were met by the *French* near the village of *Bouvines*, and a bloody battle enſued, in which *Otho* and his allies were totally defeated, and he himſelf with difficulty eſcaped [*] (U). He attempted to retreat into *Germany*, but was prevented by young *Frederic*, who, with a powerful army, had marched into the empire, and been every-where received with open arms.

---

[n] GODEF. Monach. ad ann. 1211.

(T) When *Otho* was firſt elected king of the *Romans,* his uncle, *Richard* of *England,* preſented him with a very conſiderable ſum of money, and adviſed him to apply to the king of *France,* in his return to *Germany*. In conſequence of this advice, he waited upon *Philip Auguſtus* at *Poitiers,* in order to ſollicit his aſſiſtance; but that prince, who ſecretly favoured *Philip,* excuſed himſelf, and would even have diſſuaded him from his enterprize, by magnifying the riſque he would run from the power of his competitor. "If (ſaid he) you "will now give me the choice "of one of your ſumpter-horſes "with its load, I will engage "to give you *Paris, Orleans,* "or *Etampes,* when-ever you "ſhall be raiſed to the imperial "throne." *Otho* to his word, and *Phili* choſe the beſt of fi which were loaded hundred and fifty marks of gold he had from his uncle. After of *Philip* the emperor, ceeded to the throne, b animous conſent of the he ſent an embaſſy to of *France,* to notify hi and remind him of t which he had loſt. fuſed to pay the forfeit tence that *Otho* had the crown from his co which was the conditi wager; and, being aff the demand, gave him ſtand, that, if he was to conteſt the matter, find him ready for t (5).

(5) *Heiſs, liv.* ii. *c.* xvi.

HE neglected no opportunity to conciliate the affection of the *Germans*, as well as to reward thoſe who had eſpouſed his cauſe from the beginning of the conteſt. To ſome he gave pecuniary gratifications, and others were rewarded with honourable and lucrative privileges. He inſtituted an order of knighthood, called the *Bear*, in the abbey of *St. Gall*, in honour of the abbot and nobility of that country, who had been the firſt to receive, and furniſh him with troops againſt *Otho*. He remunerated the zeal and ſervices of *William* V. prince of *Orange*, with the kingdom of *Arles*, which he beſtowed upon him, on condition that he and his ſucceſſors ſhould do homage for it to the emperor; and he conferred upon the biſhop of *Straſbourg* the whole temporal juriſdiction of that city. *Colmar*, *Scheleſtadt*, and other towns of *Alſace*, were, by his direction, augmented, embelliſhed, and *Neubourg* on the *Rhine* declared a free city.

A.D. 1214.

Frederic *conciliates the affections of the* Germans.

HAVING eſtabliſhed his authority in *Upper Germany*, he paſſed the *Moſelle*, in order to reduce the towns by which he was not as yet acknowleged; but he met with no oppoſition in his march. *Triers*, and other cities which had been attached to *Otho*, ſubmitted, and took the oath of allegiance to *Frederic*; and the dukes of *Brabant* and *Lombardy* not only ſued for peace, which they obtained, but alſo undertook that the whole country of *Juliers* and *Weſtphalia* ſhould acknowlege his title [p]. Even *Waldemar*, king of *Denmark*, ſent ambaſſadors to congratulate him upon his election, and ſollicit his friendſhip; in conſideration of which, however, he ſtipulated that the towns of *Lubec* and *Hamburg*, together with *Holſtein*, and the other conqueſts he had made upon the empire, ſhould be united to the crown.

---

[*] KRANTZ Sax l. vii. c. 35.

(U) *Heiſs* gives an account of two battles, but he muſt be miſtaken; for the *French* authors mention but one, and ſurely they would not let ſlip any opportunity of magnifying the glory of their king: beſides, the *German* writers deſcribe no other than that which was fought at *Bouvines*, near *Tournay*, where *Philip*, biſhop of *Beauvais*, uſed a large club inſtead of a ſword, that he might kill without ſhedding blood; where the king of *France* was diſmounted, trampled upon by horſes, and wounded in the throat; and where *Otho*'s chariot was ſhattered in pieces, and the imperial ſtandard taken (6).

(6) *Mezer. Abreg. Chron.* t. i. p. 411.

Concludes a treaty of peace with Waldemar *king of* Denmark.

An alliance with a powerful monarch was of ſuch importance to *Frederic*, in his preſent precarious ſituation, that he complied with the demands of the *Daniſh* king, in a ſolemn treaty, which was generally blamed as injurious to the honour and intereſt of the empire. *Otho*, his brother the count palatine, *Albert* margrave of *Brandenburg*, and *Waldemar* biſhop of *Bremen*, not only exclaimed againſt the articles of this alliance, but, ſeizing the firſt pretence of a rupture with *Denmark*, aſſembled a body of troops, with which they marched directly to *Hamburg*, and took poſſeſſion of the town without oppoſition. Nevertheleſs they did not long enjoy this conqueſt; for this city was ſoon wreſted from them by *Frederic*, and afterwards re-taken by *Waldemar* king of *Denmark*, who ravaged the lands of the *Palatine*, and in the ſequel concluded a treaty of peace with the confederates, in which the emperor was not included [q].

Otho *retires to* Brunſwick, *where he dies.*

Otho, ſeeing himſelf thus abandoned by all the princes of *Germany*, and altogether without reſource, retired to *Brunſwick*, where he lived four years as a private man, dedicating his time to the duties of religion, and then died, after a reign fruitful of trouble and misfortune.

FREDERIC II.

He was ſucceeded by *Frederic* II. who, being but nine months old at his father's death, had, by his mother *Conſtance*, been carefully educated and inſtructed in the knowlege of every thing that could contribute to make him a great and virtuous prince. He had learned the *Greek*, *Latin*, *German*, *French*, and *Turkiſh* languages, and ſtudied, above all things, to follow the footſteps of his grandfather *Frederic* I. whoſe name he bore, and whoſe conduct he propoſed as a model for his own. Like him, he laid it down for a maxim, that nothing ought to be deferred till to-morrow, which can be executed to-day; imagining, that nothing was done in an affair, while any part of it remained undone. He was, by birth, a prince of great power; for, beſides the vaſt dominions he inherited from his father and mother, he, by the death of his uncle *Philip*, ſucceeded to the duchies of *Suabia* and *Rattenburg*, together with other dominions, which that prince had acquired. He was confirmed in the imperial dignity by the princes aſſembled at *Mentz*; from whom he received the oath of allegiance, as well as from the imperial cities of the *Rhine*, and was afterwards crowned at *Aix la Chapelle* with great magnificence; when, as an acknowlegement of the favours which God had hitherto beſtowed upon him, he added to the other ſolemnities of his coronation, a vow to go in perſon to the *Holy Land*[r]. Frederic *is crowned at* Aix la Chapelle. A. D. 1215.

---

[p] Archiv. de Sabern. l. x. Troph. du Brabant.

[q] Huitf. Hiſt. Dan. t. ii.

After the ceremony of his coronation, *Henry* count palatine of the *Rhine* was, with the unanimous conſent of the whole aſſembly, put to the ban of the empire, and his dignity beſtowed upon *Lewis* duke of *Bavaria*: a decree which was ſtrengthened by a match projected and executed between *Henry*'s daughter and the duke of *Bavaria*'s eldeſt ſon. When the aſſembly broke up, *Frederic* repaired to *Cologne*, where he was received amidſt the acclamations of the people, and made divers ſalutary laws touching the regulation of the police, and the reformation of abuſes which had crept into the management of taxes and public money.

While he was thus employed in eſtabliſhing the tranquility of the empire, pope *Innocent* died, and was ſucceeded by *Honorius* III. who expreſſed great eagerneſs in forwarding the cruſade, which he ordered to be preached up through all the provinces of *Germany*, *Sweden*, *Denmark*, *Bohemia*, and *Hungary*, and his endeavours were crowned with extraordinary ſucceſs; for although the emperor excuſed himſelf from the performance of his vow, until he ſhould have regulated the affairs of *Italy*, and received the imperial crown from the hands of his holineſs; and almoſt all the other monarchs of *Europe* were detained at home by domeſtic diſturbances; nevertheleſs an infinite number of private noblemen and their vaſſals took the croſs, under the dukes of *Auſtria*, *Bavaria*, the archbiſhop of *Mentz*, and the biſhops of *Munſter* and *Utrecht*, and *Andrew* II. king of *Hungary*, was, by the pope, declared generaliſſimo of the cruſade. While theſe cruſards of *Upper Germany* marched towards A. D. 1216. *Another cruſade.* 1217.

---

[r] Barr. t. v. p. 624.

Italy, in order to embark at *Venice*, *Genoa*, and *Meſſina*, a fleet of three hundred ſail was equipt in the ports of *Lower Saxony*, for the tranſportation of the adventurers of *Weſtphalia*, *Saxony*, and the territory of *Cologne*; and theſe joining the ſquadron of the *Frieſlanders*, *Flemings*, and ſubjects of *Brabant*, commanded by *William* count of *Holland*, *George* count of *Weerden*, and *Adolphus* count *de Berg*, ſet ſail for the *Straits of Gibraltar*, in their voyage to *Ptolemais*[s]. But being driven by a tempeſt into the road of *Liſbon*, they were prevailed upon to aſſiſt *Alphonſo* king of *Portugal* againſt the *Moors*, whom they defeated, and afterwards retook the city of *Alcazar*, which was in poſſeſſion of the infidels. In the mean time *Andrew*, with his army, having joined the king of *Cyprus*, landed at *Acra*, where he was joyfully received by *John de Brienne*, king of *Jeruſalem*, and the knights of the temple, hoſpital, and *Teutonic* order. Their forces being refreſhed and reviewed, they marched againſt the *Saracens*, into the great valley of *Jeſrael*, with the wood of the true croſs carried before them: but *Coradin*, ſon of *Saphadin*, ſoltan of *Egypt*, and *Babylon*, who commanded the enemy, finding himſelf unable to cope with the cruſards, retired, and they undertook the ſiege of *Thabor*, in which they miſcarried. Then they ſeparated into four bodies for the conveniency of ſubſiſting: *Luſignan* king of *Cyprus* died at *Tripoli* in the flower of his age: and *Andrew* king of *Hungary* returned to his own dominions, in order to appeaſe ſome troubles which had been excited in his abſence. Yet he was not ſuffered to depart, until he had ſolemnly ſworn, that he would not invade the dominions of *Auſtria* while the duke remained in *Paleſtine*, and agreed to leave one half of his troops for the proſecution of the war againſt the infidels.

Progreſs of the cruſards in the eaſt.
A. D.
1218.

IMMEDIATELY after his departure, the fleet from the coaſts of *Spain* arriving at *Ptolemais*, it was reſolved in a council of war to beſiege *Damietta* in *Egypt*, which was accordingly inveſted by ſea and land, and taken after a ſiege of eighteen months; during which *Saphadin* died, his ſon *Meledin*, who came to the relief of the beſieged, was defeated, the duke of *Auſtria*, with a great number of the cruſards, returned to *Germany*, and a new reinforcement arrived, under the conduct of the cardinal *D'Albano*, legate of the holy ſee[t].

---

[s] Ann. Paderborn. ad an. 1217.

[t] JAC. DE VITRI.

DURING theſe tranſactions in the eaſt, *Frederic* continued ſtill unſettled on the imperial throne; for tho' he was by this time acknowleged by almoſt all the princes and ſtates of *Germany*, and had purchaſed the friendſhip of the pope, by promiſing, in a ſolemn obligation, to emancipate his ſon *Henry*, and beſtow upon him the kingdom of *Sicily*, to be held as a fief of the church of *Rome*, as ſoon as he himſelf ſhould be crowned emperor; notwithſtanding theſe precautions, the cauſe of *Otho* was ſtill maintained in *Italy*, eſpecially by the inhabitants of *Milan* and *Placentia*, who declared war, and committed hoſtilities, againſt the adherents of *Frederic*, in ſpite of the menaces and excommunication which were threatened againſt them by the pope; until the cauſe of their diſſenſion was removed by the death of *Otho*, who expired in the tenth year of his reign, after having, in his laſt moments, been abſolved of the cenſures of the church [u].

The cities of Milan *and* Placentia *ſtill hold out againſt* Frederic.

FREDERIC having reduced to his obedience the provinces of *Lower Saxony* and the towns upon the *Elbe*, and exerted his beſt endeavours for repairing the damage which a long civil war had done to the empire, convoked a diet at *Goſlar*, where he received the imperial ornaments from *Henry* count palatine, to whom they had been delivered by his brother *Otho*; and that prince, having taken the oath of allegiance, was allowed to enjoy his brother's inheritance, gratified with a ſum of money, and admitted to the emperor's friendſhip. During *Frederic*'s reſidence at *Goſlar*, which he favoured with divers immunities, *Thibaut* duke of *Lorrain* made himſelf maſter of the citadel of *Roſheim*, belonging to the emperor, and ravaged the country of *Alſace*: but he did not commit theſe hoſtilities with impunity; for *Frederic*, marching againſt him with great expedition, cooped him up in the town of *Amance*, where he was taken priſoner, and afterwards releaſed by the interceſſion of the biſhop of *Metz* [x].

Diet at Goſlar. A. D. 1219.

THIS diſturbance being quelled, he ſummoned a diet at *Frankfort*, where, after having ſettled the moſt urgent affairs of the empire, he ſignified his intention of going to be crowned at *Rome*, and deſired that the princes and ſtates would, according to ancient cuſtom, make ſuitable proviſion for his equipage.

THE pope preſſed him to ſet out immediately upon this expedition, that he might no longer have a pretext for delaying the performance of his vow touching the *Holy Land*;

---

[u] Apolog. Othon. IV. apud MEIB. t. iii.

[x] Hiſt. de Lorr. l. xxiii.

but before his own departure, he ſent his chancellor *Conrad*, biſhop of *Spire*, with circular letters, addreſſed to all the towns in *Italy*, commanding them to receive and obey that prelate as the miniſter and repreſentative of his imperial majeſty, and to take the oath of allegiance in his preſence. Then *Frederic* committed the education of his ſon *Henry* to *Worgerus*, count *de Boland*, and appointed a council to manage the affairs of the empire in his abſence. Finally, as a mark of his regard for the *German* prelates, he iſſued an imperial decree, importing, that the effects of deceaſed biſhops ſhould devolve to their ſucceſſors; that, for the future, no emperor ſhould make any alteration in the taxes and coin; that no place of the empire ſhould afford an aſylum to fugitive ſerfs belonging to churches or biſhops; that no perſon ſhould poſſeſs the fief of an archbiſhop after his death, without the conſent of his ſucceſſor; that no man ſhould pretend to oppoſe the effects of excommunication by force of arms; that no perſon, not even the lord avoyer, ſhould build towns, caſtles, fortreſſes, or other edifices, upon ground belonging to the church, without the conſent of the titular biſhop; that no officer of the emperor ſhould try cauſes, impoſe taxes, or levy duties, upon an epiſcopal town, except during eight days preceding and ſucceeding a diet convoked in that place; and, laſtly, that in caſe the emperor ſhould ſtop or reſide *incognito* in any of the epiſcopal towns, he ſhould not there perform any act of juriſdiction [y].

He in the ſame aſſembly granted and confirmed ſome privileges to ſeveral ſecular princes, in particular to the duke of *Brabant*, who, by letters patent, was declared tutor of all the minors who held fiefs of the empire; and he effected an accommodation between the archbiſhop of *Cologn* and the count of *Luxemburg*, who had quarrelled and taken arms about the ſucceſſion of *Adolphus*, count *de Bergue*, who died at the ſiege of *Damietta* in *Egypt*.

A. D.
1220.
Frederic
crowned at
Rome *by*
Honorius
III.

The troubles of *Germany* being appeaſed, and the neceſſary preparations made for his journey, *Frederic* croſſed the *Alps* with a good army, halted at *Verona*, was refuſed admittance into *Milan*, an inſult which he reſolved to revenge in due ſeaſon: then he repaired to *Modena*, viſited *Bologna*, advanced to the frontiers of *Sicily*, where he was joined by the troops that were under the command of his viceroy *Thomas d'Aquini*. At length, accompanied by the deputies of almoſt all the *Italian* ſtates, he arrived at *Rome*, where he was crowned by pope *Honorius* III. and upon that occaſion he gave away large ſums of money, which, though beſtowed through pure liberality, the popes have ſince endeavoured to convert into an obligation, by way of acknowlegement for receiving the crown [z] (X). After his coronation, he received the oath of fidelity and homage from the ſtates and cities of *Italy*; then declared *Henry* his ſon king of the *Romans*, having already at *Frankfort* obtained the conſent of the princes of the empire, appointed his tutors, and betrothed to him *Margaret*, daughter of *Leopold* of *Auſtria* [a]; afterwards, having every where eſtabliſhed peace and tranquillity, by means of the princes of the empire who accompanied him, he retired to his kingdom of *Naples*. There he found that *Thomas* and *Richard*, the two brothers of the late pope *Innocent*, with their adherents, had excited an inſurrection, and made themſelves maſters of one part of that realm; however, he ſoon took vengeance on the authors of the ſedition. *Richard* was apprehended, condemned, and ſent into exile in the kingdom of *Sicily*; count *Thomas*, and ſome other rebels, retired to *Rome*, where pope *Honorius* received them into his protection.

---

[y] Barre, tom. v. p. 645. Gob. Pers. Coſm. æt. vi. c. 64.

FREDERIC, however, at the ſollicitation of the pope, ſent a powerful army, both by ſea and land, to the cruſards in the eaſt, who were divided by a diſpute between *John de Brienne*, king of *Jeruſalem*, and cardinal *Albano*, legate of the holy ſee, which laſt inſiſted upon having the command of the army. This reinforcement happily arrived at *Damietta*, under the conduct of the duke of *Bavaria*, and was followed by a fleet of gallies, who fell in with a fleet of twelve *Saracens*, and took or deſtroyed the whole number. At the ſame time the emperor marched with a body of troops into *Sicily*, againſt the *Saracens* of that kingdom, who had excited diſorders and ravaged the country. At his approach they retired to inacceſſible mountains, where they were beſieged in ſuch a manner, that they could receive no ſupplies of proviſions, conſequently ſurrendered at diſcretion, and were either expelled from the kingdom, or tranſported to other ſettlements in *Apulia* [b].

---

[z] BARRE, t. v. p. 650.

[a] Ann. Boior. lib. vii. p. 530.

(X) *Frederic* at his coronation, which was performed in the church of St. *Peter*, took an oath to defend all the rights and poſſeſſions of the *Roman* ſee, including the fiefs of the counteſs *Mathilda*, and the county of *Fonde*. He likewiſe promiſed, upon oath, to paſs into *Aſia*, with an army, at any time the pope ſhould appoint (1).

(1) *Sigon. de Reg. Ital. l.* xvii.

A. D. 1223. THE troubles of *Italy* being appeaſed, the emperor, by letter, directed the archbiſhop of *Cologn* to crown his ſon *Henry* at *Aix la Chapelle*; and the ceremony was performed in preſence of a great number of noblemen, eccleſiaſtic and ſecular, who afterwards held a diet, in which divers laws and regulations were made, touching fiefs and the adminiſtration of juſtice in feudal courts.

FROM *Aix la Chapelle Henry* repaired to *Augsburg*, where he confirmed the privileges of the town of *Straſburg*: then he viſited *Haguenau*, where he regulated the polity of *Alſace*, and bridled the oppreſſive power which the nobility exerted over their vaſſals. He afterwards, by his father's direction, ſent commiſſaries to *Vaucouleurs*, to renew the treaty of alliance with *Lewis* VIII. the new *French* king, who had ſucceeded his father *Philip Auguſtus*, lately deceaſed. A treaty by which the emperor promiſed never to engage in any confederacy with the king of *England*, to the prejudice of *France* (Y).

Waldemar II. *king of* Denmark *is made priſoner by the count* de Schwerin; ABOUT this period, *Waldemar* II. king of *Denmark*, and his eldeſt ſon, were ſurpriſed by *Henry*, count *de Schwerin*, who, on pretence of ſome injury he had received from his *Daniſh* majeſty, apprehended him and the prince, while engaged in the diverſion of hunting, and committed them priſoners to the fortreſs of *Daneberg*.

THE *Daniſh* ſenators were no ſooner informed of the king's captivity, than they addreſſed themſelves to the emperor and the pope, whom they ſollicited to procure the releaſe of their ſovereign. In conſequence of this application, a diet was convened at *Northauſen*, and the princes agreed that *Waldemar* ſhould be ſet at liberty, provided that he would do homage to the emperor for his kingdom: on the other hand, the pope pretended that *Denmark* was a fief of the holy ſee, and inſiſted upon *Waldemar*'s owning this dependence, before he would take any ſteps in his favour.

---

[b] Hiſt. de Reb. Geſt. Fred. apud MURATOR.

(Y) In the courſe of this year the inhabitants of *Metz*, taking the advantage of the duke of *Lorrain*'s death, and the abſence of their biſhop, erected themſelves into a republic, and became a free town, after the example of many other cities which had taken the like opportunities of infranchiſing themſelves, and afterwards received charters, confirming their liberty from different emperors (1).

(1) *Lithman*, *l.* iv. *c.* 884.

The captive prince rejected, with diſdain, ſuch terms of enlargement; and, in the mean time, the count *de Schwerin* being furniſhed with troops by the princes of *Saxony*, *Adolphus*, count *de Schawembourg*, and the archbiſhop of *Bremen*, invaded *Nordalbingia*, took the *Daniſh* general priſoner by ſurprize, and reduced *Holſtein*, with the adjacent country on the north of the *Elbe*, and the city of *Hamburgh*. The knights of the *Teutonic* order, and the biſhop of *Riga*, took this opportunity of ſeizing *Revel*. At the ſame time the *Wandalians*, weſtern *Sclaves*, and the count *de Werle*, ſhook off the *Daniſh* yoke. *Berem* and *Watiſlaus*, princes of *Pomerania*, wreſted the town of *Demnica* from the count *de Rugen*, and *Swenteploe* made himſelf maſter of *Dantzick*, which had been about ſeventeen years in poſſeſſion of the *Danes*. At length, by the mediation of the pope, *Albert*, duke of *Saxony*, and ſome other princes, the king of *Denmark* and his ſon were ſet at liberty, in conſideration of 45,000 marks of ſilver, paid by way of ranſom [c].

and releaſed on paying a ranſom.

A. D. 1224.

Diſputes about the ſucceſſion of the counteſs de Daſbourg.

While this negociation was on the carpet, a violent diſpute aroſe among ſeveral noblemen, who pretended to the ſucceſſion of the counteſs *de Daſbourg*, who died without iſſue, and whoſe lands were ſeized by the biſhop of *Metz*, as reverſionary fiefs belonging to his ſee. The competitors were the biſhop of *Liege*, count *de Linangen*, whoſe brother had married the counteſs, the duke of *Brabant*, and the marquis of *Baden*, which laſt had made over his right to *Berthold*, biſhop of *Straſbourg*. Each pretender made alliances and preparations for doing himſelf juſtice by force of arms; hoſtilities were again commenced, and after much miſchief and bloodſhed, the affair was accommodated to the ſatisfaction of all parties, partly by the authority of the emperor, and partly by the admonitions of *Engelbert*, archbiſhop of *Cologn*, who did not long ſurvive the pacification; for he was baſely aſſaſſinated in *Weſtphalia* by the accomplices of *Frederic*, count *de Iſembert*, whom he had threatened to chaſtiſe for his exceſſes.

Engelbert *archbiſhop of* Cologn, *is aſſinated.*

1225.

Engelbert had acquired ſuch reputation in the empire for his prudence and ſage adminiſtration, that the murderer was, by the diet of *Nuremberg*, put to the ban of the empire, a price ſet upon his head, and he afterwards underwent the ſentence of excommunication. Though he made ſhift to eſcape from *Germany* at that juncture, he was in the ſequel apprehended in diſguiſe near *Liege*, and broke alive upon the wheel in the city of *Cologn*. The vacant ſee was filled up by *Henry de Mollemare*, and *Engelbert*'s office of tutor to the young king of the *Romans*, conferred upon *Lewis*, duke of *Bavaria* [d].

---

[c] Huitfeld. Hiſt. Dan. t. ii.

THIS prince was juſt returned from the eaſt, where the cruſards had been obliged to ſurrender *Damietta* to *Meledin*, ſoltan of *Egypt*, after having been reduced to the greateſt extremity. The king of *Jeruſalem*, and the grand maſter of the *Teutonic* order, came to *Europe* at the ſame time, in order to ſollicit ſuccours from the princes of Chriſtendom. The pope, incenſed at the loſs of *Damietta*, wrote a very ſevere letter to the emperor, taxing him with having ſacrificed the intereſts of the cruſards, by delaying ſo long to perform his vow, and threatening to excommunicate him immediately, if he would not forthwith depart at the head of an army for their relief. *Frederic*, exaſperated at theſe reproaches, renounced all correſpondence with his holineſs, renewed the authority of the legation in *Sicily*, filled up the vacant ſees and benefices, and expelled ſome biſhops that were creatures of the pope, on pretence of their being concerned in practices againſt the ſtate.

The emperor reduces the rebels of Naples, *and quarrels with the pope, who threatens to excommunicate him.*

HONORIUS having received the complaints of the exiles, exhorted the emperor, by letters and ambaſſadors, to re-eſtabliſh them in their dignities and offices, reproaching him for his raſhneſs in preſuming to lift his hand againſt the ſanctuary, in erecting himſelf as a judge over the eccleſiaſtical ſtate, and uſurping the authority of the holy ſee; for he obſerved, that if thoſe prelates and officers had given him offence, he ought to have addreſſed himſelf to the pope, who, as head of the eccleſiaſtical order, would have taken cognizance of the matter, and decided according to the merits of the cauſe. To this remonſtrance the emperor anſwered, that ſince the reign of *Charlemagne*, the emperors had always an authority and ſovereign juriſdiction over the eccleſiaſtic ſtate; that as they had promoted the biſhops and abbots to their dignities and benefices, they had likewiſe occaſionally deprived them in caſe of miſconduct or malverſation; that his grandfather *Frederic* I. and his father *Henry* VI. had maintained this juriſdiction in full force; and that he being elevated to the ſame ſtation, pretended to the ſame authority, of which he neither could nor would diveſt himſelf, to the prejudice of the empire and his ſucceſſors. With regard to his hereditary dominions, his mother *Conſtance* and

---

[d] BARRE, t. v. p. 669.

A. D. 1225.

her predeceſſors, who were always great benefactors to the church of *Rome*, had ever enjoyed the ſame prerogative over the clergy of *Naples* and *Sicily*; and therefore the pope could not juſtly demand that he would part with the rights of his ſovereignty, or allow his holineſs to ſit in judgment upon the eccleſiaſtics of his kingdoms. Not content with ſending this private remonſtrance to the pope, he publiſhed a manifeſto for the juſtification of his conduct, and ordered his troops to march to the fronties of the eccleſiaſtical ſtate.

It was not long, however, before *Honorius* became ſenſible of his own impolitic conduct, in thus incurring the reſentment of ſuch a powerful prince, and thought proper to deprecate his anger by ſome ſubmiſſive apologies and gentle exhortations; in conſequence of which they were reconciled, and conferred together at *Veroli*, after the emperor had, as a proof of his ſincerity and attachment to the church, publiſhed ſome very ſevere edicts againſt hereſy, which ſeem to have authorized the tribunal of the inquiſition [e]. A ſolemn aſſembly was afterwards held at *Ferentino*, where both were preſent, together with *John of Brienne*, king of *Jeruſalem*, who was come to *Rome* to demand ſuccours againſt the ſoltan of *Egypt*. This prince had an only daughter, named *Yolanda*, whom he propoſed as a wife to the emperor, together with the kingdom of *Jeruſalem* after his own deceaſe, on condition that *Frederic* would perform the vow he had made to go to the *Holy Land*. The pope, who paſſionately deſired to ſee all the princes of Chriſtendom engaged for the recovery of theſe ſacred places, and particularly longed to be rid of the emperor, that he himſelf might remain ſole maſter of *Italy*, readily agreed to the propoſal. *Frederic* was invited to *Rome*, where he made peace with the pope, and ſigned the marriage articles between himſelf and *Yolanda*, who was heireſs in right of her mother *Iſabel*, only daughter of *Amaury*, king of *Jeruſalem* [f]; and by theſe articles he bound himſelf to ſet out with an army in two years, for the recovery of the *Holy Land*. In conſequence of this accommodation, ambaſſadors were diſpatched into *Syria* for the princeſs, who was then at *Ptolemais*; but almoſt two years elapſed before ſhe arrived at *Rome*, and *Frederic* began in earneſt to prepare for his expedition. The pope ſent the cardinal *Conrad* into *Germany*, with letters to all the metropolitans and their ſuffragans, exhorting them to aſſiſt the emperor in ſuch a laudable enterprize: the concurrence of

Frederic *engages to marry the king of* Jeruſalem's *daughter.*

---

[e] Petr. de Vincis, l. i. ep. 25, &c.

[f] Mach. Hiſt. de Fir. lib. i.

Lewis VIII. king of *France*, was alſo ſollicited; the grand maſter of the *Teutonic* order carried letters from *Frederic* to the king of the *Romans*, deſiring that prince to convoke a diet at *Frankfort*, in order to deliberate upon meaſures for ſending ſuccours to the *Holy Land*; and the duke of *Auſtria*, and the landgrave of *Thuringia*, ſignalized their zeal at that aſſembly; ſo that the preparations were carried on with extraordinary vigour, when *Frederic* was informed of a ſecret league, in which the towns of *Lombardy* had engaged, with a view to renounce his authority.

Confederacy of the Lombard *towns againſt the emperor.* A. D. 1226.

HE forthwith ſent an account of this confederacy to the pope, repreſenting, that he could not poſſibly accompliſh his vow, without running the riſque of a general revolt in *Italy* againſt the empire; and *Honorius*, perſuaded of the juſtice of this remonſtrance, conſented to his delaying his expedition two years longer, after he had ſworn at *San Germano*, that he would certainly depart at the expiration of that term, on pain of excommunication [g].

Frederic *convokes an aſſembly at* Cremona.

FREDERIC having obtained this reprieve, iſſued orders for convening a general aſſembly at *Cremona*, to which he invited all the towns of *Italy*, and the noblemen of the empire, by circular letters, directed to each in particular. He likewiſe ordered his ſon *Henry* to meet him at that place with a ſtrong body of forces. The aſſociated towns now pulled off the maſk, juſtified their confederation by the authority of a treaty, which had been made at *Conſtance*, between *Frederic Barbaroſſa* and the cities of *Lombardy*, impowering them to make and renew alliances one with another. As the reigning emperor had refuſed to confirm this article, they aſſembled at *Bozolo* in the territory of *Mantua*, where they renewed their aſſociation upon oath, and reſolved to levy troops to guard the paſſes of the *Alps* againſt the king of the *Romans* (Z). Accordingly, when that prince advanced as far as *Trent*, in his way to *Cremona*, he found the paſſage blocked up by the troops of *Verona*, and was obliged to return without ſeeing his father; while the confederates intimated to the *German* princes, that they had not taken arms with a view to ſeparate themſelves from the empire, but ſolely in order to maintain their rights and liberty againſt the encroachments of the emperor [h].

---

[g] RAINALD. ad an. 1225.

(Z) The aſſociated towns were *Milan*, *Bologna*, *Placentia*, *Verona*, *Breſcia*, *Mantua*, *Vercelli*, *Lodi*, *Bergamo*, *Turin*, *Alexandria*, *Vicenza*, and ſeveral others, reinforced by *Boniface*, marquis of *Montferrat*, and *Godfrey*, count of *Romagna* (1).

(1) *Barre*, t. v. p. 676.

Quarrels again with the pope.

WHILE *Frederic* was employed in taking meaſures for diſperſing this dangerous cloud that ſeemed to gather around him, another difference aroſe between him and *Honorius*, touching the nomination of biſhops to the vacant ſees of *Sicily*: this breach was widened by the emperor s refuſing to comply with the demands of *Conrad* the legate, who had propoſed to the princes of *Germany*, that, in order to relieve the preſſing neceſſities of the *Roman* church, they ſhould grant to the pope two prebendaries in every cathedral, and two cells in each monaſtery. *Frederic*, being informed of this extravagant propoſal, gave the pope to underſtand, that, as the affair concerned all Chriſtendom, the empire ſhould conform to the reſolutions of other Chriſtian ſtates, who were ſollicited on the ſame ſubject.

HONORIUS, piqued at this repulſe, as well as at the inflexibility of *Frederic* on other occaſions, reſolved to prevent the aſſembly at *Cremona*, and actually forbad the deputies at *Spoleto* to go thither, notwithſtanding the repeated commands and threats of the emperor: a conteſt which gave birth to a literary correſpondence, replete with rancour and reproach. He taxed the pope with envy, malice, and upbraided him in particular with having granted an aſylum to his rebellious ſubjects. *Honorius*, on the other hand, accuſed him of ingratitude, obſtinacy, pride, and cruelty towards his father-in-law, the king of *Jeruſalem*; for by this time *Frederic*'s marriage with *Yolanda* had been ſolemnized with great magnificence at *Rome*; and in a little time after the ceremony, which was performed by the pope, he had extorted from *John de Brienne* a ceſſion of his right and title to the kingdom of *Jeruſalem* [i].

Holds an aſſembly at Cremona.

NOTWITHSTANDING all the engines the pope could ſet at work to traverſe the deſigns of *Frederic*, that prince repaired to *Cremona* at the appointed time, where he was met by the deputies from the well-affected towns, and divers ſubjects of importance were diſcuſſed at the aſſembly, tho' nothing of conſequence was decided. From thence he marched towards *Milan*, and ſummoned the citizens to admit him, that he might be crowned king of *Lombardy*: but he ſuſtained a repulſe, and finding himſelf incapable at that time of revenging the inſult, he reſolved to puniſh them in the intereſts of their allies, and actually deprived *Bologna* of

---

[h] Antiq. Goſl. ad an. 1226.

[i] Ap. RAIN. ad an. 1226. n. 3. SANUT. l. iii. part 2. c. 10.

Peace concluded with the Lombard *towns.*

A. D. 1227.

its univerſity, which he tranſlated to *Naples*, and favoured with extraordinary privileges; though it was afterwards reſtored to *Bologna* at the peace, which was effected by the mediation of the pope, whom the emperor viſited at *Reati*, and reconciled to his intereſt[k] (A).

The pope dies, and is ſucceeded by Gregory IX.

The peace was no ſooner concluded, than his holineſs reminded the emperor of his vow, obſerved, that the time for executing his promiſe approached, and preſſed him to take meaſures for his ſpeedy departure; but he died before he could ſee the execution of this great deſign, which he had ſo much at heart, and was ſucceeded in his office, as well as his maxims, by *Gregory* IX. a kinſman of theſe two counts, whom, as we have already obſerved, *Frederic* had proſcribed and baniſhed from the kingdom of *Naples*.

During theſe tranſactions a diet was held at *Aix la Chapelle*, for the coronation of *Agnes*, wife of *Henry*, king of the *Romans*, where that prince decided a difference between the town of *Verdun* and its biſhop *Rodolphus*, ſubjecting the inhabitants to the prelate's juriſdiction; and this ſentence produced an inſurrection and open war between the parties, which was, however, ſoon terminated by accommodation.

A. D. 1227.

Henry, count palatine of the *Rhine*, and brother of the emperor *Otho* IV. dying at this conjuncture without male iſſue, *Henry*, marquis of *Baden*, who had married his eldeſt daughter, ſold his pretenſions upon *Brunſwic* to the emperor; and the king of the *Romans* attempted to take poſſeſſion, but was prevented by *Otho* of *Saxony*, ſon of *William*, duke of *Lunenburg*, ſole male heir of *Henry the Lion*, who ſecured the place with a ſtrong garriſon, confiding in an alliance, offenſive and defenſive, which he had made with the king of *Denmark*. It was in conſequence of this treaty that *Otho* furniſhed his *Daniſh* majeſty with troops, to reduce the inhabitants of *Lubec*, who had revolted, after having privately ſecured the countenance and protection of the emperor.

---

[k] Ric. a Sanct. Germ. 1226.

(A) The pope, being choſen arbitrator, decreed, that the emperor ſhould ſuppreſs all his reſentment, revoke all the ſentences he had paſſed, and the conſtitutions he had enacted, againſt the confederacy, which on its part ſhould furniſh the emperor with 400 knights for two years, in his expedition againſt the *Saracens* of the eaſt; that it ſhould make peace with all the towns, places, and perſons, attached to the emperor, and annul all contrary proceedings; that it ſhould obſerve all the conſtitutions and laws publiſhed by the *Roman* church, or the emperors, againſt hereſy, and revoke thoſe which had been enacted to the prejudice of the eccleſiaſtic liberty (1).

(1) *De Boulai, p.* 117.

Lubec *expels the* Daniſh *garriſon.*

Frederic, who repined to ſee that town diſmembered from the empire, ſent orders to the archbiſhop of *Bremen*, the duke of *Saxony*, the counts of *Schwerin*, *Mecklenbourg*, and *Oldenbourg*, to give all poſſible aſſiſtance to the citizens of *Lubec*, in caſe they ſhould be attacked by the king of *Denmark*, whoſe garriſon they had expelled. Accordingly, when *Waldemar* took the field in order to revenge this inſult, thoſe princes aſſembled an army to oppoſe him, after his irruption into *Holſtein*, and an obſtinate battle enſued, in which he loſt one eye and was defeated, and his nephew *Otho* of *Lunenburg* taken priſoner. This diſgrace ſerved only to animate his courage; he raiſed another army with incredible expedition, deſtroyed the country of *Dithmarſie* with fire and ſword, and having ravaged the northern part of *Holſtein*, returned to *Denmark* to recruit his army. Mean while the confederates, under the conduct of the duke of *Saxony*, took *Mollen*, *Ratzeburg*, and ſome other places in *Lower Saxony*, which the *Danes* had poſſeſſed for ſome time: then they inveſted *Lawemburg*, which was a place of ſuch conſequence, that *Waldemar* marched to its relief, and was employed in cutting off the convoys of the beſiegers, when being alarmed with a falſe report that the king of the *Romans* was on his march to join the allies, he retreated with great precipitation to his own dominions, and the town was obliged to ſurrender[1].

The king of Denmark *is defeated.*

Lawemburg, *and other places in* Lower Saxony, *revert to the empire.*

Gregory was no ſooner raiſed to the chair of *St. Peter*, than he ſent a legate *a latere* to preſs *Frederic* to the execution of the promiſe he had ſo ſolemnly made, or in caſe of refuſal, to threaten him with a ſentence of excommunication, which he had voluntarily incurred. *Frederic* finding he could no longer defer his departure, eſpecially as ſeveral princes, a great number of noblemen, and others, had arrived from all the kingdoms in Chriſtendom, in order to accompany him in the cruſade, ordered his fleet to be equipped with all expedition, and actually ſet ſail from *Brundiſi* with a moſt magnificent equipage, and very powerful armament. But being taken ill about three days after he put to ſea, he returned with his houſhold to the port from whence he had ſet out, and gave orders for his army to proceed to the *Levant*. The pope, incenſed at this quick return, declared, with the conſent of all the cardinals, that he had incurred

Frederic *ſets ſail from* Brundiſi, *and puts back.*

A. D. 1227.

---

[1] Pontan. rerum Dan. Hiſt.

the penalty of excommunication, and rendered himſelf incapable of the imperial dignity[m]; and in letters written to all the kings, princes, and prelates of Chriſtendom, he explained the reaſons that influenced his conduct in this affair, giving them to underſtand, that the emperor had voluntarily ſubmitted to the ſentence, in caſe he ſhould not perform his vow, and threatening to proceed againſt him in a rigorous manner.

On the other hand, *Frederic* publiſhed letters and manifeſtoes, vindicating his own conduct, promiſing to accompliſh his vow as ſoon as his health ſhould permit, and enumerating the ill offices which had been done him by the preſent pope and his predeceſſors; but whatever effect this juſtification had with other ſovereigns in his favour, the confederated towns of *Lombardy* made this breach between him and the pope a pretence for revolting, and endeavouring by promiſes and threats to engage in their aſſociation thoſe cities which were affected to the emperor.

Frederic, incenſed at the inſolence and malice of the pope, who had excited all theſe commotions to the prejudice of his intereſt and reputation, reſolved to be revenged upon the ſee of *Rome*, and began by confiſcating the effects and expelling the perſons of all thoſe eccleſiaſtics within his dominions, who had treated him as an excommunicated prince. He ordered all the pope's couriers to be apprehended, ravaged the lands of St. *Peter*'s patrimony in *Apulia*, and pillaged the houſes of the templars, whom he conſidered as his inveterate enemies.

Frederic *is excommunicated.* A. D. 1228.

Gregory was no ſooner informed of theſe proceedings, than he called a council, in which the ſentence of excommunication was repeated againſt the emperor, and all prieſts forbid to perform divine ſervice in his preſence, on pain of privation.

The emperor thinking the cauſe of his return was more than ſufficient to exempt him from the trouble of proceeding on the voyage, left no ſtone unturned to mortify the pope, in return for the ſentence which he had twice pronounced againſt him; and ſucceeded ſo well in his endeavours, by the addreſs and power of *Frangipani*, and other rich noblemen of *Rome*, who were attached to his intereſt, that his holineſs was obliged to quit that city and take refuge at *Perugia*[n]. It was upon this occaſion that in *Rome*, as well as in other parts of *Italy*, the animoſity between the *Guelphs* and

---

[m] Ann. Boior. Joh. Aventin. l. vii. p. 531. [n] Usperg. act. Greg. Alb. Stad. Sigon. l. xvii.

Gibelines revived, after it had lain dormant ſince *Conrad* III. under whom it firſt appeared. Mean while *Frederic*, in order to remove the cauſe of all thoſe excommunications, was preſſed by his friends to perform his vow: beſides, the intereſt of his young ſon *Conrad*, whom he had by *Yolanda*, who was lately dead, prompted him to go and take poſſeſſion of the kingdom of *Jeruſalem*.

The animoſity of the Guelphs *and* Gibelines *revived.*

A. D. 1228.

THUS determined, he aſſembled at *Barletta* all the grandees of *Sicily*, together with the *German* noblemen who had accompanied him to *Italy*, declared his deſign of departing immediately for the *Holy Land*, and his laſt will being read, exacted of all preſent an oath, by which they bound themſelves to ſee it executed in caſe he ſhould die in the expedition. The pope, informed of his intention, ſent him a formal meſſage, forbidding him to proceed before he ſhould be abſolved of the cenſures of the church. Notwithſtanding this prohibition, he embarked and ſailed to *Cyprus*, where he ſtaid ſome time, then proceeded for the port of *Ptolemais*. Nevertheleſs, before he went on board, he ſent a letter to the pope, giving him to underſtand, that he had left full powers with his lieutenant *Renaldo*, duke of *Spoleto*, to negociate and conclude an accommodation. But *Gregory* refuſing to treat with that nobleman, whom he conſidered as a perſecutor of the church, *Renaldo* entered *St. Peter's* patrimony with an army, compoſed of *Germans* and *Sicilian Saracens*, and laid waſte the whole country. The pope, in revenge for theſe outrages, excommunicated the lieutenant, raiſed an army to oppoſe him, the command of which was given to *John de Brienne*, king of *Jeruſalem*, excited a new revolt againſt the emperor among the *Lombard* towns, and all *Italy* was involved in the horrors of a civil war.

1229.

MEAN while *Frederic* met with a very cold reception in his kingdom of *Jeruſalem*; for the patriarch, and the knights of the hoſpital, temple, and *Teutonic* order, had been prepoſſeſſed againſt him by the letters of *Gregory*, who repreſented him as a perjured and excommunicated ſinner. Nay, the grand maſters abſolutely refuſed to march againſt the enemy while he commanded in chief; ſo that he was fain to conſent that all orders ſhould be given in the name of the duke of *Limbourg*, who was ſecond in command. This was not the only mortification he endured. *Meledin*, ſoltan of *Egypt*, had two very numerous armies in the field: the cruſard troops, including the knights, did not exceed 15,000 men; and he received diſpatches from the count *d'Acerra*, governor of *Sicily*, by which he learned that his *Sicilian* dominions were in great danger from the army of *John de*

Brienne, who aſpired at the imperial throne, and had even laid ſnares, and contrived ſtratagems, for apprehending the perſon of *Frederic*, in his return from *Paleſtine* [o].

Frederic *concludes a truce with the* Saracens;

THESE conſiderations extinguiſhed all his hopes of making conqueſts in the eaſt, and induced him to grant a truce of ten years to *Meledin*, on condition that the Chriſtians ſhould retain *Jeruſalem*: having therefore been crowned in that city, and left a ſtrong garriſon in the place, as well as in ſome other towns, he returned with an empty title, which from that time hath been preſerved by the kings of *Sicily* [p] (B). On his arrival at *Naples* from the *Holy Land*, he found the pope had been very active againſt him in his abſence, and diſavowed the treaty which he had concluded with the ſoltan, as a reproach upon the Chriſtian name; for which reaſon he refuſed to abſolve him from the ſentence of excommunication.

FREDERIC, perceiving he had nothing to hope from the favour of his holineſs, put his troops in motion, and retook ſeveral ſtrong places, of which the pope had deprived him in his abſence, employing in this conqueſt the very forces he had raiſed for the *Syrian* expedition.

GREGORY publiſhed bulls, ſent ambaſſadors to demand ſuccours from all the princes of *Europe*, though his remonſtrances had no effect, except among the confederates of *Lombardy*, who exerted themſelves in his behalf; and, laſtly, as the ſevereſt mark of his reſentment, repeated the ſentence of excommunication, with an additional clauſe, abſolving all the ſubjects of *Frederic* from their oath of allegiance.

---

[o] MATH. PARIS. an. 1229.

[p] Ann. Boior. Jo. AVENT. l. vii. p. 531.

(B) If we conſider the articles of this peace, againſt which the pope ſo bitterly exclaimed, and reflect upon the ſituation of the Chriſtians in the *Holy Land*, we can have no reaſon to think the truce was diſgraceful to the emperor, or diſadvantageous to the cauſe of Chriſtianity. The *Saracens* releaſed all the priſoners, and yielded up *Jeruſalem*, with the whole country, as far as *Joppa*, that the Chriſtians might paſs and repaſs unmoleſted between the city and the ſea: they likewiſe reſtored to *Frederic*, *Bethlem*, *Nazareth*, and all the country between *Jeruſalem* and *Acon*, or *Ptolemais*, together with *Tyre*, *Sidon*, and the neighbouring territories; and it was ſtipulated, that the emperor ſhould be allowed to repair all the fortifications in *Syria* and *Paleſtine*; whereas the *Saracens* were excluded from that privilege (1).

(1) *Avent. an Boior. lib.* vii. *p.* 531.

A

t the ſame time he again excommunicated the duke of *Spo*-*to*, his brother *Bertholdus*, and *Theodore Comnenus*, prince f *Epirus*, who had ſollicited the friendſhip of the emperor, d even aſſiſted him with troops [q].

FREDERIC, after having expelled all the pope's garriſons, illaged the towns and villages belonging to the holy ſee, and vaged the country to the very gates of *Rome*, he was adviſed y *St. Lewis*, king of *France*, to liſten to an accommodation. le accordingly ſent as ambaſſadors to *Rome*, *Berthold*, patriarch of *Aquileia*, *Everhard*, biſhop of *Saltzburg*, *Seifried*, iſhop of *Ratiſbon*, *Sibold*, biſhop of *Augſburg*, and *Leopold*, f *Auſtria*; but the pope received them ſo coldly, and kept is pretenſions ſo high, that they returned without having ome to any concluſion.

THIS indifference proceeded from his confidence in the talents of *Otho*, whom he had ſent as his legate to excite troubles in *Germany*. That agent tampered in ſecret with the duke of *Brunſwic*, whom he knew to be diſaffected to *Frederic*, expatiated upon the wrongs and diſgraces which his family had ſuffered from the emperors ſince the reign of *Barbaroſſa*, and promiſed, in the name of the pope, that he ſhould be elevated to the imperial throne, provided he would exert himſelf in forming a party againſt *Frederic*. The duke, notwithſtanding the ſuggeſtions of his ambition and revenge, refuſed to engage in ſuch a dangerous enterprize, which he had neither troops nor money to atchieve. The legate, repulſed in this quarter, convoked, in the name of his holineſs, an aſſembly of the princes at *Wirtzburg*, where, after having previouſly ſounded every individual in private, he uttered a long harangue, exhorting them to elect a new emperor in the room of *Frederic*, who was excommunicated and depoſed.

HIS ſpeech was received with indignation, both by the eccleſiaſtic and ſecular princes, who broke up the aſſembly in ſuch a tumultuous manner, that the legate thought of nothing but conſulting the ſafety of his own perſon; and *Gregory* being made acquainted with the bad ſucceſs of his endeavours, became more tractable, and better diſpoſed towards a pacification. He even intimated theſe ſentiments to the emperor, who next year ſent back *Leopold* with the grand maſter of the *Teutonic* order, and then concluded a treaty of peace, promiſing, in the emperor's name to pay 20,000 pieces of gold, to repair the damage he had done in pillaging the towns belonging to the holy ſee. The ratifications

comes to an accommodation with the pope. A. D. 1230.

---

[q] Epiſt. apud RAIN. n. 37.

of this treaty being exchanged, *Frederic* waited upon the pope at *Anagni*, where he was abſolved from the ſentence of the church, and magnificently entertained by his holineſs, in token of a perfect reconciliation [r].

Notwithstanding this agreement, the cities of *Lombardy*, which had withdrawn themſelves from the emperor's dominion during his quarrel with the pope, refuſed to return to their duty, or liſten to any terms of accommodation; ſo that *Frederic*, in a diet held at *Aquileia*, reſolved to reduce them by force. In this undertaking he conſumed five years without great ſucceſs, becauſe his operations were often interrupted by the affairs of *Naples* and *Sicily*; and at laſt he was obliged to abandon the enterprize, in order to quell the diſturbances which had happened in *Germany* during his long abſence. He accordingly ſet out for the empire, uſing the more expedition in his journey, becauſe he underſtood his ſon *Henry* was employed in forming a conſpiracy againſt him.

Is employed in the reduction of Lombardy.

This prince had engaged in his intereſt the cities of *Milan* and *Bologna*, the inhabitants of which hoped to render themſelves independent, by fomenting a quarrel between the father and the ſon; the biſhop of *Straſbourg*, and almoſt all the towns upon the *Rhine*, from *Baſil* to *Cologne*, declared for *Henry*, whoſe party was likewiſe eſpouſed by *Frederic*, duke of *Auſtria*. Thus ſupported he convoked a diet at *Boppart*, where he explained the pretended motives of his defection, by complaining of the frequent quarrels between his father and the pope, which could not fail to be prejudicial to the empire, and of the little authority which was veſted in himſelf, who, as king of the *Romans*, ought to govern the empire in the abſence of the emperor. Theſe reaſons, though approved by great part of the aſſembly, were not ſatisfactory to the duke of *Bavaria*, and *Herman*, marquis of *Baden*, who adhering to their duty, ſent an account of this rebellion to *Frederic*, and exhorted him to come in perſon and diſpel the ſtorm.

He no ſooner received this intimation than he began his journey, and on his arrival in *Germany* held a diet at *Mentz*, where he employed his whole care and attention in repairing thoſe diſorders. He, in concert with the princes and ſtates of the empire, enacted ſeveral laws and conſtitutions for the adminiſtration of juſtice, and the re-eſtabliſhment of diſcipline and policy, both with regard to ſeculars and eccleſiaſtics; and, in a word, omitted nothing which could contribute to the public tranquillity. His ſon *Henry* having been convictvicted of rebellion, and of having entered into a confederacy againſt the emperor, inſtead of being puniſhed according to his demand was ſent to *Sicily*, that he might be removed at a good diſtance from the dangerous connections he had made.

---

[r] Struv. period. 7. ſect. 6. Krantz, lib. viii. c. 5.

His ſon Henry *is convicted of rebellion.*

A. D. 1235.

AMONG other regulations made at this convention, the difference was terminated between the emperor and *Otho* of *Lunenburg*, who had ſeized by force of arms the caſtles and towns of *Brunſwic* and *Lunenburg*, on pretence of being heir to his grandfather *Henry the Lion*. *Frederic* erected theſe into duchies, of which he beſtowed the inveſtiture upon *Otho*, together with an authentic patent or charter, by which the mediate nobility, the citizens of *Brunſwic*, the inhabitants of its territory, and of *Staden*, were commanded to receive *Otho* as their duke, to take the oath of allegiance to him, and obey him as their lord, according to the laws and cuſtoms of the empire [*].

MEAN while he carried on levies for raiſing a ſtrong army, that he might once more return to *Lombardy*, and ſubdue the cities which were aſſociated againſt him. About this time too he married the princeſs *Iſabella*, daughter of *John*, king of *England*. The pope being apprehenſive of the emperor's return into *Italy*, ſent a nuncio to diſſuade him from that expedition, and even proffered, if he would leave the affair of the revolted towns to his holineſs, he would engage they ſhould return to their duty and dependence upon the empire. *Frederic*, however, looking upon this promiſe as a ſnare laid for him, refuſed to accept the mediation propoſed, and continued unſhaken in his reſolution. He therefore ſet out upon this expedition, and when he entered *Lombardy* ſome ſtates ſubmitted of their own accord, and others were reduced by force; but the principal cities ſtill held out againſt him, confiding in the ſuccours which they had received from the *Venetians*, and in the ſupport which they and their confederates expected from *Henry*, king of the *Romans*, who had engaged in their cauſe at the inſtigation of the court of *Rome*. Nay, that prince, beſides this rebellious engagement, had continued his ſecret practices with ſeveral princes of *Germany*, who had promiſed to aſſiſt him on any emergency, and among others with the duke of *Auſtria*, upon whom the emperor had conferred the title of king.

1236. Frederic *returns to* Italy.

FREDERIC, being apprized of this new conſpiracy, conceived ſuch indignation againſt his ſon as intirely ſwallowed up the grudge he bore the pope, to whom he now made ſuch advances, as prevailed upon his holineſs to declare againſt *Henry*, and to prohibit the princes and ſtates of the empire, under pain of excommunication, to yield him ſuccour or obedience. This ſpiritual authority effectually retained the *Confines his ſon* Henry. ſubjects in their duty; and the emperor, having ordered his ſon to be narrowly watched, at length found means to apprehend and confine him in a caſtle of *Apulia*, where he afterwards died [t].

---

[*] Erect. Ducal. Brunſw. apud MEIBOM, t. ii.

THAT the remains of this conſpiracy might be extinguiſhed, he ordered the dukes of *Bohemia* and *Bavaria* to take arms againſt *Frederic* duke of *Auſtria*, prince *Henry*'s accomplice, until he himſelf ſhould be able to come and chaſtiſe him in perſon. It was not long before he enjoyed that opportunity; for having in ſome meaſure ſettled the affairs of *Italy*, and left the pope in terms of peace, he returned to *Germany*, ravaged the *Auſtrian* dominions with fire and ſword, and at laſt made himſelf maſter of the city of *Vienna*, where he founded the univerſity that now ſubſiſts [u]. Conrad, *his ſecond ſon, is elected king of the* Romans. After this expedition he aſſembled the ſtates of the empire, that they might elect his ſon *Conrad* king of the *Romans*; and that young prince was accordingly confirmed the ſame year, at another aſſembly held in the city of *Spire* [x]. The affairs of *Germany*, and the ſucceſſion, being ſettled in this manner, he forthwith reſolved to repair again into *Italy*, having ſtill at heart the reduction of thoſe cities of *Lombardy*, which ſtill remained in arms, on pretence of defending thoſe privileges which were granted to them by *Frederic Barbaroſſa*. The army, which he now led into *Italy*, being very numerous and formidable, the city of *Padua* immediately ſurrendered; ſome other places, that made reſiſtance, he ſacked, in order to intimidate the reſt; and all of a ſudden turned his whole forces againſt *Milan*, which was the centre of the league, and where all their troops were joined; ſo that, ſeeing their army equal in number to that of the emperor, they reſolved to wait him in the field. Accordingly a furious battle enſued, *The emperor obtains a victory over the league.* the event of which was long doubtful; but after it had raged for ſeveral hours with great carnage, the victory declared for the emperor [y]. Their general, *Petro Tiepolo*, ſon of the doge of *Venice*, together with their other chiefs, A. D. 1237. being taken priſoners, *Frederic* ordered them all to be put to death by the hand of the common hangman; and purſuing his advantage, attacked ſeveral places, ſome of which he pillaged and burnt, reſerving *Milan* for the laſt monument of his reſentment. This battle would have been deciſive, and the *Lombard* cities intirely ſubdued, had *Frederic* made a proper uſe of his victory, and proceeded with his warlike operations; but, inſtead of exerting himſelf in this manner, he continued inactive at *Cremona*, and allowed his enemies to reſpire. In the ſpring he marched into *Piedmont*, and exacted the oath of allegiance from the inhabitants of *Verceil*, *Turin*, and other towns in that province. He afterwards convoked an aſſembly at *Pavia*, in which he confirmed the privileges and revived the antient laws of the *Lombard* towns which were attached to his intereſt. The citizens of *Milan* ſued for peace by the interceſſion of the pope; but, as *Frederic* inſiſted upon their ſurrendering at diſcretion, they reſolved to periſh rather than ſubmit to his mercy, and made all the neceſſary preparations for continuing the war [z].

---

[t] HEISS Hiſt. l. xi. c. 16. [u] SAZIUS, l. iii. c. 5. [x] Chron. Auſt. p. 323. [y] SIGON. l. i. c. 8.

Pope *Gregory*, ſenſibly touched with the ſucceſs of *Frederic*'s arms, and particularly piqued at an edict which he had publiſhed to reform the abuſe of eccleſiaſtic tribunals; incenſed, moreover, at his ſeizing the revenues of vacant biſhoprics in *Sicily*, and beſtowing upon his natural ſon *Entius* the kingdom of *Sardinia* as feudatory of the empire, whereas he (*Gregory*) pretended it was a fief of the *Roman* church; the pope, I ſay, inſpired by theſe concurring motives, aſſociated himſelf with the *Venetians* and the cities of *Lombardy*, and was reconciled with *Rome*, from whence he had long ago been obliged to retire. On his return to that city, he ſent a nuncio to the emperor, exhorting him to deſiſt from thoſe violences, in conſideration of the favours he had received from the holy ſee; but *Frederic*, who had been informed of his ſecret connections with the league, diſmiſſed the nuncio without an anſwer; upon which his holineſs ſent back three cardinals upon the ſame errand, who being treated with the ſame diſregard, he had recourſe to thoſe weapons which he had formerly uſed againſt him. A new excommunication [a] was fulminated, and a bull ſent into *Germany* to ſow diviſion between the emperor and the princes and ſtates of the empire, who were ſubjected to the ſame ſentence, provided they ſhould perſiſt in their allegiance and attachment to *Frederic* (C). He likewiſe endeavoured to engage *Saint Louis* in

Is again excommunicated by the pope.

---

[z] Petr. de Vineis, Ep. 7.

[a] Barre, l. v. p 745.

(C) In order to give the reader a juſt notion of the charity and Chriſtian forbearance of the popes, we ſhall tranſlate part of *Gregory*'s bull againſt *Frederic*, which he ſent to the archbiſhop of *Mentz*.

" A beaſt of blaſphemy, re-his intereſt, and ſent a legate to prejudice him againſt the perſon and religion of the emperor, as well as to make a proffer of the imperial crown to his brother prince *Robert*, count of *Artois* [b]. But *Louis* would have no hand in ſuch violent proceedings; and plainly gave him to underſtand, that, granting he was diſpoſed to embrace the propoſal, the pope had no power or authority, either to dethrone the emperor, or give away the empire.

Frederic, who was at *Padua* when he received the news of this excommunication, ordered *Peter de Vineis*, his chancellor, to read an anſwer to it before the whole army, in which he refuted the calumnies which were invented and propagated to his prejudice [c]; and this anſwer he ſent into *Germany*, for the vindication of his honour and integrity.

---

[b] Mez. Abr. Chr. t. i. p. 443. Heiss, l. xi. c. 16.

[c] Krantz, l. viii. c. 3.

" plete with names, is riſen from " the ſea, with the feet of a " bear, the face of a lion, and " members of other different a" nimals; which, like the pard, " hath opened its mouth in " blaſphemy againſt the holy " name; not even fearing to " throw the arrows of calumny " againſt the tabernacle of God, " and the ſaints that dwell in " heaven. This beaſt, deſirous " of breaking every thing in " pieces with its iron teeth and " nails, and of trampling all " things under its feet, hath al" ready prepared private bat" tering rams againſt the wall " of the Catholic faith; and now " raiſes open machines, in erect" ing ſoul-deſtroying ſchools of " *Iſmaelites*; riſing, according " to report, in oppoſition to " Chriſt the Redeemer of man" kind, the tables of whoſe " covenant he attempts to abo" liſh with the pen of wicked " hereſy:—be not therefore ſur" prized at the malice of this " blaſphemous beaſt, if we, who " are the ſervants of the Al" mighty, ſhould be expoſed to " the arrows of his deſtruction."

This king of plagues was even heard to ſay, "That the whole " world had been deceived by " three mountebanks; namely " Jeſus Chriſt, *Moſes*, and *Mahomet*;" and openly affirmed, "That two of them ſupported " their glory to the laſt; but " the third was diſgracefully " crucified."

Nor does *Frederic* ſeem to have been deficient in epithets of the ſame nature; for, in his apology to the princes of *Germany*, he calls the pope, "That " wild beaſt of which it is writ" ten;" and, "Another red " horſe aroſe from the ſea, and " he that ſat upon him took " peace from the earth:—this " great dragon, which ſeduced " the whole earth, is antichriſt, " whoſe forerunner he affirmed " us to be (1)."

(1) *Gob. Perſ. Coſmod.* æt. vi. c. 64.

There it produced all the effect he could deſire in the minds of the princes, and kept all the members of the empire firmly united to their chief. *Frederic*, finding he had nothing to fear from that quarter, reſolved to be amply revenged upon the *Romans*, and ſuſpended all his other operations in order to march to *Rome*, where he thought his party was ſtrong enough to procure his admiſſion; but the pope, ſeconded by his clergy, beſtirred themſelves ſo artfully among the people, that this his favourite deſign proved abortive. It was upon this occaſion that they engaged in a cruſade againſt him as an enemy of the Chriſtian faith; a ſtep by which he was incenſed to ſuch a degree, that he ordered all the priſoners who wore the croſs to be expoſed to the moſt cruel tortures [d].

Makes an attempt upon Rome, *and miſcarries.*
A. D. 1239.

The emperor, baffled in his favourite ſcheme, ravaged the march of *Treviſano*, and entered the *Milaneſe*, in order to beſiege the capital; but the inhabitants, having aſſembled all their own troops and thoſe of their allies, engaged him in the open field, where, after a very obſtinate and bloody diſpute, his army was intirely routed; though, by favour of the night, he made ſhift to retreat into the territory of *Placentia*. There he ordered the bridge to be broken down, to prevent the purſuit of the enemy; and, in conſequence of this expedient, he had time to reach *Tuſcany*, where his troops enjoyed ſome repoſe.

Mean while all *Italy* became a prey to the two factions of the *Guelphs* and the *Gibelines*, which involved cities, relations, and even private families, in troubles, diviſions, and civil butchery, where no quarter was given on either ſide. *Frederic* was looked upon by the *Guelps* as a *Mahometan*, and an enemy to the Chriſtian name; and he, on the other hand, treated the *Guelphs* with the utmoſt cruelty and contempt. After the miſcarriage of his attempt upon *Rome*, he took the road to *Naples*, and took vengeance upon all the *Guelphs* that fell in his way, giving quarter to none who were found in arms, but expelling, exiling, or impriſoning, the eccleſiaſtics, and even the cardinals; ſome of whom happened to fall into his hands. The pope having called a general council in *Rome*, many prelates from *France* and other countries aſſembled at *Genoa*, where five-and-twenty gallies being armed for their defence, and joined with thoſe belonging to the pope, they ſet ſail for *Rome* under that convoy; but being met by the gallies of the *Sicilians* and *Piſans*, who were in the emperor's ſervice, a battle was fought, in which three of the

Takes vengeance on the Guelphs.

---

[d] Krantz, ubi ſupra.

Genoeſe gallies were ſunk, and the reſt taken, with three cardinals, and a great number of archbiſhops, biſhops, and other eccleſiaſtics [c]. In a word, this animoſity raged with incredible obſtinacy and rancour on both ſides till the pope's death; and he being ſucceeded by *Celeſtin* IV. who enjoyed the papacy but eighteen days, the holy ſee remained vacant for twenty months, during which *Frederic* frequently ſollicited the cardinals to a new election, though he ſtill refuſed to releaſe thoſe he had taken priſoners; but they as abſolutely inſiſting upon the enlargement of their brethren before they would fill up the vacancy, he was at length prevailed upon to ſet them at liberty; and the whole college repairing to *Anagni*, elected *Innocent* IV. the cardinal who of all others had expreſſed the greateſt regard for the emperor and his intereſt. Accordingly that prince was congratulated upon his promotion; but *Frederic*, who had more penetration, replied, that he had no reaſon to rejoice at an event which deprived him of the friendſhip of a cardinal, and intailed upon him the hatred of a pope [d]. Nor was he deceived in his prognoſtic. Innocent IV. *is elected pope;* A. D. 1243.

THE chief care of the new pope and his cardinals was to procure peace for *Italy*, which the emperor would not grant, but on condition of keeping what he poſſeſſed; whereas his holineſs demanded reſtitution of the towns which had been taken from the church, as the only baſis of a ſincere and ſolid accommodation; and inſiſted upon his doing homage for the kingdom of *Naples*. Though the emperor refuſed to comply with theſe demands, he offered to refer the diſpute to the deciſion of the kings of *France* and *England*; but *Innocent* would not ſubmit to this arbitration. At length they agreed to an interview in the city of *Caſtello*, in order to diſcuſs theſe points, and compromiſe the affair; but whether the pope had been really apprized of the emperor's intention to ſeize upon his perſon, as he affected to give out, or only ſpread that report as a ſpecious pretext for declining the interview, certain it is he would not keep the appointment; and underſtanding that *Frederic* was incenſed againſt him for that reaſon, he reſolved to elude his reſentment by flying for refuge into *France*. With this deſign he privately ſent for the *Genoeſe* gallies, in which he embarked for *Civita Vecchia*, and was convoyed to *Genoa*; from whence, paſſing through *Savoy*, he arrived in ſafety at *Lyons*, where he immediately took meaſures for convoking a general council; ſending his bulls to the archbiſhops, biſhops, and prelates of *Germany*, *flies into* France; *convokes a council at* Lyons;

---

[c] MEZERAI Abrege Chronolog. t. i. p 442.

[d] KRANTZ, l. viii. c. 9.

France,

ance, *Italy*, and other kingdoms, that they might aſſemble *Lyons* on the twenty-fourth of *June*, to deliberate on the eaſures which ſhould be taken for the ſecurity and advange of the church. In conſequence of this call a great any prelates repaired to *Lyons*, where the emperor was ummoned to appear, in order to purge himſelf of what was aid to his charge, and threatened with the thunder of the hurch, in caſe he ſhould fail in his obedience. Though this citation appeared very ſtrange to the emperor, who obſerved that the pope had erected himſelf into a ſovereign judge, whereas all the councils of old had been convoked by the emperors, where the popes and prelates did homage, and obeyed them as their natural lords, he did not fail, however, to ſend ambaſſadors to *Lyons*, who fairly refuted all the accuſations of the pope, and juſtified him with ſuch ſucceſs, that ſeveral members of the aſſembly declared in his favour. Nevertheleſs, he was excommunicated[e] (D): but he was very little concerned at this ſentence; which, when he heard, "I was, ſaid he, before this excommunication, obedient to the pope and the laws of the church; but now, that he has diſpenſed with my duty in that particular, I neither owe him obedience nor reſpect, and continue emperor notwithſtanding." The pope was very much chagrined at this contempt, and repented of having carried

and excommunicates the emperor.
A. D. 1245.

---

[e] Gob. Pers. Coſm. ætat. vii. cap. 64. Krantz, Sax. l. viii. cap, 12.

(D) The pope declared *Frederic* attainted and convicted of ſacrilege and hereſy, excommunicated, and dethroned; commanded the electors to proceed to the election of another emperor, and reſerved to himſelf the diſpoſal of *Sicily*. This ſentence being pronounced, the pope ſung *Te Deum*; and all the prelates anathematized *Frederic*, extinguiſhing their tapers by holding the flames downwards.

If we may believe *Matthew Paris*, the emperor, who was then at *Turin*, received the news of this ceremony with tranſports of rage very unbecoming a prince of his dignity. He called for the caſket in which the imperial ornaments were kept; and putting the crown upon his head, "*Innocent*, cried he, has not yet deprived me of this, nor will I give it up without abundance of bloodſhed; but we ſhall ſee how he and his adherents will ſupport this inſtance of audacity."

Certain it is, he wrote to almoſt all the princes of Chriſtendom, vindicating his own conduct, expatiating upon the pope's violence and injuſtice, complaining of their indifference, and ſolliciting their aſſiſtance (1).

(1) *Matth. Paris*, p. 702.

matters

Henry, *landgrave of* Thuringia, *elected king of the* Romans.

matters to ſuch extremity; but finding himſelf engaged too far to retract, he exerted himſelf ſo induſtriouſly by his emiſſaries, that ſome princes of the empire were prevailed upon to proceed to the election of a king of the *Romans*. Accordingly, the three eccleſiaſtic electors, together with the biſhops of *Bremen*, *Straſbourg*, *Metz*, and *Spire*, the duke of *Brabant*, and *Henry* landgrave of *Thuringia*, aſſembled on *Aſcenſion-day* at *Frankfort*, and elected this laſt king of the *Romans*, who was afterwards ſurnamed *The King of Prieſts*. In favour of this election the pope ſollicited ſuccours from all quarters, and preſented the new king with five-and-twenty thouſand marks of ſilver, to enable him to ſupport the war againſt *Conrad*, whom the emperor had left as his lieutenant in *Germany*; ſo that *Henry*, being in a condition to take the field, gave him battle, and obtained a conſiderable advantage. He afterwards made an irruption into the duchy of *Suabia*, part of the emperor's hereditary dominions, and made an attempt upon *Reutlingen*, which was ſo valiantly defended by the burghers, that he was obliged to retire. He likewiſe attacked the city of *Ulm*, where he received a wound from an arrow, of which, in a few days, he died.

The emperor ſets out for Lyons, *but returns on account of* Parma's *being ſurprized.* A. D. 1247.

The emperor, underſtanding the bad ſituation of his affairs in *Germany*, reſolved to go in perſon to *Lyons*, and ſollicit an accommodation with the pope. For this purpoſe he had obtained a ſafe-conduct from the king of *France*; and leaving his *Italian* affairs to the direction of his natural ſon, *Entius* king of *Sardinia*, he actually ſet out for that kingdom; but, on his arrival in *Piedmont*, he received the news of *Parma*'s being ſurprized by the troops of his holineſs, while *Entius*, with a part of the garriſon, was employed in the attack of *Breſcia*. This information obliged him to abandon his firſt deſign, and return with all expedition into *Italy*, where he obſtinately attached himſelf to the ſiege of *Parma*; which, being well fortified, made ſuch a vigorous defence, that he reſolved to reduce it by famine. He accordingly ſurrounded it with a high wall, and built hard by a new city, called *Victoria*, which in a little time was as well inhabited as any other town in *Italy* [f].

Frederic perſiſting in his deſign upon *Parma*, ſeveral months were ineffectually conſumed before it, during which he took no ſtep to remedy the bad ſituation of his more important affairs; and this ſupine neglect gave the pope and his partizans ſuch a handle over him, that they found no difficulty in convoking at *Nuitz* an aſſembly of ſeveral princes of the empire, eccleſiaſtic as well as ſecular, where, in the room of the landgrave of *Thuringia*, they elected *William*, count of *Holland*, king of the *Romans*[g]. The cities of *Cologn*, *Mentz*, and *Straſbourg*, approved of this election; but thoſe of *Worms*, *Spire*, *Landau*, and *Weiſſenbourg*, together with others of *Suabia* and *Bavaria*, preſerved their fidelity to the emperor and *Conrad*, in ſpite of all the excommunications of the pope. Mean while the emperor, ſtill attached to the ſiege of *Parma*, lived in the midſt of enemies and traitors, who, as they could not execute their revenge upon him in open war, had recourſe to poiſon, during an indiſpoſition which confined him to his bed. For this purpoſe, they bribed not only his firſt phyſician, but alſo *Peter de Vineis*, a native of *Capua*, who was his chancellor and intimate friend, who undertook his deſtruction by means of a poiſoned draught; but *Frederic*, being luckily apprized of their deſign, upon the very day appointed for the execution of their purpoſe, refuſed the cup when it was preſented to him; though *Peter de Vineis* intreated him to take the medicine, of which, he ſaid, he would ſoon feel the good effects. The phyſician likewiſe joining in the remonſtrance, the emperor fixed his eyes upon him, and ordered him to drink one-half of it to his health. Confounded at this command, he pretended to ſtumble, as if by accident, and ſpilt one-half of the medicine. This expedient, however, was not ſo artfully executed, but that all who were preſent perceived his guilt and confuſion; upon which he and his accomplice the chancellor were immediately put under arreſt, and what remained in the glaſs given to a condemned malefactor, who inſtantly died of the doſe. This being a convincing proof of their treacherous intention, the phyſician was ſtrangled; and the chancellor's eyes being put out, he was abandoned to the reſentment of the *Piſans*, who were his mortal enemies[h]. But this miſerable traitor daſhed out his own brains againſt a pillar, in order to anticipate their ridicule and reſentment.

---

[f] Krantz Sax. l. viii. c. 13. Heiss, l. ii. c. 17.

William, *count of* Holland, *choſen king of the* Romans, *in the room of the landgrave of* Thuringia, *deceaſed.*

An attempt by poiſon on the emperor's life.

Not long after this event, fortune, which had hitherto favoured *Frederic*, all at once declared againſt him. He ſtill continued his operations before *Parma*; but as, in thoſe tedious ſieges, the troops are apt to relax in their vigilance and diſcipline, and ſink into a dangerous ſecurity, the beſieged took the advantage of *Frederic*'s careleſſneſs and neglect; and making a furious and unexpected ſally, cut in pieces the

A. D. 1248.

Frederic *is defeated by*

---

[g] Ann. Boior. Jo. Avent. l. vii. p. 549.

[h] Danæus, in Aph. Pol. Chr. Relig.

greateſt

the Par-meſans.

greateſt part of the imperial troops; and purſuing thoſe that fled, entered with them pell-mell into their camp and city, and put all they found to the ſword. It was impoſſible to reſiſt the torrent; ſo that the emperor, who was altogether unprovided for reſiſtance, mounted his horſe unarmed, and eſcaped to *Cremona*; while the *Parmeſans* pillaged his palace and camp, and razed his new city of *Victoria* to the ground. The report of this victory, being ſpread over all *Italy*, not only raiſed the ſpirits of the *Guelphs*, and the reputation of the legate, *Gregory Montelongo*, who had conducted the enterprize, but likewiſe overwhelmed the *Gibelines* with diſmay and deſpondence. The emperor, indeed, without allowing himſelf to be dejected at this overthrow, re-aſſembled all his ſcattered troops, and reinforced them with the *Gibelines*, who flocked to him from all quarters: but his reputation being greatly diminiſhed by this defeat, no town of any conſideration would receive him; and to crown the misfortune, he learned, while he remained in *Tuſcany*, that his natural ſon *Entius*, king of *Sardinia*, with whom he had intruſted the command of his troops, had marched againſt the *Bolognians*, by whom he was defeated and taken priſoner; and what added to his affliction on this occaſion, was their refuſing all the offers of ranſom which he made in behalf of that prince, who ended his life amongſt them, after a captivity of twenty years.

His natural ſon Entius *is taken priſoner by the the* Bolognians.

He retires to his kingdom of Naples, *and dies.*

The emperor, being thus deſtitute of all other reſource, reſolved to return to his kingdom of *Naples*, in order to recruit his army; for which purpoſe he carried on levies with great diligence. Mean while he ſettled his private affairs with reſpect to the partition of his dominions, which he regulated in this manner: To his natural ſon, *Mainfroy*, he bequeathed the principality of *Tarentum*, together with the government of his hereditary dominions in *Italy*, for the term of ten years. *Entius* had been already ſettled in the kingdom of *Sardinia*; to *Henry*, his third ſon, he gave the kingdom of *Sicily*, and *Auſtria* to *Frederic*, his grandſon, by the late *Henry*, his firſt-born of the firſt marriage; to *Conrad* he left the kingdoms of *Naples*, *Jeruſalem*, and *Italy*, together with the duchy of *Suabia*, and the empire. As for his two daughters, one of them was already married to *Albert* landgrave of *Thuringia* (E), and the other to the land-

grave

(E) His eldeſt daughter, *Margaret*, was very unhappy in her marriage with *Albert*, landgrave of *Thuringia*, who, at the inſtigation of one of his miſtreſſes, reſolved to make away with her in the caſtle of *Wartburg*, near *Eiſenac*; but thoſe who were employed grave of *Heſſe*. In a few days after this diſtribution, he died of a fever, in the fifty-fifth year of his age[g] (F).

FREDERIC was certainly a prince of great genius, erudition, courage, and fortitude, and might be juſtly ranked amongſt the moſt accompliſhed princes, if the violence of his temper, the cruelty of his revenge, and his exceſſive appetite for women, had not contributed to tarniſh the glory of his reputation (G).

---

[g] KRANTZ Sax. l. viii. c. 18. HEISS, l. ii. c. 17.

ployed to execute his barbarous deſign reſpected the princeſs ſo much, as to give her an opportunity to eſcape into a convent in *Frankfort*. She had two ſons by him, *Frederic* and *Dietmann*; at parting with whom ſhe bit a mark in the cheek of the eldeſt, that he might remember, ſo long as he lived, the wrongs of his mother, and revenge them with the firſt convenient opportunity. Accordingly *Frederic*, when he came to be of age, expelled his father from his dominions, and compelled him to fly for ſhelter to *Erfort*, where he died in miſery (1).

(F) *Mezeray* and ſome other hiſtorians affirm, that he was ſtifled with a pillow by his own natural ſon *Mainfroy*.

(G) Though it cannot be denied that *Frederic* II. exerciſed extraordinary cruelties againſt thoſe who incurred his reſentment, it muſt likewiſe be owned, that his provocation was very great; for the popes were indefatigable in ſowing the ſeeds of ſedition through all his dominions, and in propagating calumnies to the prejudice of his character. By the intrigues of the clergy, the empire was ſplit into ſuch diviſions and quarrels, as rendered it a ſcene of rapine, miſery, and blood: they raiſed up two competitors againſt his ſon *Conrad* in *Germany*; they ſupported the league of the *Italian* cities againſt himſelf; they denounced excommunications, and even preached up cruſades, as if he had been an enemy of the Chriſtian name; and, laſtly, employed all their induſtry and invention, in order to murder his reputation. For this reaſon we ought to be upon our guard, when we read the accounts of him written by monks, bigotted to the church of *Rome*, with which he was always at variance.

Certain it is, he was a great encourager of learning: he ſet up ſchools at *Naples*, and cauſed *Ariſtotle*, and other antient authors, to be tranſlated from the *Greek* and *Arabian* languages; and with regard to his ſettling a colony of *Saracens* at *Nocera*, for which he hath been ſo much exclaimed againſt, the malice and rancour of the *Guelphs* are ſufficient excuſes for his having taken any ſtep of that kind, which might contribute to his own ſafety and advantage.

(1) *Remarq. ſur Heiſs, l.* ii. *c.* 113.

INTERREGNUM.

A. D. 1250.

Is ſucceeded by Conrad, *who had narrowly eſcaped aſſaſſination.*

WE have already ſeen that *Conrad*, when he was no more than eight years of age, had been elected and crowned king of the *Romans* in the room of his elder brother; but we have not yet obſerved, that ten years after his election, he married *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Otho*, king of *Bavaria*, nor mentioned an accident that happened to him after his defeat by *Henry* of *Thuringia*, commonly called *King of Prieſts*. This was an attempt upon his life by the biſhop of *Ratiſbon* and the abbot of *St. Emeran*. *Conrad*, after the battle, had retired into the city of *Ratiſbon*, of which ſome time before he had made himſelf maſter, and with a ſmall retinue went to lodge at the aforeſaid abbey. The biſhop, looking upon this as a favourable opportunity for his execrable deſign, ſent thither in the night ſome ſoldiers to aſſaſſinate *Conrad*, when he ſhould be aſleep: but he having happily changed his apartment, the murderers killed two of his attendants by miſtake, and retired upon a ſuppoſition that they had done their buſineſs; while *Conrad*, waked by the noiſe, eſcaped to his army, which was encamped under the city walls. Next day he ordered the biſhop and abbot to be apprehended, and the abbey to be demoliſhed. The biſhop was condemned to perpetual impriſonment, the abbot was deprived of his benefice, and *Hochfels*, who had murdered the two attendants and fled, was in a few days ſtruck dead with thunder[h].

He ſets out for his Italian *dominions, quarrels with the pope, and dies.*

A. D. 1254.

CONRAD no ſooner received the news of his father's death, than he aſſumed the quality of emperor, and ſet out from *Germany* to take poſſeſſion of his hereditary dominions; but the cities of *Naples*, *Capua*, and *Aquina*, had put themſelves under the protection of the holy ſee. He therefore marched towards *Naples*, which he inveſted and took after a ſiege of eight months. But he did not long enjoy this conqueſt in peace; for he was engaged in ſeveral quarrels with the church of *Rome*, and in a little time fell ſick and died, leaving by his wife, *Elizabeth* of *Bavaria*, an only ſon, called *Conradin*, at that time in the third year of his age. His brother prince *Henry*, who had come to congratulate him upon the ſucceſs of his arms, did not live to ſee his untimely fate; but was cut off in the bloſſom of his youth, not without ſuſpicion of foul play. Some authors affirm, that *Conrad* was poiſoned by his natural brother *Mainfroy*, prince of *Tarentum*, who taking the advantage of the minority of young *Conradin*, whom his father had left in *Germany*, ſeized upon the kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*[i].

---

[h] HEISS, l. ii. c. 18. Ann. Boior. AVENT. l. vii. p. 551.

William, *count of* Holland, *crowned at* Aix la Chapelle, *and favoured by the pope.*

William II. count of *Holland*, ſon of *Florentius* IV. had been, in the twentieth year of his age, elected king of the *Romans*, in an aſſembly near *Cologn*, by ſeveral princes of the empire, who were in the intereſt of the pope, and declared enemies of *Frederic* and his ſon *Conrad*. As his coronation at *Aix la Chapelle* was ſuppoſed to be a matter of great importance, and that city had declared for his competitor, it was taken after a long ſiege[k], when he was crowned in it with the uſual ſolemnity; and ſome time after that ceremony, he had engaged and defeated *Conrad* in a ſevere battle.

At the death of the emperor *Frederic*, he aſſumed all the enſigns of the imperial dignity, which was confirmed to him by the pope. In order to ſupport himſelf againſt the party of *Conrad*, he entered into alliance with *Otho*, duke of *Brunſwick*, whoſe daughter he eſpouſed, and a very remarkable accident happened to him on his wedding-night.

Some tradeſmen being at work in a chamber near the apartments of the new-married couple, a candle's end happened to fall among ſtraw, which it immediately kindled; and the flames raged with ſuch violence, that the miſerable workmen periſhed, and *William*, with his bride, were obliged to run out of the palace naked, with ſuch precipitation, that their jewels, furniture, and apparel, were left to the mercy of that devouring element.

This was not the only hazardous accident which this unfortunate emperor eſcaped; for being that ſame year at *Utrecht*, to which city he had repaired in order to concert meaſures for his journey to *Rome*, whither he was invited by the pope, to his coronation, he was ſo terribly wounded with a ſtone from an unknown hand, that he had almoſt loſt his life.

William *is engaged in a war with* Margaret, *counteſs of* Hainault.

The party of this young prince did not make much progreſs in *Germany* againſt the noblemen who refuſed to acknowlege him as king of the *Romans*; nor was he ſtrong enough to ſubdue them by force, involved, as he happened to be, in a war with *Margaret* counteſs of *Hainault*, who wanted to defraud her eldeſt ſon by her firſt huſband of his inheritance, that ſhe might beſtow it upon the ſons of her ſecond marriage. The diſpute had been referred to the arbitration of *Lewis* king of *France*, and *Eudes*, the pope's legate; but *John d'Avenes*, the eldeſt ſon, being diſſatisfied with their deciſion, had recourſe to arms; and with the aſſiſtance of *William* king of the *Romans*, who was his brother-in-law, reduced the mother and her younger ſons to ſuch extremity, that ſhe was fain to cede the county of *Hainault* to *Charles* count of *Anjou*, the *French* king's brother, on condition that he would aſſiſt her with his forces. Thus ſupported, ſhe renewed the war with various ſucceſs, until it was terminated by a treaty at *Bruſſels*, effected by the mediation of *France*[l].

---

[i] Vide Moreri, ſur l'Article de Conr. IV.

[k] Avent. Ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 549.

He conciliates the affection of the German *noblemen, and patronizes the union of the hans towns.*

While this affair was in agitation, *William* neglected no opportunity to conciliate the affection of the *German* princes and ſtates. He gratified *John* and *Otho*, marquiſſes of *Brandenburg*, with the reverſion of the imperial fiefs in *Saxony*; he beſtowed on *Thomas* of *Savoy* the inveſtiture of *Turin*, *Montcalier*, *Ivrea*, and ſeveral other fiefs that conſtitute the power and greatneſs of the houſe of *Maurienne*; and confirmed the rights and privileges which had been granted to *Thomas* of *Savoy* by the emperor *Frederic* II. He likewiſe patronized and protected a league, or aſſociation, formed by the cities of *Frankfort*, *Mentz*, *Cologn*, *Worms*, and *Spire*, for the defence of their commerce, which in thoſe times of confuſion had ſuffered grievouſly from a number of little petty noblemen, poſſeſſed of caſtles, who lived upon plunder and rapine; and the effects of this ſociety were ſo viſibly advantageous to the public, that almoſt all the trading towns of *Germany* and *Flanders* ſued for admiſſion; ſo that, in one year after the inſtitution, the confederacy included above threeſcore towns, together with a good number of noblemen, zealous to encourage the commerce of their ſubjects. This, in all probability, is the true epocha of the general union among the hans towns[m]; tho' ſuch a treaty had long before ſubſiſted between *Lubec*, *Hamburgh* and *Bremen*; in conſequence of which, veſſels of war were maintained at the common charge, in order to protect their commerce; their bills were negotiated without difficulty; and a firm credit was mutually eſtabliſhed among them.

Inteſtine troubles of Denmark.

At this period, however, neither theſe three cities, nor the noblemen of *Lower Saxony*, could engage in this aſſociation, becauſe the war, in which they were involved by the *Danes*, would not permit them to contract new engagements. *Lubec* had fitted out a fleet againſt *Eric* king of *Denmark*, who had quarrelled with his three brothers; and they, finding themſelves unable to cope with ſuch an antagoniſt, had ſollicited aſſiſtance of the regency of this town, as well as of the dukes of *Saxony*, and the marquis of *Brandenburg*. By means of theſe allies, the brothers *Abel*, *Canut*, and *Chriſtopher*, maintained the war for ſome time, though with indifferent ſucceſs, until a reconciliation was effected by the mediation of *Jean* of *Brandenburg*, and the dukes of *Saxony* and *Brunſwick*. After this accommodation, king *Eric* was betrayed and murdered by the accomplices of his brother *Abel*, who immediately mounted the thrône, and reigned with the moſt arbitrary ſway. In particular, he impoſed grievous taxes upon the *Friezelanders*; and they being incapable of raiſing the ſums which he demanded, he laid waſte their country with fire and ſword, oppreſſing them to ſuch a degree, that they became deſperate, ran to arms, attacked him in his camp, routed his forces, and purſued him into a moraſs, where he periſhed.

---

[l] Chron. Fland. p. 59. Dumont. Corp. Diplom. t. i. p. 105.

[m] Struv. per. vii.

His eldeſt ſon, *Waldemar*, being at that time priſoner to the archbiſhop of *Cologn*, his brother *Chriſtopher* took the advantage of his nephew's abſence to ſeize the crown of *Denmark*; and, under pretence of being guardian to *Abel*'s children, took poſſeſſion of the duchy of *Sleſwic*, which they inherited by the death of their father. The counts of *Holſtein*, who were uncles to the children of *Abel* by the mother's ſide, after having made fruitleſs remonſtrances to *Chriſtopher* on the ſubject of this unjuſt encrôachment, ſollicited aid of *John* and *Otho*, marquiſſes of *Brandenburg*, whoſe troops enabled them to retake the town of *Sleſwic*, and reduce the reſt of *Holſtein* under their power; while the fleet of *Lubec* ravaged the coaſts of *Scania*, and a rebellion broke out in the heart of *Denmark*.

CHRISTOPHER, thus hampered on all hands, gladly liſtened to propoſals for an accommodation, which was concluded by the good offices of the dukes of *Saxony*, on condition that *Chriſtopher* ſhould reſtore the duchy of *Sleſwic* to his nephews, and that they ſhould renounce all pretenſions to the crown. This affair being ſettled, young *Waldemar* was, after having been a priſoner four years, ſet at liberty, in conſideration of a ranſom paid to the archbiſhop of *Cologn*, by whom he had been arreſted at *Bonn*, without any cauſe aſſigned [n].

A cruſade againſt the Pruſſians.

DURING theſe tranſactions, an army of *German* cruſards, under the command of *Ottocarus* king of *Bohemia*, marched into *Pruſſia* to the relief of the *Teutonic* knights, who had been deprived of ſeveral towns, and cooped up in others, by the infidels of the country, reinforced with a body of *Tartars.* The *German* auxiliaries, being joined by the knights, worſted theſe idolaters in ſeveral encounters, and at laſt defeated them in a pitched battle; after which the town of *Elburg* ſurrendered at diſcretion, the *Pruſſian* generals were baptized, and, upon this occaſion, the town of *Konigsberg* was founded by the *Teutonic* knights[o].

---

[n] PONTAN. rer. Dan. Hiſt. BARRE, t. vi. p. 27 & ſeq.

The affairs of Italy.

WHILE *William* endeavoured to eſtabliſh himſelf in *Germany*, great part of *Italy* was involved in war and confuſion. The young *Conradin*, who ſtill remained in *Germany* with his mother, *Elizabeth* of *Bavaria*, had been recommended by his father to the protection of the Holy ſee; and *Mainfroy*, who acted as regent for the kingdom of *Sicily*, ſent ambaſſadors to pope *Innocent* to ſignify this requeſt. His holineſs accordingly promiſed to defend his ward, and preſerve for him the kingdom of *Jeruſalem*, the duchy of *Suabia*, and the other great fiefs that belonged to the emperor *Frederic*; but, at the ſame time, he commanded *Mainfroy* to leave the adminiſtration of *Sicily* to the holy ſee, of which it was a fief, and excommunicated him for non-compliance. *Mainfroy*, who harboured the deſign of ſeizing the kingdom for himſelf, finding the pope's party very ſtrong in *Sicily*, thought proper to temporize, and deprecate the wrath of *Innocent*, who, in conſequence of this ſubmiſſion, freed him from the cenſure of the church, confirmed him in the principality of *Tarentum*, and appointed him his lieutenant for a great part of the kingdom. But this harmony was not of long duration: a nobleman of the pope's court being aſſaſſinated, *Mainfroy* was ſuſpected of having contrived the murder, becauſe he had been at enmity with the defunct; and though he exerted all his endeavours to acquit himſelf of the imputation, he could not vindicate his character to the ſatisfaction of the pope, who reſolved to arreſt and puniſh him as a malefactor. *Mainfroy*, apprized of his intent, retired to *Lucera*, where he was received with open arms by the *Saracen* inhabitants, who ſupplied him with money to raiſe an army; then, taking the field, he marched towards *Troja*, where he defeated the eccleſiaſtical troops commanded by the pope's legate. *Innocent* did not long ſurvive this misfortune; and dying at *Naples*, was ſucceeded by *Alexander* IV. whoſe firſt care, after his elevation, was to check the progreſs of *Mainfroy*. He appointed a new legate to command the troops in the room of the cardinal *de Freſque*, who was lately dead, and beſtowed upon the marquis of *Honebruc* the poſt of

Pope Innocent *dies, and is ſucceeded by* Alexander IV.

---

[o] DUBRARV. l. xvii. p. 137.

high-ſteward of the kingdom of *Naples:* but this new general, finding himſelf inferior in ſtrength to *Mainfroy*, ſued for peace, and an accommodation was effected, tho' the pope refuſed to ratify the treaty; and holding the throne of *Sicily* as vacant, offered it to *Edmund*, ſecond ſon of *Henry* III. king of *England:* nay, he ordered a cruſade to be preached up in that kingdom againſt *Mainfroy*; and, borrowing great ſums of money upon the credit of the *Engliſh* monarch, reinforced his army commanded by cardinal *Octaviano Ubaldini*, and ordered him to beſiege *Mainfroy* in *Nocera*. The prince of *Tarentum*, however, ſaved him that trouble, by attacking him in the field with ſuch fury, that the papal forces were intirely routed, and the victor made himſelf maſter of *Capua*, *Labour*, *Apulia*, and the greateſt part of *Calabria*; thence he tranſported his army into *Sicily*, which he ſoon reduced to his obedience; while his holineſs retired to *Viterbo*, to wait for a reinforcement from *England*[p].

The pope's troops are defeated by Mainfroy. A. D. 1255.

The king of the Romans *expoſed to unfortunate accidents, and ſlain by the* Frizelanders. 1256.

MEAN while *William* king of the *Romans* undertook an expedition againſt the *Frizelanders*, who had revolted; becauſe he not only exacted homage of them to the counts of *Holland*, but alſo wanted to abrogate their antient laws and privileges, which had been granted and confirmed by *Charlemagne*. In the proſecution of this deſign, he met with a misfortune which proved his laſt; for attempting to paſs over the moraſſes, which were frozen, in order to reconnoitre the burgh of *Hochwend*, without any attendants, the ice broke, and he and his horſe ſtuck faſt in the mud. The *Frizelanders*, ſeeing him in this ſituation, killed him[q], without knowing who he was, and carried his body into the burgh; but afterwards, underſtanding it was the emperor they had ſlain, they privately buried him in a burgher's houſe, being afraid of a ſevere chaſtiſement from the princes of *Germany* for having ſhed the blood of their ſovereign. Thus periſhed that unfortunate young prince, who, by his courage and accompliſhments, was worthy of a better fate.

The empire involved in troubles and confuſion.

THE election of the landgrave of *Thuringia*, and that of the count of *Holland*, both of which were effected by the practices of *Rome* againſt *Frederic* II. had divided *Germany* into ſuch violent factions, as intirely deſtroyed public peace and good order. The clergy took arms againſt the laity, the weak were oppreſſed by the ſtrong, and laws divine and human were diſregarded; nay, to ſuch a degree of diſorder did thoſe diſturbances riſe, that, as we have already obſerved, the towns of *Spire*, *Frankfort*, *Bingen*, and *Oppenheim*, were obliged to enter into an aſſociation for the ſecurity of commerce and the public roads; and *Louis* count Palatine, ſeeing the good effects of this confederacy, deſired to be included in the league, which, by his example, was reinforced by a great number of other towns and noblemen (H). Theſe confederates aboliſhed the toll upon rivers, which had been introduced and augmented during the troubles; by which means the tranquillity of thoſe countries was reſtored, tho' it was ſoon after deſtroyed by the villainy of thoſe who wanted to convert the public diſorder to their own private advantage.

---

[p] RAIN. ad ann. 1255. HEISS, l. ii. c. 20.

[q] KRANTZ, & GOB. PERS. ibid.

Richard, *duke of* Cornwall, *is elected emperor by one party;*

AFTER the death of the emperor *William*, the princes ſeveral times aſſembled, in order to elect a ſucceſſor; but theſe meetings produced no effect, becauſe no prince would undertake ſuch a weighty charge. At length, however, *Conrad*, archbiſhop of *Cologn*, made a proffer of it to *Richard*, duke of *Cornwall*, brother to *Henry* III. king of *England*, who accepted the propoſal, and repaired to *Germany*[r]. It is remarkable of this prelate, who was devoted to the court of *Rome*, that by his addreſs he had, ſince the excommunication of the emperor, *Frederic* II. raiſed three princes ſucceſſively to the dignity of the king of the *Romans*; namely, *Henry*, landgrave of *Thuringia*; *William*, count of *Holland*; and this *Richard*, duke of *Cornwall*. With regard to this laſt, indeed, foreſeeing the difficulty he ſhould have in elevating him to the imperial throne, without the archbiſhop of *Mentz*, who had been kept priſoner a whole year by *Albert* of *Brunſwick*, he engaged *Richard*, over and above the vaſt preſents he had already made him, to pay eight thouſand marks of ſilver for the ranſom of that prelate, on condition he ſhould aſſiſt him with his vote and intereſt for obtaining the crown. Accordingly the archbiſhop of *Mentz*, being releaſed, convoked a diet at *Frankfort*, where *Richard* was elected by the two archbiſhops, *Louis*, count Palatine, his brother *Henry*, and ſome others, who had been influenced by their advice [s]. On the other hand, the archbiſhop of *Triers*, and ſome other princes, who refuſed to appear at this election, held another aſſembly, in which they declared for *Alphonſo*, king of *Caſtile*, ſurnamed *The Aſtrologer*; and the archbiſhop having obtained by proxy the votes of the king of *Bohemia*, the duke of *Saxony*, and marquis of *Brandenbourg*, in favour of that prince, diſpatched into *Spain* the biſhops of *Spire* and *Conſtance* to inform him of his election [t]. *Alphonſo* accepted this honour with many acknowlegements; but as his war againſt the *Moors* hindred him from repairing into *Germany* at that time, he diſmiſſed the ambaſſadors, after having treated them with great magnificence, and loaded them with preſents for the electors and other princes of *Germany*. Neverthelefs, thoſe who had eſpouſed the cauſe of *Richard* did not deſiſt from their enterprize: he was conducted to *Aix la Chapelle*, and with his empreſs, *Sanctia* (I), crowned on the *Aſcenſion-day* by the hands of the archbiſhop of *Cologn*. This ceremony being performed, he viſited the towns ſituated upon the *Rhine*; namely, *Cologne*, *Bopport*, *Weſel*, *Mentz*, *Oppenheim*, *Frankfort*, *Worms*; and *Spire*, from which he received the uſual homage. But this was no more than a fire of ſtraw; for this prince being exhauſted by the great largeſſes he was obliged to make in purchaſing votes for his election, and finding himſelf without credit (K), friends, or reſource, to maintain the imperial dignity,

---

[r] Vide auct. ſup. citat. MEZER. Abr. Chron. t. i. p. 452.

(H) In this aſſociation were likewiſe engaged *Gerhard*, elector of *Mentz*; *Conrad*, elector of *Cologne*; *Arnold*, elector of *Triers*; *Jacob*, biſhop of *Metz*; the abbot of *Falde*; *Conrad Wilgraf*; *Richard*, count of *Catzenclubogen*; *Frederic*, count of *Luningen*; *Berthold*, count of *Zeigenhagen*; *Ernich* and *Galtfrede Wiltgraves*; *Pappo*, lord of *Tubingen*; *Ulrich*, count of *Baor*; the count of *Wirnberg*; *Sophia*, landgravine of *Thuringia*; *Adelbert*, counteſs of *Leiningen*; the lords of *Tirsberg*; *Ulrich* of *Mintzenberg*; *Gerlach* of *Limberg*; *Philip* of *Henckenfelt*; *Philip* of *Falckenſtein*; the lord of *Starenberg*; the cupbearer of *Erbach*; the ſteward of *Altzey*; *Henry Ermberg*; *Runboſt* of *Steinbach*; the cities of *Cologne*, *Strasbourg*, *Baſil*, *Zurich*, *Fribourg*, *Briſac*, *Colmar*, *Schelestat*, *Haguenau*, *Weiſſeinbourg*, *Neuſtadt*, *Wimpſen*, *Heidelbourg*, *Lauterbourg*, *Freideberg*, *Witzlar*, *Glelnhauſen*, *Marburg*, *Altenfelt*, *Fulde*, *Mulhauſen*, *Achusſenburg*, *Seligſtadt*, *Diebach*, *Bacharach*, *Weſel*, *Boppart*, *Andernach*, *Bonn*, *Neus*, *Aix la Chapelle*, *Munſter*, *Bremen*, *Brauenberg*, and *Hirchsfelt* (1).

(1) *Heiſs Hiſt. de l'Empire*, *l.* xi. *c.* 19.

and Alphonſo, *king of* Caſtile, *choſen by another.*
A. D. 1257.

Richard *is crowned at* Aix la Chapelle; *and ſoon abandons the empire;*
A. D. 1258.

---

[s] Ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 559. [t] Id. ibid. Gob. Pers. Coſm. æt. vi. c. 65. Krantz Sax. l. viii. c. 12.

(I) *Richard*'s wife *Sanctia*, or *Senchia*, was ſiſter of *Philip*, count of *Falkenſtein*. She was counted the moſt beautiful woman of her time, and captivated *Richard*, who married her at *Worms*, where their nuptials were celebrated with extraordinary magnificence (1).

(K) *Richard*'s money intirely

(1) *Trithem. Chron. Hirſang. ad an.* 1257.

dignity, was obliged to abandon the empire and retire into *England*, where he ended his days. But he did not abandon *Germany* before he had committed the care of the empire to three vicars; namely, *Werner de Falkenſtein*, archbiſhop of *Mentz*, who governed *Alſace*; *Philip de Falkenſtein*, who held the adminiſtration of *Wetteravia*; and *Philip de Hohenfels*, who enjoyed the vicariate of *Worms*, *Mentz*, *Oppenheim*, and other cities.

RICHARD at his coronation inveſted *Ottocarus* with the kingdom of *Bohemia* and the duchy of *Auſtria*; in paſſing thro' *Flanders*, he received homage for the county of *Hainault* from *Guy de Dampierre*, whom he created a prince of the empire; together with the renunciation of prince *Henry* to the duchy of *Brabant* in favour of his brother *John*; and performed many other acts of ſovereignty before he returned to *England*, where he ſtill preſerved the title of king of the *Romans*, though he did not concern himſelf much with the affairs [u] of the empire (L).

AFTER *Richard*'s abdication, *Alphonſo* might have peaceably enjoyed the empire, had not his wars with the *Moors* rendered it impoſſible for him to quit his own dominions. Nevertheleſs, he likewiſe exerciſed the imperial authority with reſpect to *Frederic*, duke of *Lorraine*, who brought the news of his election. He gave him the inveſtiture of his duchy in the moſt ſolemn manner, and aſſigned to him an annual penſion of a thouſand marks upon the city of *Burgos*, in conſideration of the homage which he rendered to *Alphonſo* in the market-place of *Toledo*, according to the cuſtom of *Caſtile*.

---

[u] GOLDAST. t. i. p. 311. Hiſt. de Hainault, l. x.

failing in the city of *Baſil*, the princes of *Germany* took that opportunity of abandoning him; giving out, that they had not elected him for his perſonal merit, but ſolely for his riches; ſo they ſent to him a formal act, by which they renounced the oath of allegiance they had taken; and he was fain to make the beſt of his way into his own country (1).

One may judge of theſe largeſſes, by which he was exhauſted, by the immenſe ſums he poſſeſſed before his election. Such were his treaſures, that he was in a condition to ſpend an hundred marks a day for the ſpace of ten years, without touching the revenues he drew from *Germany* and *England* (2).

(L) Tho' we follow the moſt authentic hiſtorians in ſaying that *Richard* did not meddle with the affairs of the empire after his firſt return to *England*, *Thomas Wick*, in his chronicle, affirms, that he repaired at three different times to *Germany*, and even governed the empire till his dying day (3).

(1) *Frag. Hiſt. p.* 93. (2) *Matth. Paris, p.* 809. (3) *Wic. Chronica Compendiot. ad an.* 1269.

EACH competitor ſollicited the pope to confirm and ſupport his election, and annul the pretenſions of his antagoniſt. However, they received nothing but evaſive anſwers from his holineſs, who thought proper to obſerve a ſtrict neutrality, that he might not, by eſpouſing either party, give offence to one of two princes whoſe friendſhip was of ſuch conſequence to the *Roman* church. From the kingdom of *England* he drew very large ſubſidies, and the arms of *Alphonſo* were neceſſary to curb the inſolence of the infidels in *Spain*, over whom the king of *Caſtile* had obtained ſeveral complete victories.

FROM the departure of *Richard*, therefore, to the election of *Rodolphus*, the empire may be ſaid to have been without a chief, and during that interregnum ſuffered all the miſeries of a country abandoned to deſtruction. No laws were obſerved; no order was maintained; murder, theft, and all ſorts of licence, were committed with impunity; the poor and weak ſubjected to the moſt miſerable oppreſſion; and the conſtitutions of the empire utterly neglected and laid aſide. Theſe diſorders were not confined to *Germany*; they paſſed the *Alps*, and the greateſt part of the cities and ſtates of *Italy*, which depended upon the empire, either erected themſelves into independent republics, or choſe princes from the number of their own citizens. In ſhort, univerſal confuſion prevailed, and the accounts we have of theſe times partake of that confuſion; for they generally content themſelves with lamenting the deplorable condition of their country, without giving a regular detail of the incidents that conſtituted its diſtreſs. Biſhops and prelates had recourſe to arms, and ſhed each other's blood for the defence or augmentation of their benefices; implacable quarrels, and inceſſant wars, were kindled, and raged with great violence, among private noblemen, on the moſt trivial diſputes; nothing but rapine and robbery prevailed; travelling was become unſafe; commerce almoſt altogether extinguiſhed; and anarchy reigned in full deſpotiſm.

which is involved in trouble and confuſion.

IN vain did the princes convoke aſſemblies to remedy theſe evils; as there was no ſupreme authority to influence and direct their deliberations, they produced nothing but fruitleſs debate and altercation; and ſometimes the diſputes of individuals terminated in open defiance and bloodſhed.

HARRASSED by theſe miſeries, the princes of *Germany* reſolved to proceed to a new election; and *Werner*, archbiſhop of *Mentz*, convoked a diet, at which it was ſuppoſed, that young *Conradin* would be elevated to the imperial throne; but pope *Urban*, being apprized of their intention, forbad them to chuſe the grandſon of *Frederic* II. on pain of excommunication; and at the ſame time undertook to determine the difference between *Alphonſo* of *Caſtile* and *Richard* of *England*, within a limited time; before the expiration of which he died; and *Clement* IV. his ſucceſſor, left the diſpute ſtill undecided.

In the mean time the empire continued to groan under the moſt ſevere oppreſſion; and the people, inſtead of exercising their endeavours to re-eſtabliſh the peace of their own country, were ſo infatuated, as to take up the croſs, and form an expedition againſt the *Pruſſian* pagans, who had once more quarrelled with the *Teutonic* knights.

At length the miſeries of *Germany* became ſo intolerable, that leagues were formed between cities and ſtates for their mutual ſecurity; noblemen engaged in contracts of confraternity, in conſequence of which they obliged themſelves to aſſiſt one another with their lives and fortunes; and in caſe either party died without male iſſue, his lands and ſuperiorities devolved to the ſurvivor. This kind of *pactum*, or covenant, was afterwards much practiſed in the empire; but could not take place without the ſanction of the diet, and the conſent of the ſtates belonging to the contracting parties [*].

It was alſo during this interregnum that ſome princes, and a good number of cities, ſeeing their laws without force, and the empire without a chief, or judge, for the adminiſtration of juſtice, inſtituted certain arbitrators, whom they called *Auſtreques*, inveſted with ſovereign power, to decide all differences and ſuits that might happen among the conſtituents. Their office laſted but ſix months, at the end of which others were choſen; and this tribunal continued in force till the reign of *Maximilian* I. who ſubjected their juriſdiction to the diet of the empire [y].

But waving the particular ſcenes of violence, injuſtice, and uſurpation, we ſhall proceed to the relation of an event, which, though it does not immediately regard the empire, is yet naturally connected with it, being an account of the laſt prince of one of its moſt powerful families.

Mainfroy, the emperor *Frederic*'s baſtard ſon, ſeeing the whole houſe of *Suabia* reduced to *Conradin*, who was an infant, had ſeized upon the kingdom of *Naples*, and become

---

[*] Killingerus de Garnebiis Caſtrorum Syntagma Juris pub. c. xxviii. parag. 21, 22, 23.

[y] Corringius de Indic. Germ. *parag.* 53.

ſo

A. D. 1263.

The pope makes an offer of the kingdom of Naples *to* Charles *count of* Anjou.

ſo powerful as to rouze the jealouſy of pope *Urban* IV. who, that he might not have a maſter ſo near him, made an offer of the kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily* to *Charles* brother of *St. Lewis*, and count of *Anjou* and *Provence* [z]. The propoſal was embraced; but *Urban* dying about the end of the year, was ſucceeded by *Clement* IV. who confirmed the choice of his predeceſſor, and preſſed *Charles* to come without delay and take poſſeſſion of his kingdoms. In conſequence of theſe ſollicitations, that prince put himſelf at the head of a powerful army, marched directly to *Rome*, and the pope, who was not then in that city, having impowered five cardinals to perform the ceremony of his coronation, he, with his wife *Beatrice*, was crowned and conſecrated, on condition of holding his kingdoms of the holy ſee, and of paying to it annually the ſum of ſixty thouſand ducats, as a mark of acknowlegement. He then put himſelf at the head of his army, being reinforced by the *Guelphs*, who flocked to him from all quarters; and, after having gained ſeveral advantages, at laſt obtained a complete victory near *Benevento*, in which *Mainfroy* was ſlain, ſo that he found very little difficulty in making himſelf maſter of the *Two Sicilies* [a]. But, far from enjoying his good fortune with humanity, he let the wife and children of *Mainfroy*, together with ſeveral noblemen of that party, die in priſon, and allowed his army to commit enormous cruelties, when the city of *Benevento* was taken.

That prince defeats Mainfroy, *who is killed in battle, and makes himſelf maſter of the* Two Sicilies.

1266.

Conradin duke of Suabia *takes the field againſt him.*

Mean while *Conradin* duke of *Suabia*, and ſon of the emperor *Conrad*, at that time no more than ſixteen years of age, who lived at the court of *Lewis the Severe* duke of *Bavaria*, his own uncle by the mother's ſide, hearing the news of *Mainfroy*'s death, aſſumed the title of king of the *Two Sicilies*, which belonged to him by right of inheritance, and, being excited by the *Gibelines*, who were afraid that the *Guelphs* would grow too powerful by the ſupport of *Charles* of *Anjou*, he reſolved to hazard every thing for a crown, to which he had ſuch an indiſputable claim. Accordingly he levied forces, with which he marched into *Italy*, defeated one of the lieutenants of *Charles*, and, fluſhed with this victory, began to flatter himſelf with the hopes of being proclaimed emperor, eſpecially when he had brought over to his party a *German*, named *Honorius*, his own relation, and a ſenator of *Rome*. With this expectation he marched towards that capital, and was received with great magnificence, as emperor, by Don *Henry* of *Caſtile*, governor of the city, who, having

Is received at Rome *by Don*

---

[z] Ann. Boior. lib. vii. p. 363.

[a] Id. p. 564. Mez. Abr. Chron. tom. i. p. 457. Mach. Hiſt. di Fir. lib. i.

been

Henry *of* Caſtile.

been expelled from his own country by his brother *Alphonſo*, the nominal emperor, had thrown himſelf into the arms of the pope, and was now become an enemy to *Charles*, becauſe he thwarted him in his deſigns upon the kingdom of *Sardinia*.

Defeated by Charles, *taken in diſguiſe, together with his friend* Frederic *duke of* Auſtria.

Tried, condemned, and beheaded, in the city of Naples. A. D. 1268.

CHARLES, on *Conradin*'s arrival in *Italy*, had repaired to *France* for a reinforcement, by which he found himſelf at the head of a very powerful army when he returned to *Italy*, and encountering *Conradin*, who had by this time made himſelf maſter of *Sicily*, gave him battle near *Alva*, where he thought he could avail himſelf of an advantageous poſt which he had taken. He concealed ſome of his beſt troops behind a riſing ground, and, after the battle had continued upwards of three hours with equal fury on both ſides, he ordered them to quit the place of ambuſh, and charge the forces of *Conradin*, who, being already fatigued, were utterly defeated. *Conradin*, his couſin *Frederic* of *Auſtria*, who had accompanied him in this expedition, and *Henry* of *Caſtile*, betook themſelves to flight, but were apprehended on the road in the diſguiſe of grooms, and by *Charles* committed to cloſe priſon. Some time after, reſolving to accompany his brother Saint *Lewis* in his expedition to *Africa*, and being afraid to leave theſe priſoners behind in a kingdom full of faction and revolt, he ordered them to be tried by the ſyndics of all the cities of the realm, and theſe judges condemned *Conradin* and *Frederic* to death as perturbators of the repoſe of the church (M). They were accordingly beheaded on a ſcaffold in the middle of the city of *Naples*, to the eternal reproach of *Charles*, and the ſcandal of humanity; for *Conradin* had been guilty of nothing but endeavouring to retrieve his inheritance, and *Frederic* of *Auſtria* had aſſiſted him out of pure friendſhip and generoſity. Much about the ſame time *Conrad* prince of *Antioch*, ſon of *Frederic*, who was a baſtard of the emperor *Frederic* II. having come from the eaſt to the aſſiſtance of *Conradin*, was taken by *Charles*, and hanged like a malefactor. Thus periſhed by the hands of the common hangman the laſt of that glorious race of *Suabian* princes, which had produced ſo many kings and emperors. By this execution alſo the family of *Auſtria* was extinct [b] (N).

---

[b] Ann. Boior. lib. vii. p. 566. MEZ. Abr. Chron. tom. i. p. 459. MACH. Hiſt. de Fir. lib. i.

(M) Pope *Clement* is ſaid to have adviſed *Charles* to this barbarous ſtep, by ſaying on his death-bed, *Conradi vita, Caroli mors: Caroli vita, Conradi mors.*

(N) *Conradin*, when he appeared upon the ſcaffold, pulled off

POPE *Clement* IV. ſurvived this barbarous homicide but one month, and his death was ſucceeded by a vacancy in the papal chair that laſted two years and nine months before it was filled by *Thibaut* of *Placentia*, who aſſumed the name of *Gregory* X. As for the deſolation of *Germany*, it continued till after the death of *Richard* of *England*, when the princes aſſembled, and, notwithſtanding the remonſtrances of *Alphonſo*, and the intrigues of *Ottocarus* king of *Bohemia*, raiſed the count of *Hapſburg* to the imperial throne.

C H A P VI.

The Hiſtory continued to the Interregnum occaſioned by the Death of Henry VII.

RODOLPHUS I.

Some account of Rodolphus *previous to his election.*

RODOLPHUS, the firſt of that name, count of *Hapſburg*, was educated under *Frederic* II. who held him up to the baptiſmal font, but is afterwards ſaid to have taken umbrage at the prediction of an aſtrologer, who propheſied that the count would aſcend the imperial throne, on the failure of *Frederic*'s iſſue, which, at that time, conſiſted of ten perſons. *Rodolphus*, perceiving the emperor's favour ſenſibly cooled upon this account, dexterouſly withdrew himſelf from his court, on ſome plauſible pretence, and afterwards retired to that of *Ottocarus* king of *Bohemia*, where he exerciſed the office of grand marſhal with great reputation. From thence he returned to his own territories, where, by his pru-

off one of his gloves and threw it among the croud, as a mark of inveſtiture to his heir, whom he declared to be *Frederic* of *Caſtile*, the ſon of his aunt; the glove was taken up by a gentleman called *Henry Traſches de Walpurg*, who carried it to the king of *Arragon*. The duke of *Auſtria*'s head being ſeparated from his body, *Conradin* took it up and kiſſed it with great tenderneſs, bewailing the unhappy fate of that prince, and upbraiding himſelf as the cauſe of his death: then he kneeling, ſubmitted to the fatal ſtroke, and the executioner was afterwards put to death, that he might not live to boaſt of having ſhed ſuch noble blood (1). This cruel execution was performed in the market-place of *Naples*, before the church of the *Carmelites*, in which *Conradin* lies interred (2).

---

(1) *Brant. dans la Diſcours ſur la Mort de Marie Reine d'Ecoſſe.* (2) *Remarq. ſur l'Hiſt. de l'Empire, par Heiſs, liv.* ii. *c.* xxi. *See the Hiſtory of Naples.*

dent and gallant behaviour, he acquired authority among all his neighbours. He had, during the troubles in *Germany*, performed divers exploits, which augmented his fame and patrimony at the ſame time. His firſt military expedition was againſt *Hugo Trieffenſtein*, who had ſaid ſomething to his prejudice. Him he ſlew in combat, and afterwards took poſſeſſion of his lands; then he turned his arms againſt *Rodolphus* of *Loffenberg*, his own relation: but that war was terminated by an accommodation. He, in conſequence of a quarrel with *Hartman* count of *Kyburg*, ſeized upon his ſucceſſion for his own uſe, defeated the counts of *Toggenburg*, and ravaged their country; and putting himſelf at the head of a troop of gentlemen devoted to the emperor *Conrad* IV. pillaged the ſuburbs of *Baſil*, and burnt a monaſtery; for which outrage, he and all his companions were excommunicated. The citizens of *Straſburg* having quarrelled with their biſhop, and reflecting on the advantages they had derived from the protection of *Albert* of *Hapſburg*, they now ſollicited that of his ſon *Rodolphus*, choſe him chief of their militia, and, under his conduct, took the fortreſs of *Haldemburg*. They likewiſe ſurprized *Colmar* and *Mulhauſen*, and at laſt obtained a complete victory over their biſhop, who, in a few days, died of grief for this overthrow. His ſucceſſor ſued for peace, which was granted by *Rodolphus* and the citizens of *Straſburg*, who erected a ſtone ſtatue in gratitude to their deliverer. But, two years before this event, the citizens of *Zurich*, harraſſed by the nobles of their neighbourhood, had propoſed to chuſe *Ulrick* of *Regenſberg* for their protector, and he refuſing that office, unleſs they would yield to him the perpetual ſuperiority of their town, they put themſelves under the auſpices of *Rodolphus*, who was his declared enemy, and three years were conſumed in hoſtilities and mutual incurſions; but at length fortune declared in favour of *Rodolphus*, who reduced *Ulrick* to a dependence upon that very city, the government of which he had refuſed. Nor was the piety of *Rodolphus* inferior to his valour (O). When

Inſtances of his valour and ſucceſs.

His protection ſolicited by ſundry cities.

(O) Being one day at the chace, it began to rain with ſuch violence as rendered the road extremely dirty, when chancing to meet a poor curate on foot, carrying the hoſt to a ſick perſon, he was ſo much affected with the ſight of this good prieſt labouring through the mud, that he immediately alighted, ſaying, it ill became him to ride on horſeback, while the prieſt who carried our Saviour was walking on foot, and not only mounted the curate, but attended him bareheaded to the ſick man's houſe, and afterwards reconducted him to his

When count *Werner* of *Falkeſtein* was choſen archbiſhop of *Mentz*, and ſet out on his journey to *Rome*, *Rodolphus* gave him a convoy, with a ſtrong body of troops, as far as the *Alps*, and, waiting for his return in the ſame place, reconducted him in ſafety to his ſee; an obligation for which the archbiſhop aſſured him he would take all occaſions to expreſs his gratitude; and he afterwards kept his word[c].

A. D. 1273.

Pope Gregory X. *preſſes the princes of the empire to a new election.*

The empire had been now fifteen years without a chief, that is, ſince the abdication of *Richard*; for though *Alphonſo* took the title of emperor, and promiſed from time to time to repair into *Germany*, he never could find leiſure for that expedition. The *German* princes, tired with his delays, and ſeeing the empire more and more involved in diſorder and confuſion, and being moreover preſſed by pope *Gregory* X. who threatened, if they ſhould longer delay an election, to provide for the neceſſities of the empire by his own authority; induced, I ſay, by theſe motives, the princes intreated the elector of *Mentz* to call a diet at *Frankfort*. There, notwithſtanding the proteſtations which *Alphonſo*'s ambaſſadors made againſt all that ſhould be done to the prejudice of their maſter, and the pretenſions of the king of *Bohemia* and ſome other princes to the imperial crown, the archbiſhop of *Mentz* had ſuch influence in the diet, as to engage a majority in favour of the count of *Hapſburg*, whoſe merit he did not fail to extol.

The beginning of this aſſembly was very tumultuous. The deputies of *Ottocarus* pretended that their maſter had two votes, as king of *Bohemia* and duke of *Auſtria*; but his pretenſions were oppoſed by the count *Palatine*, who affirmed that he had uſurped *Auſtria*, and that he could not juſtly avail himſelf of the inveſtiture he had received from *Richard* of *England*, whom *Germany* had never acknowleged as emperor; beſides this conteſt, which could not be determined, another diſpute aroſe about the choice of a king of the *Romans*. *Menhard* count of *Tyrol* propoſed three perſons, namely, *Albert* count *de Goritz*, *Rodolphus* of *Hapſburg*, and *Barnard*, who called himſelf duke of *Carinthia*, though he

---

[c] Vide Arstir. Chron. Baſil. Boccler. de Rod. Hapſb. Ann. Colmar. Heiss, liv. ii. c. 22.

his church, where the prieſt, amazed at ſuch an extraordinary inſtance of zeal, gave him his benediction, and, being inſpired by the Holy Ghoſt, propheſied that he and his deſcendents would ſit upon the imperial throne (3).

(3) *Heiſs, ubi ſup.*

was

Rodolphus *is choſen emperor.*

was not in poſſeſſion of that province. Each of the three had partizans at the aſſembly, but the ſtrongeſt party declared for *Rodolphus*. Some of the electors, indeed, were of opinion, that they ought rather to chuſe a prince of higher rank and greater power (P), who might be more enabled by his authority to retrieve the reputation of the empire; but the archbiſhop of *Mentz* replying, that this end would be better anſwered by a wiſe, valiant, and experienced prince, than by one who had nothing to recommend him but his riches and power, his brethren of *Cologn* and *Triers* favoured him with their votes, without further heſitation. The ſecular princes, and in particular *Lewis* duke of *Bavaria*, and *Albert* duke of *Saxony*, who were unmarried, reflecting that *Rodolphus* had ſix fair daughters, of whom they might have their choice in marriage, while, by means of the reſt, he might make other advantageous alliances, aſſented to the opinion of the eccleſiaſtic electors, and unanimouſly gave their voices in favour of count *Rodolphus*. The news of his elevation was brought to him by *Frederic* burgrave of *Nuremberg*, while he was engaged in the ſiege of *Baſil* (Q), in conſequence of the protection he had granted to one of the factions of that city. He no ſooner received this intimation, than he repaired to *Frankfort*, where, having accepted the imperial dignity, he was conducted by all the princes to *Aix la Chapelle*, and there crowned with the uſual ſolemnity[d] (R).

He repairs to Frankfort, *and is crowned at* Aix la Chapelle.

HAVING

---

[d] Avent. Ann. Boior. p. 567.

(P) This ſeems to have been an unreaſonable objection, when we conſider the birth and fortune of *Rodolphus*. He was the ſon of *Albert* count of *Hapsburg* and *Itha*, daughter of the count of *Bregentz*, deſcended by his father from the counts of *Thierſtein*, near *Baſil* in *Switzerland*, as may be proved by the antiquities of the monaſtery of *Mucy*; and by the mother, from the counts of *Hapsburg*. At the time of his election there was not a count in *Germany* who could vie with him in wealth and extent of dominion; beſides the county of *Hapsburg*, which he inherited from his father, he poſſeſſed three more; namely, *Kybourg*, *Baden*, and *Lentzenbourg*, which laſt he enjoyed by his uncle *Hartman*, and by his wife he obtained the landgraviate of *Alſace* (4).

(Q) *Henry* of *Neufchatel*, biſhop of *Baſil*, was ſo confounded and chagrined at the news of this election, that he fell ſick of mortification, and is ſaid to have addreſſed himſelf to God in theſe words:

Sede fortiter Domine Deus; alias, Rodolphus locum occupabit tuum (5).

(R) At this coronation, the

princes

(4) *Remarq. ſur Heiſs, ubi ſup. Rodolph* I.

(5) *Vide Memoir. ſur l'Art. de Rodolph* I.

A. D. 1274.

He ſuppreſſes robbery, and reſtores the ſecurity of the public roads.

vING thus taken poſſeſſion of the imperial throne, his
are was to ſuppreſs the rapine, robberies, and murders,
had ſo long prevailed with impunity, and he ſucceed-
well in his endeavours, that, in a little time, peace and
ty were re-eſtabliſhed [e], for he deſtroyed in *Thuringia*
aſtles, which were the retreat of banditti, and ordered
-nine highwaymen to be hanged at one time in the city
urt. A certain *Hungarian* count, having for ſome years
ly murdered, robbed, and pillaged the country, the em-
who then reſided at *Vienna*, would not make war upon
le country for the villainy of one man, and therefore em-
the count's friends to reclaim him by remonſtrance
dmonition. They accordingly made ſuch good uſe of
exhortations, that he was perſuaded to wait upon the
or in perſon, after he had been aſſured that he had no-
to fear from his reſentment. He was very kindly re-
l by *Rodolphus*, had the honour to eat at his table, and
o drink out of his own glaſs (S). After this hoſpitable
ainment, the emperor having remonſtrated to him the
r he did himſelf by his enormous actions, he ſwore by
at was ſacred that he would reform his life, and upon
romiſe was ſuffered to retire towards his own habitation.
e was beſet by his enemies on the road, and thrown in-
iver, where he periſhed [f]. Thus was the country rid of
orious thief, without any prejudice to the emperor's
of honour (T).

His

---

[e] Id. ibid.

[f] Heiss, liv. ii. c. 22.

s making ſome ſcruple of
the accuſtomed oaths,
ſe the ſceptre was want-
vithout which they could
r give nor receive the
iture of their fiefs; *Rodol-*
took a crucifix from the
ſaying "This is the re-
ntation and ſign of him by
a we were ſaved, let us uſe
tead of a ſceptre." They
dingly agreed to the ex-
nt, and were inveſted with
fiefs with a crucifix (6).

) Upon this occaſion, "I
ve now, ſaid he, no rea-
n to be afraid; for I have
"drank with the beſt man on
"earth (7)".

(T) Towards the end of the Interregnum many of the princes and towns cauſed their peculiar laws to be reduced to a body, and publiſhed. The principal were thoſe of *Magdeburg*, *Saxony*, and *Suabia*: the firſt of theſe were adopted by the ſtates of *Pruſſia*, and afterwards received in ſeveral provinces, that did not belong to *Germany*. *The Mirrour of the Saxon Law* was likewiſe compoſed during the anarchy, by one *Epko*, or *Repko*, who ſays

(6) *Johan. Cuſpinian.*

(7) *Heiſs, ubi ſup.*

He lays claim to the inheritance of Conradin.

HIS ſon *Albert* having married *Elizabeth* daughter of the count *de Tyrol*, and uterine ſiſter of *Conradin*, who was executed at *Naples*, he laid claim to the rich inheritance of that young prince, conſiſting of *Alſace* and part of *Suabia*, and, by force of arms, wreſted them from ſeveral noblemen who had ſeized thoſe fiefs, during the troubles of the interregnum, and now engaged in an aſſociation to defend their unjuſt acquiſitions. The next ſtep which *Rodolphus* took was to ſollicit the pope's confirmation of his imperial dignity, which he obtained, after his ambaſſadors had ſworn in his name that he would aſſert and defend the holy ſee againſt all its enemies, and never make any attempts to the prejudice of its vaſſals, particularly of the illuſtrious *Charles* king of *Sicily* and his heirs [g].

His election is confirm- by the pope.

THIS complaiſance of the pope was owing to the hope he had entertained of engaging *Rodolphus* in a cruſade for the relief of the Chriſtians in *Paleſtine*, the expence of which was to be defrayed by the tythe of all church revenues, to be raiſed for that purpoſe for the ſpace of ſix years, according to the decree of the council held at *Lyons*.

Alphonſo *renounces his claim to the empire.*

ALPHONSO of *Caſtile*, far from renouncing his pretenſions to the imperial crown, loudly proteſted againſt theſe proceedings of the pope, whom he viſited at *Beaucaire* in *Provence*, in order to engage him in his intereſt: but *Gregory* was deaf to all his remonſtrances; and, though he returned to *Caſtile* very ill ſatisfied with the reſult of this interview, and even affected to reaſſume the imperial ornaments, which he had for ſome time laid aſide, he was at laſt, by the admonitions of the archbiſhop of *Seville*, prevailed upon to renounce his claim to the empire; and, in conſideration of this ſelf-denial, the pope permitted him to lay a tax upon the clergy, for the expence of the war againſt the *Moors*, who threatened to attack him from all quarters [h].

---

[g] STRUV period. ix. p. 518.

[h] MARIANA, lib. xiii. c. 22.

he had collected the laws of *Conſtantine* and *Charlemagne*. This work, which firſt appeared in *Latin*, and was afterwards tranſlated into the *German* language, though not recommended by any public authority, acquired great reputation thro' all the empire. Before its appearance the laws of *Charlemagne* and the *Othos* were very little known. The *Germans* had forgot the ſtatutes enacted in the aſſemblies of their nation, and followed implicitly the codes of *Theodoſius* and *Juſtinian* in all their tribunals and courts of juſtice (8).

(8) *Conring. de Orig. Jur. Germ.*

RODOLPHUS having in a great meaſure pacified the troubles of the empire, aſſembled a diet at *Mentz*, where he granted new privileges to *Goſlar* and other cities, and confirmed thoſe which had been conferred by his predeceſſors. Upon this occaſion alſo the deliberations of the aſſembly turned upon certain noblemen who had proteſted againſt the election of the count of *Hapſburg*, particularly *Ottocarus* king of *Bohemia*, againſt whom they had other cauſes of diſcontent; for the ſtates of the duchy of *Auſtria*, which, after the death of *Frederic* their laſt duke, had been ſeized upon by *Ottocarus*, complained of the oppreſſion they ſuffered under the government of the uſurper, from which they begged to be delivered.

Ottocarus *king of* Bohemia *proteſts againſt his election.*

MOVED by theſe ſollicitations, *Rodolphus* convoked a diet at *Augſburg*, to which *Ottocarus* ſent ambaſſadors, who, inſtead of doing homage in his name to the emperor, whom he had not yet acknowleged, one of them began a long harangue, in which he diſavowed and declared void the election of *Rodolphus*. The members, incenſed at this preſumption, interrupted the diſcourſe, and ordered the ambaſſadors to be turned out of the aſſembly; then they declared *Ottocarus* a rebel to the empire, and concluded, that, as he had unjuſtly taken poſſeſſion of *Auſtria*, *Stiria*, *Carniola*, and *Carinthia*, the emperor ſhould diveſt him of theſe dominions. Ambaſſadors being ſent to him with a notification of this ſentence, he arrogantly anſwered, that as to *Rodolphus*, who was formerly his ſervant, he had already paid him his wages; that he poſſeſſed *Auſtria*, *Stiria*, and *Carniola*, as the dowry of his wife; and that as he had purchaſed *Carinthia* with ready money, he was reſolved to maintain himſelf in his lawful poſſeſſion. The ambaſſadors having made this report to the diet at *Augſburg*, it was decreed that he ſhould be chaſtiſed for his diſobedience, and thoſe lands reunited to the empire (U). *Rodolphus* undertook to execute this reſolution, and raiſed a ſufficient body of forces for the occaſion; but, before he turned his arms againſt *Ottocarus*, he reſolved to ſubdue and chaſtiſe all the other noblemen, who refuſed to

Inſults the emperor and the diet.

A. D. 1275.

The emperor ſubdues divers princes of

(U) One of the emperor's domeſtics offered, for a good recompence, to kill the king of *Bohemia*, while he was hunting; but this propoſal was rejected with diſdain by *Rodolphus*, who ſaid, that, although *Ottocarus* was his inveterate enemy, nothing ſhould ever prevail upon him to tranſgreſs the bounds of juſtice and moderation (9).

(9) *Idem ibid.*

the empire, and makes peace with Henry *of* Bavaria. A. D. 1276.

acknowlege him as emperor. Accordingly he fell upon the marquis of *Baden* and the counts of *Neuburg* and *Fribourg*, who were ſoon reduced, and compelled not only to do him homage for the lands they legally poſſeſſed, but alſo to reſtore ſome fiefs they had unjuſtly ſeized in the *Briſgaw*, *Suabia*, and on the banks of the *Rhine*. He afterwards attacked and defeated *Eberhard* count of *Wirtemberg*, ſurnamed *the Quarrelſome*, and obliged *Henry* of *Bavaria* to ſue for peace, which was granted by the interceſſion of his brother *Lewis* of *Bavaria* count *Palatine*, on condition that *Henry's* ſon *Otho* ſhould marry the emperor's daughter *Catherine*, on whom he ſhould beſtow, by way of dower, all the fiefs he poſſeſſed on the river *Ens*; that he ſhould pay to *Rodolphus* forty thouſand ounces of gold, and take the oath of allegiance to him for all the towns and territories in his poſſeſſion[1].

Ottocarus *does homage to* Rodolphus *for* Bohemia *and* Moravia.

RODOLPHUS, having humbled thoſe petty adventurers, marched into *Auſtria*, accompanied by the archbiſhops of *Mentz* and *Cologne*, the biſhops of *Wurtzburg*, *Ratiſbon* and *Paſſau*, and *Lewis* count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*. But the prelates being ſick of the war, and unwilling to ſee the king of *Bohemia* altogether reduced, mediated an accommodation in his favour, on condition that he ſhould be contented with *Bohemia* and *Moravia*, and hold them as fiefs of the empire (X). *Ottocarus* was fain to comply with theſe terms, and to receive from his imperial majeſty the inveſtiture of his dominions, which was performed in the iſland of *Camberg*, in the *Danube*, with great magnificence, under a pavilion which was cloſe ſhut up, in order to ſpare *Ottocarus* the mortification of being ſeen in ſuch an attitude of humility by more people than thoſe whoſe preſence was abſolutely neceſſary; but in the midſt of the ceremony, the pavilion, either by accident or deſign, opening on both ſides, diſcovered *Ottocarus* on his knees before the emperor, a circumſtance which greatly mortified the king, and concurred with the inſtigations of his wife, who was a *Ruſſian* princeſs, and remarkably haughty,

(X) In this accommodation it was ſtipulated, that *Auſtria* ſhould revert to the emperor its lawful lord; that *Carinthia* and the other provinces of *Ulrich* ſhould be given in dowry with *Agnes* the daughter of *Ottocarus*, who ſhould be married to *Rodolphus* the emperor's fifth ſon; and, in order to ſtrengthen this treaty, it was alſo agreed, that *Jutta*, one of the emperor's daughters, ſhould marry *Winceſlaus*, the ſon of *Ottocarus*, tho' he was at that time but ſeven years of age (10).

---

(10) *Avent. ann. Boior. lib.* vii. *p.* 570.

to induce him to renounce the treaty he had made, and have recourſe again to arms, for reducing *Auſtria* again to his obedience k. The emperor no ſooner underſtood this breach of faith, than he aſſembled his army, and marching againſt *Ottocarus*, as a perfidious infractor of the peace, a battle enſued, in which the king was ſlain (Y). After this victory, *Rodolphus* gave the government of *Auſtria*, *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, and *Carniola*, to his eldeſt ſon count *Albert*, whom he afterwards, in a diet at *Augſburg*, publicly inveſted with the dukedom of *Auſtria*, which was incorporated with the college of the princes, and at the ſame time he inveſted *Rodolphus*, another of his ſons, with the county of *Suabia*, which belonged to him in right of his wife *Ann* counteſs of that country (Z). He likewiſe reſolved to adhere to the articles of the laſt treaty, and, for that purpoſe, put young *Winceſlaus*, whom he had deſtined for his ſon-in-law, under the tutelage of *Otho* marquis of *Brandenburg*.

Renounces his engagements at the inſtigation of his wife, but is defeated and ſlain.

Rodolphus *adheres to the treaty in favour of his ſon* Winceſlaus.

THEN he declared war againſt *Henry* of *Bavaria*, who had favoured *Ottocarus*, in hopes of ſharing the ſpoils, ſhould that prince be victorious. His brother *Lewis* count *Palatine*, and ſon-in-law to the emperor, though he had hitherto been firmly attached to *Rodolphus*, in expectation of recovering the inveſtiture of *Auſtria*, being by this time diſappointed in his hope, was on the eve of declaring openly for his brother, that, by their united force, they might compel the emperor to beſtow the duchy of *Auſtria* upon a *Bavarian* prince.

---

k ÆN. SYLV. Bohem. c. 27. DUBRAV. l. xvii. BONF. lib. viii. KRANTZ. Wand. lib. vii. c. 30. AVENT. ann. Boior. lib. vii. p. 570.

(Y) In this battle the emperor's horſe being killed, he fought on foot with great gallantry, until he was remounted by *Bertold Capella*; then he furiouſly charged among the thickeſt of the foe, and by his perſonal valour contributed to the fortune of the day (11).

(Z) About this time appeared one *Tilo Collup*, a man of ſome eloquence and undaunted effrontery. He pretended to be the real emperor *Frederic* II. who had, for thirty years, been obliged to be concealed in the *Holy Land*, to elude the fury of the Infidels. He claimed the empire as his right, and altho' he was generally conſidered as a fanatic, he found means to engage ſome people in his cauſe; but he was apprehended at *Weſtzlar*, and, with all his adherents, condemned to the flames (12).

(11) *Aventin. ann. Boior. lib.* vii. *p.* 571.

(12) *Remarq. ſur Heiſs, ubi ſup. Avent. ann. Boior, p.* 572.

the empire, and makes peace with Henry *of* Bavaria. A. D. 1276.

acknowlege him as emperor. Accordingly he fell upon the marquis of *Baden* and the counts of *Neuburg* and *Fribourg*, who were ſoon reduced, and compelled not only to do him homage for the lands they legally poſſeſſed, but alſo to reſtore ſome fiefs they had unjuſtly ſeized in the *Briſgau*, *Suabia*, and on the banks of the *Rhine*. He afterwards attacked and defeated *Eberhard* count of *Wirtemberg*, ſurnamed *the Quarrelſome*, and obliged *Henry* of *Bavaria* to ſue for peace, which was granted by the interceſſion of his brother *Lewis* of *Bavaria* count *Palatine*, on condition that *Henry's* ſon *Otho* ſhould marry the emperor's daughter *Catherine*, on whom he ſhould beſtow, by way of dower, all the fiefs he poſſeſſed on the river *Ens*; that he ſhould pay to *Rodolphus* forty thouſand ounces of gold, and take the oath of allegiance to him for all the towns and territories in his poſſeſſion[1].

Ottocarus *does homage to* Rodolphus *for* Bohemia *and* Moravia.

RODOLPHUS, having humbled thoſe petty adventurers, marched into *Auſtria*, accompanied by the archbiſhops of *Mentz* and *Cologne*, the biſhops of *Wurtzburg*, *Ratiſbon* and *Paſſau*, and *Lewis* count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*. But the prelates being ſick of the war, and unwilling to ſee the king of *Bohemia* altogether reduced, mediated an accommodation in his favour, on condition that he ſhould be contented with *Bohemia* and *Moravia*, and hold them as fiefs of the empire (X). *Ottocarus* was fain to comply with theſe terms, and to receive from his imperial majeſty the inveſtiture of his dominions, which was performed in the iſland of *Camberg*, in the *Danube*, with great magnificence, under a pavilion which was cloſe ſhut up, in order to ſpare *Ottocarus* the mortification of being ſeen in ſuch an attitude of humility by more people than thoſe whoſe preſence was abſolutely neceſſary; but in the midſt of the ceremony, the pavilion, either by accident or deſign, opening on both ſides, diſcovered *Ottocarus* on his knees before the emperor, a circumſtance which greatly mortified the king, and concurred with the inſtigations of his wife, who was a *Ruſſian* princeſs, and remarkably haughty,

---

(X) In this accommodation it was ſtipulated, that *Auſtria* ſhould revert to the emperor its lawful lord; that *Carinthia* and the other provinces of *Ulrich* ſhould be given in dowry with *Agnes* the daughter of *Ottocarus*, who ſhould be married to *Rodolphus* the emperor's fifth ſon; and, in order to ſtrengthen this treaty, it was alſo agreed, that *Jutta*, one of the emperor's daughters, ſhould marry *Winceſlaus*, the ſon of *Ottocarus*, tho' he was at that time but ſeven years of age (10).

(10) *Avent. ann. Boior. lib.* vii. *p.* 570.

Renounces his engagements at the inſtigation of his wife, but is defeated and ſlain.

to induce him to renounce the treaty he had made, and have recourſe again to arms, for reducing *Auſtria* again to his obedience[k]. The emperor no ſooner underſtood this breach of faith, than he aſſembled his army, and marching againſt *Ottocarus*, as a perfidious infractor of the peace, a battle enſued, in which the king was ſlain (Y). After this victory, *Rodolphus* gave the government of *Auſtria*, *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, and *Carniola*, to his eldeſt ſon count *Albert*, whom he afterwards, in a diet at *Augſburg*, publicly inveſted with the dukedom of *Auſtria*, which was incorporated with the college of the princes, and at the ſame time he inveſted *Rodolphus*, another of his ſons, with the county of *Suabia*, which belonged to him in right of his wife *Ann* counteſs of that country (Z). He likewiſe reſolved to adhere to the articles of the laſt treaty, and, for that purpoſe, put young *Winceſlaus*, whom he had deſtined for his ſon-in-law, under the tutelage of *Otho* marquis of *Brandenburg*.

Rodolphus *adheres to the treaty in favour of his ſon* Winceſlaus.

THEN he declared war againſt *Henry* of *Bavaria*, who had favoured *Ottocarus*, in hopes of ſharing the ſpoils, ſhould that prince be victorious. His brother *Lewis* count *Palatine*, and ſon-in-law to the emperor, though he had hitherto been firmly attached to *Rodolphus*, in expectation of recovering the inveſtiture of *Auſtria*, being by this time diſappointed in his hope, was on the eve of declaring openly for his brother, that, by their united force, they might compel the emperor to beſtow the duchy of *Auſtria* upon a *Bavarian* prince.

---

[k] ÆN. SYLV. Bohem. c. 27. DUBRAVY. l. xvii. BONF. lib. viii. KRANTZ. Wand. lib. vii. c. 30. AVENT. ann. Boior. lib. vii. p. 570.

(Y) In this battle the emperor's horſe being killed, he fought on foot with great gallantry, until he was remounted by *Bertold Capella*; then he furiouſly charged among the thickeſt of the foe, and by his perſonal valour contributed to the fortune of the day (11).

(Z) About this time appeared one *Tilo Collup*, a man of ſome eloquence and undaunted effrontery. He pretended to be the real emperor *Frederic* II. who had, for thirty years, been obliged to be concealed in the *Holy Land*, to elude the fury of the Infidels. He claimed the empire as his right, and altho' he was generally conſidered as a fanatic, he found means to engage ſome people in his cauſe; but he was apprehended at *Weſtzlar*, and, with all his adherents, condemned to the flames (12).

(11) *Aventin. ann. Boior. lib.* vii. *p.* 571.

(12) *Remarq. ſur Heiſs, ubi ſup. Avent. ann. Boior, p.* 572.

But, before they could join and take proper meaſures for maintaining the war, *Rodolphus* fell ſuddenly upon *Henry*, whom he entirely defeated; ſo that the project fell to the ground, and the emperor granted him peace, though upon conditions that were very hard upon his ſon *Otho*, who had married *Catherine* the daughter of *Rodolphus*; for he obliged him to reſtore *Litz*, *Steyer*, and the other towns above the river *Ens*, which he had given to that princeſs by way of dower.

Has an interview with the pope at Lauſanne, *and promiſes to go to the* Holy Land.

RODOLPHUS, without going in perſon into *Italy*, terminated all his differences with the pope, by means of ambaſſadors. In the year of his coronation *Gregory* X. having held a council at *Lyons*, at which *Alphonſo* king of *Caſtile*, and *Ottocarus* king of *Bohemia*, had, by their ambaſſadors, demanded the imperial crown, *Rodolphus* ſent thither his chancellor *Otho*, with full power to confirm all the privileges which his predeceſſors had granted to the holy ſee, provided the empire ſhould in no ſhape be diſmembered. Accordingly *Otho* agreed and ſwore, in his maſter's name, to a certain number of articles concerning the defence of the lands belonging to the holy ſee, and *Gregory* on his ſide confirmed the imperial crown to *Rodolphus*, rejecting the claims of his competitors[l]. Next year there was an interview between the emperor and the pope, in the city of *Lauſanne*, where the former promiſed to reſtore to the church all the countries between *Radicoſani* and *Ceperano*, the exarchate of *Ravenna*, *Pentapolis*, the marquiſate of *Ancona*, the duchy of *Spoleto*, the eſtate of the counteſs *Mathilda*, the county of *Bertinoro*, and all the lands mentioned in the different privileges granted by *Lewis* the emperor. On theſe conditions the crown was again confirmed to *Rodolphus*, who engaged not only to repair to *Rome*, at the feaſt of *Pentecoſt* next enſuing, to receive the crown from the hands of the pope, but likewiſe to ſet out for *Paleſtine*, immediately after the ceremony of his coronation[m]; and, as a mark of this his intention, he at that time took the croſs. This laſt condition, in all probability, was ſtipulated by the pope, in order to hinder the emperor from enterprizing any-thing in *Italy*. But *Rodolphus* made no preparations either to go to *Rome* or the *Holy Land*: on the contrary, he impowered ambaſſadors to receive the oath of allegiance from the inhabitants of the cities of *Romagnia*, and the neighbouring countries; an inſtance of diſregard which provoked his holineſs to ſuch a degree, that he had recourſe to a ſentence of excommunication [n].

---

[l] MARIAN. cum Surit. Ind. lib. ii. BARON. Cart. i. tom. i. p. 352. [m] KRANTZ, Sax. l. viii. c. 30.

After *Gregory*'s death, *Innocent* V. wrote to the emperor, inviting him to ſend ambaſſadors to *Rome*, to negotiate an accommodation with the holy ſee, forbidding him at the ſame time to go thither in perſon, until the peace ſhould be concluded, and the diſpute terminated between him and *Charles* of *Anjou*, about the vicariate of *Tuſcany*, and the county of *Provence*. The king of *Sicily* had obtained the vicariate during the interregnum, and ſtill kept it, after the election of an emperor, when he had no longer any juſt claim to that office. *Rodolphus*, at the ſame time, diſputed with the ſon of *Charles* the poſſeſſion of *Provence* and *Forcalquier*, which he affirmed had devolved to the empire, of which they were fiefs, by the death of *Raymond Berenger*, who left no male iſſue, and had no power to bequeath his dominions to heirs female, in right of whom they were claimed and poſſeſſed by *Charles* of *Anjou*.

Performs his articles with the pope. A. D. 1279.

Pope *John* XXI. had writ to the ſame purpoſe, and laid injunctions upon the archbiſhop of *Mentz* to perſuade the emperor to perform his promiſes; finally, *Nicholas* III. preſſed him to confirm the articles he had promiſed to *Gregory*, which he now willingly performed, not only in conſideration of the vicariate of *Tuſcany*, which was at length yielded to him by *Charles* king of *Sicily* (A), at the deſire of the pope, but alſo becauſe he was inclined to a reconciliation with the holy ſee. His ambaſſador therefore renewed and confirmed, in full conſiſtory at *Rome*, all the promiſes which he had made; and the nuncio, whom the pope ſent into *Germany*, obtained a full ratification of theſe articles, as well from the emperor as from the princes of the empire [o]. Notwithſtanding this agreement, the pope, far from having any real friendſhip

---

[n] Naucler, vol ii. gen. 48. p. 968. Record. Maleſpin, in Hiſt. Florent c. 99. Villan. in Hiſt. Florent. Trith. Chr. Hirſang. ad. ann, 1273.

[o] Rain. ad. ann. 1279. n. 45.

(A) By the mediation of the pope, a peace was concluded between the emperor and the king of *Sicily*, on condition that *Charles* ſhould renounce the vicariate of *Tuſcany*; that he and his heirs ſhould poſſeſs the provinces of *Provence* and *Forcalquier*, as fiefs of the empire, and the accommodation was cemented by a match between *Charles Martel* the grandſon of his *Sicilian* majeſty, and *Clementia* the emperor's daughter (13).

(13) *Rain. ad. ann.* 1279. *n.* 10.

for

for *Charles* king of *Sicily*, wiſhed for nothing ſo much as his deſtruction, and the expulſion of his family from the throne of *Naples*. *Charles* had affronted his pride in rejecting with diſdain a match that he propoſed between his nephew and one of the daughters of the prince of *Salerno*; and this ſlight operated ſo ſtrongly upon his reſentment, that he engaged in the conſpiracy of *John di Procida*, which broke out in the maſſacre, known by the appellation of the *Sicilian Veſpers*, and had well-nigh terminated in the ruin of his *Sicilian* majeſty[o].

The emperor inveſts his ſon Albert *with the duchy of* Auſtria, &c. A. D. 1283.

THE emperor ſtill reſided in *Auſtria* or *Stiria*, inſenſibly preparing the people of theſe provinces for becoming ſubjects to his family: he granted privileges to the clergy, beſtowed new dignities upon the noblemen, diminiſhed the taxes, built and repaired public edifices, and, in a word, behaved with ſuch generoſity and moderation, as won their hearts, and they unanimouſly demanded a prince of the imperial houſe. In conſequence of this agreeable requeſt, he founded the *German* princes, and finding them favourably diſpoſed towards him and his family, convoked a diet at *Augſburg*, where his ſon *Albert* received the inveſtiture of *Auſtria*, *Stiria*, *Carniola*, and the march of the *Vinides*: but this ceremony was not performed until *Rodolphus* had obtained the conſent of *Albert* duke of *Saxony*, who had more weight in the diet than any other nobleman of *Germany*. At the ſame aſſembly *Rodolphus* the emperor's ſecond ſon was inveſted with *Suabia*, which had devolved to the emperor upon the death of *Conradin*, who left no iſſue; and *Carinthia*, with the march of *Treviſano*, was beſtowed upon the count of *Tyrol*[p] (C).

IMMEDIATELY

---

[o] See the Hiſtory of Naples.

[p] DUMONT. Corp. Diplom. tom. i. part i. p. 247.

(C) The ceremonial of taking poſſeſſion of this duchy is ſo ſingular, that we ſhall deſcribe it for the entertainment of the reader. Near the town of *St. Voit*, in a pleaſant valley, are the ruins of an old town, the name of which is not known: in the neighbourhood of theſe is a piece of marble ſet upright, and upon this ſtands a peaſant of a certain family, which has an hereditary right to take that ſtation. On his right hand is a black meagre bullock, on his left a lean mare, and all around him a crowd of peaſants and other people. Then the prince, environed by his officers, advances with the ſtandards and marks of principality. Count *Goritz*, who is marſhal of the court, goes firſt, with twelve ſmall ſtandards, and is followed by

IMMEDIATELY after the diet, the emperor marched into *Alſace*, to the aſſiſtance of the biſhop of *Baſil*, from whom the count *de Montbelliard* had taken the caſtle of *Porentrui*, which *Rodolphus* in perſon beſieged, and reſtored to the right owner; then he appeaſed ſome quarrels which had produced a civil war among the inhabitants of *Mulhauſen*, and coſt their neighbours abundance of blood. But, notwithſtanding all the care and induſtry he exerted in re-eſtabliſhing peace and tranquility through the towns of *Germany*, the ſpirit of diſcord reigned in many cities, and even poſſeſſed the churches and religious communities. There was ſcarce a pariſh which did not feel the miſeries of civil war. The different proceſſions engaged each other in the ſtreets: canons fought with their own biſhops, and the burghers, as well as noblemen, decided the moſt trivial diſpute by ſingle combat. Nay, this abſurd cuſtom prevailed with ſuch rage and barbarity, that it contributed as much as all the other wars to the depopulation of the empire.

ABOUT this period the pope uſed all his endeavours to execute the project for a cruſade, which had been formed by *Gregory* X. and even began to levy through all the countries

---

by all the magiſtrates in their formalities, while the prince himſelf appears in the habit of a ſhepherd. He is no ſooner perceived by the peaſant on the ſtone, than he exclaims in the *Sclavonian* tongue, "Who is "he that comes with ſuch a "magnificent train?" He is anſwered, "It is the prince of "the country." The peaſant aſks again, "Is he an equitable "judge, zealous for the good "of his country? Is he of a "liberal diſpoſition? Does he "deſerve to be honoured? Is "he an obſerver and defender "of the catholic religion?" Being anſwered in the affirmative, "I deſire to know, cries "he, by what right he comes "to take my place?" Then the count *de Gorits* exclaims, "The favour is purchaſed of "thee for ſixty deniers: theſe "beaſts are thine: thou ſhalt "have the cloaths the prince "now wears, and thy family "ſhall be exempted from "taxes." Then the prince approaching, receives a box on the ear from the peaſant, who exhorts him to be a good judge. So ſaying, he gives him his place, and carries off the bullock and the mare; the prince mounts the ſtone, brandiſhes his ſword, promiſes to judge equitably, goes to hear maſs, quits his paſtoral garb for apparel more ſuitable to his quality, entertains the company, and returns to the ſtone, where he hears ſome cauſes, and receives homage for the vacant fiefs (14).

(14) *Æn. Sylv. C. de Statu Europæ.*

Diet at Wirtzburg.

Irruption of the Cumani *into* Hungary. A. D. 1285.

of Chriſtendom, the tythes which had been granted for this purpoſe by the council at *Lyons*. *Rodolphus* convoked a diet at *Wirtzburg* to deliberate on this ſubject, and was not diſpleaſed to find all the princes, eccleſiaſtic as well as ſecular, averſe to this impoſition. Indeed his holineſs could not have choſen a more improper ſeaſon for carrying this deſign into execution. The emperor was intirely ingroſſed by the meaſures he took to aggrandize his family, and eſtabliſh his power. *Peter* III. of *Arragon* was employed in ſupporting his claim to *Sicily*; *Caſtile* was harraſſed by a civil war, on the death of *Alphonſo*; *Italy* was divided by a quarrel that raged between the *Genoeſe* and *Piſans*; the pope himſelf could hardly contain the *Romans* and ſubjects of the eccleſiaſtical ſtate within the bounds of their duty; and *Hungary* was laid waſte by the *Cumani*, a ſavage people, inhabiting part of *Walachia* and *Moldavia*, who poured like a deluge every year into *Hungary*, preciſely about the time of harveſt, and lived with their families and flocks until they had conſumed all the fruits of the earth, and all the ſubſtance the country afforded; then they retired to their own habitations. Theſe incurſions were repeated for ſeveral ſeaſons, and the *Hungarians*, quite diſpirited under the government of *Ladiſlaus* III. a weak effeminate prince, till at length they derived courage from deſpair, and prevailed upon their monarch to lead them againſt the enemy. He accordingly levied an army, and took poſſeſſion of the hills of *Krapatz*, by which the *Cumani* uſually entered the kingdom; there waiting for a proper opportunity, attacked them, while they were engaged in the defiles, with ſuch fury and unexpected reſolution, that the greateſt part of them were cut in pieces, and their king *Oldamer* obliged to retreat with the utmoſt precipitation: however, he ſoon returned with a reinforcement of *Tartars*, and penetrating as far as *Peſth*, deſtroyed the whole country with fire and ſword [q].

Honorius IV. who about this time ſucceeded *Martin* in the papacy, began his reign by declaring one *Pinzivello Fleſea*, a *Genoeſe*, vicar of the empire in *Italy*, and his office was confirmed to him by the emperor, who had no inclination to quarrel with the *Roman* ſee: this vicar, however, behaved with ſuch inſolence and indiſcretion as attracted the hatred and contempt of the *Tuſcans*; ſo that there was a neceſſity for diveſting him of his dignity, and *Rodolphus* appointed in his room *Henry Crodeur*, biſhop of *Baſil*, his own chancellor, a nomination which was approved by the pope, in conſideration of the emperor's relinquiſhing all the rights the empire ſtill retained upon the exarchate of *Ravenna* [r].

---

[q] Bonfin, Dec. ii. lib. viii.

His reaſon for declining the journey to Rome.

ALTHOUGH *Martin* and his predeceſſors had often invited *Rodolphus* to come and receive the imperial crown, he would never go to *Rome*; but to thoſe who preſſed him to that journey, he uſed to repeat the fable of the fox, who refuſed to go and viſit the ſick lion, becauſe he perceived the footſteps of a great many animals who went thither, but none of thoſe who came back. In the ſame manner the emperor obſerved that many of his predeceſſors had gone to *Italy*, but that they ſeldom, if ever, returned, without the loſs either of their rights or authority [s]. He therefore contented himſelf with ſending his chancellor into *Italy*, with power to receive, in his name, the homage and allegiance of the imperial towns, but they refuſed to take the oaths to a commiſſary; ſo that one would have thought *Rodolphus* ſhould have reduced them to their duty by force: but being in no condition to take this ſtep, he had recourſe to the method of accommodation, and was the firſt emperor who ſold theſe privileges and immunities which they have ſince enjoyed. The city of *Lucca* paid but twelve thouſand crowns, thoſe of *Florence*, *Genoa*, and *Bologna*, paid but ſix thouſand each, on condition, nevertheleſs, that they ſhould ſtill preſerve their fidelity to the empire, of which they were members [t]. This conduct not a little tarniſhed the reputation of *Rodolphus*, who, in the ſequel, was looked upon as an avaritious prince, who turned every thing to ready money (D).

A. D. 1286.

Sells his juriſdiction over ſome of the Italian *cities.*

Orders the German

HE ordained, with the conſent of the ſtates, that the *German* language only ſhould be uſed in all proceedings at law,

---

[r] BARRE, tom. vi. p. 209.

[s] SPOND. Contin. BARRE, tom. i. p. 364.

[t] MACH. Hiſt. de Fir. lib. i. SIGON. de Regn. Ital. l. xx. in fin. ex Blondo. Plat. Sabell. Trith. KRANTZ. Nauc. Cuſpin.

(D) *Lucenſis*, who was an eye-witneſs of theſe tranſactions, affirms in chronic. MS. that *Rodolphus*, in the year 1283, ſent his vice-chancellor into *Italy*, of whom many *Tuſcan* cities purchaſed their liberties, and that in 1288, another chancellor, called *Princevalles*, ſold the emperor's juriſdiction to the inhabitants of *Lucca*, for the ſum ſpecified above; and that ſeveral cities redeemed themſelves: but there is no mention made of *Florence*, the citizens of which deny that their liberties were purchaſed either from *Princevalles* or the emperor (15).

(15) *Spond. cont. Bar. tom.* i. *p.* 405.

Language to be uſed in law proceedings.

and in the diets, that every perſon might underſtand in his mother tongue the affairs in which his intereſt was concerned. In the ſame language alſo, he ordered the firſt conſtitution of the empire to be publiſhed, relating to every thing that was to be mutually obſerved between the eccleſiaſtics and ſecular princes and ſtates, as well as the adminiſtration of juſtice, and the policy and ſubordination eſtabliſhed among the vaſſals and ſubjects of the empire [u].

The pope's legate holds a council at Wirtzburg.

A. D. 1287.

THE emperor's chancellor, whom the pope had created archbiſhop of *Mentz*, returned to *Germany*, loaded with gold and ſilver, and accompanied by a legate called *John Buccamali*, biſhop of *Tuſculum*, who held a council at *Wirtzburg*, where he publiſhed regulations to prevent diſorders among the clergy, and demanded, in the pope's name, one fourth of the income of all benefices for the term of four years. This exaction was ſtrenuouſly oppoſed by the archbiſhops of *Cologne* and *Triers*, and particularly by *Conrad* biſhop of *Toul*, who expatiated upon the miſchiefs which had been entailed upon the empire by ſuch legations, and proteſted aloud, in the name of the *German* biſhops, againſt every thing that ſhould be done in the aſſembly in favour of the pope's demand. Theſe remonſtances involved the council in ſuch confuſion and tumult, that the legate's nephew and another *Roman* nobleman loſt their lives, and *Buccamali* himſelf, who eſcaped with great difficulty, excommunicated the biſhop of *Toul*, as a perſon refractory to the orders of the holy ſee, and a perturbator of the public peace [x].

The abbot of St. Gall *is humbled.*

THE council being finiſhed, the emperor ſent his ſon *Rodolphus* to reduce a number of freebooters who had made an irruption into *Swiſſerland*, while his eldeſt ſon *Albert* beſieged the town of *Weill*, which was ſupported in its rebellion by *William* abbot of *St. Gall*. Both expeditions were attended with ſucceſs; the banditti were deſtroyed, the town ſurrendered, and the abbot was obliged to ſubmit to the emperor's deciſion, touching the privileges of his abbey. Then the young *Rodolphus* turned his arms againſt the town of *Lauterburg*, which had revolted in conſequence of his endeavours to diveſt it of its antient privileges, and his father coming to his aſſiſtance, the place was beſieged and obliged to ſurrender at diſcretion. But he did not meet with the ſame ſucceſs in his war with *Anſelmo* lord of *Rapolſtein*, againſt whom he ſent a body of troops, becauſe he refuſed to divide his lands with his brother and nephew, in obedience to the

Lauterburg *deprived of its privileges, and the troubles of* Alſace *appeaſed.*

---

[u] AVENT. ann. Boior. p. 567, & ſeq. Ann. Suev. Cruſ. part iii. l. iii. c. 1.

[x] FUGG. l. i. c. 15.

emperor's decree. The imperial troops were defeated, and *Anſelmo* took ſeveral towns and fortreſſes, proceeding with ſuch rapidity in his conqueſts, that the whole province of *Alſace* was filled with the terror of his name; until the emperor, in perſon, arrived with a ſtrong body of forces, and put an end to the war by an accommodation [y]. *Rodolphus* having in a great meaſure quelled the troubles of the empire, enjoyed the ſatisfaction of ſeeing his daughter *Judith* married to *Winceſlaus* king of *Bohemia*, who, before the ceremony was performed, renounced by a ſolemn oath all his pretenſions to the duchies of *Auſtria* and *Stiria*, as well as to the other fiefs belonging to the ſucceſſion of *Frederic*, ſurnamed *The Warlike*, and the emperor, to whom this advantageous match could not but be very agreeable, confirmed by patent the honorary poſt of cup-bearer attached to the crown of *Bohemia*.

The emperor's daughter is married to the king of Bohemia.

A. D. 1290.

Diet at Erfort.

Diſputes about the ſucceſſion to the crown of Hungary.

THIS affair being conſummated, *Rodolphus* convoked a general aſſembly of the princes at *Erfort*, where the famous quarrel touching the ſucceſſion of the landgraviate of *Thuringia*, was terminated, to the ſatisfaction of all parties, by a diviſion, in conſequence of which *Thuringia*, properly ſo called, remained in the hands of *Albert*, ſon of *Henry the Illuſtrious*, marquis of *Miſnia*, and the weſtern part, diſtinguiſhed by the name of *Heſſe*, devolved to the poſterity of *Henry* duke of *Brabant* [z]. But the chief deliberations of this diet turned upon a diſpute of much greater conſequence. *Ladiſlaus* III. king of *Hungary*, having been killed by the *Cumani*, his kingdom was claimed by three competitors; namely, *Charles Martel* of Sicily, the nephew of *Ladiſlaus* by his ſiſter *Mary*, *Andrew* the *Venetian*, grandſon of king *Andrew*, and *Rodolphus*, who pretended that *Hungary* was a fief of the empire. *Nicholas* IV. who had ſucceeded *Honorius* in the papacy, ſent a legate into *Germany*, to declare to the emperor that *Hungary* belonged to the church of *Rome*, and to forbid all perſons whatever to interfere in any ſhape with the pretenſions of the holy ſee. Notwithſtanding this prohibition, *Andrew* the *Venetian* took poſſeſſion of the throne; and, when the pope afterwards, by the hands of a legate, beſtowed the crown upon *Charles Martel*, the emperor proteſted againſt the coronation, and beſtowed the inveſtiture of *Hungary* upon his own ſon *Albert*; but next year he renounced his pretenſions in favour of *Charles*, who married his daughter *Clementia*, according to the treaty formerly concluded between him and the king of *Sicily* [a].

---

[y] BARRE, tom. vi. p. 225.

[z] Apud MENKEN, tom. ii. p. 491.

Rodolphus *marches againſt* **Otho** *count* **Palatine** *of* **Burgundy.**

AFTER the diet at *Erfort*, *Rodolphus* took the field againſt *Otho* count *Palatine* of *Burgundy*, the declared enemy of the empire, who had taken the oath of allegiance to *Philip the Fair* king of *France*, and been formerly put to the ban of the empire, for that inſtance of apoſtacy. *Rodolphus* had defeated him in a pitched battle, and compelled him to ſue for peace, which was granted : but now, being joined by the count *de Montbelliard*, he renewed the war, and the emperor marching againſt him, at the head of twenty thouſand men, made himſelf maſter of *Montbelliard*, ravaged the country, and undertook the ſiege of *Beſançon* (E). But he was ſo hampered for want of proviſions, that he liſtened to terms of accommodation, and a treaty was concluded at *Baſil*, on condition that *Otho* and his allies ſhould pay the expence of the war, and do homage to the emperor, who, on his part, ſhould diſcharge them of all ſentences and decrees of proſcription.

ALL the malecontent princes of the empire being reduced to order, *Rodolphus* reſolved to extirpate ſome formidable bodies of banditti, who infeſted the provinces of *Franconia*, *Suabia*, and *Thuringia* ; and with this view ſent detachments of troops to diſlodge them from their receſſes and retreats: theſe in a little time freed the country from the oppreſſion under which it had groaned for many years, and took nine-and-twenty of their chiefs, whom the emperor ordered to be tried and beheaded, although they belonged to the beſt families of the province. Nay, ſuch was the zeal of this prince for the eſtabliſhment of tranquility in the empire, that underſtanding juſtice was very partially adminiſtered in the remote provinces, he appointed extraordinary judges to make a minute inquiry into all malverſations of that kind, and ordered them to puniſh the delinquents upon the ſpot, according to their demerits, of what rank and quality ſoever they might be. By this expedient he not only laid a reſtraint upon thoſe who thought they could ſhelter themſelves from juſtice, under the ſhadow of their wealth and intereſt, but at the ſame time filled his own coffers with the fines which were exacted from the guilty [b].

---

[a] VILLANI, lib. vii. c. 134.

(E) While he was employed in the ſiege of *Beſançon*, ambaſſadors arrived in his camp from the king of *France*, giving him to underſtand, that, if he would not raiſe the ſiege, he would march to the aſſiſtance of the duke of *Burgundy*: in anſwer to this meſſage *Rodolphus* ſaid, “ Let him come ; we ſhall wait “ and receive him with open “ arms : he ſhall feel and own “ that we have not come hither “ to dance and make merry ; “ and know by experience how “ eaſy it is to give law with “ the ſword (16).”

(16) *Avent. ann. Boior, lib.* vii. *p.* 571.

The princes refuſe to elect his ſon king of the Romans.

Rodolphus, after having reigned eighteen years, finding himſelf exhauſted and indiſpoſed, convoked a diet at *Frankfort*, where he demanded, that the imperial crown ſhould be ſecured to his ſon *Albert* duke of *Auſtria*, by creating him king of the *Romans*; but the princes excuſed themſelves from complying with this requeſt, on pretence that the empire could not maintain two kings at once. Chagrined at this refuſal (F), he repaired to *Straſburg*, from whence he ſet out for *Spire*, ſaying he would go and pay a viſit to the deceaſed emperors. This he actually performed, ſooner, perhaps, than he expected; for, being taken ill at *Germerſheim*, he died in the 73d year of his age; and, his body being carried to *Spire*, was interred in the great church, together with the reſt of the emperors [c].

He dies at Germerſheim.

A.D. 1291.

His iſſue.

By his firſt wife *Ann*, daughter of *Albert* count *Hocberg*, whoſe dowry was the greateſt part of the landgraviate of *Alſace*, he had ſeven ſons and as many daughters; but of the firſt none remained, except *Albert* duke of *Auſtria*, and *Rodolphus* duke of *Suabia* and landgrave of *Alſace*. The daughters were *Jutta* or *Judith*, wife of *Wenceſlaus* king of *Bohemia*; *Clementia*, married to *Charles* king of *Hungary*; *Matilda*, wife of *Lewis* count palatine; *Agnes*, eſpouſed by *Albert* duke of *Saxony*; *Hedrige*, married to *Otho* marquis of *Brandenburg*; *Catherine*, wife of *Otho* duke of *Bavaria*; and *Eupheme*, who was a nun [d].

and character.

Thus died *Rodolphus*, on his birth-day, in the ſeventy-third year of his age, and the eighteenth of his reign, a prince, renowned for his valour, ſagacity, and love of juſtice, who, by his ſole courage and conduct, extricated the empire from miſery and confuſion, and reſtored it to the fruition of peace, policy, and riches. He was extremely frank and obliging, plain in his dreſs, and very much addicted to pleaſantry (G). His ſtature was tall and thin, his head ſmall, his complexion pale, his noſe remarkably long, and hair ſcanty.

---

[b] Variloq. Erfardian. p. 490.

[c] Barre, t. vi. p. 240. Annal. de l'Emp. t. i. p. 369.

[d] Barre, ubi ſup.

(F) This chagrin co-operated with his grief for the death of his ſon *Rodolphus*, which happened a few months before this tranſaction. That prince left his wife big with child of a ſon, who was called *John*, and afterwards murdered his uncle *Albert* king of the *Romans*, to whom he owed his education (9).

(9) *Struv. Period.* 9

(G) Two deputies of a certain town, having one day waited upon him to remonſtrate upon the neceſſities of his fellow-citizens, he liſtened with great attention to what they ſaid, and obſerving that the beard of one was black and his head grey, while the other's head was black and his beard grey, he aſked the reaſon of theſe uncommon phænomena: when the firſt replied, "My beard is grown grey ſooner than the hair of my head, becauſe my chief concern hath always centered in my mouth." And the reaſon which the other gave, was, that as the hair of his head was older than that of his beard, ſo it was, of conſequence, ſooner grey (1).

A merchant having once complained to him of an inn-keeper of *Nuremberg*, who refuſed to refund a ſum of money which he had depoſited in his hands, the emperor, tho' the defendant could not be convicted, took an opportunity ſome days after, when he came with ſome other deputies of the city upon buſineſs, to praiſe his hat, and propoſe an exchange; accordingly, he no ſooner received the inn-keeper's hat, than he ſent it as a token to his wife, with a meſſage in her huſband's name, deſiring ſhe would deliver to the bearer the money which the merchant had left in his hands. The ſtratagem ſucceeded: the wife ſent the purſe, which was reſtored to the rightful owner, and the inn-keeper condemned to pay a large fine (2).

Such was his affability and obliging demeanour, that while he was no more than count of *Habſburg*, and engaged in a war againſt the biſhop and city of *Baſil*, ſupported by the abbot of *St. Gall*, finding himſelf unequal to ſuch powerful antagoniſts, he went one day to dine with the abbot, without giving the leaſt previous notice of his intention, and found means over the glaſs, not only to detach the abbot from the adverſe party, but alſo to engage him on his ſide (3).

With regard to his moderation in dreſs, it was ſo remarkable, that, when *Ottocarus* king of *Bohemia* came to do him homage, in the moſt magnificent apparel, *Rodolphus* was clad in a coarſe grey coat (4).

---

(1) *Heiſs Hiſt. l.* ii. (2) *Ibid.* (3) *Cuſpinian de Imp.* (4) *Ibid.*

Interregnum

Interregnum of Nine Months.

A.D. 1291.

The noblemen of Auſtria *and* Stiria *revolt against duke* Albert.

DURING the interregnum, which laſted nine months, the empire was expoſed to ſeveral domeſtic diſturbances. *Conrad*, biſhop of *Straſburg*, by force of arms, reduced the town of *Colmar*, which ſet up for independency, and compelled the inhabitants to take the oath of allegiance to his brother *Frederic de Lichtemberg*. The noblemen of *Auſtria* and *Stiria* were extremely diſguſted at the adminiſtration of duke *Albert*, who, inſtead of indulging them like his father, began to govern with great rigour, and lay them under ſuch reſtrictions and impoſitions, that they exclaimed loudly againſt his conduct, and even taxed him with the deſign of enſlaving his ſubjects. Nor was their reſentment limited to complaints only; they entered into an aſſociation, which was ſupported by the kings of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, *Otho* duke of *Bavaria*, and *Conrad* of *Saltzbourg*, on condition of their being rewarded with part of the ſpoil; and, having revolted openly, took the field with theſe their allies. *Albert*, finding it would be a difficult taſk to reduce them by force of arms, publiſhed a manifeſto, in which he promiſed to re-eſtabliſh the government upon the old footing, and put the noblemen and people in poſſeſſion of their antient privileges, provided they would return to their duty. This declaration had great weight with the malecontents; and by the mediation of *Lewis* count palatine of the *Rhine*, firſt a truce was agreed to, and then peace was concluded, to the ſatisfaction of all parties [d].

Diſputes about the ſucceſſion of the duchy of Limbourg.

BUT this difference did not produce ſuch ſerious conſequences as thoſe that attended the diſpute between the pretenders to the ſucceſſion of *Valeran* III. duke of *Limbourg*, who had died in the reign of *Rodolphus*, leaving one only daughter, called *Hermengarde*, married to *Renaud* count *Guelderland*. This lady likewiſe dying without iſſue, *Adolphus*, count *de Bergue*, who was her couſin, diſputed the ſucceſſion with her huſband, who inſiſted upon keeping poſſeſſion of *Limbourg* during his natural life. *Adolphus*, finding himſelf too weak to cope with ſuch a powerful antagoniſt, ceded his right, in conſideration of a large ſum of money, to *John* duke of *Brabant*, who reſolved to confirm his purchaſe by force of arms, and put himſelf at the head of an army for that purpoſe. *Renaud* was no ſooner appriſed of his deſign, than he engaged in an alliance with the archbiſhop of *Cologn*, the counts of *Luxemburg*, *Cleves*, *Juliers*, *Naſſau*, and ſeveral other noblemen, who joined their forces near *Aix la Chapelle*, and both ſides commenced hoſtilities without further heſitation. When the armies were in ſight of each other, and juſt ready to engage, ſome noblemen, who were neutral, propoſed that the diſpute ſhould be decided by the arbitration of the counts of *Flanders* and *Hainault*. The propoſal was embraced by the competitors, and the arbiters, having conſidered the caſe with due deliberation, pronounced, that the count of *Guelderland* ſhould enjoy the duchy for his life, and that the reverſion ſhould be veſted in the duke of *Brabant*.

---

[d] BARRE, ubi ſup.

THIS ſentence, equitable as it was, diſguſted both parties; and before any other ſteps could be taken for an accommodation, the count of *Guelderland* made over his right to *Henry* of *Luxemburg*, who was deſcended from the dukes of *Limbourg*, and actually the next male heir of that duchy. Then both parties, with their allies, had recourſe to arms. Several ſkirmiſhes were fought with various ſucceſs, the friends of the count of *Guelderland* made an unſucceſsful attempt upon *Maeſtricht*, and ravaged the territory of *Dalem*; the duke of *Brabant*, paſſing the *Meuſe*, laid waſte part of the duchy of *Limbourg*; and at length the two armies meeting at *Woringen*, a fortreſs between *Cologn* and *Nuits*, belonging to the archbiſhop of *Cologn*, a very obſtinate battle enſued, in which *Henry* of *Luxemburg* and his brother loſt their lives, after having performed miracles of courage, the archbiſhop of *Cologn*, the counts of *Naſſau*, *Juliers*, and *Guelderland*, were taken priſoners, and the duke of *Brabant* obtained a complete victory, in conſequence of which he got quiet poſſeſſion of *Limbourg*. This acquiſition was confirmed to him by *Henry* IV. of *Luxemburg*, afterwards emperor, who, ſoon after his father's untimely death, married the duke of *Brabant*'s eldeſt daughter; and after this marriage the dukes of *Brabant* and the counts of *Luxemburg* always lived in the greateſt harmony and friendſhip [e].

The duke of Brabant *obtains a ſignal victory at* Woringen.

ADOLPHUS.

SEVEN or eight months after the deceaſe of *Rodolphus*, the princes of the empire aſſembled at *Frankfort*, in order to elect a new chief; and as it was grown into a cuſtom, to give the preference to the family of the laſt emperor, their votes were ſollicited for *Albert* duke of *Auſtria*; but *Gerhard*, elector of *Mentz*, by artful inſinuations to each of them in private, obtained their promiſes ſeparately to adhere to his nomination, and were not a little aſtoniſhed to hear him propoſe his own kinſman, *Adolphus* of *Naſſau* [f]; whom, however, they could not in honour reject (H). He was accordingly proclaimed emperor, and tho' he poſſeſſed ſome of thoſe qualifications which conſtitute a great prince, he was not rich enough to ſupport the imperial dignity.

---

[e] Hiſt. Luxemb. t. v. I 43.

Adolphus *of* Naſſau *elected emperor.*

THE beginnings of his reign were fortunate, inaſmuch as he governed the empire by the advice of *Boemond*, archbiſhop of *Triers*, a prelate of great virtue and capacity, who perſuaded the emperor to leave all thoſe in poſſeſſion of their employments, who had ſerved his predeceſſor with fidelity, although ſome of them had connexions with his rival, *Albert* duke of *Auſtria*: nor had he the leaſt cauſe to repent of the confidence he repoſed in their honour.

A. D. 1292.

As his natural genius inclined him to war, and he was deſirous of employing thoſe princes who were averſe to his elevation, he convoked a diet at *Spire*, and propoſed that

Declares war against

---

[f] Cuſp. in Adol. Aven. Ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 578.

(H) *Adolphus* was the ſon of *Walrab* count *de Naſſau*, and the pooreſt prince that ever aſcended the imperial throne; for all his poſſeſſions were limited to the lordſhips of *Iſtein*, *Wiſbaden*, and *Weilbourg*, in the county of *Naſſau*; but he was reckoned the greateſt warrior of his time. He had defeated *John* I. duke of *Brabant*, in five pitched battles; but in the ſixth, which was that of *Woringen*, he was taken priſoner, and carried before the duke, who aſked him, with a contemptuous ſneer, *who he was?* "I am (ſaid he) the count *de Naſſau*, a poor lord of the empire; but who art thou?" "*John* (replied the duke) againſt whom thou haſt waged a moſt obſtinate war, and ſlain five of his beſt generals, in as many ſevere battles." "I wonder (cried *Adolphus*) how thou thyſelf haſt eſcaped my ſword, which was whetted for thee and thee only." The duke was ſo ſtruck with his intrepidity, that he ſet him at liberty, overwhelmed him with preſents, and ſollicited his friendſhip. Nor was *Adolphus* ungrateful in the ſequel; for, when he was raiſed to the imperial throne, he not only gave him the inveſtiture of the fiefs, which the dukes of *Brabant* held of the empire, but alſo appointed him governor and ſupreme judge, in his name, thro' all the countries from the *Moſelle* to the ſea, and from the *Rhine* to *Weſtphalia* (1).

(1) *Cuſp. in Adolph. Cæſ. Trophées de Brab. l. iv.*

Otho *count palatine of* Burgundy.

war ſhould be declared againſt *Otho* count palatine of *Burgundy*, who wanted to diſmember *Franche Compte* from the empire, and become a vaſſal of the *French* king.

THIS propoſal being embraced, the archbiſhops of *Cologne* and *Mentz*, and the biſhops of *Spire* and *Baſil*, furniſhed him with troops, which at firſt took the route of *Beſançon*; but *Albert* of *Auſtria* refuſing to contribute his proportion for this war, and being ſuſpected of carrying on a correſpondence with the king of *France*, *Adolphus* marched towards *Suabia*, with intention to ſeize the fiefs which belonged to *Albert* in that province. The duke, however, came to the aſſiſtance of his vaſſals, with a body of forces, and poſted himſelf in ſuch a manner, that the emperor could not act againſt him, while the boiſterous weather that ſupervened effectually hindered him from executing his ſcheme againſt *Franche Compte*; beſides, he did not at that time chuſe to give umbrage to the king of *France*, ſo as to produce an open rupture with that monarch.

His expedition proves abortive.

THE miſcarriage of this enterprize greatly diminiſhed the reputation of *Adolphus*: moreover, being a better ſoldier than a politician, he was too much governed by the advice of his officers, and paid too little regard to that of the princes of the empire, many of whom, being diſobliged at this neglect, attached themſelves in the ſequel to the duke of *Auſtria*'s party.

Several noblemen of Alſace *revolt*;

THE emperor no ſooner quitted *Alſace*, than the biſhop of *Straſburg* put a garriſon in the fortreſs of *Ortemberg*, in order to preſerve it for the duke of *Auſtria*; and an inſurrection was raiſed in *Colmar*, by means of *Anſelmo* lord of *Rapolſtein*, who took poſſeſſion of the town with a body of troops, and renounced all allegiance to *Adolphus*. Information of this revolt being brought to the emperor, he marched into *Alſace*, ravaged the lands of *Rapolſtein*, and beſieged the city of *Colmar*, which, being reduced to great extremity, was obliged to ſurrender at diſcretion. *Anſelmo* was impriſoned for life, and all his eſtate confiſcated; and the provoſt of *Colmar*, who was his accomplice, puniſhed in the moſt ignominious manner. After the reduction of this town, he took the route of *Lower Alſace*, in order to beſiege the caſtle of *Erſtein*, the lord of which had joined the biſhop of *Straſburg* in his rebellion. The place was accordingly taken, as well as the caſtle of the count *de Wart*, remarkable for its ſtrength and ſituation; and the inhabitants of *Straſburg*, fearing that his next viſit would be to them, prevailed upon the biſhop to go and aſk pardon of the emperor, which he obtained for himſelf and his aſſociates.

and are reduced by the emperor.

ALTHOUGH *Albert* of *Auſtria* had taken the oath of fidelity to the emperor, it was very well known that he entertained an animoſity againſt him; and *Adolphus*, fearing his power and reſentment, took all the opportunities in his power to engage the friendſhip and attachment of the duke. With this view he propoſed a match between his own ſon *Gerlac* and *Albert*'s daughter; when the haughty *Auſtrian* replied, that he would conſent to the marriage, provided it could raiſe his daughter to the rank of a princeſs: but, that being impoſſible, he ſaid *Adolphus* might ſend his daughter to one of *Albert*'s ſons, whom he intended to make a prince (H).

A. D. 1293.

Adolphus *enters into an alliance with* Edward.

A WAR breaking out about this time between *France* and *England*, on account of ſome provinces claimed by each, *Edward* king of *England* ſent ambaſſadors to *Adolphus* to propoſe an alliance, and to promiſe, that, if he would reinforce him with troops againſt *France*, *Edward* would go in

---

(H) In the *German* marriages, a maiden of the firſt nobility acquired the title of princeſs, by marrying a prince; but a maiden of the lower nobleſſe has not the ſame right: ſhe does not even become a counteſs or baroneſs, by marrying a count or a baron. In caſe of ſuch an alliance, the huſband is obliged to have recourſe to the emperor, and ſollicit for his wife the honours due to his rank. If the emperor conſents, the diet of the empire muſt ratify his conſent: then the prince's wife enjoys the honours due to her huſband, and her children are declared capable of ſucceeding to the dignities and fiefs of their father. This was the caſe, in the beginning of the thirteenth century, with *John Adolphus* duke of *Saxe-Weiſſenfels*, *Albert* duke of *Saxe-Cobourg*, *George William* duke of *Zell*, and a prince of *Anhalt*.

In theſe marriages, which are ſtiled *matches of the left hand*, it is uſually ſtipulated, that the wife ſhall continue in her original condition and rank, and that the children ſhe ſhall bear ſhall have no other rank or prerogative than that of their mother. *Rodolphus* duke of *Lunenburg* cauſed his wife to be called madame *Rodolphina*, becauſe it was a *left-handed match*. *Henry* landgrave of *Thuringia*, *Erneſt* and *Edward the Fortunate*, marquiſes of *Baden*, and *Frederic Lewis* elector palatine, did not raiſe their wives to the dignity of princeſs, or demand the conſent of the emperor or diet to declare the children of theſe marriages capable of ſucceeding them in their honours and eſtates. They never make ſuch a requeſt, except when they have no children by a former match with a lady of the firſt quality, or have not made an alliance of confraternity with ſome princes of the empire (1).

(1) *Barre*, *t.* vi. *p.* 237.

king of England *againſt* France.

perſon to *Germany*, and aſſiſt him in his turn, with forces and money, to recover the kingdom of *Arles*, which *France* had wreſted from the empire. His propoſal was joyfully embraced, becauſe it was accompanied with a good round ſum of money, which enabled him to purchaſe the landgraviate of *Thuringia* and *Miſnia*, from *Albert* ſurnamed *the Depraved*, who had diſinherited his own ſons, *Frederic*, *Henry*, and *Dictmann*, out of hatred to their mother *Margaret*, daughter to *Frederic* II. [g]

His propoſal treated with contempt by Philip, *who engages the duke of* Auſtria *in his intereſt.*

Mean while he ſent ambaſſadors to demand from *Philip* king of *France* the kingdom of *Arles*, and ſome other countries which he pretended were fiefs of the empire, together with the crown of thorns that Chriſt wore; and to denounce war in caſe of a refuſal. But *Philip*, deſpiſing his impotent arrogance, diſmiſſed his ambaſſadors without an anſwer (I); and this contempt, in all probability, deterred him from proſecuting the enterprize which he had projected, for all his exploits were limited to a few ſkirmiſhes between *Theobald* count of *Pfirt*, governor of *Alſace*, and the troops of the king of *France*[h]. *Philip*, however, being informed of the league between the emperor and the king of *England*, made uſe of the ſame expedient, by engaging in his cauſe *Albert* duke of *Auſtria*, who upon this occaſion obſerved, that there was at leaſt as little diſhonour in taking ſubſidies from the king of *France*, as in being penſioner to the king of *England*. The *Engliſh* money, which *Adolphus* received, inſtead of advancing, contributed to the ruin of his affairs; for the purchaſe he had made, entailed upon him the enmity of *Dictmann*, *Henry*, and his brother *Frederic*, who were gallant princes (K), and defeated his troops upon more occaſions than one; and the count of *Pfirt* had, by his inſolent beha-

---

[g] Chron. Colm. l. ii. p. 55.

[h] Adol. Epiſt. Diff. ad Phil. & hujus Reſp. apud Leib. p. 1. Cod. Dip. p. 32.

(I) *Philip* is ſaid to have anſwered him in theſe two words, *Trop Allemund*, i. e. too much of a *German* (2).

(K) *Albert the Depraved* had married *Margaret* daughter of the emperor *Frederic* II. by whom he had three ſons, namely, *Frederic*, *Dictmann*, and *Henry*; but conceiving a diſguſt for this princeſs, he attached himſelf to *Cunegunda* of *Iſſenbourg*, and laid a ſcheme for poiſoning *Margaret*, who, being appriſed of his deſign, made her eſcape from the caſtle of *Eiſenach*; and, in bidding adieu to her children, ſeverely bit the

(2) *Vigner. Bibl. Hiſt. t.* xi. *hoc ann.*

cheek

behaviour to *Conrad*, biſhop of *Straſburg*, wholly detached that prelate from his intereſt[i]. Beſides, his beſt friends, and among the reſt the elector of *Mentz*, who had raiſed him to the empire, were incenſed, becauſe he neither gave them a ſhare of the *Engliſh* ſubſidy, nor had recourſe to their advice in his moſt important affairs. Theſe concuring motives induced the princes of the empire to engage in an aſſociation for the ſupport of *Frederic*, *Dictmann*, and *Henry*, as well as for the preſervation of their own liberty.

A.D. 1295. Adolphus *diſobliges his beſt friends;*

FREDERIC having taken poſſeſſion of the margraviate of *Miſnia*, which he inherited from his uncle, levied a body of troops, and entered *Thuringia*, in order to expell the emperor, who had already made himſelf maſter of ſeveral towns in that province; and *Adolphus*, by way of repriſal, made an irruption into *Miſnia*, took the city of *Dreſden*, together with twelve ſtrong caſtles, and pillaged every place where he met with reſiſtance. This cruel war continued for the ſpace of three years; but juſtice prevailed at laſt in favour of *Frederic* and his brothers: for *Adolphus*, notwithſtanding all his efforts, could never obtain poſſeſſion of *Thuringia*.

wages war with Frederic, Dictmann, *and* Henry, *princes of* Thuringia;

INSTEAD of endeavouring, by reforming his conduct, to efface the bad impreſſions he had made upon the minds of his people, by engaging in ſuch an unequitable enterprize, his behaviour became more and more haughty and tyrannical. He beſtowed employments upon the unworthy and debauched miniſters of his own pleaſures; and ruled with a moſt arbitrary ſway, in diametrical oppoſition to the remonſtrances of the nobles, whom he treated with inſolence and diſdain.

A.D. 1297. *renders himſelf odious to the nobles;*

---

[i] Paralip. URSP. p. 342.

cheek of *Frederic* the eldeſt, in order to imprint upon his mind the memory of his mother's wrongs: hence he derived the appellation of *Frederic with the bitten Cheek*. *Margaret* having retired to a monaſtery at *Frankfort*, her huſband lived openly with his concubine, by whom he had a ſon called *Lewis*, to whom he gave the additional name of *Apicius*. He was diſtractedly fond of this child, and reſolved to declare him his heir: but afterwards foreſeeing the oppoſition he muſt have encountered from the noblemen of the empire, as well as from his own vaſſals, he put up his fiefs to ſale, that he might give the purchaſe-money to his baſtard: but there was no bidder except the emperor, who bought them for twelve thouſand marks of ſilver (3)

(3) *Struv. Period.* 9.

who form a conſpiracy againſt him;

THESE imprudent proceedings alienated the hearts of almoſt all the princes and ſtates of the empire: the ſpirit of diſcontent diffuſed itſelf through every province of *Germany*, and a great number of noblemen, eccleſiaſtic as well as ſecular, not only declared openly againſt his mal-adminiſtration, but even formed a conſpiracy, in order to remove him from the throne. Not that he was utterly deſtitute of adherents; *Bohemond* archbiſhop of *Triers*, *Rodolphus* count palatine of the *Rhine*, and *Otho* duke of *Bavaria*, ſtill ſupported his intereſt, and furniſhed him with troops; at the head of which he took the field, and encamped at *Voigtland*, to obſerve the motions of thoſe princes who had declared themſelves his enemies; namely, *Gerhard* archbiſhop of *Mentz*, *Winceſlaus* king of *Bohemia*, *Albert* duke of *Auſtria*, the two margraves of *Brandenburg*, and the duke of *Saxony*.

digeſt articles of accuſation againſt Adolphus;

THE confederates aſſembled at *Prague* for the coronation of *Winceſlaus*, and next day deliberated upon the heads of accuſation, which might ſerve as a foundation for depoſing *Adolphus*, digeſting them into the following articles. That he had ſhamefully renounced the rights of the empire in *Italy* and *Lombardy*: that, inſtead of eſtabliſhing union and peace in the provinces of *Germany*, he had fomented a diviſion and civil war, to the deſolation of the country: that he had indiſcreetly ſquandered away the revenues of the crown, and beſtowed employments and offices of ſtate upon inexperienced and ill-intentioned perſons, to the great detriment of the *Germanic* body: that by his ſole authority he had impoſed exorbitant taxes upon the ſubjects of the empire: that he had affirmed his will was law, and, in conſequence of that maxim, ruined a great number of vaſſals: that he had received a conſiderable ſum of money from *Edward* king of *England*, on promiſe by oath to ſend ſuccours to that prince, which promiſe he had broke, tho' he kept the money: that he had ſlighted the advice of the princes, nobility, and clergy, and never conſulted them in affairs of importance, but acted wholly from his own authority: that he had connived at robberies on the highway: that he had allowed his officers to oppreſs the poor, and his ſoldiers to commit all manner of outrages: and, laſtly, that he had raviſhed a great number of wives, widows, maidens, and nuns, and put ſeveral women to death, after having ſatisfied his brutal appetite.

THE emperor's guilt, in all theſe particulars, being notorious, the princes appointed meeting of the diet at *Mentz*, in order to depoſe *Adolphus*, and elect *Albert*, who now levied an army to ſupport his pretenſions, and oppoſe whatever meaſures *Adolphus* might take to traverſe his election: at the ſame time he ſent his uncle, the count *de Hohemberg* and *Hagerlooh*, to ſollicit the pope's conſent to this depoſition; which, however, he could not obtain, with all the promiſes and preſents he laviſhed away among the members of the conſiſtory. On the contrary, his holineſs wrote an account of his refuſal to *Adolphus*, and even offered to conſecrate him emperor, if he could come to *Rome*. Mean while the count *de Hohemberg* pretended that he had ſucceeded in his commiſſion, and, at his return to *Germany*, preſented the three electors, who were *Albert*'s friends, with forged letters, containing the pope's approbation of their deſign.

ADOLPHUS, encouraged by the declaration of *Boniface* in his favour, advanced towards *Auſtria*, in order to wreſt that province from *Albert*, who marched to the banks of the *Rhine* to ſupport his friends, who intended to elevate him to the imperial throne, at the meeting of the diet in *Mentz*: they accordingly aſſembled for that purpoſe; the depoſition of *Adolphus* and election of the duke of *Auſtria* were actually performed; and *Albert* being encamped with his army without the city, the electors waited upon him, in order to notify what they had done, to wiſh him all ſort of proſperity, and to promiſe that they would aſſiſt, protect, and maintain him againſt all his enemies [k] (L).

who is depoſed.

A.D. 1298.

Albert *is elected emperor;*

ADOL-

---

[k] ÆN. Hiſt. Boem. c. xxviii. AVENT. Ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 587. Chron. Colm. P. xi. p. 58, 59.

(L) Before they proceeded to the election, they aſſembled and harangued the people upon the ſubject of their preſent deſign. Then they repaired to church, attended by a vaſt multitude, and turning towards the altar ſpoke to this effect. "Six years ago, the empire being vacant, we canonically elected *Adolphus* count *de Naſſau* king of the *Romans*, knowing at that time no perſon more worthy of that dignity. At firſt he conducted himſelf wiſely, following the advice of the moſt prudent electors and princes of his court; but, in a little time, he began to deſpiſe their advice, and liſten to the counſels of young perſons, without either ſenſe or experience: then he found himſelf deſtitute of means and friends to aſſiſt him ſincerely in bearing the burden of government. The electors, perceiving his indigence, and ſwayed by twenty other motives, have demanded the pope's conſent to depoſe him and chuſe another emperor. We are told that our envoys have obtained the conſent of his holineſs; tho' thoſe of *Adolphus* affirm the contrary. But "we, them with a ſevere tribute, and left a *Daniſh* nobleman to rule them in his abſence. The governor treated them ſo harſhly, that they began to repent heartily of having intailed ſuch ſlavery upon themſelves; and, conſpiring againſt this miniſter of arbitrary power, compelled him to fly for ſhelter into a fortreſs, where he was taken and murdered on the ſpot. Then they recalled from *England*, *John*, the ſon of *Florentius*, whom they acknowleged as count of *Holland* and *Frieſland*. He received the inveſtiture of theſe fiefs from *Adolphus*, and in a few years died at *Haarlem* without iſſue, ſo that the antient houſe of the counts of *Holland* was extinct, after it had ſubſiſted four hundred and thirty-ſeven years [m].

that antient houſe extinct.

ALBERT I.

A. D. 1298.

ALBERT I. called *the Triumphant*, on account of his generoſity and valour, and the many victories he obtained over his enemies, was likewiſe ſurnamed *the One Eyed*, becauſe he had loſt one eye by the operation of poiſon, which was given to him in his own palace at *Vienna*, about three years before he was elected emperor. Altho' he had been elected king of the *Romans* before the victory which he obtained over the emperor *Adolphus*, being apprehenſive that his election would be conteſted, becauſe the elector of *Trier* and the *Palatine* had not joined in it, he convoked the whole number at *Frankfort*, and deſired them to proceed to a new election [n]. After which they attended him to *Aix la Chapelle*, where he was crowned with great ſolemnity; and ſuch was the concourſe of people upon that occaſion, that his brother-in-law the duke of *Saxony*, and ſeveral other perſons, were ſqueezed to death in the croud.

Albert *is re-elected, and crowned at* Aix la Chapelle;

ALBERT, being thus eſtabliſhed on the throne, ſent to *Rome* to deſire that pope *Boniface* VIII. would confirm his election. That pontif, chagrined at the elevation of this prince upon the ruins of his friend *Adolphus*, refuſed for ſome time to comply with his deſire, on pretence that the electors had no authority to ſet him on the throne, without the concurrence of the pope [o]; till at length the deſire he had to be revenged on *Philip* king of *France*, being ſtronger than his reſentment againſt *Albert*, he promiſed to confirm the election of this laſt, and even made a tender to him of the crown of *France*. *Albert* thanked him for his offer; but re-

ſollicits the pope's confirmation;

---

[m] Ann. Steron. ad an. 1298. EMMIUS Rerum Friſic. Hiſt. [n] SPOND. Cont. BAR. t. x. p. 452. [o] BALÆUS, l. vi.

preſented

reſented that he could not embark in a quarrel of ſuch importance, unleſs his holineſs would aſſiſt him in carrying on he war againſt *Philip*. The pope refuſing to contribute, he project was not only laid aſide, but *Albert*, in order to anticipate the ill-offices of *Boniface*, made advances to the king of *France*, with whom he had an interview at *Vaucouleur*, where they renewed the antient leagues between the empire and *France*, and treated about the marriage of *Rodolphus*, *Albert*'s ſon, with *Blanche*, *Philip*'s daughter, which was not conſummated till next year[p].

has an interview with Philip *king of* France.

A. D. 1299.

AT this interview a treaty of alliance was concluded between the emperor and the king of *France*, by which *Albert* obliged himſelf to beſtow upon his eldeſt ſon *Rodolphus*, and his heirs for ever, as hereditary fiefs, the duchies of *Auſtria* and *Stiria*, with the lordſhips of *Carniola*, *La Marche*, and *Port-Naon:* he moreover aſſigned, as the dowry of the princeſs *Blanche*, the county of *Alſace*, and the territory of *Friburg*, to be poſſeſſed for ever by her huſband and his heirs; ſo that this ſeems to be the æra at which the duchy of *Auſtria* and the landgraviate of *Alſace* became the hereditary countries of the houſe of *Hapſburg*. Be that as it will, when the emperor convoked a diet at *Toul* to authenticate this contract, the three eccleſiaſtic electors proteſted againſt the articles of alliance; and when *Albert* ſent ambaſſadors to the pope, with an intimation of the nuptials, and a demand that his holineſs would confirm the choice which the electors had made in elevating him to the imperial throne, *Boniface* publicly declared, that the election of *Albert* was null and void, and that he ought to be treated as a murderer. Nay, after having refuſed audience to the *German* ambaſſadors, he appeared in public with a ſword by his ſide, habited like the general of an army, and affirmed that there was no other *Cæſar*, or king of the *Romans*, but the ſovereign pontif of Chriſtendom[q].

The eccleſiaſtic electors proteſt againſt the treaty of Vaucoleurs.

IN the mean time the emperor gave orders for aſſembling a diet at *Nuremberg*, on *St. Martin's-day*, at which were preſent, beſides the eccleſiaſtic electors, *Winceſlaus* king of *Bohemia*, the elector palatine, and ſeveral other princes of the empire. There his wife *Elizabeth*, daughter of the count of *Tyrol*, was crowned, and his ſon *Rodolphus* inveſted with the duchy of *Auſtria* for himſelf and his ſucceſſors. After the diet, the empreſs ſet out for *Vienna*, with duke *Rodolphus* and the princeſs, who died within the year, without iſſue by the duke of *Auſtria.*

---

[p] AVENT. Ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 588.

[q] BAILLET DEMELES de Boniface.

A. D. 1300.

Albert *engages in a war with* John D'Avenes *touching the ſucceſſion of* Holland *and* Weſt Frieſland.

About this period *Albert* was engaged in a war with *John D'Avenes,* who, as next heir to *John* count of *Holland,* lately dead, had taken poſſeſſion of his dominions, which *Albert* claimed as fiefs reverſible to the empire. After having publiſhed a manifeſto to this purpoſe, he levied an army to ſupport his pretenſions, and advanced as far as *Nimeguen* againſt *John D'Avenes,* who had aſſembled a ſtrong body of forces, with which he paſſed the river *Waal,* without being perceived; and having ſurpriſed a detachment of imperialiſts, whom he cut in pieces, ſpread ſuch an alarm among the reſt of the emperor's troops, that he was fain to decamp with great precipitation, and by haſty marches retreat to *Cologn,* where he intrenched himſelf under the ramparts of the city. There being in danger of periſhing by famine, blocked up as he was by the enemy, he employed the archbiſhop of *Cologn* to negociate a peace; which was concluded, on condition that *John D'Avenes* ſhould enjoy the counties of *Holland, Weſt Frieſland,* and *Zealand,* in conſideration of doing homage to the emperor, from whom he accordingly received the inveſtiture of theſe dominions[r].

Quarrels with the eccleſiaſtic electors.

This war being happily terminated, the emperor cauſed his ſtatutes touching the charge and function of the electors of the empire to be publiſhed and executed. As the eccleſiaſtical electors, and ſome other of the princes, had converted to their own uſe the toll and other revenues formerly appropriated to the maintenance of the emperor, he demanded that theſe impoſts ſhould be put upon their antient footing, and was anſwered, that as they inherited theſe revenues from their predeceſſors, without being queſtioned by the emperors or kings of the *Romans,* they hoped he would maintain them in theſe rights, which they could not, nor would not reſign. The emperor ſent the biſhop of *Baſil* to complain of this anſwer to the pope; and, in order to obtain a favourable audience, ſolemnly promiſed to engage in a cruſade, as he had already propoſed ſuch an expedition to the princes of Chriſtendom, provided his holineſs would enable him to defray the expence of the enterprize, by obliging the three eccleſiaſtical electors to part with the tolls and duties, which they had uſurped during the anarchy of the empire; but *Boniface* lending a deaf ear to his complaint, he reſolved to do himſelf right by force of arms. In the mean time, by the advice of his friends, he declared his diſcontent to the eccleſiaſtical electors, whom he ſummoned to appear before the ſtates and princes of the empire at *Mentz*, and anſwer to the charge that ſhould be laid againſt them.

---

[r] Antiquit. de la Gaule Belg. l. v.

A. D. 1301.

THE electors, inſtead of obeying this citation, wrote a letter to the pope, in which they repreſented *Albert* as an inſolent and ambitious tyrant, a profeſſed enemy to the clergy, and gave his holineſs to underſtand, that meaſures were taking in *Germany* for electing another king of the *Romans*. Theſe were agreeable tidings to *Boniface*, who perſecuted *Albert* with the moſt rancorous hatred. He had already refuſed the mediation of *Philip the Fair*, who attempted to reconcile him to the emperor; he had even allured *Philip*'s brother, *Charles de Valois*, into *Italy*, with a promiſe of raiſing him to the imperial throne; and now he ſent an anſwer to the letter of the eccleſiaſtical electors, in which, after having ſtigmatized the emperor as a rebel; "We command you (added he) to ſignify by public proclamation to "*Albert* the pretended king of the *Romans*, that he muſt, "in ſix months, appear before us, by his envoys, ſufficiently "authorized and inſtructed, to juſtify himſelf, if he can, "of the imputation of treaſon againſt king *Adolphus*, as well "as to avert the ſentence of excommunication, which he "has incurred by perſecuting the holy ſee and other churches, "and to undergo ſuch penance as we ſhall preſcribe. We "ſtrictly forbid the electors, vaſſals, and ſubjects of the em"pire, to acknowlege him as king of the *Romans*; we re"leaſe them from their oath of allegiance, and will proceed "againſt him and his adherents, ſpiritually and temporally, "as we ſhall judge moſt expedient."

The pope forbids the ſubjects of the empire to acknowlege Albert.

In conſequence of this order, the three archbiſhops retired to the dominions of the elector palatine, as if he had been a competent judge, and preferred a formal complaint againſt the emperor for having cruelly ſlain his predeceſſor. The count, who hated *Albert*, ordered a formal information to be taken; and upon the frivolous accuſations of the eccleſiaſtical electors, and a few other perſons of diſtinction, he pronounced him convicted of the crimes laid to his charge, and conſequently unworthy of the empire (N).

The eccleſiaſtic electors complain of him to the elector palatine, and are obliged to ſubmit.

THIS

(N) This right of the elector palatine has been ſince confirmed by the golden bull, in theſe words. "*Although, by very ancient cuſtom, the emperor, or king of the* Romans, *is obliged to anſwer in all caſes inſtituted againſt them before the count palatine of the* Rhine, *arch ſteward, prince elector of the holy empire, the ſaid count palatine, however, ſhall not exerciſe that juriſdiction, except in the imperial court, where the emperor, or king of the* Romans, THIS ſtep, however, they were not allowed to take with impunity; for *Albert*, incenſed at their preſumption, no longer heſitated in declaring war againſt them; and although the marquis of *Brandenburg*, the duke of *Saxony*, and the king of *Bohemia*, remained neuter in this conteſt, the majority of the princes eſpouſed the cauſe of the emperor, and he ſoon ſaw himſelf at the head of a very formidable army, with which he ravaged the archbiſhopric of *Mentz*, took the ſtrong town of *Bingen* upon the *Rhine* by aſſault, compelled the three prelates to ſue for peace, which they obtained at the expence of parting with the toll and duties which occaſioned this rupture; but the elector palatine was obliged to purchaſe his pardon with a conſiderable ſum of money *. A.D. 1302.

The emperor invades Bohemia;

ALBERT's next expedition was againſt *Winceſlaus*, king of *Bohemia*, who had not only aſcended the throne of *Poland*, after having defeated his competitor *Uladiſlaus Locticus*, but alſo received a deputation from the noblemen of *Hungary*, with a tender of the crown, become vacant by the death of *Andrew* the *Venetian*. Poſſeſſed as he was of two crowns already, he recommended his ſon *Winceſlaus* to the *Hungarians*, who changed the young prince's name to *Ladiſlaus*, and crowned him at *Alba Regalis*, to the no ſmall mortification of the pope, who proteſted againſt his election as an enterprize againſt the holy ſee, to which he ſaid the kingdom of *Hungary* appertained. Nay, he even affected to decide the affair in a judicial manner, and adjudged the crown to *Mary* queen of *Naples*, wife of *Charles* II. and ſiſter of *Ladiſlaus* III. king of *Hungary*. This princeſs made over her title to her grandſon *Charobert*, whoſe intereſt the emperor eſpouſed from a double motive: for the young prince was his own nephew, and *Winceſlaus* his profeſſed enemy; beſides, he had an eye to the ſilver mines of *Bohemia*, part of which he had already demanded without ſucceſs. Theſe co-operating conſiderations induced him to renew his old quarrels with *Winceſlaus*. He aſſembled a formidable army of *Auſtrians*, *Hungarians*, *Bulgarians*, and *Cumani*, which having divided into two bodies, he detached the one to ravage *Moravia*, and marched at the head of the other into *Bohemia*, where his ſoldiers committed the moſt cruel outrages, without diſtinction of age, ſex, or condition, and made a fruitleſs attempt upon the mines, from which they were repulſed with great loſs. Notwithſtanding this check, *Winceſlaus* being diſappointed of a reinforcement which he expected from *Otho* marquis of *Brandenburg*, and finding his forces greatly inferior to thoſe of *Albert*, he permitted the miners to poiſon the water in the neighbourhood of the imperial camp; ſo that the greateſt part of the *Auſtrian* troops, which uſed theſe waters, periſhed in the utmoſt torture, and the emperor, having moreover loſt almoſt all his whole cavalry, was obliged to retreat into *Auſtria* with the miſerable remains of his army [t].

---

* SPOND. Cont. BAR. t. i. p. 477. AVENT. c. l. n. 10.

Romans, *ſhall be perſonally preſent, and in no other place* (6).

This article, however, ought not to be underſtood of cauſes inſtituted againſt the emperor as ſovereign, but of thoſe only in which he may be involved as a private perſon; ſuch as civil cauſes, which were naturally tried before the count palatine, becauſe he was of old the ordinary and ſupreme judge at the emperor's court. No prince, who had the leaſt regard to juſtice, would refuſe to anſwer complaints of that kind, before the tribunal which they themſelves had erected for that purpoſe; or ſcruple to leave the courſe of juſtice free in thoſe diſputes of law which they might have with private perſons.

(6) *Bull. Aur. c.* 8.

and is obliged to retreat with loſs.

WHILE the reconciliation ſubſiſted between *Philip the Fair* and *Boniface*, this laſt refuſed to acknowlege *Albert* as king of the *Romans*, and even raiſed up a rival againſt him, in the perſon of *Charles de Valois*; but now that he had quarrelled with the king of *France*, who had granted an aſylum to his enemies, the cardinals *Colonnæ*, he made advances to the emperor, confirmed his election, invited him to come and receive the imperial crown at *Rome*, and exhorted him to declare war againſt *Philip*, whom by this time he had excommunicated. But, before he granted his bull of confirmation to *Albert*, he exacted very humbling conditions from that prince, who ſent him letters patent dated at *Nuremberg*, in which he acknowleged that the empire had been transferred by the holy ſee from the *Greeks* to the *Germans*, in the perſon of *Charlemagne*; that the right of electing a king of the *Romans* was granted, by the ſovereign pontif, to certain eccleſiaſtical and ſecular princes; and that kings and emperors received the power of the temporal ſword from the holy ſee. He likewiſe agreed to take the oath of allegiance to the pope, to perform all the promiſes made by *Rodolphus* and his predeceſſors, confirmed the conceſſions of *Lewis the Debonnair* and *Otho the Great*, and undertook to defend the rights of the holy ſee againſt all its enemies, whomſoever

A. D. 1303.

The emperor's election is confirmed by the pope;

---

[t] BARRE, t. vi. p. 317.

they might be, and declare war againſt them, at the
mand of his holineſs.

who is ſurpriſed at Anagni;

THE king of *France*, informed of the ſteps which the
had taken to engage the emperor in his intereſts, contri
ſcheme for ſeizing his perſon at *Anagni*, where he re
and this was actually executed by *William de Nogaret*
Sciara Colonna, who, at the head of three or four hu
knights, formerly in the ſervice of the count *de Valois*,
priſed the town and apprehended *Boniface*, whom they t
with great indignity; but on the fourth day of his imp
ment, during which he had been almoſt famiſhed to
the inhabitants took to their arms, under the comma
the cardinal *de Freſque*, expelled *Nogaret* and *Colonna*
ſet the pope at liberty. *Boniface* repaired immediat
Rome, where he fell ſick of chagrin for having ſuffere
indignities; and, dying, was ſucceeded by *Nicolas Bo*
cardinal biſhop of *Oſtia*, who aſſumed the name of
dict X.*

dies at Rome, *and is ſucceeded by* Benedict X.

THIS new pope, who is ſaid to have been a ſhepherd
ſeemed very well diſpoſed to maintain an intimate uni
tween the holy ſee and the empire, and even took ſom
towards effecting a reconciliation between the *Guelph*
the *Gibelines*, which laſt ſtill ſupported the emperor's
in *Tuſcany*, and ſome other provinces of *Italy*; but *B*
did not live to bring his laudable deſign to perfection;
died eleven months after his elevation, very much re
by *Albert* and the *German* princes, who hoped to re-e
the rights of the empire in *Italy*, under his pontificate

who does not long ſurvive his election.

MEAN while *Ladiſlaus*, by his miſconduct, loſt the
he had gained in *Hungary*: his vices and deba
alienated the hearts of his friends, and raiſed ſuch a ſ
animoſity againſt him, that he was obliged to lock
up in the citadel of *Buda*, from which he was rele
his father *Winceſlaus*; who dying ſoon after this
tion, he ſucceeded to the throne of *Bohemia*, and r
his former name of *Winceſlaus*: while the party of *Ch*
acquired new ſtrength every day in *Hungary*.

WHEN *Winceſlaus* the younger aſcended the throne
hemia, his conduct continued ſo irregular, that he
ſaſſinated by his own ſubjects; and, he dying withou
Henry count of *Carinthia* and *Tyrol*, the emperor'
couſin, was, in conſequence of a free election, prom
the throne. But *Albert*, on pretence of a family c
raiſed a ſtrong army, in order to put the crown on t

Albert *ſeizes the*

---

* Hiſt. des Demel. de Bonif. VIII. avec Philip. le B

of his own ſon *Rodolphus*; and *Henry*, being too weak to cope with him in the field, reſigned his pretenſions in favour of his couſin *Rodolphus*, whoſe firſt wife *Blanche* being dead, he married *Iſabella*, widow of *Winceſlaus*, in order to fix himſelf more firmly in throne. However, he did not long enjoy his good fortune; for he was ſoon after taken off by ſudden death, upon which the kingdom was divided into two factions, one of which recalled *Henry* count of *Carinthia*, and the other elected *Frederic* the emperor's ſon. *Albert*, who had before anticipated *Henry*, was now anticipated in his turn by that prince, who was now ſo well eſtabliſhed upon the throne, that it was not in his power to depoſe him: after having ravaged part of his country, he was fain to return with his army, and leave him in peaceable poſſeſſion of his dominions [x].

kingdom of Bohemia *for his ſon* Rodolphus;

but loſes it by his death.

At his return from this fruitleſs expedition, he employed his arms in a war ſtill more unjuſt and unſucceſsful. We have ſeen that *Adolphus* purchaſed *Miſnia* and *Thuringia* from that unnatural parent, who wanted to defraud his own children; but that the greateſt part of the princes ſiding with the brothers *Frederic* and *Dictmann*, he had never been able to gain poſſeſſion; ſo that he loſt both his money and his reputation. Nevertheleſs, when he died, his brother *Philip* of *Naſſau* claimed thoſe countries, and the emperor ſupported his pretenſions, in hope of profiting by the troubles that would neceſſarily enſue, and of obtaining ſome portion of the lands in diſpute. He accordingly ſummoned the two brothers to appear before the diet at *Fulde*, and give an account of their title; and they refuſing to adhere to the conditions he wanted to impoſe, were by a formal ſentence diveſted of their eſtates, and put to the ban of the empire. He at the ſame time raiſed an army to carry this ſentence into execution: but ſuch a flagrant piece of tyranny and injuſtice raiſed up a number of friends to the young princes; ſo that *Frederic* found himſelf in a little time at the head of a ſtrong body of forces, and actually gave battle to the emperor near *Luchau*, where he obtained a complete victory, in conſequence of which he remained peaceable poſſeſſor of the two provinces in queſtion, while *Albert* was obliged to fly with diſgrace, and ſit down with the mortifying reflection of having ſeen all his laurels blaſted by the prowess of a boy [y].

The emperor eſpouſes the cauſe of Philip de Naſſau *againſt* Frederic,

who defeats the imperialiſts at Luchau.
A. D. 1306.

His chagrin, however, did not prey upon his faculties ſo much, but that he exerted all his endeavours in eſtabliſhing his nephew *Charobert* upon the throne of *Hungary*. Pope *Clement* V. who ſucceeded *Benedict*, confirmed the ſentence of *Boniface* in favour of *Mary*, queen of *Naples*, and forbad the *Hungarians*, on pain of the moſt terrible cenſures, to receive any other prince but *Charobert*. At the ſame time he commanded *Otho*, duke of *Bavaria*, to lay aſide the title of king of *Hungary*, which that prince had purchaſed with his money after the expulſion of *Ladiſlaus*. He had even been crowned at *Alba*, and made a progreſs through the kingdom; but the pride and inſolence of his diſpoſition gave ſuch diſguſt, that the nobles abandoned his intereſt, and the vaivode of *Tranſilvania* actually impriſoned him in a ſtrong caſtle, from which he was not releaſed until he had renounced his title to the crown.

---

[x] Dubrav. Hiſt. Bohem. l. xix.

[y] Struv. per. ix.

Charobert *elected king of* Hungary. A. D. 1307.

THE throne becoming vacant by his abdication, the two parties united in favour of *Charobert*, who was elected and approved by the pope's legate in the name of the *Roman* church.

A civil war breaks out between Gerhard, *count of* Holſtein, *and his nobility. He turns his arms againſt the city of* Lubec.

THOUGH the troubles of *Hungary* were thus appeaſed, the northern parts of *Germany* felt the diſagreeable effects of a civil war that broke out between *Gerhard*, count of *Holſtein*, and the nobility of his country, who took the field againſt him, under the command of one *Pelqs*; but they were vanquiſhed in a pitched battle, and their chief being taken priſoner, was convicted of treaſon, and broke alive upon the wheel. As the city of *Lubec* gave ſanctuary to the fugitive nobles, the duke reſolved to puniſh the regency of the town for this mark of diſreſpect. He accordingly encamped at the mouth of the *Traive*, where he built a fort, in order to interrupt their commerce, and hinder them from receiving ſupplies by ſea. The regency, who had concluded a treaty of alliance with the duke of *Saxony*, determined to defend themſelves by force of arms, and had recourſe to *Eric*, king of *Denmark*, their protector, who ſent *Waldemar*, duke of *Sleſwick*, to take the command of their troops.

COUNT *Gerhard*, in order to ballance theſe preparations, received a reinforcement from the duke of *Mecklenburg* and ſome other princes, who were his allies, and took poſt near a place, called *Suartow*, from whence he greatly incommoded the inhabitants of *Lubec*, and ſupported the garriſon of the fort which he had raiſed at the mouth of the river.

An accommodation is effected by the mediation of

BUT before any action of conſequence was undertaken on either ſide, the difference was terminated by the mediation of duke *Waldemar*, and a peace concluded, on condition that the new fort ſhould remain in the hands of the count for the term of four years, which being expired, the emperor

Albert

Walde-mar, *duke of* Meck-lenbourg.

Albert ſhould be ſollicited to decide to which party it ſhould belong. This treaty was followed by a reconciliation between the count and his nobility, who mutually agreed, that in caſe of any future quarrel and diſpute, they ſhould have recourſe to the king of *Denmark* and the duke of *Mecklenbourg*, who would decide the affair in queſtion, according to the laws and cuſtoms of *Holſtein* [z].

The emperor oppreſſes the cantons of Ury, Underwald, *and* Switz,

THESE commotions did not affect the emperor ſo nearly as did the revolt of the *Helvetians* or *Swiſs*, which was occaſioned by the tyranny of thoſe whom he appointed to govern that people, accuſtomed to cheriſh and maintain the idea of liberty as an ineſtimable jewel, tranſmitted to them by their anceſtors from time immemorial. Fortified by their natural ſituation, and ſurrounded with mountains, torrents, and woods, they had nothing to fear from ſtrangers, and lived happily in a rugged country, ſuitable to none but thoſe who were uſed to a frugal and laborious courſe of life. Equality of condition was the moſt ſolid baſe of their government; and when their nobility attempted to tyrannize, they were either altogether expelled, or reduced within bounds by the people. *Rodolphus* of *Hapſburg* had appeaſed theſe troubles by his courage and diſcretion; the exiles were permitted to return, and peace was re-eſtabliſhed on a ſolid footing. Although the *Swiſs* were extremely jealous of their liberty, yet they were always ſubmiſſive to the empire of which they held; and a great many of their towns were free and imperial. With reſpect to the three cantons of *Ury*, *Switz*, and *Underwald*, they do not ſeem to have been in any-ways dependent upon the houſe of *Auſtria*. Indeed, they put themſelves under the protection of *Rodolphus*, when he was no more than landgrave of *Alſace*; and after his elevation to the imperial throne, they never acknowleged in him any other ſovereignty but that of chief of the empire. Nor does he ſeem to have conſidered them as fiefs of the houſe of *Auſtria*; for he always treated them with great indulgence, and defended their rights and privileges againſt the noblemen who attempted to infringe them.

ALBERT's conduct in this particular was quite the reverſe of his father's: he wanted to govern the *Swiſs* as an abſolute ſovereign, and had formed a ſcheme for erecting *Switzerland* into a principality for one of his ſons: he had endeavoured to perſuade the cantons of *Ury*, *Switz*, and *Underwald*, to ſubmit voluntarily to his dominion, in which caſe he promiſed to rule them with the utmoſt tenderneſs; but finding them tenacious of their independency, and deaf to all his ſollicitations, he reſolved to tame them by rougher methods, and appointed governors, who domineered over them in the moſt arbitrary manner. Complaints were preferred without effect; their deputies were treated with contempt at the imperial court; they were ſubjected at home to numberleſs ſpecies of oppreſſion; they were plundered, taxed, fined, impriſoned, tortured, and even put to death occaſionally, without juſtice or form of law; and, in a word, they groaned under all the miſeries flowing from deſpotic power and barbarity.

---

[z] HUITFELD. Hiſt. Dan. t. iii.

which form a conſpiracy for the recovery of their liberty,

In this emergency they had no proſpect of relief, except in their own courage, and they began to concert proper meaſures for delivering themſelves from the tyranny of the *Auſtrian* government. The chiefs of the confederates were *Arnauld Melchtat*, a native of *Underwald*, *Werner Strauffacher*, of *Switz*, and *Walter Furts* of *Ury*. Theſe men, naturally bold, enterprizing, and united by a long intimacy of friendſhip, having frequently met in private to deliberate upon means to free their country, admitted nine other perſons to their councils; and the aſſociation being confirmed by oath, they reſolved to raiſe inſurrections in the three cantons, to demoliſh the fortified caſtles, and expel the *Auſtrian* governors, with all their adherents. A certain time being fixed for putting this laudable deſign in execution, the individuals began privately to make preparations for ſuch an important enterprize, which was actually atchieved, without the loſs of one ſingle life. On the firſt day of *January* the conſpirators ſent fifty men to the governor of *Sarn*, with the uſual preſents and compliments of the ſeaſon; and theſe being admitted into the citadel, ſeized the gates and made the governor their priſoner. The people of *Ury* at the ſame time ſurpriſed *Altorff*, and the inhabitants of *Switz* made themſelves maſters of *Lowertz*. The forts were inſtantly demoliſhed, and the governor was conducted to the frontiers, where they obliged him to promiſe, upon oath, that he would never ſerve the houſe of *Auſtria* againſt the *Helvetic* nation, and never return to the cantons: an inſtance of moderation rarely found in an incenſed people, who have their oppreſſors in their power.

A. D. 1308. *and ſhake off the* Auſtrian *yoke.*

In this manner the three cantons delivered themſelves from the *Auſtrian* yoke, and retrieved that liberty, which they ſtill enjoy unimpaired. The other cantons ſoon engaged in the confederacy, which was the origin of the *Helvetian* republic [a] (P).

The emperor Albert's rapaciouſneſs.

This deſire of aggrandizing his family, in a great meaſure influenced *Albert's* whole conduct. He had by his wife *Elizabeth* ſix ſons and three daughters, for whom he endeavoured to procure all poſſible advantages; and the eagerneſs with which he proſecuted theſe endeavours in the end coſt him his life. After the deceaſe of his brother *Rodolphus*, duke of *Suabia*, and landgrave of *Alſace*, he had taken upon him the education of his only ſon *John*, as well as the adminiſtration of his dominions. This young prince, when

---

[a] Stettler. Ann. Helvetic. Bern. t. i.

(P) The tyranny of the *Auſtrian* governors was extended even to the moſt ridiculous lengths. *Griſler*, governor of *Ury*, ordered a pole to be erected in the market-place of *Altorff*, crowned with a kind of hat or cap, to which every paſſenger was commanded to make obeiſſance: but *William Tell*, one of the conſpirators, having refuſed to yield this abſurd homage, he was ſummoned to appear before the governor, who condemned him to ſhoot an arrow through an apple, placed upon the head of his own ſon, at a certain diſtance, on pain of being hanged. This feat he ſucceſsfully performed in public; when the governor, perceiving he had two arrows in his girdle, deſired to know for what uſe he intended the ſupernumerary ſhaft. *Tell* having firſt obtained his promiſe that his life ſhould not be taken away, acknowleged, that if it had been his misfortune to kill his ſon with the firſt arrow, he would have aimed the ſecond at the governor's heart. *Griſler* incenſed at this declaration, *Tho' I will not break my promiſe* (cried he) *ſo as to take away thy life, thou ſhalt ſpend it in a cloſe priſon.* So ſaying, he cauſed him to be fettered and put into a boat, to be tranſported to *Cuſſenach*, a caſtle in the lake of *Lucern*; nay the governor himſelf embarked with the priſoner, that he might with his own eyes ſee the ſentence put in execution. They had ſcarce proceeded half way when they were overtaken with ſuch a tempeſt, that the boatmen could not manage the veſſel, and all on board were in the moſt imminent danger of their lives. In this extremity, one of the governor's ſervants, who knew *Tell* to be the moſt expert boatman of the country, propoſed that he ſhould be unbound and ſet to the helm. The governor aſſented to the propoſal, and *Tell* taking the command of the veſſel, ſteered her cloſe to a rock, where leaping aſhore with great agility, he made his eſcape thro' the mountains to *Stauffacher*, and lay concealed till the day on which the ſcheme was executed (1).

(1) *Mutm. lib.* xxii. *p.* 207.

He equally abhorred flattery and ſlander, and was uſed to ſay, that there were three ſorts of perſons for whom he had a particular regard, namely, women of honour, men of courage, and pious eccleſiaſtics[e].

HENRY VII.

Philip, *king of* France, *aſpires to the empire.*

AFTER the death of the emperor *Albert*, the electors could not for ſome time agree in their choice of a perſon to ſucceed him on the throne. *Philip the Fair* of *France* aſpired to the empire; and in order to facilitate the accompliſhment of his wiſh, reſolved to go and treat in perſon with pope *Clement* V. who was at that time at *Avignon*, and who is ſaid to have been raiſed to the papacy, on condition that he ſhould aſſiſt the king in his deſigns upon the imperial throne. The pope being appriſed of this intended viſit, and well knowing the ſubject of it, was very much embarraſſed in his own mind; for being obliged to remain in *France*, on account of the commotions of *Rome* and *Italy*, he could not decently nor ſafely refuſe to comply with *Philip*'s deſire, though he knew it was not in his power to grant it, as the imperial crown was intirely at the diſpoſal of the *Germans*, who, if he ſhould arrogate to himſelf the right of conferring it on this occaſion, would in all probability explain themſelves in expreſs terms againſt the pretenſions of the pope; becauſe they would foreſee, that, ſhould *Philip* aſcend the imperial throne, *France* would retrieve the dominions and rights to which ſhe laid claim in the empire. He was likewiſe very well perſuaded that *Philip* was diſſatisfied with the court of *Rome*, on account of the inſolence with which he had been treated by *Boniface* VIII. who had commanded him in a very imperious ſtrain, on pain of excommunication, to make war upon the *Turks*, for the recovery of the kingdom of *Jeruſalem*.

The pope is embarraſſed,

and by the advice of cardinal Prat, *propoſes* Henry *of* Luxemburg *to the electors.*

CLEMENT V. who was now in the chair, being very much perplexed in conſequence of theſe reflections, and undetermined in his behaviour towards *Philip* at the approaching interview, cardinal *Nicholas Prat* adviſed him to diſpatch private meſſengers to the *German* electors, with preſſing inſtances to elect a chief, and to declare, that, if the election did not immediately take place, the imperial dignity would revert from *Germany* to *France*. He likewiſe counſelled him to propoſe *Henry* of *Luxemburg*, as a proper perſon to fill the throne [f].

---

[e] HEISS, liv. ii. c. 24.

CLEMENT reliſhed the advice, and immediately communicated *Philip*'s deſign to the eccleſiaſtic princes, who entered into his views, and promiſed to conduct themſelves according to his directions. Mean while *Berthold*, count of *Henneburg*, and *Conrad*, knight of *Reida*, as proxies of *Otho* and *Waldemar*, marquiſſes of *Brandenburg*, and *Rodolphus*, duke of *Saxony*, repaired to *Boppard*, where they found *Rodolphus* and *Lewis*, counts palatine of the *Rhine*. Theſe four agreed to propoſe in the diet of election *Otho* and *Waldemar*, *Albert*, count of *Hanau*, *Rodolphus* and *Lewis*, and *Frederic*, duke of *Auſtria*; and they obliged themſelves by oath to acknowlege for king of the *Romans* him, of theſe ſix competitors, who ſhould have a majority of voices. At the ſame time they drew up ſome articles touching the preſervation of their fiefs and privileges, which the future emperor ſhould approve and confirm.

He is accordingly elected.

THESE preliminaries being regulated, the electors, to the number of ſix, aſſembled at *Frankfort* (R), where the archbiſhop of *Triers* began the diet by reading a proteſtation, importing, that all excommunicated or outlawed perſons, and others who had no right to be preſent, ſhould retire: then they deliberated upon the election, and *Henry* of *Luxemburg* (S) being propoſed by the three electors, was unanimouſly choſen, as a prince in all reſpects worthy of the imperial crown. As he happened to be at that time in the city of *Frankfort*, he was forthwith made acquainted with the election; and *Philip* of *France*, who was on the road to *Avignon*, receiving theſe tidings, proceeded no farther, but returned immediately without ſeeing the pope [g].

---

[f] VILL. l. viii. c. 101. ANT. tit. xxi. c. i. AVENT. Ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 593.

(R) *John* and *Henry*, dukes of *Saxony*, claimed the right of ſitting in this aſſembly, and proteſted in form againſt whatever ſhould be done without their concurrence. *Henry*, duke of *Carinthia*, who had aſcended the throne of *Bohemia*, did not appear at this election, probably becauſe the majority of the *Bohemian* nobility had not yet acknowleged him as their king (1).

(1) *Leibnitz in Marites, p.* 252.

(S) Before he was elected, emperor he had ſignalized himſelf in a war againſt the city of *Triers*, on account of their having refuſed to pay certain tributes and duties, to which the family of *Luxemburg* had a claim. He not only ſucceeded in this enterprize, but, when the ſee of *Liege* was vacant, took his meaſures ſo effectually, that one of his brothers was choſen archbiſhop (2).

(2) *Remarq. ſur Heiſs l. ii.*

A. D. 1309.

He pronounces ſentence of death upon the murderer of Albert.

Grants the inveſtiture of Auſtria *to the ſons of that emperor.*

Celebrates the nup-

HENRY was not a little ſurpriſed when he underſtood the electors had conferred upon him that dignity, which he thought himſelf too weak to ſupport. Nevertheleſs, he gratefully accepted of the honour; and was on the *Epiphany* crowned at *Aix la Chapelle* [h]. This ceremony being performed, he made a progreſs along the *Rhine*, to receive homage and the oath of fidelity from the princes, noblemen, and cities, and convoked an imperial diet at *Spire*, to which the electors, princes, and deputies of towns, repaired in great numbers. Here ſentence of death was pronounced againſt *John* of *Auſtria*, for the murder of the emperor *Albert*, whoſe ſons, *Frederic*, *Leopold*, *Albert*, and *Otho*, appearing at the ſame time, demanded the inveſtiture of *Auſtria*, and the other hereditary dominions, which had been left to their father by the emperor *Rodolphus*. Theſe four princes had been ſummoned by order of the emperor, who commanded them to reſign their pretenſions to *Auſtria*, which had already been fatal to five kings (T.) They, on the other hand, inſiſted upon being maintained in the poſſeſſion of a duchy, which had been beſtowed upon their father with the conſent of the princes of the empire. The emperor, however, remaining fixed in his reſolution, duke *Frederic* retired, and at his departure is ſaid to have ſent a perſon to tell the emperor, that the duchy of *Auſtria*, which had already been the death of five kings, might ſtill be fatal to a ſixth, if he did not deſiſt from his unjuſt pretenſions. Be that as it will, certain it is, the emperor ordered the dukes to be called back, and, with the conſent of the *German* princes, beſtowed on them the inveſtiture of that duchy. At this aſſembly alſo appeared *Elizabeth*, daughter and heireſs of *Winceſlaus*, king of *Bohemia*, deceaſed, by a daughter of the emperor *Rodolphus*. A treaty of marriage had been agreed upon between her and *John*, ſon of *Henry* the emperor, whom the *Bohemians* had ſet upon the throne, after having expelled *Henry*, duke of *Carinthia*. This marriage having been delayed from time to time under different pretexts, the princeſs now demanded that the treaty ſhould be fulfilled, or cauſe ſhewn why the nuptials ſhould not immediately be ſolemnized. Count *John* of *Luxemburg* was at that time in the ſeventeenth year of his age, and *Elizabeth* turned of twenty-two. She was of a tall ſtature and genteel appearance; but a report had been ſpread abroad to the prejudice of her chaſtity, for which reaſon the emperor had, from day to day, deferred the conſummation of the marriage, until the princeſs, having diſcovered the cauſe of this delay, found means to convince him of her innocence (U); upon which the ceremony was performed with great magnificence, in preſence of the electors, and other princes and noblemen of the diet.

---

[g] KRANTZ Sax. l. ix. c. i. BARRE, t. vi. p. 361. [h] ALB. ARGENT. in Chron. l. viii. c. 102. VECER. in vit. Hen. TRITHEM. in Chron.

(T) Namely *Conradin*, *Ottocarus*, *Rodolphus* of *Auſtria*, *Adolphus*, and *Albert*.

tials of his own ſon John *with* Elizabeth, *daughter of* Winceſlaus, *late king of* Poland.

In this manner *Bohemia* became the property of the houſe of *Luxemburg*, who poſſeſſed it for a good number of years without interruption. At preſent, however, there was a neceſſity for conquering, before the new married couple could enjoy the kingdom; for *Henry*, duke of *Carinthia*, joined by *Frederic*, marquis of *Miſnia*, had levied a conſiderable army, taken and garriſoned *Prague* and *Cuttemberg*, and exacted a new oath of allegiance from the inhabitants: *John* of *Luxemburg*, therefore, could not take poſſeſſion, except by force of arms. The emperor and the princes furniſhed him with a ſtrong body of troops, commanded by the archbiſhop of *Mentz*, the count palatine of the *Rhine*, and the counts of *Oettingen* and *Heinſberg*, and with theſe he entered *Bohemia*. His firſt operation was the ſiege of *Cuttemberg*, which in a little time ſurrendered; and then he inveſted *Prague*, the garriſon of which was commanded by the duke of *Carinthia* and the marquis of *Miſnia* in perſon, who made a

(U) The princeſs *Elizabeth* no ſooner underſtood that her virtue was called in queſtion, than, repairing to the emperor's antichamber, ſhe undreſſed herſelf before the ladies there preſent, and approaching *Henry* in her ſhift, "Sire (ſaid ſhe) I "am informed you entertain "ſome ſuſpicion of my honour, "and, on that account, delay "my marriage with the prince "your ſon. Conſcious there"fore of my own innocence, I "have taken the liberty of pre"ſenting myſelf in this manner, "to intreat your imperial ma"jeſty will order me forthwith "to be examined by matrons, "whoſe teſtimony will ſoon re"fute the malice of my enemies, "and redound to the triumph "of my character." The emperor complied with her requeſt, and ſhe was committed to the care of ſome ladies and midwives, who unanimouſly declared her an unſpotted virgin; upon which the marriage was ſolemnized (1).

---

(1) *Heiſs. liv.* ii. *c.* 25.

very vigorous defence, until the burghers, incenſed at ſome outrages committed by the ſoldiers, opened the gates to the beſiegers, who ſoon became maſters of the city. The duke and marquis, thus betrayed, took refuge in the fort of *St. Wit*, where they capitulated with king *John*, who permitted them to retire to their own dominions. The ſtates were immediately aſſembled, and the coronation of *John* and *Elizabeth* was performed by the archbiſhop of *Mentz*, aſſiſted by the biſhops of *Prague* and *Olmutz*, amidſt the acclamations of the *Bohemians* [i].

John *and* Elizabeth *crowned king and queen of* Bohemia.

This affair being ſettled, it was reſolved that the emperor ſhould make a journey into *Italy*; and orders were given for raiſing the troops neceſſary to attend him in this expedition. Mean while he ordered the body of *Albert*, together with that of his predeceſſor *Adolphus*, whom he had ſlain, to be carried to *Spire* and interred in one day, he himſelf aſſiſting in perſon at the funeral [k]. Then he ſent a ſplendid embaſſy to *Clement* V. compoſed of the biſhops of *Baſil* and *Coire*, *Amadeus*, count of *Savoy*, *John Dauphin*, count *d'Albon* and *Vienna*, *Gui* count of *Flanders*, *John* count of *Sarbruc*, and doctor *Simon de Marville*, who repairing to *Avignon*, delivered their credentials to the pope, together with the decree of the election, which were very courteouſly received. His holineſs acknowleged *Henry* as king of the *Romans*, promiſed to crown him emperor at *Rome*, and received the oath from theſe deputies, who ſwore, in the name of their maſter, that he never would make the leaſt attempt upon the life or honour of the pope; that he would never enact any law in *Rome*, without the conſent of his holineſs; that he would reſtore all the lands belonging to the church; that he would exalt the holy ſee, defend all her rights, and take the accuſtomed oath at his coronation [l].

The emperor ſends an embaſſy to the pope.

During the reign of *Albert* I. *Everhard*, count of *Wirtemburg*, had moleſted the imperial cities of *Suabia*, and now, ſince the death of that emperor, had continued to exerciſe ſuch violence againſt them, that they were obliged to complain of his conduct at the diet of *Spire*. The count being ſummoned to appear and anſwer to the charge, came attended with ſuch a large body of troops as gave umbrage to the emperor and the princes, who, nevertheleſs, endeavoured to compromiſe the affair; but he rejected their advice, and retired without having liſtened to any terms of accommodation. He was therefore put to the ban of the em-

A. D. 1310.

He reduces the dominions of Everhard, *count of* Wirtemberg.

---

[i] Hiſt. Luxemb. l. xlvii.

[k] Avent. Ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 593.

[l] Barre, t. vi. p. 371.

pire[m]; and a body of troops being raiſed to reduce him to obedience, the lord of *Vinſberg* was inveſted with the command, and in a little time ſubdued almoſt all the dominions of the count, who eſcaped into the territories of the marquis of *Baden*, with whom he lived till the death of the emperor, after which he, without difficulty, obtained poſſeſſion of his eſtates.

The Jews *are expelled from* Germany.

AMONG other regulations for eſtabliſhing the peace of the empire, *Henry* at this period, by public decree, expelled the *Jews* from all the provinces of *Germany*, on account of the miſchiefs which attended their uſury and extortion; for they farmed the taxes of almoſt every prince at a low rate, and levied them with ſuch ſeverity and rapaciouſneſs, as rendered them odious and deteſtable to the people. At the ſame time he, in conjunction with *Philip the Fair* of *France*, ſollicited the pope to aboliſh the order of templars, who not only imitated the *Jews* in their uſury, but were accuſed of the moſt licentious debauchery, and all ſorts of enormity. *Clement*, however, was deaf to their remonſtrances, and refuſed to take any ſteps to the prejudice of an order, which had done ſuch ſignal ſervice to the cauſe of religion[n] (X).

He is ſollicited to march into Italy.

As no emperor, ſince the death of *Frederic* II. had repaired to *Italy*, the rights of the empire in that country were all gone to wreck. Every nobleman had erected himſelf into a petty ſovereign, and the *Guelphs* and *Gibelines* butchered one another without humanity or remorſe. Pope *Clement* V. who had been the chief cauſe of *Henry*'s election, urged him, with unceaſing importunity, to go in perſon and quell

[m] AVENT. ubi ſupra.

[n] STRUV. per. ix. ſect. 4.

(X) This order was inſtituted at *Jeruſalem* in the beginning of the twelfth century, for the defence of the holy ſepulchre, and the protection of Chriſtian pilgrims. They were firſt called *the Poor of the Holy City*, and afterwards aſſumed the appellation of *Templars*, becauſe their houſe was near the temple.

After the ruin of the kingdom of *Jeruſalem*, about the year 1186, they ſpread themſelves through *Germany* and other dominions of *Europe*, whither they were invited by the liberality of the Chriſtians: but their morals were ſoon corrupted by the riches they acquired: their lives became ſcandalous, and their pride inſupportable. Among other pranks of the moſt ſhameleſs debauchery, they were taxed with having renounced the Chriſtian religion, and with ſpitting in deriſion on the croſs at all their meetings (1).

(1) *Gurtler. Hiſt. Templar. Num.* 150.

the diſturbances in *Italy* °; and the *Gibelines*, who were imperialiſts, ſollicited him to the ſame effect, that they might be ſupported againſt their enemies. He now, therefore, convoked a diet at *Frankfort*, in order to deliberate upon proper meaſures for maintaining the tranquillity of the empire in his abſence. His ſon *John*, king of *Bohemia*, was appointed vicar, and the office of his counſellor given to the count of *Henneberg*, together with the dignity of prince, confirmed by the aſſembly. The treaty which *Henry*'s predeceſſors had made with *France* was renewed, and the ſtates promiſed to ſecond the emperor's enterprize with their whole power. But that he might not alarm the *Italians*, he ſent deputies before him to the cities of *Lombardy* with letters, importing, that he would march into *Italy*, not as an enemy, to ruin the ſubjects and enrich himſelf with the ſpoil, but as a friend, coming to adminiſter juſtice, repreſs diſorders, redreſs grievances, and re-eſtabliſh the provinces in the full and free enjoyment of their antient rights and privileges.

Diet at Frankfort.

Sets out on his expedition.

HAVING taken theſe precautions, he ſet out for *Italy* with the troops, which had been granted him by the ſtates of the empire, being accompanied by the dukes of *Auſtria* and *Bavaria*, *Baldwin*, archbiſhop of *Triers*, the biſhop of *Liege*, the counts of *Savoy* and *Flanders*, and other noblemen, together with the militia of all the imperial cities. Pope *Clement*, at whoſe earneſt ſollicitation this journey had been undertaken, changed his opinion, as ſoon as he ſaw *Henry* ſet out with ſufficient forces to re-eſtabliſh the authority and ſovereignty of the empire in *Italy*, and ſet on foot divers ſecret negociations to prevent his march. He committed the government of *Rome* to *Robert*, king of *Apulia*, or *Naples*, with whom he engaged in alliance againſt the emperor, and that king ſent thither his brother prince *John*, with a good body of troops, at the ſame time joining in a confederacy with the cities of *Florence*, *Bologna*, *Sienna*, *Lucca*, *Cremona*, *Padua*, *Breſcia*, and ſome others; which being ſtrongly garriſoned, and well-provided with munitions of war, reſolved to hold out againſt the emperor. *Rome* was divided into two factions; that of the *Colonnas*, which declared for the emperor, had ſeized upon *St. John* of *Lateran*, the amphitheatre, and ſome other principal parts of the city, diſtinguiſhing themſelves by the old word *Gibeline*, and giving the appellation of *Guelphs* to the other party, which had declared for

The pope endeavours to thwart his meaſures.

The ſtate of Italy *and* Rome.

° VILLAN. l. viii. c. 88, 89, 96. ANTON. tit. xxi. c. 1. ſect. 4.

for prince *John*, and ſecured the capitol, the caſtle of *St. Angelo*, and the vatican.

A. D. 1311.

Henry *viſits* Turin, Aſti, Caſal, *and* Vercelli. *Is well received at* Milan: *receives the ſubmiſſion of many other cities.*

The emperor having, according to the cuſtom of his predeceſſors, diſpatched envoys to the cities of *Italy* to intimate his journey, and prepare proviſions and neceſſaries for his court and army, he ſet out, in the month of *September*, from *Lauſanne*, where he had received a deputation from the *Gibeline* faction. Croſſing mount *Cenis*, he ſtaid ten days at *Turin*, and having appointed a governor for the empire, repaired to the city of *Aſti*, where he changed the magiſtracy, and gave the government to one *Nicholas Bonſignori*. Here he ſtaid two months waiting for his army, with which he marched to *Caſal* and *Vercelli*, where the inhabitants took the oath of allegiance, and ſubmitted to the appointment of the *German* governors. He was likewiſe joyfully received by the city of *Milan*, and other towns of *Lombardy*, of whom he exacted conſiderable ſums of money on account of arrears.

Is crowned at Milan.

Notwithstanding the great honours that were paid to him by *Guy de la Torre*, chief of the *Milaneſe*, and governor of the city, he deprived him of his office, which was conferred upon *Matthew Viſconti* his profeſſed enemy; and indeed *Henry* favoured the *Gibelines* with ſuch partiality, as diſquieted all people of moderation, and was of great prejudice to his own affairs. It was in conſequence of this diſguſt that the iron crown, kept at *Monza*, could not be found for his coronation; ſo that he cauſed another of ſteel to be made, with which he was crowned, together with his empreſs, by *Gaſton de la Torre*, archbiſhop of *Milan*, and after the ceremony created 200 knights [p].

Guy de la Torre *forms a conſpiracy againſt the emperor's life.*

Guy de la Torre, exaſperated at the emperor's behaviour towards him and his party, reſolved to make an attempt upon *Henry*'s life, and with ſome of the *Guelphs* actually concerted a ſcheme for aſſaulting him in his palace, during the execution of a malefactor without the walls, which they did not doubt would attract the curioſity of the *Germans*, ſo as that they would croud to the place, and leave the emperor almoſt quite unguarded. *Matthew Viſconti* having luckily received intimation of this plot, communicated the whole contrivance to *Henry*, who took his meaſures in ſuch a manner, that, when the conſpirators aſſembled to execute their deſign, they were ſuddenly attacked and cut in pieces by a body of troops prepared for that purpoſe. As for *Guy de la Torre* he eſcaped with ſome of his family; but

---

[p] Struv. per. ix. ſect. 4.

He refuſes to do juſtice to his nephew John, *duke of* Suabia,

who enters into a conſpiracy against him,

was of age, had often ſollicited the emperor, both by himſelf and his friends, to put him in poſſeſſion of his patrimony, or at leaſt to give him ſome portion. His uncle had, under various pretexts, delayed doing him juſtice; and it was generally ſuſpected, that his deſign was to appropriate his pupil's eſtate to the benefit of his own children. This ſuſpicion was confirmed by the intrigues he had uſed to poſſeſs himſelf of *Bohemia*, and the marquiſate of *Miſnia*, where he had even employed force in behalf of his uſurpation, by theſe means incurring the averſion and reſentment of ſeveral princes of the empire. The emperor having gone out on the firſt day of *May* to take the air at *Baſil*, duke *John* prevailed upon the biſhop of *Straſburg* to intercede with his uncle, that he might put him in poſſeſſion of ſome of the caſtles belonging to his patrimony. To this propoſal the emperor replied, that he would make his nephew an officer, and employ him in the *Bohemian* war, after which he ſhould receive ſatisfaction. The young duke, who overheard this declaration, called aloud in a tranſport of paſſion, "I plainly ſee that he who would defraud me of my eſtate, would alſo deprive me of my life." So ſaying, he went in queſt of three confederates, namely, *Rodolphus of Warth*, *Walter of Eſchebach*, and *Ulrick of Palm*, who were all favourites of *Albert*. With theſe he had already concerted meaſures for deſtroying the emperor, in caſe he ſhould refuſe to comply with his demand; and now they determined to put their deſign in execution.

and aſſaſſinate him near Schaffhauſen.

After the entertainment the emperor had given to thoſe who accompanied him, during which he had, with his own hands, crowned them with chaplets of flowers, he ſet out for *Rhinfelden*, and arriving at the river *Rhees* near *Schaffhauſen*, he went into a boat, attended by duke *John* and his three confederates, while his ſon, together with the reſt of his retinue, waited on the bank for its return. *Albert* having croſſed the river, the conſpirators advanced to him, while he walked through a new ſown field, when duke *John* ſtabbed him in the throat, *Warth* plunged a ſword into his breaſt, and *Palm* cut him acroſs the head and face [b]. After having thus executed their purpoſe, in ſight of his own ſon and attendants, who could give him no aſſiſtance, they betook themſelves to flight. Duke *John*, after having concealed himſelf for ſome time in different parts of *Italy*, went at length and threw himſelf at the feet of *Clement* V. ſucceſſor of *Boniface* VIII. begging he would impoſe a penance

---

[b] Rebdorf. ad an. 1308. Chron. Auſt. p. 1183.

pro-

[illegible], who had fought with incredible valour, was found upon the field not yet dead, though grievouſly wounded, and being carried to the place where the emperor ſtood, *Henry* reproached him with his perfidy, ordered him to be tore aſunder by four horſes; then his quarters were expoſed upon the wheel, and his head was fixed upon a pike before the gates of the city. And indeed this puniſhment, ſevere as it was, ſeems to have been no more than adequate to his treachery and ingratitude; for two years before this event, when he was baniſhed from his native country, he had come to *Spire* and implored the protection of *Henry*, who received him with great hoſpitality, and knighted him with his own hand: yet, unmindful of theſe favours, he afterwards joined the *Guelphs*, and was the perſon who excited the *Breſcians* to revolt againſt his benefactor. His townſmen, in order to revenge his death, hanged fifty *German* priſoners upon their walls: a circumſtance which incenſed the emperor to ſuch a degree, that he was reſolved to humble them, or loſe his life in the attempt. Thus determined, he redoubled his efforts, and repeated his attacks with equal vigour and perſeverance, until the beſieged were, by the enemy without and famine within, reduced to the utmoſt extremity. Then they had recourſe to his clemency, and preſented themſelves before him barefoot, with halters about their necks: a ſpectacle which he could not behold unmoved. He accordingly granted them their lives, on condition they ſhould pay 60,000 crowns, and deliver 100 hoſtages, choſen from their principal citizens; but, at the ſame time, he ordered their walls and fortifications to be demoliſhed, and entered in triumph the breach he had made [r]. From hence the emperor, after having appointed governors in that city, *Verona*, *Parma*, and *Mantua*, marched directly to *Genoa*, where he was ſplendidly received and entertained by the city.

Surrenders at diſcretion, and is diſmantled.

By this time *Henry*'s ſucceſſes in *Lombardy* had greatly alarmed the pope, who began to fear that he would not only reduce all the *Italian* towns and ſtates to his obedience, but alſo take advantage of *Clement*'s abſence to fix the ſeat of his empire at *Rome*. It was from this apprehenſion that, although he had ſent a commiſſion to five cardinals to crown the emperor, he now exerted all his endeavours to traverſe his ſucceſs, in concert with *Robert*, king of *Naples*, who formed a confederacy among the towns of *Florence*, *Bologna*,

Henry *is amuſed by* Robert, *king of* Naples.

---

[r] Idem ibid.

and *Lucca*, and ordered his brother *John*, prince of *Morea*, to march with a body of forces to *Rome*, to oppoſe the emperor's entrance into that city, and act as the ally and protector of the *Urſini*, who headed the faction of the *Guelphs*. Mean while he ſent a deputation to the emperor at *Genoa*, to declare that his ſole view of detaching his brother to *Rome* was to honour the entry of his imperial majeſty; and that he was ſincerely diſpoſed to cultivate and cement a friendſhip with his imperial majeſty, by means of a match between his ſon, the duke of *Calabria*, and *Katherine* of *Luxemburg*.

A. D. 1312.

THO' *Henry* was for ſome time amuſed by the diſſimulation of this prince, who endeavoured to protract the negociation, he would not delay his coronation, but ſet out from *Genoa*, where he had been joined by the cardinals appointed to perform that ceremony; but before he began his march, he ſent ambaſſadors to the prince of *Morea*, who, in conjunction with the *Urſini*, had taken poſſeſſion of part of the city, to give notice of his approach, that all obſtacles to his entry might be removed. At length the *Neapolitan* thought proper to pull off the maſk, after having amuſed the envoys for a conſiderable time, on pretence of ſending to his brother for further orders, and declared, that he would oppoſe *Henry*'s entrance and coronation with all his power.

Henry *preſents himſelf before* Rome *in order of battle;*

MEAN while the emperor continued his march, and on his arrival at *Piſa* was, by a meſſenger from the *Colonnas*, intreated to advance to *Rome* with all expedition. In compliance with this requeſt he proceeded with great diligence, and preſented himſelf in order of battle at the *Ponte Mola*, where he imagined they would diſpute his paſſage: but the prince of *Morea* had withdrawn his troops from that quarter; ſo that the imperialiſts entered almoſt without oppoſition, and were lodged in different parts, with ſtrict orders to be upon their guard againſt all attempts of the enemy.

and is crowned in the church of St. John *of* Lateran.

THE baſilicon of St. *Peter*'s, in which the emperors were uſually crowned, being in the hands of the *Urſini* faction, *Henry* propoſed that he ſhould receive the imperial crown in the church of St. *John* of *Lateran*; and though the cardinals at firſt refuſed to comply with his deſire, on pretence that it was contrary to cuſtom, and exceeded the bounds of their commiſſion, ſuch was the deplorable ſituation of *Rome*, divided and diſtracted between two implacable factions, which filled the city with carnage and conſternation, that they were at length prevailed upon to embrace the expedient; and he received the crown with the uſual ceremonies, amidſt the acclamations of the people, who looked upon this event as the only means of being delivered from ſuch oppreſſive gueſts *.

UPON this occaſion, inſtead of making largeſſes, according to the cuſtom of his predeceſſors, he demanded money from the *Romans*, who were ſo much provoked at this unuſual impoſition, that many of the citizens joined his enemies, who were in poſſeſſion of the ſtrongeſt places in *Rome*, and a tumult enſued, in which the emperor loſt about 2000 men; and was beſides ſo ſtraitened by want of proviſion and money, that he could no longer ſubſiſt in *Rome*.

Makes an abrupt departure from the city.

HENRY having, after his coronation, exerted his endeavours to remedy the diſorders of *Rome*, reſolved to take vengeance on the king of *Naples*, who had duped him in ſuch a perfidious manner; and for that purpoſe concluded a treaty of alliance with *Frederic* II. king of *Sicily*, brother of *James* II. of *Arragon*, importing, that as ſoon as the emperor ſhould have made himſelf maſter of *Tuſcany*, he ſhould invade the kingdom of *Naples* by land, while the *Sicilian* fleet ſhould attack the maritime places.

THE pope, willing to prevent the conſequences of this rupture, wrote to the cardinals who had crowned *Henry*, deſiring they would effect an accommodation, or at leaſt command both parties to agree to a truce, inaſmuch as they were obliged to obey his commands by the oath of fidelity they had taken, and the benefits they had received from the holy ſee.

THE emperor paid no manner of regard to this remonſtrance; but finding himſelf incapable to reduce his enemies at *Rome*, he left the government of the city to the *Colonnas*, and repaired to *Tivoli*; from thence taking his route through the territory of *Perugia*, which he had laid waſte with fire and ſword, arrived at *Arezzo*, with an intention to attack *Florence*. He accordingly inveſted that city, after having taken and demoliſhed ſome forts in the neighbourhood; but, after a fruitleſs ſiege of forty days, was obliged to retire to winter quarters. In the ſpring he convened all the princes of *Italy* at *Piſa*, and decreed, that they ſhould punctually and annually pay the accuſtomed tribute; and after mature deliberation upon the acts of hoſtility, which had been committed by *Robert*, king of *Naples*, upon the empire, he ſummoned him to appear as his feudatory. *Robert* refuſing, was put to the ban (Y), his kingdom being beſtowed upon Fre-

Beſieges Florence *without ſucceſs.*

---

* REBDORF. ad ann. 1309. KRANTZ. Sax. l. ix. c. 4.

(Y) The *Florentines* ſurrendered the ſovereignty of their territory, for the term of five years, to *Robert*, on condition he

Frederic, king of *Sicily*, who was in the emperor's intereſt [t]. The pope, in conſequence of theſe proceedings againſt his ally, wrote letters to the emperor, earneſtly exhorting him to liſten to an accommodation; but they happened to produce the contrary effect; for being couched in the ſtile of a ſovereign who writes to his vaſſal, *Henry* was incenſed at his inſolence, and, in order to manifeſt his reſentment, joined his forces with thoſe of *Frederic*, king of *Sicily*, in order to attack the dominions of *Robert* both by ſea and land. He had been in great diſtreſs for want of forces, becauſe thoſe he expected from *Germany* were retarded, by the war which his ſon *John* was obliged to maintain againſt the duke of *Carinthia*, who had renewed hoſtilities and ravaged *Moravia*. At length, however, a reinforcement arrived with his brother, who was archbiſhop of *Triors*, and a powerful armament being fitted out for his ſervice by *Frederic* of *Sicily* and the *Genoeſe*, he was fluſhed with the hope of making a complete conqueſt of *Naples*. The king of *France*, alarmed at theſe preparations, began to fear, that, ſhould *Henry* ſucceed in this enterprize, and reduce the towns of *Italy*, he

A. D. 1313. *Makes an alliance with* Frederic, *king of* Sicily.

he would protect them from the reſentment of the emperor; the inhabitants of *Lucca*, *Peſtora*, and *Prato*, ſubmitted to him on the ſame terms: and the pope conferred upon him the government of *Ferrara*. *Henry* was extremely mortified to ſee the power of his enemy daily increaſing; and his reſentment glowed with the greater ardour, when he learned that the *Neapolitan* gallies had attacked his veſſels in the harbour of *Piſa*, after having ravaged the iſlands of *Gorgonia* and *Capraia*. He therefore denounced a ſentence againſt him as a child of perdition, which for the entertainment of the reader we ſhall repeat. "We declare *Robert*, who calls himſelf king of *Naples*, diveſted of the authority, honours, and immunities, which he enjoyed: we deprive him of the provinces, counties, cities, caſtles, townſhips, and other domains, which he either did or may poſſeſs: we declare the ſaid *Robert* rebel, traitor, enemy to the empire, guilty of treaſon: we baniſh him from the empire for ever, on pain of loſing his head, if he ſhall preſume to remain in it contrary to our will, or to return after having been expelled. Finally, we forbid, under the pecuniary penalties ſpecified in the ſaid ſentence, all perſons, of what condition ſoever they may be, all towns and communities, to receive or aſſiſt him againſt us and the empire; and we releaſe all his ſubjects from their oath of allegiance (1)."

---

[t] Idem ibid. VILLAN. lib. ix. c. 43, uſque 47. PLATIN. in Clem. V. VEC. in vit. Hen.

(1) *Aquila Vega* tit. Hen. VII.

would reclaim *Provence* and ſome other domains, which formerly belonged to the empire: he therefore complained to the pope of the violent proceedings of the emperor, who intended to diſpoſſeſs *Robert* of the patrimony of his anceſtors, and to trouble the repoſe of the church; ſo as to hinder the princes of *Europe* from going to the *Holy Land*, according to the reſolution taken in the council of *Vienne*. In conſequence of this remonſtrance, the pope iſſued a bull, forbidding all perſons whatever, on pain of excommunication, to invade *Naples* by ſea or land, on any pretence whatſoever [u]: but this prohibition had little weight with *Henry*, who ſent a ſplendid embaſſy to explain his motives to the king of *France*, who was ſatisfied with his explanation; and then began his march towards the territory of *Sienna*, with a view to enter *Robert*'s dominions. Though his health was extremely precarious, he was reſolved to be perſonally preſent in this expedition, and advanced as far as *Bonconvento*, where all his fine ſchemes for the eſtabliſhing the imperial authority in *Italy* ended with his life (Z). His body was carried back to *Piſa*, and interred with great pomp in the cathedral church, amidſt the inexpreſſible ſorrow of all his followers, after he had reigned four years ſeven months and eighteen days [x].

He engages in an expedition againſt Robert, *king of* Naples, *and dies at* Bonconvento.

Thus died *Henry* VII. in the 51ſt of year of his age, a prince who had the reputation of being valiant, politic, juſt, affable, and devout. He was well made, though thin; his complexion was florid, and his hair of a ſandy colour: he

His character.

---

[u] Mussat. l. xv. rub. 2 & 3.

[x] Spondan. Contin. Bar. tom. i. p. 532. Krantz. Sax. lib. ix. c. vii. Mach. Hiſt. de Firen. lib. ii.

(Z) He is ſaid, by ſome authors, to have been poiſoned by a *Dominican*, whoſe name was *Bernard Politian*, in adminiſtering the ſacrament, which the emperor frequently received. This monk was ſuppoſed to have been hired by his own countrymen the *Florentines*, to perpetrate this execrable action. Several writers have endeavoured to vindicate the order from ſuch an aſperſion, and to prove that *Henry* died of a complication of diſtempers; they have even produced a letter written by his own ſon, in which he acquits the monks of all ſuſpicion. Nevertheleſs, the diſpute is ſtill undecided; and though it is well known that the emperor laboured under an ill ſtate of health when he embarked in this expedition, it is likewiſe certain, that the report of the poiſon was generally believed at the time of his death (1).

(1) *Geſt. Epiſcop. Trevir. l.* ii.

had a ſmall defect in his right eye, his noſe and chin were long, his ſpeech was ſlow, and his ſtile conciſe: he had an air of majeſty, mingled with great complaiſance. Nothing gave him ſo much pain as to be obliged to treat with his ſubjects. He abhorred the names of *Gibelines* and *Guelphs*, and loved to command as ſovereign. In his youth he had, by means of the pope's diſpenſation, married *Margaret*, daughter of *John*, duke of *Brabant*, his own couſin. By this princeſs, who died at *Genoa*, he had prince *John*, of whom mention hath already been made, and four daughters, namely, *Beatrice*, wife of *Charobert*, king of *Hungary*; *Mary*, queen of *Charles the Fair* of *France*; *Agnes*, matched with *Rodolphus*, count palatine of the *Rhine*; and *Katherine*, married to *Leopold*, duke of *Auſtria*.

and iſſue.

CHAP. VII.

Including the Hiſtory of Charles IV. *in whoſe Reign the Conſtitution, called the* Golden Bull, *was eſtabliſhed.*

INTERREGNUM.

The progreſs of the Teutonic *knights.*

BEFORE we proceed to give a detail of what ſteps were taken to fill the imperial throne, become vacant by the death of *Henry*, it will be neceſſary to give a retroſpective view of the tranſactions of *Lower Germany*, and thoſe that regard the *Teutonic* oder. The majority of theſe knights, on their return to *Germany* from the *Holy Land*, had taken arms againſt the *Ruſſians*, and other pagans of the north; they had made themſelves maſters of *Samogitia*, and butchered all the inhabitants who refuſed to embrace the Chriſtian religion: they had built the town of *Koniſberg*, in honour of *Lewis* IX. their good benefactor: the city of *Montreal* afterwards owed its origin to their induſtry; and they ſupported a long and troubleſome war againſt *Seth Wan de Pol*, duke of *Pomerania*. This prince, when upon his death bed, declared his eldeſt ſon *Meſtewin* heir to his dominions; but he was depoſed by his younger brother *Wratiſlaus*, who governed with ſuch inſolence and tyranny, that the people were in arms, expelled him from the duchy, and reſtored his brother. *Wratiſlaus*, thus exiled, had recourſe to *Conrad*, marquis of *Brandenburg*, whoſe aſſiſtance he procured by promiſing to defray the expences of the war, and leave him in poſſeſſion of *Dantzick*, until he ſhould have obtained full ſatisfaction. On theſe conditions the marquis took the field, and ſurpriſed both town and citadel; but underſtanding that *Meſtewin* was ſupplied with a ſtrong body of forces by his brother-in-law *Boleſlaus*, palatine of *Kalis*, he did not chooſe to encounter ſuch a powerful enemy; and gave his employer to underſtand, that if he did not immediately pay his troops, the town muſt be abandoned to pillage. In this emergency *Wratiſlaus* applied to the *Teutonic* knights, reſiding at *Elbing*, offering to ſurrender his perſon and dominions at diſcretion, provided they would expel *Meſtewin* and the marquis: but their hands were then ſo full, that they declined embarking in the affair, and *Wratiſlaus* died of grief at their refuſal. Mean while *Meſtewin* and his ally beſieged and took *Dantzick*, which the palatine kept by way of ſecurity until his death; immediately after which *Meſtewin* ſurpriſed both city and citadel, and drove out the *Poliſh* garriſon [y].

War among the princes of Pomerania.

Hertman, count *de Helderingen*, grand maſter of the *Teutonic* order, having repreſſed the inſolence of the *Ruſſians*, *Lithuanians*, *Samogitians*, and *Semigalli*, by whoſe irruptions the knights had been greatly harraſſed, marched at the head of an army towards *Dantzick*, to avail himſelf of the ceſſion which *Wratiſlaus* had made in favour of the order. Before hoſtilities commenced, however, an accommodation was effected, by the interceſſion of the pope's legates, who were at that time in *Pruſſia*; and by an article of the treaty, the knights were put in poſſeſſion of the town and citadel, with all their dependencies. They were afterwards poſſeſſed by *Primiſlaus*, the nephew and heir of *Meſtewin*; and at his death the city fell into the hands of the marquis of *Brandenburg*, though the citadel continued in the power of *Uladiſlaus*, king of *Poland*. This fortreſs being beſieged by the princes of *Brandenburg*, who were bent upon making themſelves maſters of all *Pomerania*, the *Poliſh* governor implored the aſſiſtance of the knights, who marching to his relief, compelled the enemy to raiſe the ſiege of the citadel, and even relinquiſh the city itſelf, both which they kept for their own uſe, becauſe the *Poles* could not pay the ſum they demanded for their ſervice; nay, they afterwards purchaſed *Pomerelia* of *Waldemar*, marquis of *Brandenburg*, and the contract was performed by the emperor *Henry* VII. notwithſtanding the oppoſition of the king of *Poland*. While the order ſupported itſelf in *Europe* againſt all its enemies, its intereſt was ruined in *Syria* under *Conrad de Feuſchawang*, their grand maſter, in whoſe time the city of *Acra*, where

The Teutonic *order makes an acquiſition of* Dantzick.

---

[y] Barre, t. vi. p. 463.

they had eſtabliſhed their principal houſe, was taken by the ſoltan of *Egypt*, and the knights that remained obliged to return to *Germany* [z].

In the petty wars of the north, as the marquiſſes of *Brandenburg* were powerful enough to make either ſcale preponderate, their alliance was courted by the kings of *Denmark* and *Poland*; and *Eric* VIII. of *Denmark*, in particular, lived in great friendſhip with theſe princes, the duke of *Mecklenbourg*, and the other noblemen of *Lower Saxony*. Having invited his allies to a tournament at *Roſtock*, the inhabitants of that city, jealous of their liberty, refuſed to admit ſo many princes within their walls: an affront which his *Daniſh* majeſty reſented ſo highly, that he equipped a powerful fleet and landed in *Wandalia*, where he was joined by the duke of *Mecklenbourg*, and the other noblemen, who had jointly ſuſtained the inſult. Then they inveſted the city of *Roſtock*, and hampered it in ſuch a manner, that the people, driven to deſpair, murdered their magiſtrates and ſubmitted to *Eric*; who beſtowed it as a proprietary fief upon the duke of *Mecklenbourg*, by an authentic deed, which was confirmed by the inhabitants in the moſt ſolemn manner [a].

Roſtock *becomes the property of the duke of* Mecklenbourg.

A. D. 1314.

The templars are perſecuted, and their order aboliſhed.

About this period, the templars who reſided in *Germany* were, in conſequence of the abolition of their order by pope *Clement* at the council of *Vienne*, diſtributed in different monaſteries to do penance, with a moderate penſion from the revenues of the order; and the lands and houſes they poſſeſſed in *Lorrain* were given to the hoſpitallers of *St. John* of *Jeruſalem*, but in the other provinces, their lands were reſumed by the noblemen to whoſe families they originally belonged [b].

The competition between Lewis *of* Bavaria *and* Frederic *of* Auſtria, *for the tutorage and regency of the children of* Stephen, *duke of* Bavaria.

The few templars who reſided in *Bavaria* and *Auſtria* were not diſturbed; for theſe provinces were otherwiſe employed in a war, occaſioned by a competition for the guardianſhip of the children left by *Stephen*, duke of *Bavaria*. This province formerly belonged to *Otho*, duke of *Lower Bavaria*, brother of *Stephen*, who had been elected king of *Hungary*: but he did not ſurvive his brother many months, and declared in his laſt will, that the tutorage and regency of the dominions belonging to his nephews devolved to *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, now become duke by his death. This right was conteſted by *Frederic*, duke of *Auſtria*, who, by preſents and promiſes, gained over ſome of the noblemen of the province to his intereſt; and notwithſtanding the repeated endeavours of the landgrave of *Thuringia*, to reconcile theſe two rivals, they were ſo exaſperated againſt each other, that they had recourſe to the deciſion of arms, and each competitor took the field at the head of a formidable army.

---

[z] Idem ibid.

[a] Hiſt. Dan. t. iii.

[b] Naucler. General.

The duke of *Bavaria* having received advice that the body of *Auſtrians*, on their way to join *Frederic*, had halted at *Gamelſdorf*, five leagues from *Moſburg*, detached a part of his beſt troops to beat up their quarters; and a battle enſued, in which the *Auſtrians* were routed and cut in pieces; ſo that *Frederic*, finding himſelf without reſource, was fain to ſue for peace. *Lewis*, excluſive of his private hatred to the duke of *Auſtria*, had another view in continuing the war, namely, that of ſeizing the dominions of the antient houſe of *Auſtria*, to which he had pretenſions: but conſidering that the ſcheme might interfere with his deſign of mounting the imperial throne, which was now vacant, he agreed to hold a congreſs at *Saltzbourg*, where *Wichard*, archbiſhop of that ſee, and *Henry* of *Carinthia*, acted as arbiters of the peace; and an accommodation was effected, in conſequence of *Frederic*'s renouncing all right to the guardianſhip and regency, and promiſing to reſtore the booty and priſoners which he had acquired in the courſe of the war [c].

This affair is compromiſed.

The diſorders of the empire during the interregnum.

The diſorders and dangers which had already begun to interrupt the commerce of *Germany*, even in the life-time of *Henry* VII. increaſed to ſuch a degree after his death, that certain cities of the *Rhine* were obliged to enter into an aſſociation with the prince palatine *Rodolphus*, duke of *Bavaria*, who ſigned an inſtrument in his own name, and that of his brother *Lewis*, for their mutual ſecurity againſt highwaymen, and their protectors or relations, who might attempt to revenge the death of ſuch as ſhould fall a ſacrifice to juſtice, by committing outrages on the inhabitants of the cities where they had been executed. This confederacy was formed during the interregnum, which continued from the 24th of *Auguſt*, when *Henry* died, to the 18th of *October* in the following year. All that intermediate time being employed in the intrigues of *Frederic*, duke of *Auſtria*, and *Lewis*, duke of *Bavaria*, who, though firſt couſins, and grandchildren of the emperor *Rodolphus* I. now ſet up for the throne in oppoſition to each other.

Diſputes about the right of elector.

The long vacancy in the empire was owing to ſeveral concurring cauſes. *Henry*, duke of *Carinthia*, diſputed with *John* of *Luxemburg*, not only the title of king of *Bohemia*, but alſo the quality of elector, which laſt was likewiſe conteſted between *John* and *Rodolphus*, dukes of *Saxony*; for the number of electors was not yet regulated: and in the elections of *William* of *Holland*, and *Alphonſo* of *Caſtile*, two princes of the houſe of *Brandenburg* had given their ſuffrages; nay, two of the *Bavarian* family had voted for *Richard*, duke of *Cornwall*. Some of the princes were of opinion, that the right was inherent only in the elder branch of the electoral houſe; but this affair, though often diſcuſſed, was never determined till the reign of *Charles* IV. by the famous conſtitution called the *Golden Bull*.

---

[c] Barre, ubi ſupra.

Germany *is afflicted with peſtilence and famine.*

EXCLUSIVE of theſe diviſions, *Germany* groaned under all the miſeries of plague and famine, by which whole towns were unpeopled, and provinces left in deſolation. The rich fled for refuge into other countries, while the poor periſhed by hunger or diſeaſe; the wolves and other beaſts of prey, compelled by famine, quitted their ſavage haunts, and ruſhing into the villages, deſtroyed all who fell in their way. The air was tormented with ſtorms and tempeſts, the lands were deluged with torrents of rain, and cataracts of water burſting from the mountains, and ſweeping trees, animals, and houſes, before them with incredible impetuoſity; and the earth was convulſed with dreadful ſhocks, that ſeemed to ſhake it from the center [d].

Frederic, *duke of* Auſtria, *and* Lewis *duke of* Bavaria, *are competitors for the imperial crown.*

THESE calamities obliged the princes to ſhut themſelves up in their caſtles; ſo that the election of a king of the *Romans* was for ſome time delayed: but theſe evils were no ſooner alleviated, than the competitors renewed their cabals, and canvaſſed with equal induſtry for the imperial throne. At length, however, *Peter*, archbiſhop of *Mentz*; *Baldwin*, archbiſhop of *Triers*, who was count of *Luxemburg*, and brother to the late emperor; *Henry* of *Virnberg*, archbiſhop of *Cologn*; *John*, king of *Bohemia*, ſon of the late emperor; *Rodolphus*, count palatine of the *Rhine*, and *Lewis*, duke of *Bavaria*, his brother; *Volmar*, marquis of *Brandenburg*; *Rodolphus*, duke of *Saxony*, ſon of *Albert* II. and *Eric*, duke of *Lower Saxony*, aſſembled at *Frankfort*, in order to deliberate upon the choice of an emperor, when a ſchiſm happened among the electors (A). Thoſe of *Mentz*, *Triers*, *Bohemia*, and *Brandenburg*, declared for *Lewis*, duke of *Bavaria*, who was then in the city; while the archbiſhop of *Cologn*, the count palatine, and the duke of *Saxony*, adhered to *Frederic*, duke of *Auſtria*, who had taken up his quarters at *Saxenhauſen* on the other ſide of the river. *Lewis* immediately ſet out for *Aix la Chapelle*, where he was crowned by the archbiſhop of *Mentz*; and the other electors conducted *Frederic* to *Bonn*, where he received the crown from the elector of *Cologne*[e]. After this double coronation, theſe two emperors exerted themſelves in gaining over the imperial cities, and in procuring advantages, each to the prejudice of the other. Beſides thoſe we have already mentioned, *Lewis* had engaged in his party ſeveral biſhops and counts, particularly thoſe of *Weſtphalia*, to whom he granted ſundry privileges. The city of *Cologn*, although its archbiſhop was of the contrary faction, together with the towns of the *Lower Rhine* as far as *Seltz*, eſpouſed his cauſe. As for *Frederic* he was acknowleged by *Seltz*, and all the other cities of the *Higher Rhine*, except *Berne* and *Soleure*, which remained neuter. This diſpute, which involved the whole country in civil war and confuſion, and had like to have ruined the empire intirely, was maintained in mutual ravages for ſeveral years, until the two rivals gave battle to each other, in order to decide the conteſt at once.

---

[d] Geſt. BALDWIN. l. iii.

(A) Various are the accounts of this difference among the the electors, in giving a detail of which we have copied *Heiſs*, who ſeems to have compared all the authors who have written on this ſubject, and followed the beſt authority.

Each is elected by his own party, and crowned.

A. D. 1315.

They take the field againſt one another.

WHILE *Frederic*, fluſhed with pride and ambition, and confiding in the power, magazines, and affluence, which he inherited of his father, exerted all his endeavours to anticipate and drive his rival from the imperial crown, one *Truchſes* of *Alzein* attempted to aſſaſſinate *Lewis*, in hope of ingratiating himſelf with the duke of *Auſtria* by this execrable action. With this view he and his accomplices repaired to *Oppenheim*, where the emperor reſided with the archbiſhop of *Mentz*; but *Lewis* having received notice of their deſign, took meaſures for their being apprehended. They were accordingly taken, tried, convicted, broke alive upon the wheel, and their quarters expoſed *in terrorem* of all traitors[f].

An attempt to aſſaſſinate Lewis.

MEAN while *Leopold* of *Auſtria*, zealous for the glory of his brother *Frederic*, aſſembled an army, and marched towards *Spire*, whither *Lewis* had advanced; but this laſt intrenching himſelf ſo ſtrongly that he could not be attacked with any probable hopes of ſucceſs, *Leopold*, having ravaged the country, took the route of *Augsburg*, croſſed the black mountains, paſſed the river *Lech*, and entering *Upper Bavaria*,

Leopold *of* Auſtria *ravages the country of* Spire, *marches into* Bavaria, *and*

---

[e] STRUV. per. ix. ſect. 5. l. 1.

[f] ADLZREITTER. part ii.

ſur-

burns Landſperg.

ſurpriſed and ſet fire to *Landſperg*. *Frederic*, ſuppoſing that the inaction of *Lewis* proceeded from his weakneſs, began to look upon him with contempt; and inſtead of purſuing the advantages he had gained, amuſed himſelf at *Baſil* with the ceremony of a double match between him and *Elizabeth* of *Arragon*, and between his brother *Leopold* and *Katherine* of *Savoy*.

Lewis *negotiates a treaty with the* Swiſs,

WHILE he trifled away his time in theſe nuptials, which were celebrated with great magnificence, *Lewis* was employed in negotiating a treaty with the *Swiſs* cantons, which he knew to be the natural enemies of the *Auſtrian* houſe: but although part of them had already acknowleged him as emperor, they were very ſcrupulous of taking up arms in his favour, and before he could remove their objections, *Leopold* endeavoured to prevent the alliance. On pretence of aſſiſting the abbot of the hermitage of the virgin *Mary*, who had excommunicated the *Swiſs*, in conſequence of a diſpute concerning the limits of their territories, he advanced with an army of 20,000 men againſt the cantons of *Switz*, *Ury*, and *Underwald*, which were confederated for their mutual defence. As their whole force did not exceed 1600 men, they had recourſe to the policy of war; and knowing the enemy muſt neceſſarily paſs through a narrow defile, they poſted part of their troops upon the mountains near *Morgarten*, from whence they rolled down ſuch a quantity of huge ſtones upon the *Auſtrians*, that great numbers of them were killed and wounded, and the whole army put in confuſion; then the *Swiſs* fell upon them with great fury, and drove them out of the canton with terrible ſlaughter. Such exploits of valour were performed by the *Swiſs* upon that occaſion, and ſo much depended upon the fortune of the day, that the fight of *Morgarten* may be compared to the battle of *Marathon*, which aſcertained the liberty of *Greece*; and it certainly gave riſe to the *Helvetic* union; for the alliance which the three cantons had made for the term of ten years only, was now converted into a perpetual league, in which the others occaſionally engaged [s].

who defeat the Auſtrian *army at* Morgarten.

A. D. 1316.

Drawn battle fought between Lewis *and* Frederic.

FREDERIC, in the mean time, beſieged *Eſlinguen* on the *Neckar*, and *Lewis* coming to the relief of the place, with a body of troops which he had received from *Bohemia*, a battle was fought with great obſtinacy, until night parted the combitants; ſo that neither ſide could claim the victory: for although *Lewis* ſuſtained the greateſt loſs, his rival was ſo weakened by the engagement, that he was fain to raiſe the ſiege and retire. Thus the two competitors maintained the war with various ſucceſs, endeavouring to acquire new friends, and ſtrengthen their different factions, by favours and grants, which both beſtowed in quality of emperor.

---

[s] SIMLER. de Repub. Helvetic, p. 70.

Pope John XXII. *makes encroachments upon the imperial crown.*

IN the midſt of this contention, *John* XXII. being raiſed to the papacy, both princes ſtrove to obtain his good graces, and both were diſappointed in their expectation; for though he amuſed each party with flattering promiſes, he would confirm neither, but reſolved to take the advantage of their diviſion for extending his own power in the empire, and ruining the party of the *Gibelines* in *Italy*.

WITH this view he publiſhed the conſtitutions of pope *Clement* V. in which that pontif declared, that the empire is dependent on the *Roman* church; and that the emperors, in receiving the crown, ought to take the oath of allegiance to his holineſs. Then he iſſued out a bull upon his own authority, annulling the offices of the vicars or lieutenants, whom the emperor *Henry* VII. had appointed in the different cities of *Lombardy*, declaring, that as the imperial throne was now vacant, the government of the empire belonged to the pope alone, as ſucceſſor of *St. Peter*, to whom was granted all power on earth as well as in heaven; forbidding all perſons, of what rank or quality ſoever, whether royal or patriarchal, to aſſume the quality of vicar, or any other office or dignity of the empire, without his permiſſion, on pain of perſonal excommunication, and an interdiction on his lands and territories; and, laſtly, nominating *Robert*, king of *Naples*, vicar of the empire in *Italy*. Not contented with theſe arbitrary proceedings, he ſummoned the two competitors for the empire to appear at his tribunal, that he might hear their different pleas, and determine to which of them the empire ſhould belong.

A. D. 1317.

The Gibelines *declare for* Lewis. *and the* Guelphs *for* Frederic.

Viſconti *makes himſelf maſter of a great many*

THE *Gibelines*, far from being intimidated by his threats, ſtill kept poſſeſſion of their poſts and dignities; and the pope, incenſed at their contempt of his authority, declared openly for the *Guelphs*, and the civil war was renewed in *Italy* with infinite rancour and animoſity. The *Gibelines* eſpouſed the cauſe of *Lewis*, which was likewiſe ſupported by *Frederic* of *Arragon*, king of *Sicily*; and the *Guelphs*, reinforced by *Robert*, king of *Naples*, attached themſelves to the intereſt of the duke of *Auſtria*. *Matthew Viſconti*, the moſt powerful of all the *Gibelines*, made himſelf maſter of *Milan*, taking to himſelf the quality of prince and lord of that city, for *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, king of the *Romans*. He reduced *Pavia*, *Novara*, *Placentia*, *Alexandria*, and ſeveral other cities; and, notwithſtanding a ſentence of excommunication thundered *towns in* Lombardy, *and beſieges* Genoa.

out againſt him and all his adherents by the pope, he undertook the ſiege of *Genoa*, where the *Guelphs* prevailed, which he maintained, with the aſſiſtance of the families of *Doria* and *Spinola*, for the ſpace of two years; during which the place was ſeveral times relieved by *Robert*, king of *Naples*, and the joint efforts of the pope and *Florentines*, until the army of the beſiegers being reduced to an inconſiderable number, he was obliged to relinquiſh the enterprize [h].

A.D. 1319.

FREDERIC of *Auſtria*, ſeeing the ſtrength of his rival daily increaſing, began to be apprehenſive of his growing power, eſpecially as he now preſumed to act upon the offenſive, and had actually made an incurſion into *Auſtria*. Thither he was followed by *Frederic*, who obliged him to paſs the river *Inn*, and the two armies came in ſight of each other near *Muldorf*. Here the duke of *Auſtria*, perceiving himſelf inferior in power to his adverſary, propoſed that their difference ſhould be decided by a combat between fifteen of each ſide; and his propoſal being embraced by *Lewis*, the champions were choſen, and engaged in preſence of both armies with ſuch fury, that in a very little time there was not one of them alive. This was but the prelude to a general action, which laſted from the morning till the afternoon, when the *Auſtrians* were worſted, and obliged to repaſs the river in the utmoſt diſorder; while *Leopold*, who advanced on the ſide of the *Lech* at the head of a body of cuiraſſiers, in order to ſurround the *Bavarians*, underſtanding his brother's defeat, and the diſperſion of his army, retreated with great expedition into *Suabia*, where he employed himſelf in making new levies.

Frederic *is defeated at* Muldorf.

Repairs his loſs, joins his brother Leopold,

NOTWITHSTANDING the great loſs which *Frederic* ſuſtained on this occaſion, he found means to repair it in a very ſhort time, and joined his brother, who was reinforced by *Ulric*, count *de Ferrera* (B) and *John*, biſhop of *Straſburg*. By

---

[h] VILLAN. c. 110.

(B) This *Ulric*, count *de Ferrera*, died without male iſſue, but left two daughters *Jane* and *Urſula*; the former was married in the ſequel to *Albert* II. archduke of *Auſtria*, ſurnamed *the Sage*, or *the Lame*. This prince being biſhop of *Paſſaw*, repreſented to the pope, that his four brothers, archdukes of *Auſtria*, were dead without male iſſue, and obtained a diſpenſation to marry *Jane*, with whom he acquired the extenſive county of *Ferrera*, which the houſe of *Auſtria* continued to poſſeſs till the peace of *Munſter*; for *Urſula* ceded all her rights in conſideration of 8000 marks of ſilver. Thus *Alſace* gave a wife to the arch-

By this juncture the archdukes were in a condition to appear again in the field againſt *Lewis*, though ſupported by the archbiſhops of *Mentz* and *Triers*, and the king of *Bohemia*. While they faced one another on different ſides of the *Bruſch* in *Lower Alſace*, *Lewis* ſent a trumpet to defy *Frederic* to battle, in conſequence of which defiance, this laſt immediately quitted his intrenchments, drew up his army in order of battle, and even paſſed the river in order to attack the enemy, with ſuch reſolution, as ſtruck a panic into the *Bavarians*, who retreated with great precipitation, and were purſued for three days, until they took ſhelter under the ramparts of *Haguenau*.

compels the Bavarians *to retreat with precipitation,*

Next year *Frederic* and *Leopold* went in queſt of *Lewis*, into his own country of *Bavaria*; and he not being in a condition to oppoſe them in the field, betook himſelf to his ſtrong places, leaving the open country a prey to his enemies, who lived at diſcretion, and ravaged it for a conſiderable time[i].

A. D. 1320. *and ravages* Bavaria.

In a little time after the *Bavarian* was freed from theſe troubleſome gueſts, he ſent a body of horſe to the aſſiſtance of the *Gibellines* in *Italy*; and the pope perceiving the affairs of the *Guelphs* upon the decline, invited *Philip de Valois*, nephew to the king of *France*, to come to their aſſiſtance, in which caſe he would declare him general of the holy ſee. *Philip* accepted of the dignity, and began his march into *Italy*, at the head of a number of *French* volunteers, on the promiſe of being joined at *Aſt* by cardinal *Paget* with 800 horſe, and of receiving reinforcements from the king of *Naples*, and the cities of *Bologna*, *Sienna*, and *Florence*. But this expedition was ruined by his inexperience and precipitation; for advancing to *Mortaro*, in his way to *Vercelli*, with 1500 horſe only, he was cut off from the reſt of his army by *Galeazo Viſconti*, and obliged to ſollicit a conference, in which he agreed to relinquiſh his enterprize, and actually returned to *France* with diſgrace.

The pope invites Philip de Valois *into* Italy,

who makes a ſhameful retreat into France. 1321.

The pope, baffled in his hopes from this quarter, had recourſe to *Frederic* of *Auſtria*, whoſe election he promiſed to confirm, provided he would deliver *Italy* from the tyranny of the *Viſcontis*; and this prince detached his brother prince

---

[i] Barre, tom. vi. p. 447.

archduke *Albert*, who continued the line of the houſe of *Auſtria*, when it was almoſt extinct by the death of the other ſons of *Albert*, king of the *Romans* (1).

(1) *Cuſpin. Auſtr.*

Frederic of Auſtria *abandons the* Guelphs.

Henry with 200 horſe to the aſſiſtance of the *Guelphs*; for by this time *John* XXII. had publiſhed a cruſade againſt the *Gibelines*. *Matthew Viſconti*, however, who was equally politic and brave, found means, by artful remonſtrances, to convince the duke of *Auſtria*, that he acted contrary to his own intereſt in ſupporting the *Guelphs*, who were the declared enemies of the empire, againſt the *Gibelines*, who had always been its unſhaken adherents. To theſe repreſentations he added ſome valuable preſents; in conſequence of which *Frederic* recalled his brother, on pretence that the *Guelphs* had refuſed to put him in poſſeſſion of *Breſcia* [k].

Henry, on his return, joined his brother *Frederic*, who had made a ſecond irruption into *Bavaria*, and acquired a conſiderable booty, with which he might have retired before the arrival of *Lewis*, who was employed in aſſembling all the forces he could bring together; but diſdaining, perhaps, to make a retreat, which might be conſtrued into the effect of fear, he, though inferior in number, reſolved to remain in *Bavaria*, and cantoned himſelf between the *Iſer* and the *Inn*, where he received a reinforcement from the *Auſtrian* nobility: but he was not yet joined by his brother *Leopold*.

A. D. 1322. *A battle is fought near* Vechivis.

Lewis, whoſe army amounted to 30,000 effective men, under the different commands of the king of *Bohemia*, the burgrave of *Nuremberg*, and other experienced chiefs, paſſed the *Inn* and encamped near *Frederic*, in the plain of *Vechivis*, between *Muldorf* and *Oettingen* (C). They engaged upon St. *Michael*'s day, and fought with great obſtinacy, till at laſt *Frederic*, having obliged his enemies to give ground, began to congratulate himſelf upon the victory, when an experienced officer, belonging to the *Bavarian* ſide, found means to rally the fugitives, and bring them back to the charge with redoubled fury (D); ſo that their firſt giving way

---

[k] Rainald. ad ann. 1320.

(C) While they lay fronting each other, *Lewis* ſent an herald to tell *Henry* that in three days he would give him battle: an intimation which was ſo agreeable to the *Auſtrian*, that he preſented the meſſenger with a curious ſword. On the eve of the battle he detached an *Hungarian* captain to reconnoitre the enemy, and bring an account of their numbers, and this officer brought him word, that there was *enough to kill, enough to be taken, and enough to run away* (1).

(D) The name of this captain was *Seyfrid Schwepperman*

(1) *And. Preſbit. p.* 5. *Struv. per.* ix. *ſect.* 5.

After

way ſeemed no other than a feint to diſorder the enemy. By this very circumſtance *Lewis* gained the battle. The firſt priſoner that was brought to him was *Frederic*'s brother, duke *Henry*, dangerouſly wounded; then the burgrave of *Nuremberg* preſented to him *Frederic* himſelf, who, after having fought with amazing valour, and killed fifty men with his own hand, had ſurrendered when he found himſelf abandoned by all his troops [l]. The duke of *Lorrain* was likewiſe taken priſoner on this occaſion. *Lewis* ordered the purſuit to be ſtopped, and ſent *Frederic* priſoner to the caſtle of *Tranſnitz*, where he remained in confinement for three years [m].

Leopold *continues the war with various ſucceſs.*

MEAN while duke *Leopold* advanced by long marches with a body of troops from *Suabia*, but, hearing of the defeat and captivity of his brothers, he retreated in a great hurry to his own fiefs on the frontiers of *Swiſſerland*, and derived ſufficient time to intrench himſelf on the mountains, from an accident that happened to *Lewis*, who was taken ill and fell from his horſe, while he was in purſuit. Though diſabled for the preſent by this misfortune, he detached *Albert Humelion de Lechtenburg*, in quality of landvoct of *Alſace*, many places of which province ſubmitted to the conqueror. Nevertheleſs, *Leopold* made ſhift to continue the war in that country, where many ſevere ſkirmiſhes were fought with various ſucceſs. He likewiſe ſollicited the pope and the king of *France* to employ their credit for the enlargement of his brothers; but all that he could obtain was the liberty of *Henry*, who did not long ſurvive his releaſe: as for the duke of *Lorrain*, he was, at the deſire of *Charles the Fair*, diſmiſſed, after having taken an oath, importing, that he would never more engage in the cauſe of the *Auſtrian* princes.

Endeavours to excite a revolt

LEOPOLD, thus diſappointed in the hopes he had conceived from his arms, as well as from his neighbours, attempted to excite a revolt among the *Bohemians*, againſt their king *John*, who was his declared enemy. That kingdom was full

---

[l] REBD. ad ann. 1322.

[m] AVENT. ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 605, 606, 607. VILLAN. c. 174. REBDORF. in ann. ONUPHR. in Chron. SURIT. Indic. l. ii.

After the battle, while *Lewis* and his officers ſat at table, the ſteward told his imperial majeſty that there was nothing for dinner but eggs, and of theſe but a ſmall number; upon which *Lewis* ordered one to be given to each gueſt, and a couple to *Schwepperman*; adding, "If I lie in my own camp to-night, it will be intirely owing to *Seyfrid* (1)."

(1) *Avent. an. Boior. lib.* vii. *p.* 607.

againſt John *king of* Bohemia;

of malecontents, including not only thoſe who were diſguſted at the weakneſs, ſloth, and debauchery of their prince, but alſo ſuch as adhered to the party of *Henry Lippa*, a factious inſolent miniſter, who, for his maladminiſtration, had been baniſhed, returned, raiſed diſturbances, and been impriſoned in the fortreſs of *Prague*. His partiſans, who were both numerous and powerful, had written a letter to the king, demanding his releaſe, and threatening, in caſe of a refuſal, to deſtroy the country with fire and ſword. *Leopold* ſeized the opportunity of marching with his troops to the frontiers, and, in all probability, might have wreſted the crown from the legal poſſeſſor, who was very ill beloved, and worſe obeyed, by his ſubjects. But the ſcheme was fruſtrated by a reinforcement which *John* received from the archbiſhops of *Triers* and *Mentz*, who headed their troops in perſon, and effected an accommodation between the king and the diſcontented nobility. *Lippa* was ſet at liberty, in conſequence of this agreement; yet he ſeized the firſt opportunity of *John*'s abſence to re-embroil the ſtate, by means of fomenting a jealouſy between the queen-dowager and reigning princeſs: nay, when the king returned to his own dominions, this indefatigable incendiary alienated his affection from his wife, by poſſeſſing him with a notion that ſhe was privately engaged in forming cabals to dethrone her huſband, and raiſe her ſon to the throne. The king, alarmed at theſe falſe inſinuations, ſent the young prince to be educated in *France*, at the court of *Charles the Fair*, and, terrified at the thoughts of a rebellion in *Bohemia*, reſolved to exchange his crown for the *Palatinate* of the *Rhine*, which was by this time in the hands of the emperor [n].

who wants to exchange his crown for the Palatinate *of the* Rhine.

Lewis *acknowleged as lawful emperor.*

For all the princes of the empire, who had favoured the party of *Frederic*, ſeeing him totally ruined by this overthrow, reconciled themſelves with *Lewis*, and owned him for legitimate emperor, and thoſe that ſcrupled to ſubmit voluntarily, were compelled by force. But his chief reſentment was expreſſed againſt *Rodolphus* count *Palatine*, his own brother, who had favoured the election of *Frederic*, and afterwards ſupported his faction. He was driven from his territories, and obliged to retire with his family into *England*, where he died in extreme poverty.

He expells his own brother, who flies into England.

Lewis, who ſeized upon his territories, aſſented to the propoſal made by the king of *Bohemia*, and ordered an act of exchange to be expedited, by which he obliged himſelf to guarantee the *Palatinate* to *John* of *Luxemburg* and his heirs.

---

[n] Dubrarv. Hiſt. Boem. l. xx.

This deed was no ſooner known than it filled all *Bohemia* with alarm; the eſtates of the kingdom aſſembled, and declared the exchange void and injurious to the nation: nay, ſo much were they incenſed againſt *John*, that they reſolved to ſhake off the yoke of the houſe of *Luxemburg*, and proceed to the election of a new ſovereign. In this dilemma, *John* had recourſe to the emperor, who repaired to *Prague* in perſon, and having ineffectually uſed all his endeavours to reconcile the ſtates to the exchange, he cancelled the original act, and the *Bohemians*, pacified by this ſacrifice, took a new oath of allegiance to their king, whom they promiſed to ſupport againſt all his enemies [o].

The act of exchange is cancelled by the emperor.

A. D. 1323.

Proceedings of the diet of Nuremberg.

THESE civil commotions being appeaſed, *Lewis* convoked a diet at *Nuremberg*, in order to deliberate upon meaſures for ſecuring the tranquility of the empire; and in this aſſembly, among other wholeſome regulations, a ſtatute was enacted againſt *Proviſors*, who, in a clandeſtine manner, ſhould obtain the reverſions of benefices from the church of *Rome*; a practice which had been ſhamefully abuſed by pope *John* XXII. to whom the noblemen, veſted with the right of preſentation, had often complained, without having received the leaſt redreſs. His holineſs was extremely chagrined at this new law, which ſerved to augment the rancour of his hatred againſt *Lewis*; though he would not venture to complain aloud, becauſe he knew the nobility and clergy were reſolved to ſupport the edict [p].

AFTER the death of *Rodolphus*, his children were recalled, and their inheritance reſtored; though *Lewis* rendered the electoral dignity alternative between his family and theirs, on condition that they ſhould be the firſt to enjoy it. He likewiſe, with the conſent of the ſtates and princes of the empire, united to his family the marquiſate of *Brandenburg*, vacant by the death of *Waldemar* II. and *John* IV. who was the laſt marquis of *Brandenburg* of the poſterity of *Otho* I. count of *Anhalt* (E).

BESIDES

---

[o] Hiſt. Luxemb. l. xlviii.

[p] BARRE, tom. vi. p. 470.

(E) During the conteſt between *Lewis* and *Frederic*, *Waldemar* II. elector and marquis of *Brandenburg*, having no children, ſet out privately for the *Holy Land*, in the habit of a pilgrim, after having put his brother *John* in poſſeſſion of his dominions. *John* dying in leſs than a month after his departure, the emperor beſtowed the electorate upon his own ſon *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, as a vacant fief reverted to the empire. The dukes of *Saxony* and the princes of *Anhalt*, as branches of the antient

Besides theſe acquiſitions, *Lewis*, by eſpouſing *Margaret* daughter of *William* count of *Hainault* and *Holland*, attached to the houſe of *Bavaria* thoſe two counties, together with *Friezland* and *Zealand*, which it preſerved during the beſt part of a century; and he might have likewiſe made himſelf maſter of other rich domains, had he, in imitation of *Rodolphus*, cultivated the popes, ſo as to render them propitious to his deſigns; but he had the misfortune to be ever at variance with the ſee of *Rome*, in ſupporting the rights of his crown, and the canonicity of his election.

Endeavours to appeaſe pope John XXII. *who publiſhes a bull againſt him.*

Having now nothing to apprehend in *Germany*, he reſolved to employ his whole attention in ſtriving to appeaſe pope *John* XXII. for by this time *Galeazo Viſconti*, who ſucceeded to the command of the *Gibelines*, at his father's death, had been expelled from *Milan* by the *Guelphs*, and the chiefs of the emperor's party at *Verona* and *Mantua* had done homage to the pope, and received abſolution from the hands of the legate, cardinal *Bertrand de Paget*. To this prelate, who reſided at *Placentia*, the emperor ſent ſome officers to deſire a ceſſation of arms might be granted to the *Gibelines*; but the cardinal treating them with inſolence and contempt, they repaired ſeparately to *Lucca*, *Paſtora*, *Mantua*, and *Verona*, where they tampered ſo ſucceſsfully with the inhabitants, that all the *Gibelines* of theſe cities united under the conduct of count *Bertholdi*, and marching to *Milan*, made themſelves maſters of that city, almoſt without reſiſtance.

The ſubſtance of the bull.

The pope, incenſed at this tranſaction, reſolved to proceed againſt *Lewis* without further reſerve, and forthwith publiſhed a monitory, in which he declared, that the imperial dignity commenced a fief of the holy ſee that very day on which the empire was by the *Romans* transferred from the *Greeks* to the *French*, in the perſon of *Charlemagne*; becauſe at that time it was decreed, that the election of an emperor ſhould never take place until after it ſhould be approved and confirmed by the pope, who was the father and prince of all Chriſtendom. He added, that, when the empire was vacant by death or otherwiſe, it belonged to the pope alone to provide another, and to take care of the adminiſtration during

antient houſe of *Brandenburg*, remonſtrated againſt this alienation, eſpecially as there was no account of *Waldemar*'s death: but theſe repreſentations having no effect upon the emperor or the ſtates, they entered a ſolemn proteſt againſt the inveſtiture, which was conferred upon young *Lewis*, and refuſed to aſſiſt at the ceremony (z).

(z) *Rebdorf. ad ann.* 1323.

the interregnum; and even while the election remains conteſted between two competitors, his holineſs alone has the ſole power to decide the diſpute, and to exact the oath of fidelity of the prince to whom he ſhall have adjudged the empire, in quality of viceroy or lieutenant of Him, who is emperor of heaven and earth; for, as the ſoul commands and governs, and the body is bound to obey its orders, ſo thoſe things, which are frail and periſhable in Chriſtianity, ought to be ſubject to thoſe that are celeſtial and eternal; that the prophane ſhould be ſubjected to the holy, and the corporeal to the ſpiritual; a regulation that will take place when the pope, by his own authority, ſhall diſpoſe of both dignities, when the church ſhall prevail, and the empire and all other powers humble themſelves before her, and ſubmit to her laws. He therefore concluded, that as the princes of *Germany* had been divided ever ſince the death of *Henry* VII. and elected two princes, each of them pretending to the crown, he alone had the right to decide the conteſt, and, in the mean time, to govern the empire; and as *Lewis* had encroached upon his rights, he commanded him, by virtue of that power which he derived from heaven, to lay aſide the imperial dignity, and deſiſt from exerciſing the functions of an emperor, without pretending to reſume them, until he ſhould have obtained the expreſs permiſſion of his holineſs; who, in the mean time, laid injunctions upon all patriarchs, biſhops, prieſts, nobles, and commons, to abandon and withdraw their obedience from the uſurper [q].

The emperor proteſts againſt the bull, which he anſwers article by article. A.D. 1324.

THIS bull was no ſooner publiſhed, than the emperor aſſembled all the learned men of *Germany*, both of the clergy and laity, to examine, and give their opinions of that performance. They accordingly concluded, that it was unjuſt, unreaſonable, contrary to the Chriſtian religion, and that he ought to call a general council. The emperor followed this advice; and, having proteſted againſt the bull, which he anſwered article by article, reproaching the pope himſelf as a favourer of hereſy, ſince he endeavoured to aboliſh the ſovereign power of princes, which was eſtabliſhed by God; he ſignified his appeal with all the requiſite formalities. He ſent envoys to *Avignon*, with this vindication of himſelf, and to deſire his holineſs would ſuſpend his cenſures until he could receive the advice of the princes of the empire: but all the favour he could obtain was a delay of two months, at the expiration of which he iſſued another monitory, complaining that *Lewis* had made no uſe of this indulgence, and declaring that he would proceed to publiſh the ſentence of excommunication pronounced againſt him, if he would not, within the term of three months, reſign the title of king of the *Romans*, and withdraw his protection from the *Viſcontis* and other enemies of the church[r].

---

[q] AVENT. ann. Boior. lib. vii. p. 698, & ſeq.

He diſregards the pope's menaces; ſupports the Gibelines *in* Italy.

Lewis was too jealous of the independency of his crown, to be ſwayed by this remonſtrance; and the pope's menaces ſeemed the leſs terrible, as the *Viſcontis* had juſt defeated the army of the church, and carried the general priſoner to *Milan*; an incident, in conſequence of which his holineſs renewed the cenſures againſt that family, and even cauſed a new cruſade to be preached againſt them and all their adherents. The emperor, therefore, reſolving to pay no farther regard to the church of *Rome*, appointed vicars in *Italy*, and reinforced the *Gibelines* in ſuch a manner, that they gained ſeveral advantages over their enemies, while in *Germany* he exerted his endeavours to reduce *Leopold* of *Auſtria*, who ſtill refuſed to acknowlege his authority, or ſurrender the imperial ornaments, which he kept in the ſtrong caſtle of *Burgaw* in *Alſace*. This fortreſs was accordingly inveſted by the imperial troops, who had made ſome progreſs in the ſiege, when *Leopold*, marching to its relief, defeated the rear of the *Bavarians*, and compelled them to abandon the enterprize[s].

Beſieges Burgaw *in* Alſace.

The three months preſcribed by pope *John* being elapſed, he proceeded to the excommunication of *Lewis*, which was no ſooner known in the empire, than the princes and ſtates aſſembled at *Ratiſbon*, where the emperor was requeſted to take care that the imperial dignity ſhould not be trampled upon, nor the *Germanic* liberty reduced to bondage. There alſo it was decreed, that the proceedings of the pope ſhould be deemed abuſive and void, and that all thoſe who paid the leaſt regard to his bulls, ſhould be puniſhed as perturbators of the public peace, and enemies of the empire[t].

At this aſſembly *Lewis*, in a diſtinct apology, juſtified every part of his own conduct, and produced thirty-ſix articles, in conſequence of which, he affirmed that the pope ought to be depoſed; and again appealed to a general council, deſiring that it might be convoked, with all convenient ſpeed, in a place of ſafety[u] (F).

This

---

[r] Rainald. n. 7. 12.

[s] Nicol. Burg. p. 89.

[t] Avent. ubi ſup. Krantz. l. ix. c. 14. Ric. Heruart. contra Bzov.

[u] Baluz. vit. Pap. Aventin. tom. ii. p. 278.

(F) In order to combat the pope's authority, *Lewis* employed the pens of *Marſilius* of *Padua* and *John* of *Ghent*, two famous

Lewis *holds tournaments.*

A. D. 1325.

Forms the confederacy of Reenich.

This ſtep being taken, he publiſhed the holding of tournaments at *Frankfort* and *Nuremberg*, where there was a vaſt concourſe of noblemen and knights, a great number of whom he, by his liberality, engaged in his intereſt, and many private treaties were made, by which they bound themſelves to ſupply him with troops, to fruſtrate the efforts of the houſe of *Auſtria*. But this expedient proving ineffectual, he had recourſe to the princes of the empire, and a confederacy was formed in his favour by the king of *Bohemia*, the archbiſhop of *Triers*, *Ferry* duke of *Lorrain*, and *Edward* count *de Barr*, who engaged to furniſh a certain proportion of troops, to be maintained at their own expence; and each prince obliged himſelf to head his forces in perſon. In conſequence of this treaty, which was concluded at *Reenich* upon the *Moſelle*, the city of *Metz* was beſieged, and in a little time ſurrendered upon capitulation, the articles of which were very unfavourable to the inhabitants, who bought their pardon with a very large ſum of money [x]. Againſt this powerful aſſociation the pope reſolved to raiſe a competitor that ſhould be able to diſpute the empire with *Lewis*, and actually negotiated with *Leopold* of *Auſtria*, and ſome other *German* princes, for electing *Charles the Fair* king of the *Romans*. *Frederic* of *Auſtria* promiſed to reſign his pretenſions in favour of the *French* monarch; the king of *Bohemia*, the electors of *Saxony*, *Cologn*, and *Mentz*, being tampered with, ſeemed willing to concur in any ſcheme that would reſtore peace to the empire; and *Leopold*, miſtaking this favourable diſpoſition for a fixed reſolution, deſired the pope would give *Charles* to underſtand, that it would be neceſſary for him to have a perſonal conference with the *German* princes. *Bar ſur Aube* was the place pitched upon for this interview, and thither did *Charles* repair with a magnificent equipage; but the *German* princes, who had given no poſitive promiſe, would not quit their own dominions; ſo that *Leopold* was the only perſon who waited upon the king of *France*, and that monarch was ſo chagrined at the diſappointment, that he quitted the purſuit, and left *Lewis* and the pope to battle each other [y]. *Leopold*, notwithſtanding this

An interview propoſed between the king of France *and the* German *princes at* Bar ſur Aube.

---

[x] Hiſt. Luxemb. c. 48.

[y] Villan. l. ix. c. 268.

famous doctors, and ſchiſmatic Cordeliers, who, in the emperor's name, wrote a number of defamatory libels againſt *John* XXII. ſtiling him an unjuſt perſecutor of the innocent, a deſtroyer of the holy ſee, a violator of the canons, author of diſcord, perturbator of the empire, and a prevaricator of the laws, who deſpiſed the poverty of Jeſus Chriſt and his ſacraments (3).

(3) *Villan, lib.* ix. *c.* 265.

miſcarriage, would not abandon his enterprize; but aſſembling all the princes who oppoſed *Lewis* at *Rens* near *Coblentz*, where the pope's nuncios and the envoys of *France* were preſent, he propoſed that, in order to quiet the troubles of *Germany*, *Charles the Fair* ſhould be elected emperor. This propoſal was ſtrenuouſly oppoſed by *Berthold de Bucheck*, commander of the *Teutonic* order, and afterwards biſhop of *Straſburg*; and the *French* envoys declared their maſter would never conſent to wear a crown which belonged to *Lewis* of *Bavaria* [z]. This ſucceſſion of diſappointments, obliged *Leopold* at laſt to liſten to the advice of his friends, who exhorted him to deſiſt from all oppoſition, and ſurrender to *Lewis* the imperial ornaments: he accordingly ſent to that prince the lance, ſword, and crown, of *Charlemagne*, together with the other enſigns of royalty, in expectation of ſeeing his brother *Frederic* releaſed. *Lewis* received theſe ſymbols with great indifference, and ſtill refuſed to ſet the duke of *Auſtria* at liberty, until he found his conduct was blamed even by his own adherents.

Leopold *of* Auſtria *ſends the imperial ornaments to* Lewis.

THE archbiſhop of *Mentz*, ſhocked at ſuch violent proceedings, which intailed miſery and devaſtation on the empire, begged the emperor to conſider, that *Germany* had never been ſo much united within itſelf, but that the popes, by their intrigues, had found means to diſturb its repoſe; and obſerved that the moſt ſalutary meaſure he could take in the preſent conjucture, would be to make an accommodation with his enemies, and eſpecially with the princes of *Auſtria*. In conſequence of this advice, propoſals of peace were made to *Frederic*, who was, by this time, heartily tired of his confinement; and it was agreed between them, that *Frederic* ſhould be ſet at liberty, on condition of his renouncing all claim and title to the imperial dignity during the life of *Lewis*. This treaty being afterwards executed, the two princes met at *Mourpach*, where they were perſonally reconciled to each other [a], and *Frederic*, as a proof of his ſincerity, promiſed, by an authentic deed, that the princes of the houſe of *Auſtria* ſhould never pretend to the imperial crown, when any prince of *Bavaria* ſhould be competitor (G).

Liſtens to the advice of the archbiſhop of Mentz; *and makes peace with the princes of* Auſtria.

---

[z] GERHARD. de Rev. l. iii. [a] VILLAN. lib. ix. c. 294, 315. HERUART. contra Bzov. Hacſem. de geſt. Pont. Leodien. l. ii. c. 10. AVENT. ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 614. KRANTZ. l. ix. c. 14.

(G) This condition, though mentioned by *Aventinus*, *Heiſs*, and other writers, ſeems contradictory to the terms of the treaty, THERE was no great likelihood, however, that the articles of this accommodation would be inviolably obſerved; for the pope abſolved *Frederic* from his oath, as an obligation laid upon him by compulſion, while he remained in captivity, and even promiſed to confirm his election. *Frederic* himſelf and his brother ſeemed to conſider the treaty in the ſame light, and waited only for a convenient opportunity of acting openly againſt the emperor. But, before the neceſſary preparations could be made, *Leopold* was ſeized with a fever, of which he died in *Alſace*; and with him expired the hopes of *Frederic*, whoſe perſonal activity was deſtroyed by a malady which he had contracted in priſon. Beſides, he was greatly embarraſſed by the pretenſions of his brother *Otho*, who claimed an equal ſhare of the ſucceſſion of *Leopold*; tho' this diſpute was afterwards referred to the deciſion of *John* king of *Bohemia* [b].

Is invited into Italy *by the* Gibelines.

BY this peace *Lewis* found himſelf at leiſure to mind the affairs of *Italy*, to which he was reſolved to apply himſelf in earneſt, not only with a view of being crowned at *Rome*, but alſo to fortify the party of the *Gibelines* againſt the pope and the king of *Naples*, who, for the relief of *Florence*, which was beſieged by *Caſtruccio* in the name of the emperor, had ſet on foot a conſiderable army, almoſt wholly compoſed of *French* and *Gaſcons*. The *Gibelines*, far from being diſcouraged at the fulminations of the pope againſt *Lewis*, were rather animated by them to maintain their party againſt the *Guelphs*, whoſe chief and patron was king *Robert*. Beſides, the *Romans* had driven the creatures of the pope out of the city, and ſignified to his holineſs, that, if he would not come and reſide at *Rome*, they would take care of their own affairs. It was on account of his refuſing to ſatisfy them in this particular, that they preſſed the emperor to come and receive the crown at *Rome*.

A.D. 1327.

LEWIS, finding the conjuncture favourable, convoked a diet at *Spire*, where the princes and ſtates of the empire

---

[b] ANON. LEOPIENS. ad ann. 1327.

ty, the firſt articles of which import, "That duke *Frederic* ſhall "renounce his claim to the "empire; that he ſhall deliver "up to *Lewis* the title of his "election, if it could be called "a title; that, during the life "of the emperor *Lewis*, he "ſhould not aſpire to the em"pire; and that, if ever the "pope ſhould ſollicit him to "renew his claim, he ſhould "not hearken to his ſollicita"tions (4)."

(4) *Hen. Rebdorf, ad ann.* 1322.

granted

Sets out for that country; is crowned at Milan.

granted to him the troops and ſupplies neceſſary for his expedition. In the beginning of the next year therefore, he ſet out for *Italy*, and at his arrival at *Trent*, he was met by the chiefs of his party, the deputies of the towns, and the enemies of the pope, who received him as the deliverer whom they had ſo long and eagerly expected [c].

Here he convoked a diet, at which were preſent *Cau de l'Eſcala*, *Paſſarini*, *Viſconti*, *Gui de Tarlata*, biſhop of *Arezzo*, deputies from *Caſtruccio*, and *Frederic* king of *Sicily*, together with other chiefs of the *Gibelines*, and a crowd of ſchiſmatic *Franciſcans*, with whom *Lewis* was always ſurrounded. In this aſſembly the emperor took an oath to go to *Italy*, from whence he would never return until he ſhould have received the imperial crown at *Rome*; and here he ordered the pope to be excommunicated as an heretic, unworthy of filling the pontifical throne [d].

Great commotions among the Guelphs *and* Gibelines.

From thence he repaired to *Milan* with the empreſs-queen, where he was crowned king of *Italy* by the biſhop of *Arezzo*, as the archbiſhop of *Milan* reſided in *Genoa*, and refuſed to perform the ceremony, on pretence of the emperor's being excommunicated. The arrival of *Lewis* in *Italy* put the factions of the *Guelphs* and *Gibelines* in great commotion; the *Guelphs* ſent envoy after envoy to preſs the king of *Naples* to march to the relief of *Tuſcany*. *Rome* was divided between the partizans of *Lewis* and the pope's adherents, and there was a third party that refuſed to declare themſelves for either, until the imperial faction having gained the aſcendency, compelled them to relinquiſh their neutrality, and ſide with *Lewis*. Thus reinforced, they elected *Sciarra Colonna* captain of the people, and ſent ambaſſadors to *Avignon*, to ſummon the pope to come and reſide at *Rome*, otherwiſe they would receive *Lewis* of *Bavaria* as their ſovereign. His holineſs was ſollicited to the ſame effect by the king of *Naples*, as ſenator of *Rome*; but he did not think proper to truſt himſelf in a city where he had ſuch powerful adverſaries; he contented himſelf with exhorting the *Romans* to preſerve their fidelity to their pontiff, and ſhut their gates againſt *Lewis*, whom he repreſented as an enemy to God and man. At the ſame time he directed his legate *John d'Urſini*, who reſided at *Florence*, to publiſh new bulls againſt the emperor, and, by his perſonal preſence, to keep the peace at *Rome*. In obedience to this order the legate advanced towards that city, in hope of effecting a reconciliation between the *Romans* and

---

[c] Idem ibid. [d] Corio, p. 459. [e] Avent. ubi ſup. Id. ibid. Spondan. Contin. Barre. tom. i. p. 589.

The prince of Morea *ſurprizes* Rome, *but is repulſed.*

Robert king of *Naples*, who had lately attempted to introduce his brother the prince of *Morea*, at the head of a thouſand horſe, to ſupport the faction of the nobles. As the people ſhut their gates againſt this body of troops, the prince ravaged the territory of *Viterbo*, and ſome *Genoeſe* gallies in the ſervice of *Robert* ſurprized the port of *Oſtia*; ſo that the *Romans*, being extremely incenſed againſt his *Neapolitan* majeſty, would liſten to no terms of accommodation. The legate, finding he could make no progreſs in the way of negotiation, joined the prince of *Morea*, who, entering the city by ſurprize, took poſſeſſion of the church and quarter of *St. Peter*, and cut in pieces all thoſe who oppoſed his arms. Next morning, however, the people ran to arms, ſounded the alarm, aſſembled at the *Capitol*, from whence they marched to the gate poſſeſſed by the *Neapolitans*, which they attacked with ſuch fury, that, after an obſtinate and bloody diſpute, the prince and legate were obliged to abandon the city in the utmoſt diſorder, and retreat for ſhelter to *Oſtia*.

A. D. 1328.

The emperor reduces Piſa.

Marches towards Rome;

where he is received amidſt the

THESE tranſactions were very favourable to the emperor, who, having quitted *Milan*, held a diet at the caſtle of *Orzi*, in the *Breſcian*; then he advanced into *Tuſcany*, from whence he ſent ambaſſadors to prepare for his reception at *Piſa*; but the inhabitants of that city refuſing to receive him, becauſe he lay under the ſentence of excommunication, he beſieged the town, which he compelled to ſurrender at diſcretion; then he entered in triumph, extorted a very large ſum of money from the citizens, and, during his abode in this place, renewed the ſentence which the emperor *Henry* VII. had pronounced againſt *Robert* king of *Naples*, as a rebellious ſubject of the empire [f]. On the other hand, the pope publiſhed a new bull of excommunication and privation againſt *Lewis*, and forbad all perſons, of what quality ſoever, under the moſt ſevere penalties, to furniſh him with the means of ſubſiſtence. Notwithſtanding this prohibition, the emperor began his march from *Piſa*, along the coaſt, towards *Rome*, without meeting with the leaſt oppoſition from the king of *Naples*, who, ſuppoſing that the intention of *Lewis* was to invade his kingdom, and act in conjunction with *Peter* king of *Sicily*, retired, in order to defend his own dominions. At *Viterbo* the emperor received a deputation from the *Romans*, with whom he adjuſted the articles of his entry, which was performed with great ſplendour. The governor and ſenators came forth to meet him and the empreſs, whom they conducted to the palace of St. *Peter*, where he ſtaid four

---

[f] RAINALD. ad an. 1327. n. 20.

acclamations of the people.

Is crowned, with the empreſs, in the church of St. Peter.

days with the princes of his train (H). Then he removed to *Santa Maria Major*, where *Sciarra Colonna* preſented him with the keys of the city and fortreſſes, which he garriſoned with his troops. In a few days, he and the empreſs were crowned in the church of St. *Peter*, with great magnificence, the ceremony of the unction having been performed by the biſhops of *Venice* and *Aleria*, who, as well as *Lewis*, had incurred the ſentence of excommunication. In a word, the emperor, by his liberality and courteous behaviour, gained the affection of the *Romans* to ſuch a degree, that his enemies durſt not even avow their animoſity or diſcontent [g].

THE pope, finding himſelf diſappointed in all the meaſures he had taken to prevent the coronation of *Lewis*, concerted other ſchemes for diminiſhing his power in *Italy*: for this purpoſe, he, by his emiſſaries, tampered with the governors of *Viterbo* and *Oſtia*, who had actually agreed to receive *Neapolitan* garriſons in theſe places; but *Lewis*, being timely informed of their deſigns, ſent forces to ſecure the towns, and apprehend the traitors, who were brought priſoners to *Rome*.

Is provoked by the pope to ſuch a degree, that he reſolves to be revenged.

THE emperor reſided nine months in the capital, during which he ſet every thing to rights, and reſtored the repoſe of *Italy*, while the pope renewed his bulls of excommunication and depoſition againſt him, refuſing to liſten to any propoſals of accommodation, unleſs the emperor would diveſt himſelf of his ſovereign authority, and, as a private perſon, ſubmit to the ſentence he ſhould pronounce upon his election. In a word, he treated him with ſuch indignity, that *Lewis* loſt his patience, and reſolved to be revenged upon him by chuſing another pope. In order to pave the way for this meaſure, he convoked a numerous aſſembly at *Rome*, where the pope was degraded, on pretence of his being an heretic, and a deſerter of his flock; and all the ſubjects of the empire were prohibited from owning him as the head of the church. He afterwards publiſhed a decree, by which all biſhops, particularly the pope, were forbid to abſent them-

Degrades him.

---

[g] Id. ibid. BURGUND. l. ii. p. 105.

(H) The emperor was accompanied in this expedition by his nephews *Robert* and *Rodolphus*, dukes of *Bavaria*, *Henry de Lechtemberg*, chancellor of the empire, *Henry* duke of *Brunſwic*, *Albert de Lechtemberg*, *Henry* landgrave of *Alſace*, *Frederic* burgrave of *Nuremberg*, *Menhard d'Ortemberg*, *William de Montfort*, and the grand-maſter of the *Teutonic* order (5).

(5) *Burgund. lib.* ii.

ſelves from their ſee longer than three months, or to go farther than two days journey, without the conſent of their chapters; and that, after having been recalled three times without returning, they ſhould be no longer owned as biſhops, but a new election take place, in the ſame manner as if they were dead; and, in conſequence of the firſt decree, by which all heretics were made guilty of a capital crime, he pronounced ſentence of death upon *James* of *Cahors*, ſo he named pope *John* XXII. as a perſon convicted of downright hereſy and treaſon, for having encroached upon the rights of the empire (I), by diſcarding the emperor's officers, and ſupplying their places by his own authority[b].

Condemns him to death.

These ſteps were no more than the preludes of the emperor's vengeance; for afterwards aſſembling all the moſt conſiderable perſons of his own court, as well as of the city of *Rome*; he ſet *Pietro de Rainaucci*, a *Cordelier*, upon a low chair on his left hand, ordered the aſſembly to be aſked three times, whether or not they would receive this ſame Fa-

Creates a Cordelier *pope in his place; and again receives the crown*

---

[b] Ciacon. in Joan XXII. Avent. ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 616, 617. Spondan. Contin. Barre, tom. i. p. 592.

(I) The abbot of *Fulde*, in an harangue to the people, obſerved that the ſaid *James* of *Cahors* was a deſerter of the church of which he pretended to be biſhop, and a perſecuter of the *Roman* people; that he had extorted vaſt ſums of money on pretence of maintaining war againſt the *Saracens*, whereas it was uſed againſt the faithful and the friends of the *Roman* empire, enforced by the preaching of a cruſade, and the largeſſes of ſpiritual treaſure; that he had turned againſt the *Romans* and imperialiſts thoſe ſuccours which he had obtained from the king of *France* and other princes, for the relief of the diſtreſſed king of *Armenia*; that he unjuſtly reſerved to himſelf the diſtribution of eccleſiaſtic benefices, which he often ſimoniacally conferred upon the unworthy; that he had, by the power of a new *Joab*, and the counſels of another *Abiathar* (meaning king *Robert* and cardinal *Urſini*) raiſed up pernicious ſchiſms and wicked hereſies in the church of God; that he had oppreſſed the cardinals and prelates in ſuch a manner, that they durſt not even murmur; that he had perverted the doctrine of Chriſt and the apoſtles, with regard to the temporal dominion of emperors, confounding ſpiritual with ſecular power, and raſhly arrogating to himſelf the prerogative of confirming or rejecting emperors: and, laſtly, that, by ranking himſelf among the notorious heretics in his falſe definition concerning the poverty of Chriſt and his apoſtles, he had forfeited all title to St. *Peter*'s chair (6).

(6) *Ciacon in Joan* XXII.

ther

from his hands.

ther *Peter* as pope; and, being anſwered in the affirmative, he inveſted him with the papacy, putting the ring upon his finger, and the cloak upon his ſhoulders [1]. Then placing him upon his right hand, in the pontifical chair, he ſaluted him by the name of *Nicholas* V. took him by the hand, and conducted him to the chair of St. *Peter*, where this new pope celebrated maſs, and beſtowed the papal benediction upon the people. Some days after this ceremony, *Lewis*, in order to give more authority to *Nicholas*, was crowned again on the feaſt of *Pentecoſt*.

JOHN was no ſooner informed of the elevation of *Peter*, than he excommunicated the antipope and all thoſe who were preſent at the ceremony, except the poet *Petrarch*, whom he revered on account of his genius. Nor was *Nicholas* leſs active in returning theſe hoſtilities; for he publiſhed two bulls, confirming the depoſition of *John*, and declaring that all his adherents, whether eccleſiaſtic or lay, ſhould be puniſhed as heretics; in conſequence of this bull two perſons actually loſt their lives at the ſtake, and pope *John* was burnt in effigy.

THE emperor had reſolved to recover the rights and dominions of the empire, which *Robert* king of *Naples* and *Apulia* had uſurped by order of the pope; but, having delayed this enterprize until *Robert* had time to put himſelf in a poſture of defence, he was obliged to poſtpone the execution of his purpoſe; for, when he marched out of *Rome* on the expedition, he found *Robert* ſtrongly fortified in the *Campania*, and, in his attempt upon the province of *Labour*, had the mortification to ſee his troops ſeveral times repulſed: nay, as the *Neapolitans*, by being maſters of *Oſtia* and *Anagni*, commanded the whole courſe of the *Tiber*, *Lewis* was ſo hampered for want of proviſions and ammunition, that he could not help returning to *Rome*, where his preſence occaſioning a great ſcarcity, the people began to murmur; and their diſcontents being fomented by the cardinal *d'Urſini*, broke out into open rebellion. The emperor, whoſe troops had been worſted both within and without the city, ſeeing it would be impoſſible for him to reſiſt a mutinous populace, as well as the *Neapolitan* troops, ſent his pope immediately to *Todi*, under a ſtrong eſcorte, whither he himſelf afterwards retired; and he had no ſooner quitted *Rome*, than cardinal *Urſini* entered the city, and harangued the people, who now acknowleged *John* as their lawful pontif, and renounced the

The Romans *revolt againſt the emperor and pope* Nicholas.

---

[1] VADING, ad ann. 1328.

antipope and the emperor with all the marks of deteſtation and abhorrence.

Lewis *retires to* Corneto.

Mean while *Lewis* had an interview with *Peter* the ſon of *Frederic* king of *Sicily*, at *Corneto*, where he bitterly complained that his *Sicilian* majeſty had been the cauſe of all his miſcarriages, by failing to ſend the fleet and a ſum of money which he had engaged himſelf by treaty to furniſh; and *Peter*, finding him ſo ill diſpoſed towards a continuance of the war, ſet ſail on his return to his father's dominions, but was overtaken by a violent tempeſt, which deſtroyed the greateſt part of his fleet.

Receives an embaſſy from the Algerines, *and returns to* Germany.

From hence the emperor repaired to *Piſa*, whither he was followed by *Nicholas*, and there he ſpent ſome months, during which he re-publiſhed his decree againſt pope *John*, and received an embaſſy from the *Algerines*, who craved his protection, in conſideration of which they promiſed to aſſiſt him with fifty veſſels well manned, and a very large ſum of money. They were graciouſly received, and *Lewis*, in all probability, would have availed himſelf of the propoſal, had not he found a more honourable reſource in the friendſhip of the king of *Bohemia*, who promiſed to march to his aſſiſtance, at the head of a victorious army, with which he had conquered *Lithuania* for the knights of the *Teutonic* order. But, before he could execute his intentions in favour of *Lewis*, that prince, finding himſelf deſtitute of troops, and abandoned by the greateſt part of his friends in *Italy*, whom he had diſobliged by his violent proceedings, was obliged to retire into *Bavaria*, in order to re-eſtabliſh his affairs.

A. D. 1329.

Several cities in Italy *renounce the emperor's party, and* Nicholas *ſubmits to pope* John.

His back was no ſooner turned than the *Piſans* reconciled themſelves to the ſee of *Rome*. The *Romans* recalled the cardinal legate, and put themſelves under the auſpices of pope *John*; the cities of *Todi*, *Viterbo*, and *Peſtora*, followed the example; the *Viſcontis* renounced the emperor's party, and received abſolution from the holy ſee; and the antipope *Nicholas*, finding it impoſſible to conceal himſelf longer at *Piſa*, ſubmitted to *John*, who, having received his abjuration of the papacy, abſolved him of his crimes, and impriſoned him for life[k].

A. D. 1330.

Having thus far ſucceeded in detaching almoſt all *Italy* from the intereſt of *Lewis*, and in making himſelf maſter of the perſon of his competitor, he ſtill continued to preſs the *German* princes to a new election; but, by this time, they were ſo tired with civil diſcord, that his remonſtrances were altogether diſregarded; and even thoſe princes who had oppoſed *Lewis* in the beginning, now expreſſed a deſire of ſeeing him peaceably eſtabliſhed on the imperial throne. In order to manifeſt his own pacific diſpoſition, he ſent an embaſſy to the pope, to ſue for a reconciliation with the holy ſee, in conſideration of which he promiſed to retract every thing he had done, ſaid, or decreed, againſt his holineſs. But all his advances were treated with diſdain by *John*, who, far from granting his requeſt, wrote two letters to the king of *Bohemia*, exhorting, and even commanding, that prince, as a ſon of the church, to depoſe *Lewis*, and proceed to a new election.

---

[k] Spond. ad. ann. 1329. Rainald, ad. ann. 1329.

Lewis *ſends an embaſſy to the pope;*

who tampers with the king of Bohemia, *at that time the emperor's vicar in* Italy.

THESE remonſtrances ſeem to have had no effect at firſt upon the *Bohemian*, who declared for the emperor, and marched into *Italy* as his lieutenant, at the head of an army, with which he reduced almoſt all the cities of *Lombardy* under obedience to the empire.

A. D. 1331.

ELATED with this ſucceſs, he began to harbour notions very different from thoſe with which he croſſed the *Alps*, and the pope, being well acquainted with his diſpoſition, flattered his ambition ſo effectually, that, by the means of his legate, *Bertrand de Poyet*, the king of *Bohemia* engaged with him in a private treaty againſt the emperor. The nature of this agreement having tranſpired, alarmed both *Guelphs* and *Gibelines* to ſuch a degree, that they united againſt the *Bohemian*; and the emperor, being ſuſpicious of his fidelity, reſolved to cut out ſuch work for him at home, as would ſoon recall him from *Italy*: for this purpoſe, he excited againſt him *Frederic* marquis of *Miſnia*, *Otho* duke of *Auſtria*, by this time reconciled to the houſe of *Bavaria*, *Uladiſlaus* king of *Poland*, and *Charobert* king of *Hungary*, who attacked his dominions at the ſame time, under various pretexts [l].

He returns to Germany, *and defeats all his adverſaries.*

JOHN of *Bohemia*, being informed of theſe tranſactions, left his ſon *Charles* as vicar in *Italy*, and marching into *Germany*, defeated all his adverſaries one after another: then repaſſing the *Alps*, in order to ſuccour his ſon againſt the *Guelphs* and *Gibelines*, came up juſt as the young prince had obtained a complete victory; after which he carried him in triumph to *Prague*, where, beginning to be jealous of his ſon's reputation, he beſtowed upon him the marquiſate of *Moravia*, that he might have a pretence for removing him from the capital of *Bohemia* [m].

1332. MEAN while the pope employed his artifices ſo ſucceſsfully with *Otho* of *Auſtria*, that this prince abandoned the emperor,

---

[l] AVENTIN. ann. lib vii. p. 618. SPOND. Contin. ubi ſupra.

[m] DUBRARV. Hiſt. Boem. l. xxi.

peror, ſubmitted his dominions to the holy ſee, and declared himſelf vaſſal to the church of *Rome*; nevertheleſs *Italy* groaned under the utmoſt miſery and deſolation: for altho' the *Guelphs* and *Gibelines* joined againſt the *Germans*, they ſtill maintained a civil war among themſelves with the moſt implacable reſentment, and a number of private noblemen erected themſelves into petty tyrants, during this period of confuſion[n].

The duke of Auſtria *declares himſelf a vaſſal to the ſee of* Rome.

The king of Bohemia *marches to the aſſiſtance of the* Teutonic *knights*

While *Lombardy* ſuffered ſuch a complication of diſorders, *John* king of *Bohemia* marched to the aſſiſtance of the *Teutonic* knights, who had been worſted by the *Poles*, and penetrating as far as *Cracovia*, undertook the ſiege of that city, which the inhabitants defended with great obſtinacy, until they were compelled by famine to demand a capitulation, which was ſoon ſucceeded by a treaty of peace, effected under the mediation of the king of *Hungary*. *Otho* of *Auſtria*, who was now become a partiſan of the pope, being joined by the biſhop of *Conſtance*, took this opportunity to beſiege *Colmar*, which held for *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, and actually inveſted it with an army of thirty thouſand men; but it was gallantly defended, by the marquis of *Baden*, until the emperor marched to its relief with a ſtrong body of troops, furniſhed by the king of *Bohemia*, who had found means to juſtify his conduct to *Lewis*, and by the count of *Wirtemberg*; ſo that *Otho*, loſing all hope of ſucceeding in his enterprize, and perceiving that he himſelf was no other than a dupe to the ſee of *Rome*, reſolved to make peace with the emperor, which was ratified accordingly. Now *Lewis* began to govern the empire in peace, though the public tranquility was often invaded by feuds and animoſities among the noblemen and cities, which produced all the terrible effects of civil war, until they were reſtrained by aſſociations like that of *Straſbourg*, *Friburg*, and *Baſil*, which, about this time, formed a league for their mutual defence[o].

Otho *inveſts* Colmar, *and makes peace with the emperor.*

The king of Bohemia *is twice defeated near* Verona.

A. D. 1333.

Notwithstanding the ſucceſs of *Lewis* in *Germany*, pope *John* would not deſiſt from his intrigues; but, having confirmed *John* king of *Bohemia* in his intereſt, during an interview which he had with this prince at *Avignon*, he prevailed upon him to march into *Italy*, in order to ſupport the concerns of the holy ſee againſt *Robert* king of *Naples*, who was now become his moſt inveterate enemy, and the *Viſcontis* and *Eſcali*, who had joined his *Neapolitan* majeſty, becauſe they found their account in fiſhing in troubled waters.

---

[n] Rainald. ad an. 1332.

[o] Annal. de l'Empire, tom. i. p. 415.

ACCORDINGLY the *Bohemian*, being reinforced by a body of *French* troops, paſſed the *Alps*, as the champion of the church, engaged the enemy near *Verona*, was twice defeated, and returned to *Germany*, having loſt his troops, money, and reputation.

THE emperor, mean while, remained in peace at *Munich*, without having any ſhare in theſe tranſactions; but, as the pope ſollicited, without ceaſing, the *German* princes to revolt againſt his adminiſtration, and he himſelf, as well as a number of his friends, lay under the cenſures of the church, he reſolved to aſſemble a council, in order to ſtigmatize and depoſe that reſtleſs pontif, as a tyrant and heretic (K), but he was anticipated by death, which overtook his holineſs in the ninetieth year of his age. This turbulent pope left immenſe treaſures, and was ſucceeded in the papacy by *James Dufour*, ſurnamed *The White Cardinal*, who aſſumed the name of *Benedict* XII [p].

Pope John *dies at* Avignon. A. D. 1334.

War between the emperor and the king of Bohemia.

THIS new pope ſeemed to tread in the ſteps of his predeceſſor, and even confirmed all the bulls which *John* had iſſued againſt the emperor, who did not ſo much regard theſe impotent fulminations, as he had affairs of greater importance to engroſs his attention. *John* of *Luxemburg*, ſecond ſon of the king of *Bohemia*, had married *Margaret* ſurnamed *Great Mouth*, heireſs of *Carinthia*, and this princeſs accuſing her huſband of impotence, the marriage was diſſolved by the biſhop of *Friſingen*. Thinking herſelf at full liberty to diſpoſe of her perſon, ſhe eſpouſed the margrave of *Brandenburg*, ſon of the emperor, who readily conſented to a match which added *Tyrol* and *Carinthia* to his family; and this contract produced a war between the houſes of *Bavaria* and *Bohemia*, which, after having been maintained for a whole year, with various ſucceſs, was terminated by a very ſingular accommodation, in conſequence of which young *John* of *Luxemburg* renounced all claim to his wife, and ratified her marriage with the margrave [q].

---

[p] VILLANI, l. x. c. 21.

(K) Among other errors in point of doctrine, *John* alleged that the ſouls of the happy ſee only the human nature of Jeſus Chriſt in heaven until the reſurrection, after which they will enjoy the beatific viſion of the Divinity (7).

(7) *Baluz. vit. Pap. Avent. t.* i. *p.* 788. *See the hiſtory of the popes.*

The cities of Straſburg, Baſil, Friburg, &c. *form a league againſt* Walter *lord of* Schwanau *whom they ſubdue.*

THIS war being finiſhed, *Lewis* exerted all his endeavours to appeaſe the domeſtic troubles of the empire. The magiſtrates of *Straſbourg* finding themſelves interrupted in their commerce by the incurſions of *Walter* lord of *Schwanau*, who diſtreſſed them from the caſtle of *Erſtein*, of which he was in poſſeſſion, joined in an aſſociation with *Baſil*, *Friburg*, and all the imperial cities of *Alſace*, in order to reduce this formidable neighbour. Their firſt attempt was againſt *Erſtein*, which they took at the very firſt aſſault; then they inveſted the ſtrong fortreſs of *Schwanau*, ſituated on the bank of the *Rhine*, and, although *Walter* defended it with incredible valour for the ſpace of three months, it was at length taken and demoliſhed, but not before *Walter* had made his eſcape in the habit of a peaſant.

The emperor takes the field againſt Berthold *biſhop of* Straſburg.

THE next diſturbance was occaſioned by *Berthold* biſhop of *Straſburg*, who refuſed to do homage to the emperor, becauſe he was excommunicated, and ravaged the country belonging to the count *de Wirtemberg*, who was his declared enemy, being joined by a reinforcement of troops ſent by the duke of *Lorraine* and biſhop of *Metz*. He took ſeveral caſtles, and began to form ſchemes of importance upon ſome of the imperial towns; ſo that the emperor was obliged to take the field in perſon: but, finding *Berthold* ſtrongly poſted, he liſtened to the firſt overtures of peace, which was granted almoſt on the biſhop's own terms, becauſe he knew him to be an experienced warrior, and underſtood that he was on the brink of concluding a peace with the princes of *Auſtria* [r].

Makes advances towards a reconciliation with the pope. A. D. 1336.

LEWIS being informed of a miſunderſtanding between *Philip* of *France* and *Benedict* XII. on the ſubject of the cruſade, reſolved to ſeize this opportunity of being reconciled to the holy ſee, and with that view ſent an embaſſy, with ſubmiſſive letters to the pope at *Avignon*, who received them very graciouſly, and expreſſed a deſire of terminating the the long quarrel which had ſubſiſted between *Lewis* and the ſee of *Rome*. A negotiation was accordingly ſet on foot, but the pope's favourable intentions were defeated by the remonſtrances of the kings of *France*, *Naples*, and *Bohemia*, who proteſted that, in caſe *Lewis* ſhould be abſolved from the cenſures of the church, they would take meaſures for electing a new king of the *Romans* [s].

---

[q] Hiſt. de Luxemb. l. xlviii.

[r] BARRE, tom. vi. p. 573.

[s] RAINALD. ad an. 1335.

Edward *of* England *forms a ſtrong league among the* German *princes.* A. D. 1337.

MEAN while *Philip* of *France* and *Edward* of *England*, being on the eve of a rupture, theſe two princes employed all their art and inſinuation to acquire partiſans in *Germany*: the *Engliſh* monarch formed a ſtrong alliance among the princes of *Germany*, at the head of which was the emperor himſelf, who created *Edward* vicar of the empire, and truſted ſo much to the ſtrength of this new league, that he recalled his ambaſſadors from *Avignon*, and broke off his negotiation with *Benedict*: nevertheleſs, he wrote a letter to the pope, complaining of the king of *France*, as a violator of treaties, inaſmuch as he had ſeized ſeveral fiefs belonging to the empire, in the dioceſe of *Cambray*, and ſollicited his holineſs to aſſiſt him in making war upon that monarch.

Benedict *thwarts the meaſures of the emperor.* 1338.

BENEDICT, inſtead of complying with this ſingular deſire, exerted all his abilities to produce a rupture between *Lewis* and *Edward*, to procure intelligence to *Philip de Valois*, and to excite a ſpirit of jealouſy in the *German* princes againſt the ambitious *Engliſhman*; nay, he even detached *Henry* duke of *Bavaria* from the intereſt of *Lewis*, whom he renounced as an excommunicated heretic[t].

The pope and the king of France *excite the king of* Bohemia *to rebel againſt the emperor.*

THE pope's conduct on this occaſion was chiefly influenced by his dependence upon *Philip*, who, in order to counterballance the alliance of *Edward*, ſecured the aſſiſtance of the kings of *Bohemia* and *Navarre*, as well as of the duke of *Lorraine* and count of *Savoy*: and the ſpirit of pope *John* ſtill reigned in the factions he had fomented againſt the emperor. *John* king of *Bohemia*, elated with the hope of the imperial crown's devolving to his ſon *Charles* of *Luxemburg*, in conſequence of the aſſurances which he received from *France* and *Rome*, had fortified himſelf with the alliance of the kings of *Hungary* and *Poland*, and raiſed a powerful army in order to carry the war into the bowels of *Bavaria*; but the emperor aſſembling his troops, harraſſed him in ſuch a manner, and purſued him ſo cloſely, that he was obliged to hazard a battle, in which, after an obſtinate and bloody diſpute, he and his auxiliaries were totally routed. This defeat neither quelled his courage nor diminiſhed his hope; for he truſted to the friendſhip and forces of the *French* king, to whom he ſent his ſon *Charles*, in order to concert new meaſures for repairing his loſs[u].

LEWIS, notwithſtanding all the repulſes he had ſuſtained, ſtill endeavoured, with all his might, to retrieve the affection of the holy ſee, in the perſon of *Benedict*, who rejected his advances, for fear of diſobliging the king of *France*. The princes of the empire, eccleſiaſtic as well as ſecular, aſſembling at *Spire*, declared the empire independent of the pope, and *Lewis* of *Bavaria* lawful emperor; then they ſent deputies to *Benedict*, deſiring he would annul the ſentences of his predeceſſor, otherwiſe they would proceed againſt him in another manner; and the pope refuſing to give them ſatisfaction, a diet was convoked at *Frankfort*, wherein that famous conſtitution was made in form of a law, by which the independence of the empire was for ever eſtabliſhed [x] (L).

---

[t] BARRE, tom. vi. p. 584.

[u] HEISS, tom. ii. p. 174.

The eſtates defend the rights of the empire againſt the pretenſions of the popes.

Berthold *biſhop of* Straſburg *at length does homage to the emperor.*

Lewis, next year, by his own authority, took off the interdiction which had been laid againſt him by pope *John* XXII. and expelled from their churches all thoſe who refuſed to ſubmit to his order. Copies of the manifeſto publiſhed by *Lewis* in his own vindication, containing the ſteps which had been taken in the diet, were ſent to *Benedict* by *Berthold* biſhop of *Straſburg*, who repreſented his own inability to cope with the emperor, and deſired the pope would allow him to do homage to that prince, otherwiſe he ſhould be deſtroyed. This permiſſion was granted by *Benedict*, who now began to perceive that he had carried his reſentment too far, and *Berthold* went to *Spire*, to do homage to the emperor, who inveſted him with the temporalities of his dioceſe [y]. To this condeſcenſion the biſhop was in a great meaſure determined by the remonſtrances of *Albert*, ſurnamed *The Deformed*, duke of *Auſtria*, who wiſhed to ſee the troubles of *Alſace* appeaſed, that he might have a fairer opportunity of acting againſt the *Swiſs*, whom he had reſolved to ſubdue.

---

[x] Extat. apud Albert de Rosat. Jur. conſ in l. bene a Zenone. 3. C. de quadr. proſcript. Hier Balb. Ep. Surcens. lib. de. Coron. ad Car. v. & int. addit. ad Rebdorf. Heruart. contra. Bzov. Avent. ann. &c. lib. vii. p. 621, & ſequente.

[y] Albert. Argent. de geſtis Bertholdi, p. 173.

(L) All the electors, except the king of *Bohemia*, who was attached to *Philip*, aſſembling at *Conſteim*, in the territory of *Mentz*, declared, by a ſolemn proteſtation, that he who was elected king of the *Romans* by a majority of the princes electors, needed not the approbation, confirmation, or conſent, of the holy ſee, to aſſume the title of king, adminiſter the laws, and govern the eſtates of the empire (8).

(8) *Albert. Argent. p. 129. Spener.*

Albert *of* Auſtria *attempts in vain to ſubdue the* Swiſs.

He accordingly aſſembled all his forces and thoſe of his allies, compoſing an army of forty thouſand men, with whom he paſſed the *Rhine* at *Schaffhauſen*, and advanced as far as *Kybourg*, where his van-guard was defeated by the enemy. Notwithſtanding this check, he continued his route as far as the canal of *Zurich*, where he received the news of freſh diſturbances in *Alſace*, which obliged him to abandon his enterprize, in order to ſuccour the towns of his own dominions.

The Jews *are maſſacred in* Alſace.

These diſorders were occaſioned by a ſpirit of fanaticiſm, in conſequence of which the lower claſs of people aſſembled under the banners of an inn-keeper, diſtinguiſhed by the appellation of *Armleder*, who erected himſelf into a prophet, and perſuaded his followers, that, in order to revenge the death of Chriſt, it was their indiſpenſible duty to extirpate the *Jews*. In obedience to this doctrine, which was firſt broached in *Franconia*, they aſſaſſinated great multitudes of that unhappy nation, and the carnage, which extended to *Alſace*, was ſo dreadful, that the *Jews* themſelves, driven to deſpair, augmented the horror of the ſcene; for, rather than fall into the hands of ſuch inhuman enemies, they made away with themſelves, after having murdered their own wives and children, and concealed their riches, which they juſtly ſuppoſed had contributed to their diſaſter. The deplorable condition of theſe miſerable wretches excited the compaſſion of *Berthold* biſhop of *Straſburg*, who being moreover affected with the deſolation of his own country, laid waſte by that frantic herd of enthuſiaſts, formed an aſſociation with ſome other noblemen of *Alſace*, and aſſembling a body of troops, expelled them from that province. The *Jews* that remained were permitted to live in peace; and *Armleder* being taken, was executed as a ſower of ſedition, and an enemy to the public tranquility[*].

They are protected by Berthold *biſhop of* Straſburg.

A. D. 1339. *The emperor becomes jealous of the* Engliſh *monarch.*

This commotion having ſubſided, the troops of the empire and princes of *Germany* marched to *Mechlin*, where they joined the *Engliſh*, commanded by king *Edward*, who inveſted the city of *Cambray*, which was ſo valiantly defended by the *French*, that, on the approach of winter, he abandoned the enterprize. He afterwards ravaged *Picardy*, and offered battle to the king of *France*, which being declined, he retired into *Brabant*, and the greateſt part of his *German* allies returned to their own dominions. Indeed, by this time, *Lewis* began to repent of having conferred the vicarlate of the empire upon ſuch a powerful prince, and of having engaged with an ally who drained *Germany* of her beſt troops, ſo that ſhe could not ſpare a ſufficient number to maintain the intereſt of the empire in *Italy*, where almoſt all the cities had made their ſubmiſſions to the pope. When the princes returned from the *Low Countries*, the emperor aſſembled a diet, and having repreſented the poſture of affairs in *Lombardy*, demanded ſuch ſupplies of men and money, as would enable him to croſs the *Alps*, and puniſh the revolted towns. But this expedition appearing impracticable at the preſent juncture, when *Germany* was in a great meaſure drained of all her funds, he was fain to refer it to a more favourable opportunity. Mean while he was, by the emiſſaries and intrigues of the *French* king, ſo irritated againſt the king of *England*, who had neglected to pay the ſubſidies, and made a truce at *Tournay*, without his participation, that he abandoned the cauſe of that monarch, and deprived him of the vicariate, notwithſtanding all the proteſtations and condeſcenſion of *Edward*, who tried every method he could deviſe to deprecate his anger.

---

[*] Lunig. Arch. Imper. tom. vii. p. 12.

Deprives him of the vicarate. A. D. 1340.

He is amuſed by the French *king and the pope.*

LEWIS the more readily entered into the views of *Philip*, as he was flattered with aſſurances of being reconciled to the pope, by the mediation of that monarch, who accordingly wrote to the pope in favour of the *Bavarian*; but, in all probability, he was not ſincere in his remonſtrances, inaſmuch as *Benedict* paid no manner of regard to his interpoſition. On the contrary, he amuſed the emperor with evaſive excuſes, while he diſpoſed of the governments and ſignories of *Italy*, as adminiſtrator of the empire, which he deemed vacant [a]. About this period, the reſtleſs king of *Bohemia* loſt his eyeſight, and made his will, by which he bequeathed *Bohemia* and *Sileſia* to his ſon *Charles*, afterwards emperor, *Moravia* to *John*, and *Luxemburg*, with the lands he had in *France* in right of his wife, to *Winceſlaus*, born of *Beatrice* of *Bourbon*; though this laſt precaution was uſeleſs, for that province was ſeized by *Charles* the eldeſt ſon, while *Winceſlaus* was yet in his infancy [b].

John *king of* Bohemia *makes his will.*

The emperor decides the differences which had ariſen

IN the courſe of this ſame year *Lewis* was choſen arbiter to decide the quarrels of the houſe of *Denmark*. *Gerhard* count of *Rendſburg* and *Waldemar* duke of *Sleſwic* had uſurped the crown, which of right belonged to young *Waldemar*, educated at the court of *Munich*. But the adminiſtration of thoſe uſurpers was ſo odious to the *Daniſh* nation, that a ge-

---

[a] RAINALD. ad an. 1341. n. 12.

[b] Hiſt. Luxemb. l. xxix.

about the crown of Denmark. A. D. 1341. neral revolt enſued, and count *Gerhard* was aſſaſſinated by *Nicholas Jacobi*, a nobleman of that country, who choſe this method of vindicating the liberty of his nation: then putting himſelf at the head of the *Daniſh* revolters, he gave battle to the princes of *Holſtein*, and, though he loſt his life in the engagement, they were entirely defeated, and the lawful heir aſcended the throne of his anceſtors.

THIS young prince had been maintained and protected by the emperor, who now called an aſſembly at *Speindow*, where an accommodation between the new king and the princes of *Holſtein* was effected, on condition that he ſhould renounce all pretenſions to the throne, give his ſiſter in marriage to *Waldemar* III. and remain in quiet poſſeſſion of *Jutland*[c].

Gives magnificent tournaments at Munich. ALL theſe conteſts being ended, *Germany* began to enjoy that peace with which ſhe was ſo ſeldom bleſſed, and *Lewis* took this opportunity to eſtabliſh wholeſome regulations for the continuance of the public tranquility. He cauſed the laws to be rigorouſly executed againſt vagabonds and criminals of all kinds; he granted his protection to the innocent and induſtrious, and rewarded merit to the utmoſt of his power. His mild and prudent adminiſtration not only conciliated the affections of his people in general, but alſo conquered the animoſity and prejudices of almoſt all the princes who had been his enemies; ſo that they now ſought and cultivated his friendſhip. His court became numerous, gay, and polite; and, in order to render himſelf more popular, he inſtituted magnificent tournaments at *Munich*, after they had been four hundred years diſcontinued by the princes of *Germany*[d].

1343. Lewis *makes advances of friendſhip to* Clement VI. *who treats him with an high hand.* WHILE the emperor in this manner eſtabliſhed his authority on this ſide of the *Alps*, his own intereſt in *Italy* was almoſt totally ruined. Pope *Benedict* dying at *Avignon*, he was ſucceeded by *Clement* VI. a native of *France*, and archbiſhop of *Rouen*, who confirmed by new bulls all the ſentences of excommunication pronounced by *John* XXII. and *Benedict* XII. and endeavoured to excite all *Italy* to rebel againſt the emperor. *Lewis*, who may be ſaid to have been a martyr to the independency of the empire, as *Henry* V. had been to the inveſtitures, in order to manifeſt his own innocence, made advances of friendſhip to the pope, and, even in the midſt of theſe acts of enmity, ſent an embaſſy to him to treat of a reconciliation; but his holineſs preſcribed ſuch unreaſonable conditions, as the embaſſadors had not power to accept;

---

[c] PONTAN. Rer. Dan. Hiſt. ad an. 1340.

[d] PANICROL. l. ii.

He excommunicates him, with all his adherents.

upon which they deſired he would give them his demands in writing, that they might, upon their return to *Germany*, lay them before the emperor (M). *Lewis* having obtained theſe articles, ſent copies of them to all the ſtates of the empire, and ſuch a general indignation prevailed againſt the preſumption of the pope, that the princes and ſtates aſſembling at *Frankfort*, the articles were openly read, and rejected as an inſult upon the honour of the empire, and a ſecond embaſſy was appointed to wait upon *Clement*, and deſire he would retract them; otherwiſe, the ſtates would of themſelves take ſuch meaſures on that ſubject, as they ſhould judge convenient. The pope, more than ever incenſed at this inſtance of diſregard, fulminated new excommunications (N) againſt *Lewis* and all his adherents; and, being inſtigated by *Philip* of *Valois* king of *France*, who, though he had made peace with the emperor, wiſhed to ſee him employed at home, he ſet on foot and managed underhand intrigues and negotiations, in order to raiſe a faction among the princes, and induce them to proceed to the election of a new emperor [e].

A.D. 1346.

Intrigues in favour of Charles *of* Luxemburg, *who*

As all theſe ſteps were taken in favour of *Charles* of *Luxemburg*, ſon of *John* king of *Bohemia*, who was one of the moſt conſiderable members of the electoral college, and as he had already made ſure of *Baldwin* of *Luxemburg*, archbiſhop of *Triers*, the king's uncle, their chief aim was to ſecure the other ſuffrages. The pope had already excommu-

---

[e] Argent. in Chron. Naucler. gen. 45.

(M) Theſe were the articles: "*Lewis* ſhall deliver to the "pope *William* of *Ockham*, "with all his adherents; he "ſhall retract all the decrees, "annul the acts, and recant "the ſlanders that were pub- "liſhed againſt pope *John* XXII. "and by a perpetual edict pub- "licly acknowlege that the "empire is in the gift of the "ſovereign pontif, and that no "perſon is or can be called em- "peror, without the ſanction "of his authority (9)."

William of *Ockham* was an *Engliſhman*, who wrote a book againſt *Charles* and *Clement*, whom he treats with great ſcurrility.

(N) In a bull publiſhed againſt *Lewis*, we read the following imprecation. "May "the wrath of God, of St. *Peter* "and St. *Paul*, cruſh him in this "world and that which is to "come. May the earth open "and ſwallow him alive: may "his memory periſh, and all "the elements be his enemies: "and may his children fall in- "to the hands of his adverſa- "ries, even in the ſight of their "father (10)."

(9) *Avent. an. Boior. lib.* vii. *p.* 627.

(10) *Annal de l'Empire, tom.* i. *p.* 428.

nicated

is choſen king of the Romans, *and crowned by his own faction.*

nicated *Henry* of *Verneburg*, archbiſhop of *Mentz*, becauſe he was in the emperor's intereſt, and promoted to that ſee count *Gorlach* of *Naſſau*, who was devoted to his ſervice. The vote of *Walderan* of *Juliers*, archbiſhop of *Cologne*, was purchaſed with eight thouſand marks of ſilver, and that of *Rodolphus* duke of *Saxony* for two thouſand. Theſe princes aſſembling at *Reintz* near *Coblentz*, elected *Charles* of *Luxemburg* king of the *Romans*, and, as the city of *Cologn* would own no other emperor but *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, he was crowned at *Bonn* by the new archbiſhop *Gorlach*, his election having been confirmed by the pope[f] (O).

Lewis *maintains his dignity and reputation.*

THE other princes and ſtates of the empire preſerved their fidelity and attachment to *Lewis*, notwithſtanding this ſchiſm, which ſerved only to unite them more firmly in his intereſt; and, ſome time after this event, his ſon *Lewis*, marquis of *Brandenburg*, attacked and defeated the new king of the *Romans* in the *Tyrol*; ſo that the emperor maintained his dignity and good fortune to the laſt; and reigned with the love, eſteem, and applauſe of his ſubjects.

PERHAPS this oppoſition might have been much more dangerous to *Lewis*, had not part of the pope's attention been employed on the affairs of *Naples*, which was conquered by *Lewis* king of *Hungary*, in revenge for the death of his brother *Andrew*, who had married *Jane* heireſs of *Naples*, and been aſſaſſinated by her domeſtics: and at the ſame time *Clement* was greatly perplexed by a very extraordinary revolution in *Rome*, effected by an obſcure notary called *Nicholas Rienzi*, who being elected tribune of the people, renounced the pope's authority, and reſtored the form of the antient republic, which, however, did not long ſubſiſt.

THE emperor's predeceſſors were uſed to move from one imperial city to another, that their courts might ſubſiſt at the expence of the inhabitants; whereas *Lewis* never oppreſſed his people in this manner; but, except when he was obliged to be preſent at the diet, ſtaid at home in his own duchy of *Bavaria*, and generally amuſed himſelf at the chace, a diverſion which at length coſt him his life [g]: for while he one day exerciſed himſelf in hunting the bear, he was attacked, it is ſaid, by a fit of the apoplexy, when falling from his horſe, he immediately expired, after having recommended his ſoul to God, and his body was interred at *Munich* [h] (P).

---

[f] VILLANI. l. xii. c. 59. MUT. l. xxiv.

(O) *Charles* of *Luxemburg*, who went to *Avignon* with his father, to ſollicit the pope's intereſt, engaged to annul all the decrees of *Lewis*, to acknowlege that the county of *Avignon* belonged to the holy ſee, as well as *Ferrara* and the lands of *Mathilda*, with the kingdoms of *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, and *Corſica*; and promiſed that, if he ſhould go as emperor to receive the crown at *Rome*, he would quit the city that ſame day, and never return without the expreſs permiſſion of his holineſs (11).

(11) *Annal de l'Empire*, *tom.* i. *p.* 428.

Falls from his horſe and dies.
A. D. 1347.

His character and perſon deſcribed.

THIS prince, having loſt his father when he was but twelve years of age, had been educated at *Vienna* in *Auſtria*, with his couſins, under the tuition of his mother, who beſtowed ſuch care upon his education, that he ſurpaſſed all the princes of his age, both in the qualifications of the body and the underſtanding. He was very tall, though agile; his hair was ſandy, his complexion florid, his noſe was long, and his chin lengthened. He perfectly well underſtood the exerciſe of arms; he feared no danger, but was haſty, and too much addicted to love: in adverſity he needed advice; he was maſter of himſelf in proſperity: he was gay and poliſhed in his manners; but there was rather too much vivacity in his behaviour, and he could not ſtay long in one place. The monks and nuns gave him the appellation of *moſt Chriſtian* and *moſt Pious*, and expreſſed great veneration for his knives, napkins, and other things of that ſort that belonged to him. For a long time he had no other poſſeſſion than *High Bavaria*, till after the death of *John* duke of *Low Bavaria*, he ſucceeded to his dominions [i] (Q).

CHARLES

---

[g] AVENTIN. ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 631. [h] Ibid. p. 630. VILLAN. l. xii. c. 105. HERUART contra Bzov. ad ann. 1347. [i] AVENTIN. ann. ubi ſupra.

(P) He is ſaid to have been poiſoned by the widow of *Albert* of *Auſtria*; and preſcribed ſome violent exerciſe by his phyſicians, after they had, without ſucceſs, tried other methods of cure. In conſequence of this advice, he had rode out to hunt the bear, when the operation of the poiſon became ſo violent that he dropped dead from his horſe (12).

(Q) *Lewis* firſt married the daughter of a count whoſe name is not known; and ſhe died without iſſue: his ſecond wife was *Beatrix* daughter of *Henry* duke of *Glogaw*, by whom he had *Lewis* marquis of *Brandenburg*, *Stephen*, who was deformed: *Beatrix*, married to *Charles* king of *Hungary*; *Anne*, wife of *Muſtine Leſcale* lord of *Verona*; and *Mathilda*, who eſpouſed *Frederic the Severe*, marquis of *Miſnia*. The em-

(12) *Spond. Cont. ann. Eccleſiaſtic. tom.* i. *p.* 685.

peror's

CHARLES IV.

Charles IV. ***count of*** **Luxemburg,** ***ſucceeds to the empire.***

His education, qualities, and exploits.

CHARLES IV. count of *Luxemburg*, ſon of *John* king of *Bohemia*, and grandſon of *Henry* VII. was born at *Prague*, and named *Wenceſlaus*; but being ſent by his father into *France* to *Charles the Fair*, who had married *Mary* of *Luxemburg*, his aunt, they careſſed him with great affection; and, as they had no children, gave him the name of *Charles* when he received the ſacrament of confirmation. At the ſame time, they provided him with excellent preceptors, under whom, excluſive of the *German* and *Bohemian* languages, which were natural to him, he made himſelf maſter of the *Latin*, *French*, and *Italian*. After the death of *Charles the Fair*, he returned to his father, whom he attended to *Italy*, where he was created viceroy of the empire, and ran the riſque of being poiſoned by *Azon*, viſcount of *Milan*. At the age of ſeventeen, he was inveſted with the marquiſate of *Moravia* by king *John*, his father. He repaired the caſtle of *Prague*, reunited to the crown of *Bohemia* a great many lands which the barons had uſurped, and ſettled the affairs of that kingdom, which were in great diſorder. He likewiſe had ſignalized himſelf in ſome military expeditions: he marched againſt *Bucer*, duke of *Munſterberg*, who refuſed to do homage to the king his father, and compelled him to ſubmit: he went to war with the count of *Goritz*, who had ſided with the dukes of *Auſtria*: he accompanied his father in an irruption into *Lithuania*: he made a ſecond journey into *Italy*, where he obliged the *Venetians* to raiſe the ſiege of *Parma*, took from them the city of *Belluna*, and then concluded a peace with that republic: he erected into an archbiſhop's ſee the biſhopric of *Prague*, which had been

ſuffragan

---

peror's third wife was *Margaret* daughter of *William* III. count of *Holland*. by whom he had *William*, *Albert*, *Otho*, and *Lewis*; *Elizabeth*, firſt married to *John* duke of *Low Bavaria*, and afterwards to *Ulric* count of *Wirtemberg*; *Agnes*, a nun; and *Anne*, wiſe of *Gunther de Schwartzburg*, who diſputed the empire with *Charles* IV. king of *Bohemia*.

Lewis of *Bavaria* was the firſt emperor who had a double eagle engraved upon his ſeal. In his reign the count palatine founded the univerſity of *Heidelberg*; and there was ſuch abundance of wine upon the *Rhine* and the *Moſelle*, that it was uſed to ſlake lime. The people then contrived thoſe huge tuns, one of which is ſtill to be ſeen at *Heidelberg* (1).

(1) *Struv. period* ix. *ſect.* 5. *Heinec. de veter. Germ. aliarumq. Nation. Sigil. Barre, tom.* vi. *p.* 665.

ſuffragan to *Mentz*, and impowered the archbiſhop to perform the office of coronation to the kings of *Bohemia*: in a word, he acquired a good deal of reputation by his wiſe government; ſo that, upon the death of his father (R), he was, with the unanimous conſent of the people, raiſed to the *Bohemian* throne[k]. The firſt ſtep he took after this elevation, was to make new preparations for war againſt the emperor *Lewis*; and having raiſed a powerful army, he ſet out for *Bavaria*, in order to obey the dictates of revenge; but, in the middle of his march, receiving the news of that emperor's death, “Praiſed be God, ſaid he, in the wonders “of his providence, for having ſpared me the effuſion of “Chriſtian blood, and deprived me of the opportunity of “being avenged upon my enemies[l];” then, changing his route, he advanced into the heart of the empire, and was acknowleged as king and emperor of the *Romans* by *Ratiſbon*, *Nuremberg*, and four-and-twenty other imperial cities of the *Rhine* (S). Thus eſtabliſhed, he returned to his kingdom of *Bohemia*, and next year began to build the new city of *Prague*. He had no ſooner retired to his own dominions, than *Henry* archbiſhop of *Mentz*, *Robert* count Palatine, *Lewis* marquis of *Brandenburg*, and *Erich* duke of *Saxony*, who had not aſſiſted at the election, aſſembled at *Loeſtein*, and choſe *Edward*, king of *England*, emperor; but that prince declining the dignity with ſuitable acknowlegments to the electors, they proceeded to the nomination of *Frederic*, landgrave of *Thuringia*, who, being afflicted with the gout, renounced his pretenſions in favour of *Charles* for ten thouſand marks of ſilver[m]. The ſame electors, notwithſtanding this repulſe, choſe in his room *Gunther*, count of

Succeeds his father on the Bohemian *throne.*

A. D. 1347.

Is acknowleged as emperor and king of the Romans *by the imperial cities of the* Rhine.

1348.

Edward *king of* England *is elected by another party, and*

---

[k] Hiſt. Luxemb. l. li. [l] Heiss, l. ii. c. 27. [m] Spond. an. Contin. Bar. t. i. p. 686. Avent. an. l. vii. p. 634.

(R) This was the blind king of *Bohemia*, who was ſlain in the battle of *Creſſy* by the *Engliſh*, and whoſe motto, *Ich dien*, was adopted by the prince of *Wales* (1).

(S) Though he was acknowleged by the magiſtrates of *Nuremberg*, the citizens took arms, obliged him to fly, and declared for *Lewis* of *Brandenburg*, to whom they opened their gates. He was alſo affronted in divers other places. At *Worms* he was arreſted by a butcher, who had furniſhed him with meat: at *Rottenburg on the Neckar* he preſented himſelf in a tournament, under the name *Schilbard* of *Rechberg*, where he was unhorſed by one *de la Pieve*, to whom he was obliged to pay the forfeit (2).

(1) *Barre, t.* vi. *p.* 652.

(2) *Adlzreitter*, *p.* ii. *l.* iv.

Schwartzenberg,

declines the honour; then they nominate Frederic *landgrave of* Thuringia, *and he, reſigning his right, proceed to the election of* Gunther *count of* Schwartzenburg, *who enters* Ratiſbon, *renounces his claim in favour of* Charles, *and dies of poiſon.*

Schwartzenberg, a nobleman of great courage and unqueſtioned merit, who accepted the honour, on condition that the electors ſhould conduct him to *Frankfort*, and publickly proclaim him emperor in that city. This condition he ſtipulated, becauſe the magiſtrates and citizens of *Frankfort* pretended to have a right of refuſing entrance to any king of the *Romans*, or emperor, who had not been unanimouſly elected, until he ſhould have overcome his competitor, or at leaſt tarried ſix weeks and three days before the city without being queſtioned by his rival. The electors promiſed to comply with *Gunther*'s demand, and actually aſſiſted him in raiſing an army ſufficient to compel the city to open its gates in caſe of a refuſal. Accordingly, being denied admiſſion, he undertook the ſiege of it, which having laſted two months, the citizens were obliged to open their gates, becauſe *Charles* had not marched to their relief. During his reſidence in this city he fell ſick, in conſequence of having taken a medicine which his phyſician had poiſoned (T); and, during his illneſs, he was ſo powerfully ſollicited by the emperor *Charles* to quit his pretenſions to the empire, that at length he reſigned in his favour for the conſideration of two-and-twenty thouſand marks of ſilver; and dying in a month after, was honourably interred by his competitor [n].

A. D. 1349.

Gunther, in all probability, would have rejected ſuch a ſcandalous compoſition, had not he felt his faculties and health greatly impaired by the poiſon he had received, and found himſelf abandoned by his beſt friends, whom *Charles* had gained over to his intereſt by ſlight preſents and magnificent promiſes. Among theſe was *Lewis*, marquis of *Brandenburg*, who perſuaded *Gunther* to reſign the imperial crown, and was for this good office inveſted by the *Bohemian* with the marquiſate of *Brandenburg* [o].

---

[n] Vide auct. ſup. citat. Krantz Sax. l. ix. c. 26.

[o] Struv. period. ix. ſect. vi.

(T) The phyſician's name was *Fredank*, ſuppoſed to be bribed by *Charles*. When he preſented the medicine, he was deſired by one preſent to taſte it before the emperor. *Gunther*, perceiving him heſitate, ordered him to ſwallow part of it, and he obeyed; upon which the count took the remainder: but obſerving the phyſician's countenance changed, he ſuſpected the treachery, and endeavoured by vomits to expel the poiſon, which therefore had not an immediate effect. As for *Fredank*, he died in three days (1).

(1) *Barre, t.* vi. *p.* 678.

Charles chaſtiſes the city of Frankfort.

Charles, however, was reſolved to chaſtiſe the city of *Frankfort* for having received *Gunther*; and, without having any regard to their pretended right, he deprived them of their privileges and fair, which he transferred to *Mentz*. Nevertheleſs, he afterwards reſtored theſe privileges, but taxed the city in the ſum of twenty thouſand marks of ſilver. Being thus rid of all his competitors, he by his addreſs prevailed upon thoſe electors who had oppoſed him to confirm his election, and with his empreſs, who was daughter of the Count Palatine, received the crown at *Aix la Chapelle* from the hands of the archbiſhop of *Cologne*. During this ceremony a quarrel aroſe between the marquiſſes of *Juliers* and *Brandenburg*, about bearing the ſceptre; and *Charles* himſelf interpoſing, decided the diſpute in favour of the marquis of *Brandenburg*, after having taken the advice of the princes[p].

Is crowned.

A dreadful plague, attributed to the practices of the Jews;

Charles, being univerſally acknowleged, began to employ his mediation towards reconciling the partizans of *Lewis* with the holy ſee, and the re-eſtabliſhment of peace in the empire, when all at once this happy proſpect was deſtroyed by an inſurrection againſt the *Jews*, whom the people conſidered as the authors of a dreadful plague, that ravaged the coaſts of the *Mediterranean*, and diffuſed its contagion thro' *Savoy*, *Switzerland*, *Alſace*, *Suabia*, *Franconia*, and ſome other provinces of the empire.

who are maſſacred at Bonn *and divers other places in* Germany

The miſerable *Jews*, deteſted on the ſcore of religion, had lived under the immediate protection of the emperors ever ſince their firſt ſettlement in *Germany*; and as many of them had acquired large fortunes by uſury, they became the objects of envy as well as of abhorrence; ſo that it was in the power of any enthuſiaſt or artful ſchemer to expoſe their nation to the fury of the populace, according to the dictates of avarice or ſuperſtition. At this juncture they were ſaid to have poiſoned the wells and fountains; and this extravagant notion prevailed to ſuch a degree, that the *Jews* were put to the torture in *Bonn* and ſeveral other cities; and, tho' they ſtill refuſed to own the imputed crime, a great number of thoſe unfortunate wretches were poniarded, burnt, and drowned, by the incenſed populace; nor was it in the power of the civil magiſtrates to prevent ſuch cruel ſacrifices. At *Strasburg* the common people, under the conduct of a butcher, depoſed the magiſtracy; and inveſting their chief with abſolute power, he ordered two thouſand *Jews* to be burnt alive, confiſcated their effects, and decreed that no individuals of that nation ſhould be admitted into *Strasburg* for the term of 100 years.

---

[p] Albert. Argent. Spiner. ad. an. 1349.

THO' the populace were the perpetrators of this inhuman tragedy, they were inſtigated and abetted by the biſhop and ſeveral other noblemen, who owed conſiderable ſums to the *Jews*, and took this method of diſcharging their debts; nor would they liſten to any pacific terms, until the emperor promiſed, in behalf of the ſufferers, that the ſums due to them ſhould never be demanded[q] (U).

A. D. 1350. Charles *imposes new tolls upon the* Rhine;

CHARLES, finding his finances exhauſted by thoſe largeſſes, in conſequence of which he aſcended the imperial throne, and being moreover importuned by ſome of the princes to perform the promiſes he had made to them before his election, endeavoured to raiſe ſubſidies by impoſing new taxes and tolls upon rivers, which had well nigh involved the whole empire in confuſion; for the magiſtrates of *Strasburg* not only refuſed to pay theſe impoſitions, but even blocked up the *Rhine* with ſtakes and chains, ſo as intirely to obſtruct the navigation.

THIS project miſcarrying, the emperor had recourſe to another expedient. He mortgaged the domains of the empire to divers noblemen and cities, and allowed others to reeem thoſe that were already mortgaged; by which means e raiſed a conſiderable ſum of money. *Haguenau* purchaſed, t a very high rate, an exemption from being comprehended n the number of thoſe towns which the noblemen united to heir domains. It was confirmed in all the privileges conerred upon it by *Richard* king of the *Romans*, and particuarly in that of its being unalienable from the domains of he empire. The ſame prerogative was afterwards beſtowed pon all the towns of the prefecture of *Alſace*; but they ould never obtain an independency of the juriſdiction of the Grand Bailie, nor of the princes whom the emperor had inveſted with that dignity. The imperial towns of *Alſace*, indeed, employed all their endeavours to free themſelves from the uthority of the princes, which they apprehended would in ime degenerate into oppreſſion; and they made ſtrong reonſtrances on the ſubject to *Charles*, who, without paying he leaſt regard to their claims, mortgaged the prefecture of e province to *Robert*, count palatine of the *Rhine*, for fifty ouſand florins; and the towns were, after ſome reſtitution, liged to ſubmit [r].

---

[q] LUNIC. t. vii. Arch. Imp. p. 18.

(U) During this plague the ſect of *Flagellants* revived; and this taſte for ſelf-diſcipline became ſo general, that crouds of people of all ranks, ſexes, and condition, abandoned themſelves to this cruel ſuperſtition. Two hundred of theſe diſciplinants from *Suabia*, croſſing the *Rhine*, repaired to *Spire*, and, aſſembling before the cathedral, ſtripped off their cloaths, and whipped themſelves with ſcourges pointed with iron. The extremities of the weather could not ſtop them in their career: they would not ſpeak to any woman: they lay upon the hard ground, and admitted none into their aſſociation but ſuch as had wherewithal to maintain themſelves during the term preſcribed for their penance: they walked by twos and threes in proceſſion, with their eyes fixed upon the earth, croſſes on their cloaths and hats, and a rich ſtandard carried before them: their number acquired the addition of one hundred at *Spire*, and increaſed conſiderably at *Strasburg*: in ſhort, this confraternity was augmented to ſome thouſands, and became ſo formidable, that the pope fulminated bulls, the emperor iſſued edicts againſt them, and the princes refuſed to admit them into their dominions; by which precautions all bad conſequences were prevented, and the ſociety in a little time diſperſed (1).

(1) *Chronic. Alſac.*

and eſtabliſhes the juriſdiction of the grand bailie in Alſace.

In the midſt of theſe tranſactions, the enemies of *Lewis* *Bavaria*, marquis of *Brandenburg*, renewed the old imſture of the pretended *Waldemar* in the perſon of one *uller-Meincken*, who confidently aſſerted, that he was the al margrave returned from *Paleſtine*, and inſiſted upon beg repoſſeſſed of his dominions, which, he ſaid, were uſurpl by *Lewis* of *Bavaria*. As he reſembled the late margrave, d mimicked his deportment, in conſequence of having been s groom, the common people eſpouſed his cauſe, which as likewiſe ſupported by the dukes of *Saxony*, and the inces of *Anhalt* and *Mecklenburg*, enemies to *Lewis* of *Baria*.

The impoſture of the pretended Waldemar *margrave of* Brandenburg *is revived, and occaſions great diſturbances in the north.*

The king of *Denmark*, incenſed at the countenance they ve this impoſtor againſt his friend, and brother-in-law, *wis*, equipped a conſiderable fleet, and made a deſcent pon the territories of *Mecklenburg*, which he ravaged with e and ſword; then he undertook the ſiege of *Berlin*, tho' e had not time to finiſh that enterprize; for the duke, who d already defeated *Lewis*, ſurnamed *the Roman*, brother the margrave, appeared at the head of a ſtrong army, and battle muſt have enſued, had not the miniſters of both inces adviſed an accommodation, which was effected under e arbitration of the king of *Sweden*, who decreed that *wis the Roman* ſhould ranſom his people who were taken priſoners, and abſolve from their oath of allegiance thoſe towns of *Mecklenburg* antiently included in *Wandalia*; and that he ſhould marry the daughter of the duke of *Mecklenburg*, who, on his part, ſhould abandon the pretended *Waldemar*.

---

[r] Lunic. Arch. Imper.

Diet at Sprenberg.

CHARLES, who had likewiſe protected this pretender, and even iſſued a decree in his favour, thought proper to renounce him publickly in a diet held at *Sprenberg*; and *Lewis*, ſurnamed *the Roman*, being declared lawful poſſeſſor of the eſtates of *Brandenburg*, this counterfeit competitor diſappeared.

AFTER the aſſembly at *Sprenberg*, in which *Eric*, duke of *Saxony*, ceded to the king of *Denmark* a certain tribute, called *Stuergelde*, paid by the regency of *Lubec*, which had been mortgaged to the *Saxons*, *Charles* returned to *Prague*, which was the place of his reſidence. Here he had eſtabliſhed a famous univerſity, while yet no more than king of *Bohemia*, and ſet proper perſons at work to form a code of laws to regulate the *police* of his kingdom. From hence he detached a body of troops to the *Low Countries* to the aſſiſtance of the empreſs dowager, heireſs of thoſe dominions, and at war with her own ſon *William*, who endeavoured to deprive her of one-half of her poſſeſſions. She was a princeſs of a maſculine ſpirit, and, with the ſuccours ſhe received from *England* and *Bohemia*, took the field againſt this undutiful child, whom ſhe defeated in a pitched battle, and compelled to retire into *Holland*, of which he was count. But he ſoon re-appeared, at the head of a more formidable army, aſſembled from *Cleves*, *Guelderland*, and the neighbouring provinces, and in his turn obtained a complete victory over his mother, who was obliged to fly for refuge into *England*. An accommodation was afterwards effected by the mediation of the *Engliſh* monarch, on condition that the empreſs ſhould reſt contented with the poſſeſſion of *Hainault*, and *William* remain maſter of *Holland*, *Zealand*, and *Friezland* [s].

Charles *ſends ſuccours to the empreſs dowager*; *who is defeated by her ſon*, William *count of* Holland.

A. D. 1351.

The affairs of Italy.

BUT the emperor did not intereſt himſelf ſo much in this contention, as in the deplorable condition of *Italy*, where an infinite number of petty tyrants, declaring themſelves independent of the empire, as well as of the holy ſee, committed every ſpecies of outrage upon thoſe who were unable to reſiſt their power. The chief of theſe oppreſſors was *John Viſconti*, archbiſhop of *Milan*. He made himſelf maſter of the city of *Bologna*, in direct contradiction to the remonſtrances of the pope, who for that reaſon thundered out a bull of excommunication againſt him and his three nephews,

John Viſconti *archbiſhop of* Milan *makes him-*

---

[s] Chron. de Holl. & de Zel.

Galeazo, Bernabo, and *Matthew,* the ſons of *Stephen Viſconti.*

ſelf maſter of Bologna, *and threatens* Florence;

NOTWITHSTANDING theſe anathemas, the archbiſhop, under the ſpecious pretext of defending the liberty of the people againſt the encroachments of the *Florentines,* began to make preparations for enterprizes of greater moment: in order to oppoſe this formidable prelate, a league was formed between the republics of *Florence, Piſa,* and ſome other ſtates; and *Charles* ſent letters to the pope, in which he promiſed to croſs the *Alps,* and chaſtiſe that rebellious ſon of the church.

but is afterwards reconciled to the pope.

THE archbiſhop, apprized of his intention, was alarmed at the proſpect, and forthwith made ſtrong advances towards an accommodation with the pope, who being himſelf jealous of the imperial power, and very unwilling to ſee *Charles* in the midſt of *Italy,* gave ear to his ſollicitations, which were backed with a large ſum of money, and granted him the inveſtiture of *Milan* and *Bologna,* after having abſolved him from the cenſure of the church[t].

The town of Zurich *revolts.*

A. D. 1352.

THIS reconciliation did not divert the emperor from his purpoſe of croſſing the *Alps,* though his march was delayed for ſome time by the domeſtic troubles of *Germany.* The inhabitants of *Zurich,* thinking themſelves aggrieved by the mal-adminiſtration of juſtice, expelled their magiſtrates, who intereſted the count *de Hapſburg* in their behalf, and even prevailed upon him to undertake the ſurpriſal of the city. He accordingly, with ſome accomplices, entered the town in diſguiſe; but being diſcovered, he was taken priſoner and loaded with chains; and the people, running to arms, ravaged his lands, and took poſſeſſion of his caſtle of *Raperſwille.* Theſe proceedings alarmed the dukes of *Auſtria,* whoſe poſſeſſions lay contiguous to thoſe of the count: they therefore eſpouſed the quarrel, and formed a league with *Straſburg, Baſil, Colmar, Scleſtadt,* and *Friburg,* in order to curb the inſolence of *Zurich.* This town, ſeeing the ſtorm ready to burſt upon its head, fortified itſelf with the alliance of *Sultz, Uri, Underwald,* and *Lucerne,* which laſt, though belonging to the houſe of *Auſtria,* reſolved to take this opportunity of eſtabliſhing its own independency.

The dukes of Auſtria *form a league againſt it.*

ALBERT of *Auſtria,* ſurnamed *the Sage,* having made ſuitable preparations for the war, demanded the enlargement of the count *de Hapſburg,* which being refuſed by the inhabitants of *Zurich,* he took the field, fully reſolved to beſiege the city; but ſeveral noblemen, foreſeeing the miſeries of a

---

[t] VILLANI, l. ii. c. 48.

The difference is accommodated; civil war, interpoſed their good offices, and arbitrators were choſen to decide the difference, which was compromiſed, on condition that the count *de Hapsburg* ſhould be ſet at liberty, and all the places reſtored which had been taken from the houſe of *Auſtria*.

but breaks out afreſh. THIS peace, however, was not of long duration. The town of *Zug*, having enjoyed a tranſient taſte of the ſweets of liberty, allied itſelf more ſtrictly than ever to the confederated *Swiſs*. *Albert* complaining to the emperor of this aſſociation, as a direct infraction of the laſt treaty, and a dangerous example in the empire, *Charles* intereſted himſelf in the diſpute; and, repairing to *Conſtance*, appointed proper perſons to treat with the *Swiſs*, and endeavour to terminate the affair in an amicable manner: but, the confederates perſiſting in their refuſal to ſubmit to the houſe of *Auſtria*, all that he could obtain was a ſuſpenſion of arms, until a more ſolid accommodation could be effected: in the mean time he made a progreſs through *Alſace*, where he eſtabliſhed ſeveral wholeſome regulations for the maintenance of the public tranquillity.

Charles *takes the field in perſon againſt the* Swiſs. A. D. 1353. HAVING performed this viſitation, he returned to *Straſburg*, where, being importuned by duke *Albert* to take vengeance on the rebellious *Swiſs*, he levied an army, and advanced againſt the enemy, whom he found already ranged in order of battle; but a diſpute ariſing between the duke of *Auſtria* and the biſhop of *Conſtance* about leading the van, the ſpirit of the officers was exhauſted in vain altercation; and the emperor, judging it improper to begin the attack while his commanders were ſo divided among themſelves, retired at leiſure from the neighbourhood of *Zurich*, while *Albert* remained to form the blockade of that city [u].

1354. ON his return from this expedition he was made acquainted with the death of pope *Clement* VI. and the ſucceſſion of *Innocent* VI. to whom he ſent letters of congratulation, which were anſwered by the new pontif in very gracious terms; but he could not yet execute his deſign of going to *Italy*, becauſe he was detained by freſh commotions in *Germany*. He was obliged to go and ſuppreſs a popular inſurrection at *Nuremberg*; and to decide a competition between two pretenders to the archbiſhopric of *Mentz*, one of whom had been depoſed, and the other ſubſtituted in his room, by pope *Clement* VI. He confirmed the antient privileges of the church of *Triers*, incorporated *Luſace* with the kingdom of *Bohemia*, renewed the peace with the houſe of *Bavaria*, and received from *Lewis* the imperial enſigns, which before this period he would not ſurrender. Then he made a circuit through the provinces, to eſtabliſh peace, and conciliate the affections of the people: he made a public entry into *Mentz* as king of *Bohemia*; for the magiſtrates would not receive him in quality of king of the *Romans*, becauſe he had not yet received the imperial crown. During his ſtay in this city, he erected the counties of *Luxemburg* and of *Bar* into duchies, in favour of his brother *Winceſlaus*, and his couſin *Robert de Bar*, whoſe lordſhip of *Pont-amouſon* was likewiſe raiſed into a marquiſate and principality of the empire[x].

---

[u] ALBERT. ARGENT. Chron. p. 162.

Sets out for Italy; *receives the iron crown at* Milan; A. D. 1355.

Having regulated the affairs of *Germany*, and appointed his father-in-law, *Robert* count palatine, vicar of the empire, he reſolved to croſs the *Alps*, according to an agreement which he had made with pope *Innocent* VI. By the beginning of *January* he had arrived at *Milan*, where he was crowned king of *Lombardy* on the day of *Epiphany*. From thence he repaired to *Piſa*, where he tarried ſome time, in order to compoſe the diviſions of *Tuſcany*, and to receive homage from the cities of that province; then he viſited *Sienna*, from whence he rode poſt to *Rome*, which he entered in diſguiſe with ſome of his nobles on *Holy Week*, during which he viſited the principal churches of the city; but on the day of the reſurrection, which was the fifth of *April*, he made a ſolemn proceſſion from his camp into the city, where he was joyfully received by the pope's legate, ſenators, clergy, and people of *Rome*, and on *Eaſter-day* crowned with the empreſs[z], who had followed him from *Germany* for that purpoſe.

and the imperial crown at Rome.

He departs from Rome *on the day of his coronation*;

This ceremony was no ſooner performed than he quitted the city of *Rome*, in conſequence of the agreement he had made with the pope, although the *Romans* came to offer him the government of *Rome* as his hereditary right, and intreated him to re-eſtabliſh their antient liberty. He told the deputies he would deliberate upon the propoſal; but, being apprehenſive of ſome treachery, he ſneaked out of the city in the evening, on pretence of going to take the diverſion of hunting; and afterwards ratified and confirmed, by authentic acts, all the promiſes he had made to *Clement* and the reigning pope, ſo much to the prejudice of the empire in *Italy*.

His puſillanimous conduct excited the indignation of the *Germans* and the contempt of the *Italians*. The noblemen of his retinue looked upon his coronation as the æra of the

---

[x] Barre. t. vi. p. 706, & ſeq.

[z] Fleuri, t. xx. l. 96.

and is inſulted in divers places of Italy.

empire's decay, as all her rights in *Italy* were now totally annihilated. He ſuſtained divers inſults on the road in his return to *Germany*: there was an attempt made to burn him in his lodgings at *Piſa*, from whence he eſcaped with great difficulty, after having ſeen ſeveral perſons of his train maſſacred by the populace. The greateſt part of the towns attached to the empire ſhut their gates againſt him: at *Cremona* he was obliged to wait without the walls two long hours for the anſwer of the magiſtrates, who at length permitted him to enter as a ſimple ſtranger, without arms or retinue, and continue for the ſpace of one month only [a] (X).

Supports the Guelphs *againſt the* Gibelines.

He ſeemed to have renounced intirely the politics of his predeceſſors; for he not only diſcouraged and rejected the proffers of the *Gibelines*, who eſpouſed the intereſts of the empire, but he affected to treat them as enemies to religion, and actually ſent a reinforcement of troops from *Bohemia* to the aſſiſtance of the *Guelphs*, who by theſe means recovered ſome places which had been taken from the holy ſee; and, in conſideration of theſe ſervices, he was applauded and flattered by the pope and his dependents with the moſt fulſome adulation.

Troubles in Low Germany.

While he acted this abſurd part in maintaining the temporalities of the pope, he ſeemed to neglect the troubles which agitated the northern parts of *Germany*. A war had broke out between the dukes of *Mecklenburg* and *Stettin* about ſome frontier fortreſſes, and was carried on with great violence for ſome years, until *Waldemar*, king of *Denmark*, undertook the office of arbitrator, and effected an accommodation. Then marching againſt the princes of *Sclavia* and *Verle*, who had revolted, he defeated their forces and ravaged their dominions, where he committed great cruelties. After this expedition, he conſented that a diſpute, ſubſiſting between him and the counts of *Holſtein*, ſhould be referred to the arbitration of *Eric* duke of *Saxony*, and *Gerhard* count *de Hoja*: they decreed, that his *Daniſh* majeſty, to whom the counts of *Holſtein* had ceded one-half of *Fionia*, ſhould relinquiſh all pretenſions to that county, and releaſe the *Holſtein* priſoners which he had taken in the laſt war [b].

---

[a] Barre, t. ii. p. 718.

(X) The poet *Petrarch*, who adhered to the party of the *Gibelines*, reproached him in a letter couched in theſe terms: "You "have then promiſed upon oath, "that you will never return to "*Rome*. What ſhameful con"duct in an emperor, to be com"pelled by *Rome* to content him"ſelf with the bare title of *Cæ"ſar*, and exile himſelf for ever "from the habitation of the *Cæ"ſars!* to be crowned emperor, "and then prohibited from "reigning, or acting as chief of "the empire: what an inſult "upon him who ought to com"mand the univerſe to be no "longer maſter of himſelf, but "be reduced to obey his own "vaſſal (1)."

(1) *De Vit. Solit. l.* ii. *ſect.* 4. *c*, iii.

Returns to Germany, *which he finds in confuſion.* A.D. 1356.

Convokes a diet, in which ſeveral conſtitutions are publiſhed; together with the famous edict called The Golden Bull.

BESIDES theſe conteſts, there were other diſputes which haſtened the return of *Charles* to *Germany*; namely, thoſe proceeding from an opinion of equality, which prevailed among the princes of the empire; and this opinion was derived from the election of the emperors, the form of which was not as yet reduced to writing. The number of electors was not yet fixed, nor the quality limited to any particular princes; for the principal ſtates were in general called electors, becauſe all had equally the right of voting. The emperor therefore reſolved to ſettle this point, that due ſubordination ſhould take place, and future elections be performed without confuſion or diſorder. For this purpoſe he ordered a diet to be convoked at *Nuremberg*, to which the electors, princes, counts, noblemen, and deputies of the free towns, repaired in great number: but, before the chief deſign of their meeting was brought upon the carpet, the emperor iſſued a particular decree, touching a difference which *Lewis* and *Stephen*, dukes of *Bavaria*, had with *Robert* count palatine of the *Rhine*. The emperor had made an agreement with his nephews, the counts palatine, that the right of voting as an elector ſhould be alternately exerciſed by the chiefs of the two houſes; and now the dukes of *Bavaria* wiſhed to ſee this convention confirmed by *Charles*, who, from his hatred to the poſterity of *Lewis*, pronounced a ſentence, by which this right of voting was veſted intirely in the count palatine, and the other branches of the *Bavarian* houſe were excluded from this privilege.

LEWIS *the Roman* approved of this decree, and for this inſtance of complaiſance received the inveſtiture of the marquiſate of *Brandenburg*; but *Lewis the Elder* and *Stephen* preſented a memorial to the diet, containing a detail of their pretenſions; and this being overlooked, proteſted in form againſt the decree [c].

---

[b] MEURSIUS Hiſt. Dan.

(Y) *Charles* is juſtly reproached for his too great complaiſance to the pope; for, by the treaties which were made between them, they ſeemed to act in concert for the deſtruction of the empire; one by his avarice, and the other by his ambition to extend the patrimony of *St. Peter*, to the prejudice of the imperial fiefs (1).

(1) *Spond. Cont. Baron. t.* i. *p.* 737.

THIS affair being diſcuſſed, the aſſembly deliberated upon the other more important affair; and it was not only reſolved, that many cuſtoms, which had never been reduced to writing, ſhould, in the form of conſtitutions, be augmented, with ſeveral regulations for the public good; but alſo to compoſe and publiſh the celebrated edict touching the form and ceremonies of the election of emperors, the number of electors, their particular functions, rights, and privileges, together with every circumſtance relating to the government of the empire. This is the famous edict called *The Golden Bull* (Z), compoſed of thirty articles, three-and-twenty of which were confirmed in this aſſembly, where the emperor ſat on his throne, wearing the crown and other imperial ornaments, and heard them read and publiſhed with the unanimous conſent and approbation of all preſent [d]. Towards the latter end of that ſame year another diet was held at *Metz*, where the other ſeven articles were added in preſence of the ſame electors, princes, and ſtates, as well as of the cardinal-biſhop of *Alva*; *Charles* the eldeſt ſon of *France*, who was duke of *Normandy*, dauphin of *Vienne*, and the emperor's own nephew [e]. This edict being publiſhed, with all the formalities neceſſary to make it a fundamental law of the empire, the emperor, in order to put the articles in execution, prepared a magnificent entertainment, at which each of the electors ſhould exerciſe his own particular function. The emperor and empreſs in their royal robes, having heard a ſolemn maſs, repaired to the place appointed for the feſtival; accompanied by all the prelates and princes; and being ſeated at a table raiſed upon a ſcaffold in the market-place, *Lewis* archbiſhop of *Mentz*, *Connon* archbiſhop of *Triers*, and *Frederic* archbiſhop of *Cologne*, as arch-chancellors of *Germany*, *Gaul*, and *Italy*, appeared on horſeback, each having a ſeal hanging from his neck, and a letter in his right hand. They were followed by the four ſecular electors, likewiſe on horſeback. The firſt of thoſe was *Winceſlaus* duke of *Saxony*,

The emperor prepares a feſtival, at which each elector performs his own peculiar function.

---

[c] REBDORF ad an. 1356. n. 18. [d] BARRE, t. vi. p. 724 & ſeq. [e] SPOND. Cont. t. i. p. 744. KRANTZ, l. ix. c. 29. Chron. Comit. de Mark. ex. MEIB. t. i. p. 406.

(Z) So named from a golden ſeal, called *Bulla*. A tranſlation of this famous edict will be inſerted at the end of this hiſtory of the empire.

with a ſilver peck full of oats in his right hand, as arch-marſhal of the empire; and, as it was his function to regulate the precedency, he alighted, and put each of his colleagues in his proper place. Then *Otho* marquis of *Brandenburg* diſmounting, preſented the emperor and empreſs with water to waſh in an ewer of gold, placed in a baſon of the ſame metal. *Robert the Red,* count palatine of the *Rhine,* ſerved up the victuals in plates of gold; and *Winceſlaus* duke of *Luxemburg* and *Brabant,* the emperor's nephew, repreſenting the king of *Bohemia,* who was the emperor himſelf, placed upon one corner of the table a golden flaggon full of wine, of which he preſented a draught to the emperor in a cup of gold. After the electors rode the marquis of *Miſnia,* and the count of *Schwartzenburg,* great huntſmen, ſounding their horns, who, being followed by their hounds, killed a ſtag and a bear in preſence of the emperor, who, after dinner, having beſtowed preſents upon the electors, princes, counts, and noblemen, gave them leave to depart, and put an end to the diet[f].

A. D. 1357.

Charles *marches againſt the dukes of* **Bavaria.** 1358.

FROM *Metz* the emperor marched againſt the dukes of *Bavaria,* who had formed a league with the princes of *Auſtria,* in order to maintain their rights, which they conceived were invaded by the golden bull; and he compelled them to renounce this alliance, and agree to an accommodation on reaſonable terms. Then he took the route to *Prague,* where he finiſhed the citadel of *Carleſtein,* not without attracting the jealouſy of his ſubjects, whom, however, he found means to appeaſe, by reminding them of the care he took to increaſe and confirm their prerogatives in the golden bull.

Diſturbances occaſioned by the Phalburgers;

BUT one article of that famous conſtitution produced great diſturbance in ſome of the imperial towns. This related to the *Phalburgers,* or falſe burghers; and ordained, that the burghers belonging to any prince ſhould not be received as free citizens in the imperial towns. The deſign of this law was to prevent ſubjects from withdrawing themſelves from the obedience and dominion of their natural lords; but under this pretext the princes endeavoured to deprive the people of the undoubted right they have from nature to ſhift the place of their reſidence, in order to better their ſituation in life. Among others, the inhabitants of *Strasburg* were expreſly forbid to give the freedom of their city to ſtrangers; and this prohibition they rejected, as an infringement of their privileges.

---

[f] Heiss, l. ii. c. 27.

and a band of free-booters, called Tard venus.

WHILE *Strasburg* thus defended its rights from innovation, *Alſace* was ravaged by a troop of robbers, who diſtinguiſhed themſelves by the appellations of *Malandrines*, *Tard Venus*, or late comers, and *Great Companies*. They were originally formed of deſerters from the armies of *France* and *England*, and grew to ſuch a pitch of inſolence and power, that the emperor was obliged to aſſemble the forces of the empire, which drove them out of *Germany*. Then they marched towards *Avignon*, in order to lay the pope and cardinals under contribution; but finding it impracticable to make themſelves maſters of that place, which was defended by the marquis *de Montferrat*, the greateſt part of them inliſted under the banners of that experienced commander, who led them againſt the *Milaneſe*, whom he defeated in ſeveral engagements[g].

The emperor returns to Bohemia, *where his whole attention is engroſſed in amaſſing money, and augmenting his hereditary dominions.*

ON his return to *Bohemia* his whole care was engroſſed in accumulating treaſure, and extending the frontiers of his hereditary kingdom, which he conſidered as his real patrimony. He had already augmented it with the addition of *Sileſia*, which he held of *Poland*; and *Luſatia*, which was a fief of the empire; nay, he even ſold new privileges to ſeveral cities, and for money increaſed the rights and power of other dominions. He left no ſtone unturned to enrich himſelf; but anticipated the wiſh of thoſe who wanted to ſell, give, mortgage, or alienate, the lands and privileges of the empire, as if he had entered into a league with foreign princes, in order to weaken its power[h] (A).

A. D. 1358.

Encourages the

IN other reſpects he was not a bad prince, although the *Germans* have no great cauſe to applaud his reign, becauſe he expreſſed no zeal for the glory and dignity of the empire. It muſt be confeſſed, nevertheleſs, that he poſſeſſed ſome qualities that were very commendable: he was perfectly well acquainted

---

[g] BARRE, t. vi. p. 747.

[h] AVENT. Ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 639.

(A) The incorporation of theſe two provinces with the kingdom of *Bohemia* involved him in a war with the duke of *Auſtria*, who repreſented to the ſtates the bad conſequence of ſuch an alienation from the empire; but his real motive was to appropriate to himſelf the province of *Luſatia*, upon which he had long looked with a wiſhful eye. In order to determine this difference, the two princes took the field; and the emperor perceiving himſelf greatly inferior to the enemy, he ſeduced by his promiſes three of the duke's principal officers, who perſuaded their *liberal arts, reforms the extravagance of the clergy, and is particularly attentive to the adminiſtration of juſtice.*

acquainted with the languages, and an encourager of the liberal arts. An illuſtrious proof of his munificence in this particular is the univerſity of *Prague*, which he founded on the model of that of *Paris*, having procured copies of its ſtatutes, while he was employed in his ſtudies in *France*. He expreſſed great averſion to the ambition and pomp of eccleſiaſtics, which was at that time exceſſive, and even made public remonſtrances to the biſhops, when they gave him reaſon to complain on this head[1]. He applied himſelf with extraordinary care to the adminiſtration of juſtice, and uſually ſat in perſon as a check upon the judge; but, on the other hand, he was inexcuſably remiſs in the affairs of *Italy*, where every thing relapſed into the utmoſt confuſion. He had ſold, for a large ſum of money, to the dukes called *Sforza*, the vicariate of *Lombardy*, with the ſtate of *Milan*; and he found his own private intereſt in neglecting to recover the cities of *Padua*, *Verona*, *Vicenza*, together with the other dominions of the empire and their juriſdictions, which the *Venetians* had gradually appropriated to themſelves, and now peaceably enjoyed.

He ſells the imperial juriſdictions in Italy.

A. D. 1359.

Difference between the emperor and pope.

THE princes of the empire, excited by the univerſities of *Germany*, repreſented to him, that, among the bulls of pope *Clement* VI. there were ſome that reflected diſgrace upon him and the *Germanic* body, eſpecially that which imports the emperors to be vaſſals of the pope. In conſequence of this repreſentation, *Charles* wrote to his holineſs, deſiring that this odious inſinuation might be cancelled; but *Innocent* VI. gave him to underſtand, that it was become a fundamental law of the church; and, in order to amuſe the emperor in his turn, ſent the biſhop of *Cavaillon* as his prelate into *Germany* to demand the tenth of all eccleſiaſtical revenues for the benefit of the holy ſee. This extraordinary demand alarmed the clergy and the princes of *Germany* to ſuch a degree, that the emperor convoked a diet at *Mentz*, to deliberate upon the ſubject, and the reſult of their deliberations was a flat refuſal delivered to the nuncio, with heavy complaints of the pope's preſumption [k] (B).

---

[1] NAUCLER. gener. 46.

their maſter that the emperor's forces were infinitely ſuperior to his, and produced a forged liſt of his troops, which they pretended to have intercepted. In conſequence of theſe treacherous repreſentations, the duke thought proper to conſult his ſafety by a precipitate flight: when the traitors came afterwards to demand their recompence of the emperor, he expelled them from his court with diſgrace, and even threatened to detect and deliver them to the duke, whom they had betrayed (1).

(1) *Cuſpinian. in Carol.* IV. *Cæſare.*

Troubles in the north of Germany.

AT this period the provinces ſituated in the centre of *Germany* enjoyed peace and tranquillity; but *Charles* ſeemed to neglect the northern parts, which were almoſt always involved with *Waldemar* king of *Denmark*, who, by impoſing a ſevere tax upon the *Jutlanders*, had provoked theſe people to revolt, and they were ſupported by the duke of *Sleſwick* and the counts of *Holſtein*. In the beginning of this war the confederates were ſucceſsful; but, in the ſequel, *Waldemar* defeated their army, razed the fortifications of *Gamberg*, conquered the iſlands of *Langeland* and *Alſen*, and compelled them to ſue for peace, which was accordingly ratified at *Stralſund* [l].

Bernabo Viſconti *beſieges* Bologna, *and is defeated by* Malateſta. A. D. 1360.

MEAN while pope *Innocent* implored the aſſiſtance of the emperor againſt *Bernabo Viſconti*, lord of *Milan*, who was then employed in the ſiege of *Bologna*, which was garriſoned by the troops of the holy ſee; but all that he could obtain from *Charles* was an imperial edict, commanding *Bernabo* to deſiſt, which *Viſconti* treated with great contempt; and *Bologna* would certainly have fallen into his hands, had not *Galeot Malateſta* entered in the night with a conſiderable reinforcement; and next day, making a vigorous ſally, defeated the enemy with great ſlaughter.

YET the emperor's indifference on this occaſion was not ſo remarkable as his total neglect of the commotions in *Lower*

---

[k] FLEURI. Hiſt. Eccleſiaſt. t. xx. l. 96.

[l] HUITFELD. Hiſt. Dan. t. iii.

(B) The emperor, having reſolved to reform the *German* clergy, communicated to the biſhops the meaſures he had taken for that purpoſe, and threatened to ſequeſtrate the revenues of thoſe who ſhould refuſe to obey his orders. The pope, believing the honour and liberty of eccleſiaſtics at ſtake, deſired the emperor to forbear meddling with the reformation of the clergy, which was his province, and inſiſted upon his reſtoring what the ſecular noblemen had at different times uſurped from eccleſiaſtics. *Charles*, in order to pacify *Innocent*, whoſe reſentment he dreaded, publiſhed the famous conſtitution called *The Caroline Bull*, cancelling all the ſtatutes or regulations which had been made to the prejudice of eccleſiaſtical liberty, and denouncing the ſevereſt penalties againſt thoſe who ſhould aggrieve the perſons of the clergy (1).

(1) *Goldaſt. Conſtit. Imper. t. ii. p.* 92.

The hans towns maintain a war againſt the king of Denmark. A. D. 1361.

Germany. The hans towns, being interrupted in their commerce by the *Danes*, had craved his protection in repeated ſollicitations, which being denied, they renewed their antient alliance, entered into a league with the king of *Norway*, the duke of *Mecklenburg*, and the count of *Holſtein*, and equipping a conſiderable fleet, laid *Copenhagen* under contribution. The war was maintained for ſome time with various ſucceſs, till at length, all parties being tired of hoſtilities, an accommodation took place, though not until his *Daniſh* majeſty made ſatisfaction for the damage his ſubjects had done to the trade of the confederates [m].

Charles *neglects the affairs of the empire;* *and grows extremely avaritious.*

In the courſe of this year the empreſs was delivered of a ſon, who was baptized by the name of *Winceſlaus*, and his birth was ſolemnized with great magnificence: but the noblemen, diſſatisfied with the ſloth and indolence of *Charles*, preſented to him a remonſtrance, importing, that the occupations of an emperor conſiſted in holding diets, viſiting the provinces, adminiſtring juſtice, and maintaining good order. He paid, however, no regard to theſe repreſentations; but replied to the deputies, that he was not at all diſpoſed to maintain an emperor in the provinces with the revenues of *Bohemia*. In a word, he was by this time grown extremely covetous, and ſold privileges to all the noblemen and towns that choſe to pay the price he demanded. The town of *Dille*, in *Upper Alſace*, purchaſed the power of inflicting death upon certain criminals, and even of conferring the right of burgherſhip on all perſons whatever, not excepting the vaſſals of the noblemen, if they were not reclaimed within the year. The biſhop of *Straſburg* paid a round ſum for uniting to his ſee the landgraviate (C) of *Alſace*, and ſeveral fiefs which had been poſſeſſed by the counts of *Oettingen*; and it might have been ſaid of *Charles*, that he bought the empire wholeſale, and ſold it by retail [n].

---

[m] Pontan. Rer. Danic. Hiſt.

(C) The dignity of landgrave was originally a commiſſion given by the emperors to a certain nobleman; conſtituting him judge and governor of a province, *quamdiu ſe bene geſſerit*; but in the ſequel it became an hereditary fief; and beſides the rights and privileges attached to the dignity, there were certain fiefs united to it, of which ſome depended immediately upon the emperors, and others upon the biſhop, or ſome powerful nobleman of the province; ſo that the landgraves not only received the inveſtiture of their office, and its fiefs depending upon the empire, from the emperor himſelf, but they were likewiſe obliged to do homage for the other fiefs to the lord paramount (1).

(1) *Carta Carol.* IV. *apud Obrecht. in Prol. p.* 308.

JOHN biſhop of *Strasburg* by this new acquiſition excited the jealouſy of the inhabitants of *Haguenau*, who committed hoſtilities upon his vaſſals, and obliged him to take the field at the head of an army, with which he ravaged their territory, and even inveſted their city: but a peace was ſoon concluded by the mediation of *Burcard* burgrave of *Magdeburg*.

A. D. 1363.

War breaks out between the houſe of Bavaria *and* Auſtria.

THESE troubles were hardly appeaſed when other diſturbances aroſe from the death of *Lewis* duke of *Bavaria*, who having made no regulations in his will, touching the tutorage of his ſon *Menchard*, by his ſecond wife *Margaret Maulſtach*, heireſs of *Carinthia*, his brother *Stephen* took charge of the young prince, who dying in a few months, his tutor was acknowleged duke of *Bavaria*, and received the inveſtiture from the emperor: but *Margaret Maulſtach*, who hated the *Bavarian* houſe, made a formal ceſſion of all her right and pretenſions upon the *Tyrol*, the county of *Goritz*, and the territory ſituated between the *Inn* and the *Adige*, to *Rodolphus* of *Auſtria*, who promiſed to take her for his wife; ſo that a war broke out between the houſes of *Auſtria* and *Bavaria*; and pope *Urban*, who had ſucceeded *Innocent*, prevailed upon both parties to agree to a truce for three years, in conſequence of which each competitor retired to his own dominions [o].

The emperor ſollicited in vain for ſuccour to Peter *of* Luſignan *king of* Cyprus.

ABOUT this period, *Peter de Luſignan*, king of *Cyprus*, finding himſelf unable to withſtand the power of the *Egyptian* ſoltan, repaired to *Avignon* to ſollicit ſuccours againſt the infidels, and perſuade the pope to ſet on foot a new cruſade for the conqueſt of *Jeruſalem*. His holineſs and the king of *France* ſeemed very well diſpoſed to promote this enterprize; but all their remonſtrances had no effect upon the emperor, who was not the man to ſacrifice the tranquillity he enjoyed to the proſpect of uncertain conqueſt; nor would the *German* princes, though ſeverally exhorted by *Urban* to engage in ſuch a glorious expedition, aſſiſt his *Cyprian* majeſty with any thing but fair promiſes, which they had no intention to perform.

An accommodation effected between the

CHARLES, however, to manifeſt his regard for the ſucceſſor of *St. Peter*, interpoſed his good offices to terminate the war, which ſtill raged in *Italy*, between the pope and *Bernabo Viſconti*; and finding the latter extremely obſtinate, and averſe to an accommodation, he ordered all the vicars of the empire in *Italy* to take arms, and purſue that prince, as an enemy to God, and a rebel to the empire. It was owing to this vigorous ſtep that *Viſconti* began to liſten to terms of peace, that were confirmed by a treaty; in conſequence of which he was abſolved from the ſentence of excommunication [p].

---

[n] SPINER. t. ii. l. ii. c. 2.

[o] ADLZREITT. an. Boic. gent. par. ii. l. v.

pope and Bernabo Viſconti. A. D. 1364.

The emperor, notwithſtanding his pacific diſpoſition, involved himſelf in a quarrel with *Lewis* king of *Hungary*, whoſe mother he had aſperſed; and the licence of his tongue would have intailed upon him a very troubleſome war, had not the affair been compromiſed by the mediation of the pope, who intereſted himſelf greatly in the cauſe of *Peter de Luſignan*, and foreſaw that no ſubſtantial aſſiſtance could be granted to that monarch while the princes of *Europe* were at variance among themſelves. Immediately after this accommodation, *Charles*, being a widower, married *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Bugiſlaus* duke of *Pomerania*, and grandchild of *Caſimir* king of *Poland*, who defrayed all the expence of the nuptials, which were celebrated with incredible magnificence at *Cracovia*; nor was her reception at *Prague* inferior to the pomp and ſplendour of her marriage; for the emperor ſeemed to have laid aſide his natural diſpoſition on this occaſion. It muſt be owned, that he knew how to counterfeit thoſe virtues he did not poſſeſs: he courted the eſteem of ſtrangers by a ſhew of hoſpitality; he engaged in great deſigns, which he had not ſpirit enough to execute; he embelliſhed *Prague*, encouraged learning, projected a ſcheme for the reformation of monks, and raiſed the abbots of *Fulde*, *Weiſſembourg*, *Kempten*, and *Mourbach*, the moſt rich and powerful monks of *Germany*, to the rank and dignity of princes [q].

Charles *quarrels with the king of* Hungary.

Marries the daughter of Bugiſlaus *duke of* Pomerania.

Projects great deſigns, and creates the abbots of Fulde, Weiſſembourg, Kempten, *and* Mourbach, *princes of the empire.*

His tranquillity was again invaded by another body of freebooters, who made a freſh irruption into *Alſace*, where they plundered towns, villages, and paſſengers, with impunity; while another army of banditti, under the command of *Arnold de Carnolle*, ſurnamed *The High Prieſt*, fell upon *Champagne* to the number of forty thouſand, pillaged the open country, entered *Bar* and *Lorraine*, laid *Metz* under contribution, and afterwards, marching into *Alſace*, made incurſions to the gates of *Straſburg*. *Charles* being apprized of theſe outrages, and preſſed by the princes of *Germany* to oppoſe the progreſs of ſuch lawleſs ruffians, at length took the field, and, having put the moſt expoſed places on the *Rhine* in a poſture of offence, marched towards *Strasburg*, where he was joined by a ſtrong reinforcement. *Arnold*, who had

Alſace *is again invaded by the banditti under the command of* Arnold, *ſurnamed* The High Prieſt.

---

[p] Rainald. ad an. 1364.

[q] Hiſt. Bohem. t. i. l. iii.

committed

They are expelled by the emperor at the head of his troops.

committed dreadful ravages in the neighbourhood, finding himſelf unable to cope with the imperial troops, and having made certain propoſals, which were rejected, took the reſolution to retreat into *Burgundy*, where he was aſſaſſinated by his own followers, who were ſoon diſperſed after the death of their chief.

A. D. 1365.

Has an interview with the pope at Avignon;

On the emperor's return from this expedition, his council having repreſented to him, that he ought to act with more ſpirit in *Italy*, and hinder the rights and dominions of the empire from falling into the hands of the firſt comer, he reſolved to go to *Avignon*, and conclude an alliance with *Urban* V. and ſome of the princes of *Italy*, againſt *Bernabo*, tyrant of *Milan*. There he was honourably received by the pope, and during his ſtay they treated each other with reciprocal marks of the moſt ſincere friendſhip. The emperor was preſent in his imperial robes at a ſolemn maſs which the pope ſung on the day of *Pentecoſt*, after which he went to the city of *Arles*, and was crowned by the hands of the archbiſhop; then he returned to *Avignon*, where the treaty was concluded between him, the pope, and ſeveral *Italian* princes, againſt the uſurpers of the church-lands, and thoſe belonging to the empire in *Italy*; and as he obliged himſelf by the treaty to aſſemble, as ſoon as poſſible, a number of troops to march againſt theſe uſurpers and their adherents, his holineſs granted a tenth upon the clergy of *Germany* to help him to defray the expence of the war. The enterprize, however, was not ſet on foot till three years after; ſo little had he at heart the concerns of the empire on the other ſide of the *Alps*; nay, as an authentic proof of this diſregard, ſome hiſtorians relate, that for one dinner, which he received from *Lewis* duke of *Anjou*, brother of *Charles* V. at *Villeneuf*, near *Avignon*, he yielded to *France* the ſovereignty of *Dauphiny*, which had been reſerved to the empire by the donation which *Humbert*, the laſt dauphin, made of that province to the crown of *France* [r].

and engages to march into Italy *againſt the uſurpers of church lands.*

The chief deſign, however, of the aſſembly at *Avignon*, in which a great number of princes aſſiſted, was to deliberate upon means for ſubduing thoſe vagabonds who infeſted the provinces, and for aſſiſting the king of *Cyprus* againſt the ſoltan of *Egypt*; but *Charles*, inſtead of conſenting to the meaſures which were propoſed for the relief of that prince, repreſented the neceſſity of forming a cruſade againſt the *Turks*, who had already taken *Adrianople*, and threatened all Chriſtendom with deſtruction.

---

[r] Theod. Niem. Union. tract. 6.

AFTER much altercation the aſſembly broke up, without having come to any reſolutions on theſe intereſting ſubjects. The banditti continued their devaſtations to the very gates of *Avignon*, ſo as to endanger the perſon of the pope, who on this account haſtened his departure for *Rome*, after that city had been deſerted by the pontifs for the ſpace of ſixty-two years; yet, as the *Viſcontis* were maſters of all the paſſages of the *Alps*, and *Urban* was not at all diſpoſed to put himſelf in their power, he embarked on board a galley belonging to the queen of *Naples*, and made his entry into *Rome*, where he was received with great honours by the clergy and the *Roman* people[s].

Pope Urban *repairs to* Rome.
A. D. 1367.

HE had ſollicited the emperor to march againſt the *Viſcontis*, who continued to tyrannize over the ſtates and cities depending upon the *Roman* ſee; but *Charles* was reſolved to gratify his own indolence, and excuſed himſelf from leaving his dominions, on pretence of the war, which was now revived between the dukes of *Auſtria* and *Bavaria*. Theſe princes had actually taken the field to decide their pretenſions to the *Tyrol*, and the armies were in ſight of one another, when *Waldemar* king of *Denmark* arrived from the emperor's court, and prevailed upon the contending parties to agree to the prolongation of the truce[u].

The dukes of Auſtria *and* Bavaria *take the field againſt eachother.*

WALDEMAR had no ſooner tranſacted this affair to the ſatisfaction of the emperor, than he was called to his own dominions, in conſequence of a revolt in *Sweden*; and in the mean time a war was kindled in *Lower Saxony* by count *Egon*, who endeavoured to make himſelf maſter of *Fribourg*, to which he had ſome pretenſions, as *Avoyer*, or defender. The inhabitants, who had declared themſelves independent, ventured to meet his forces in the field, and were defeated; and *Egon* ceded his right to the houſe of *Auſtria*, in conſideration of a ſum of money; ſo that *Fribourg* loſt that liberty which it had maintained for ſeveral years[x].

A. D. 1368.

Fribourg *falls under the dominion of the houſe of* Auſtria.

VISCONTI ſtill perſiſting in his hoſtilities, and *Urban* in his ſollicitations, the emperor at length determined to croſs the *Alps* at the head of an army. With this view he employed ſome time in putting the affairs of *Bohemia* in order; and being ſupplied by the princes of *Germany* with a ſtrong body of forces, he began his march for *Italy*. His firſt operations were directed againſt *Verona*, which he took by aſſault, while the duke of *Auſtria* reduced *Vicenza*, and compelled the inhabitants to renounce the alliance of the *Viſcontis*. *Bernabo*, finding himſelf unable to cope with the imperial forces, joined by thoſe of the pope, ſet on foot a negotiation by means of his ſon-in-law, *Stephen* duke of *Bavaria*; and, peace being made, the pope confirmed the treaty, which was not much for the honour of either [y].

---

[s] Vit. Pap. AVEN. t. i.

[u] HUITFELD. t. iii. ad. an 1364.

[x] Chron. Hirſang.

Makes peace with the Viſcontis.

He revokes the privileges of the rebellious towns.

NOTWITHSTANDING this accommodation, the emperor puniſhed the towns and noblemen who had followed the fortunes of *Bernabo*, by revoking the privileges they had obtained from his predeceſſors, and remained deaf to all their remonſtrances and intreaties, until they found means to appeaſe him with ſums of money; and then he not only reſtored, but augmented their prerogatives.

The empreſs is crowned at Rome.

HAVING nothing elſe to fear from this quarter, he continued his march to *Viterbo*, where he was met by his holineſs, whom he accompanied to *Rome*, where he held the ſtirrup till the pope alighted, after having led his horſe by the bridle to *St. Peter*'s, in which the empreſs was crowned at the altar on the feaſt of *All Saints*, having been firſt anointed by the cardinal biſhop of *Oſtia* [z]. This ceremony being performed, the emperor quitted *Rome*, and retired to *Tuſcany*, where he ſtaid ſome months; during which he exacted a great deal of money from the cities, and even from *Florence* itſelf, which was fain to purchaſe his forbearance. Then, returning to *Germany*, he convened a diet at *Frankfort*, where meaſures were taken to maintain the peace of the empire, and in particular an imperial edict was publiſhed, in order to prevent the feuds that uſed to rage among the nobles. Theſe precautions, however, did not hinder *Magnus* duke of *Brunſwick*, and *Gerhard* biſhop of *Hildeſheim*, from taking the field againſt each other: a battle enſued, in which the latter was victorious. The war was renewed by *Otho* duke of *Lunenburg*, who reſolved to revenge the diſgrace of his kinſman; and after they had fatigued each other with marches and counter-marches, a treaty of peace was concluded. This quarrel did not ſo much diſturb the emperor, as did the war which broke out afreſh between the pope and *Viſconti*, which laſt obtained a victory over the troops of his holineſs, and filled the whole country with outrage and devaſtation. *Urban* had recourſe to *Lewis* king of *Hungary*, who actually levied forces to march to his aſſiſtance; but he could not obtain the permiſſion of the emperor for his paſſing the *Alps*,

War between the duke of Brunſwick *and the biſhop of* Hildeſheim.

A. D. 1369.

Viſconti *renews the war againſt the pope;*

---

[y] Vit. Urb. V. Ric Bzov. hoc Ann.

[z] STRUV. Period. ſect. 6.

becauſe

but is fain to ſue for peace.

A. D. 1370.

The Jutlanders *revolt againſt* Waldemar *king of* Denmark; *who is obliged to quit his dominions;*

becauſe *Charles* was jealous of his deſigns; yet he ſent ſuch intimidating meſſages to *Bernabo*, as induced him to recall his troops from the territories of the church, and make the firſt advances to a pacification, which the pope would have rejected, had not he been preſſed to accept them by the emperor, who dreaded the thoughts of the *Hungarians* entering *Lombardy*, and therefore importuned *Urban* to embrace the propoſals of *Bernabo*[a]. His holineſs did not long ſurvive this pacification; for he died in a few months on his return to *Avignon*, and was ſucceeded by *Peter Roger de Maumont*, who aſſumed the appellation of *Gregory* XI. and ſent intimation of his promotion to the emperor and other Chriſtian princes. Among theſe, *Waldemar* king of *Denmark* begged he would interpoſe the papal authority in his behalf, with the counts of *Holſtein*, and the duke of *Mecklenburg*, who ſupported the *Jutlanders* in a revolt, and even formed ſuch a ſtrong alliance with the king of *Sweden*, the duke of *Sleſwic*, and other princes, that *Waldemar* was obliged to fly from his own kingdom to the court of the emperor, who would afford him no other aſſiſtance than ſome letters of recommendation to the marquis of *Miſnia*, the duke of *Stettin*, and ſome other noblemen, whom he exhorted to take arms in defence of the *Daniſh* king.

but is afterwards reſtored.

His embaſſy to the pope met with no greater ſucceſs; for *Gregory* having heard the complaints of the *Jutlanders*, who accuſed the king of tyranny and oppreſſion, he adviſed him to reform his character, and ſtrive to regain the affections of his people by a milder adminiſtration. Diſappointed in his hope from the emperor and his holineſs, *Waldemar* ſet on foot a private negociation with the towns of *Wandalia*, which having detached from the league, he retook poſſeſſion of his dominions, confirmed the treaty of *Stralſund*, and obtained a deed from the hans towns, by which they obliged themſelves to reſtore to the crown of *Denmark*, at the expiration of fifteen years, thoſe places in *Scania* which had been mortgaged to them for that term[b]. *Charles* (B), without intereſting

---

[a] Barre, t. vi. p. 812.

[b] Pontan. Hiſt. Dan.

(B) While he was one day hunting in a foreſt, he obſerved a ſtag and an hound fall into a fountain, and afterwards loſe their hair. In conſequence of this remark, he ordered the ſpring to be examined; and the water being found hot and medicinal, it was called by the name of *Carlesbad*, or *Charles's Bath* (1).

(1) *Barre, tom.* vi. *p.* 81.

War between the emperor's brother Winceſlaus *and the duke of* Juliers. A. D. 1371.

himſelf greatly in theſe contentions, enjoyed himſelf at his eaſe in *Prague*, where the arts and ſciences flouriſhed under his protection; but, in the midſt of theſe literary amuſements, he was alarmed with the news of a quarrel between his brother *Winceſlaus*, duke of *Luxemburg* and *Brabant*, and the duke of *Juliers*, which laſt is ſaid to have countenanced a band of robbers, who committed outrages on the highway. *Winceſlaus* being vicar of the empire in the *Low Countries*, and intendant of the highways, ſent deputies to the duke of *Juliers* to complain of his conduct; and theſe being treated with contempt, he raiſed an army, at the head of which he entered the dominions of the duke, who defeated and took him priſoner. The emperor, being appriſed of his brother's diſaſter, reſolved to take ample vengeance on the victor; and, in a diet at *Aix la Chapelle*, commanded all the dukes, counts, barons, and noblemen, there aſſembled, to furniſh their proportions of troops, that he might lay waſte the dukedom of *Juliers* with fire and ſword. But he was diverted from his purpoſe by the interceſſion of the eccleſiaſtical electors, and the princes of *Bavaria*, who prevailed upon their couſin the duke of *Juliers* to releaſe *Winceſlaus* and all the priſoners without ranſom, and aſk pardon on his knees before the emperor, who raiſed him up, and embraced him, in token of reconciliation [c].

Proceedings of a diet at Nuremberg.

So many miſchievous conſequences were produced by theſe petty wars between the noblemen of the empire, that *Charles*, in order to remedy this diſorder, convoked a diet at *Nuremberg*, where it was decreed by an edict, that no prince or nobleman, who conceived himſelf aggrieved by another, ſhould have recourſe to arms, till the expiration of two months after the offence received; and this law, called *The Regulation of Sixty Days*, was of ſignal ſervice in the empire. This conſtitution being enacted, *Charles* relapſed into his former indolence, and ſeemed to renounce intirely the intereſts of the empire in *Italy*. He winked at the enterprizes of *Gregory* upon the kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*: he refuſed to aſſiſt the holy ſee againſt the incurſions of *Bernabo Viſconti*, whom no treaty could reſtrain; and he lent a deaf ear to all the ſollicitations of the pope, who exhorted him to engage in a cruſade for the relief of *Hungary*, which was threatened with an invaſion by *Amurath* emperor of the *Turks* [d].

Hungary *is threatened by the* Turks. 1373.

---

[c] Hiſt. Luxemb. l. iv.

[d] Trith. Chron. Hirſang. ad an. 1373.

NOTWITHSTANDING this indifference towards the affairs of the empire, he exerted himſelf with great induſtry when the concerns of his own family were in queſtion. For a conſiderable ſum of money he purchaſed of *Otho* the marquiſate of *Brandenburg*, with which he inveſted his ſecond ſon *Sigiſmund*; and he, by his emiſſaries, privately canvaſſed among the princes of the empire, in order to ſecure the ſucceſſion of the imperial throne to his eldeſt ſon *Winceſlaus*. For this purpoſe he made a journey into *Germany*, where he managed matters with ſo much addreſs, and applied his money to ſuch good purpoſe, that, in conſideration of 100,000 ducats paid to each of the electors, his ſon, though but fifteen years of age, was choſen king of the *Romans*[e] at *Rentz*, where a diet was aſſembled for that purpoſe, and afterwards crowned at *Aix la Chapelle*. That he might not, however, intirely exhauſt his ready money, he mortgaged to ſome of them the toll which he had upon the *Rhine*, and ſold towns to others. Thoſe of *Bopart* and *Oberweſel* were purchaſed by the elector of *Triers*; he diſpoſed of *Kaiſerlauter*, *Oppenheim*, *Obernheim*, and *Ingelheim*, to the elector *Palatine*, and ſome other cities to the duke of *Auſtria*; ſo that people were wont to ſay, He had enfeebled the empire, and plucked the eagle[f]. At length *Charles*, having ſeen his ſon *Winceſlaus* received in ſeveral of the imperial towns, returned to *Prague*, where he received the news of the pope's return to *Rome*, which did not greatly reliſh his preſence, after having ſo long enjoyed the ſweets of independence while the pontifs reſided at *Avignon*. *Gregory*, at the ſame time, wrote a letter to the emperor, deſiring he would mediate a peace between his nephew the king of *France* and the *Engliſh* monarch; and *Charles*, who had this affair at heart, reſolved to make a journey to *Paris*, that he might be nearer at hand to act as the emergency of the caſe ſhould require. Having therefore quelled ſome inteſtine commotions in *Germany*, and ſeen a war between the king of *Denmark* and the duke of *Mecklenburg* happily terminated, he ſent an intimation of his deſign to *Charles* V. of *France*, and ſet out by the way of *Brabant*, accompanied by his ſon *Winceſlaus*, and a moderate retinue. At *Cambray* he was met by a number of noblemen, whom the king had ſent to receive him; at *Compiegne* he was complimented by the duke of *Bourbon*, the count *d'Eu*, and ſeveral biſhops; and he made his entry into *Paris* riding on horſeback on the right-hand of the king, who treated him with great ſplendour and magnificence. Whatever his pre-

Charles *makes a viſit into* Germany; *bribes the electors, who chuſe his ſon* Winceſlaus *king of the* Romans.

A. D. 1376.

The emperor makes a journey to Paris.

---

[e] SPOND. Cont. t. i. p. 818.

[f] KRANTZ. Sax. l. x. c. 3.

tence might be for viſiting *France* on this occaſion, his real motives ſeem to have been the deſire of ſeeing the *French* monarch, for whom he expreſſed great tenderneſs of affection, and a ſuperſtitious zeal for paying his devotions to *St. Maur*; for it does not appear that he tranſacted any other affair in *France*, except his declaring the dauphin his perpetual vicar in the kingdom of *Arles* and county of *Dauphiny*, and his permitting a private gentleman, called *Enguerrand de Couci*, to maintain by arms the right he pretended to have to the ſucceſſion of the houſe of *Auſtria* by his mother *Catherine*, grand-daughter of the emperor *Albert*.

Declares the dauphin perpetual vicar of the kingdom of Arles.

Enguerrand de Couci *proſecutes his claim to the ſucceſſion of the houſe of* Auſtria.

COUCI having obtained this permiſſion, and received a ſupply of troops from the king of *France*, he publiſhed a manifeſto, ravaged the territory of *Strasburg*, and in the winter ſeaſon entered the country of the *Swiſs*, where his ſoldiers periſhed with cold and hunger in ſuch numbers, that he was obliged to retire into *Picardy*, and deſert from his enterprize [g].

His death.

As for the emperor, he, in his return from *France*, took the road to *Luxemburg*, where he prevailed upon duke *Winceſlaus*, who had no iſſue, to declare him and his ſons heirs of his duchy and all its dependencies [h]; and ſoon after his arrival at *Prague* he died of a fever, having reigned about one-and-thirty years ſince the death of *Lewis* IV. his predeceſſor, leaving behind him the character of a good prince, but a bad emperor [i] (C).

WHEN

---

[g] BARRE, tom. vi. p. 861.

[h] Hiſt. Luxemb. lib. xlvi.

[i] Id. ibid.

(C) He was four times married; but had no children by his two firſt wives, who were *Blanche*, daughter of *Charles* count of *Valois*, and ſiſter of *Philip* king of *France*; and *Agnes*, daughter of *Rodolphus the Young*, count palatine. His third wife was *Anne*, daughter of *Bugiſlaus* duke of *Swenitz*, by whom he had *Catherine*, married to *Rodolphus* IV. duke of *Auſtria*, and *Winceſlaus*, who ſucceeded him in the empire. Her dowry was the county of *Javarin* and the duchy of *Swenitz*. His fourth wife was *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Bogiſlaus* V. duke of *Stettin*, who was niece or grand-daughter of *Caſimir* king of *Poland*. By her he had *Sigiſmund*, who was king of *Hungary*, and afterwards emperor; and *John* marquis of *Moravia*, duke of *Gorlitz* and *Swenitz*; with ſeveral daughters; namely, *Margaret*, wife of *Lewis* king of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*; *Elizabeth*, married to *John Galeazo* duke of *Milan*; *Ann*, matched with *Otho*, duke of *Bavaria* and margrave of *Brandenburg*; *Margaret*, married to *John* II. burgrave of *Nuremberg*; *Elizabeth*, wife of *Albert* duke of *Auſtria*; *Margaret*, wife of *Amadeus* count of *Savoy*; *Agnes*,

married

Anecdotes of Charles.

When the princes once intreated him to quit *Bohemia*, and ſhew himſelf in *Germany*, he is ſaid to have conducted them into his treaſury, in which there was a prodigious quantity of gold and ſilver bullion, and ſpoke to this effect: "The "city of *Prague* gave me birth, the kingdom of *Bohemia* "furniſhes me with all theſe riches: were I more attached "to *Germany*, I ſhould be obliged, like you, to pluck the "eagle. You know very well how to ſtrip her of her fea-"thers, when ſhe flies towards your quarters, and ſhe might "in her turn be provoked to make repriſals. In which caſe, "the wings of ſome of you would not grow again for a con-"ſiderable length of time.

An account of his edicts and tranſactions.

Besides the golden bull, which we have mentioned, *Charles* publiſhed divers laws and conſtitutions. By an act, dated at *Prague*, he decreed, that, in caſe the royal family ſhould fail, the ſtates of the kingdom ſhould be at liberty to chooſe a new king, and that ſame year he confirmed the right of electorate to the crown of *Bohemia*. He granted to *John* duke of *Brabant* a privilege, in conſequence of which none of his ſubjects could be carried out of his own juriſdiction, nor arreſted in the empire, for any cauſe whatever. He confirmed to the abbot of *Fulde* the dignity of arch-chancellor to the empreſs; together with a new privilege at the time of her coronation, and all other ceremonies; namely, the right of putting the crown on her head, and of taking it off again. He inveſted *Rupert the Old* with the right which he had to the electorate palatine. He publiſhed a decree for exempting the eſtates of the clergy from all ſecular juriſdiction. Chancing to paſs through *Weſtphalia*, he had the curioſity to go and ſee the tomb of the great *Wittichind*; which was repaired by his order; the arms of *Charlemagne* being placed at the head, and thoſe of *Bohemia* at the feet[k]: finally he ordered the feaſt of *Charlemagne* to be annually ſolemnized in the church of *Aix la Chapelle* (D).

[k] Theod. Niem. Union. tract. vi. c. 24.

married to *William the Ambitious*, duke of *Auſtria*; and *Helen*, queen of *Henry* IV. of *England* (1).

(D) It is generally ſuppoſed, that cannon were firſt uſed in the reign of this emperor, in conſequence of the invention of gun-powder, which is attributed to an accidental diſcovery of one *Bertholdus Schwartz*, or *the Black*, a monk of *Friburg*: yet there is in the arſenal of *Amberg* a piece of cannon made in the year 1303, ſo that thoſe inſtruments of death muſt have been known before the reign of *Charles* (2).

(1) *Heiſs, l.* xi. c. 27.

(2) *Barre, t.* vi. *p.* 867.

CHAP. VIII.

Comprehending the Wars of the Huſſites *in* Bohemia.

WINCESLAUS.

Winceſlaus *ſucceeds to the empire;* A. D. 1378.

WINCESLAUS, at the age of ſeventeen, ſucceeded his father in the government of the empire, and on the throne of *Bohemia*, at a time when the church was divided by a great ſchiſm. The *Romans* had elected *Urban* VI. who confirmed the election of this new emperor, and the *French* had choſen *Clement* VII. for pope. During theſe troubles, *Winceſlaus* appointed *Jadoc*, marquis of *Moravia*, his vicar-general in *Italy*, laid injunctions upon him to inquire which of the two was the true pope, to acknowlege and protect him, whom he ſhould find to be canonically elected, and to expel by force the other, who had intruded himſelf into the chair. He likewiſe held a diet at *Nuremberg*, and afterwards at *Frankfort*, where, after having examined this affair of the popes, *Urban* VI. was acknowleged by the archbiſhops and biſhops, and *Winceſlaus*, together with the princes of the empire, engaged to protect him in the papacy [1].

A. D. 1381. *reſides at* Aix la Chapelle; *his miſconduct in* Bohemia;

AFTER the diet of *Frankfort*, the emperor repaired to *Aix la Chapelle*, where he reſided for ſome time, becauſe the plague raged in *Bohemia*; and here he gave himſelf up to all kinds of debauchery, neglecting the affairs of the empire to ſuch a degree, that the provinces became a prey to thoſe banditti, whom we have already mentioned by the name of *Late Comers* and *Grand Companies*: and the princes and towns were obliged to engage in aſſociations for their mutual defence. Theſe free-booters, however, were afterwards taken into the pay of *Winceſlaus*, who, on his return to *Prague*, by his miſconduct, provoked his ſubjects to revolt, and, in order to puniſh them for their rebellion, allowed thoſe vermin to deſtroy the country without remorſe. Having pillaged the whole kingdom of *Bohemia*, they enliſted in the ſervice of *Jane* queen of *Naples*, who had lately married *Otho* of *Brunſwick*, and was in the ſequel barbarouſly put to death by *Charles Durazzo*, even after ſhe had declared that prince her ſucceſſor to the crown.

his depraved

NOTWITHSTANDING the ſeeming attention which *Winceſlaus* paid to the peace of the church, he was a prince of a depraved taſte, and the moſt vicious inclinations. His cruelty ſeemed to be preſaged, by his being the occaſion of his mother's death when he was born, and the impurities with which he profaned the font at his baptiſm, and the altar at his being crowned king of *Bohemia*, looked like omens of the unworthy actions, with which he diſhonoured his reign [m]. His whole conduct was a ſeries of debauched cruelty and baſeneſs. In imitation of his father, he diſpoſed of all the rights of the empire in *Germany*, which remained unſold; and as for the cities and provinces of *Italy*, which his father had alienated, he exacted money from them for a confirmation of their privileges. He expedited blank patents, ſigned and ſealed, to be filled up at the pleaſure of the purchaſers; by which means the rich and powerful were authorized to oppreſs the weak and poor [n]. This was accordingly done with ſuch impunity and licence, that there was no ſecurity for commerce, no policy, no order in the empire. Such confuſion could not fail to produce civil wars. The cities of *Suabia* and the *Rhine* took arms againſt the princes in their neighbourhood, of which the chief were the count palatine, the count of *Wirtemberg*, and the duke of *Auſtria*.

---

[1] SPOND. Cont. t. ii. p. 11.

taſte, cruelty, and baſeneſs.

He ſells the rights of the empire.

A.D. 1385.

Troubles in Germany *appeaſed by the interpoſition of the electors.*

THE electors, and other princes and ſtates, tired of all theſe diſorders, and chagrined to ſee *Germany* without a head, and the privileges of the empire alienated, in order to fill the purſe of *Winceſlaus*, ſent an embaſſy to *Prague*, beſeeching him to come and reſide among them. When this propoſal was made to him, "Our dear ambaſſadors (ſaid he), "all the world knows that we are emperor, and if there is "any perſon in the empire, who is deſirous of ſeeing us, "let him come to *Bohemia*, and we will freely give him audience [o]." This was all the anſwer they could obtain, and the electors were ſo ſcandalized at the contempt with which he received their advice, that, ſeeing no proſpect of his reformation, they of themſelves took cognizance of the general affairs of the empire, and interpoſed in the quarrels and diſputes ſubſiſting between ſeveral ſtates, which they with difficulty accommodated; to ſuch a degree was their animoſity inflamed.

THE towns of *Suabia*, *Franconia*, and the *Rhine*, formed what they called the *Great League*, and the princes formed aſſociations for their mutual defence: by theſe precautions the public tranquility was maintained, and even *Lower Ger-*

---

[m] Chron. Riddag. ex MEIB. v. iii. p. 373. [n] TRITH. in Chron. Naucler. gener. 47. KRANT. Wand. l. x. c. 1. [o] Hiſt. Luxemb. l. vii.

many ſecured from thoſe ſhocks, which were occaſioned by a revolution in *Sweden*. At the death of *Olaus*, king of *Denmark*, his mother *Margaret* aſcended the throne, with the unanimous conſent of the people, and even recommended herſelf ſo ſtrongly to the *Swedes*, who were oppreſſed by their own king *Albert*, that they renounced their allegiance to that monarch, and made her a ſolemn tender of the crown; in conſequence of which ſhe marched to their aſſiſtance, defeated *Albert*, who was depoſed, and obliged to retire to the dominions of his brother the duke of *Mecklenburg*, and then ſhe aſſumed the reins of government, and was diſtinguiſhed by the appellation of the *Semiramis of the North*[p].

Margaret, *queen of* Denmark, *acquires the crown of* Sweden. A.D. 1387.

Leopold *of* Auſtria *overcome and ſlain by the* Swiſs. A.D. 1388.

NOTWITHSTANDING all the meaſures which had been taken to prevent civil broils in *Germany*, war broke out between the houſe of *Auſtria* and the confederate towns, which had ſhaken off the yoke of dependence. *Leopold* of *Auſtria*, ſon of *Albert the Sage*, confiding too much in his own ſtrength, raiſed a conſiderable army to reduce the *Swiſs*, eight cantons of which had already withdrawn themſelves from his dominion. He accordingly gave them battle, which he loſt, together with his life, ſo that they intirely freed themſelves from the *Auſtrian* chains, and their dependence upon the empire, while their ſucceſs encouraged other cities to follow their example[q].

THE towns of *Alſace*, *Suabia*, and the *Rhine*, made preparations for defending themſelves againſt thoſe princes, who attempted to domineer over them: *Spire*, *Worms*, and *Mentz*, levied a body of forces, which ravaged the territories of *Robert the Young*, count palatine, who took the field, and made repriſals with great cruelty: the inhabitants of *Straſburg*, aggrieved by the marquis of *Baden*, plundered the lands of the margraviate, and deſtroyed the town of *Brumpt*, belonging to the count *de Linange*, who joining the marquis of *Baden*, and the old count palatine, made incurſions to the very gates of *Straſburg*, and laid waſte the whole country, from *Huſbergen* to *Malſheim*, with fire and ſword: in a word, *Alſace* was, by theſe mutual ravages and cruelties, reduced to the laſt extremity; when peace was re-eſtabliſhed by the mediation of ſome princes of the empire[r].

WINCESLAUS, without giving himſelf the leaſt trouble about theſe tranſactions, ſtill reſided in *Bohemia*, plunged in all manner of debauchery, by which he rendered himſelf every day more and more contemptible in the eyes of his

---

[p] HUITFEL. Hiſt. Dan. t iv.

[q] Delices de la Suiſ. t. i.

[r] WENCKER. coll. i. p. 145.

The ſloth and barbarity of Winceſlaus.

ſubjects (E). He ordered *John Nepomucene*, his wife's confeſſor, to be drowned, becauſe he would not reveal the particulars of her confeſſion; and in all other reſpects behaved with ſuch barbarity and indiſcretion, that his ſubjects looked upon him with deteſtation and abhorrence. But while he thus attracted the odium and contempt of all good men, his brother *Sigiſmund* diſtinguiſhed himſelf by his valour and capacity, and at length aſcended the *Hungarian* throne, after the death of *Charles Durazzo*, who had been elected by the *Hungarians*, and aſſaſſinated by order of the queen mother; becauſe her daughter, the princeſs *Mary*, was defrauded of her right by his election.

Otho *of* Brunſwic *takes poſſeſſion of* Naples *for* Lewis *of* Anjou.

THE death of *Durazzo* involved the kingdom of *Naples* in great confuſion. One party eſpouſed the cauſe of his ſon *Ladiſlaus*, ſtill a minor, and another adhered to the intereſt of *Lewis* of *Anjou*, who pretended to the crown; while pope *Urban*, tho' equally courted by both, remained neutral, in hope of raiſing his own nephew to the throne, after the other two competitors ſhould have enfeebled each other. Mean while *Otho* of *Brunſwick*, the laſt huſband of the unfortunate *Jane*, was appointed captain-general for *Lewis* of *Anjou*, and marching to *Naples*, at the head of an army compoſed of *French* and *Germans*, reduced the whole kingdom to the dominion of his principal. *Urban* could not help repining at his ſucceſs, which not only rendered his own ſcheme impracticable, but likewiſe ſtrengthened the intereſt of his rival *Clement* VIII. who patronized the duke of *Anjou*: he found himſelf, moreover, hated for his ſeverity and ambition, and abandoned by *Bologna*, and ſeveral other towns, who embraced the party of his competitor.

Pope Urban *dies, and is ſucceeded by* Boniface IX.

A. D. 1390.

Theſe concurring mortifications affected him ſo nearly, that he died of chagrin; and, in a few days after his deceaſe, the fourteen cardinals reſiding at *Rome* elected *Peter Thomacelle* in his room. This new pontif aſſumed the name of *Boniface* IX. and excommunicated *Clement*, who retorted the ſentence upon him with equal animoſity.

Inſurrections againſt the Jews *in*

THE repoſe of *Germany* was about this period diſturbed by inſurrections againſt the *Jews*, who being accuſed of having poiſoned the fountains, and inſulted the hoſt (tho' in reality their wealth was all their crime), were burned in their

---

(E) In this year the doctrine of *Wickliff* was introduced into *Bohemia*, by a gentleman of that country who had ſtudied in *England* (1).

(1) *Heiſs Hiſt.* l. xi. c. 28.

Germany. A. D. 1391.

ſynagogue at *Prague*, butchered at *Spire*, without diſtinction of age or ſex, plundered in almoſt every province, and, as the authority of *Winceſlaus* was not ſufficient to protect that unhappy people, at laſt obliged to eſcape into *Lithuania*, where they found an aſylum in the favour of *Jagellon*, who was enamoured of a *Jewiſh* damſel [r].

Troubles in Alſace.

THESE diſturbances were ſucceeded by commotions in *Alſace* and other provinces on the *Rhine*; the inhabitants of *Straſburg* reclaimed ſome towns which *Charles* IV. had mortgaged to *Robert* count palatine, alleging that the emperor had no power to diſpoſe of their property; and, the count refuſing to comply with their demand, they took the field, in order to ſubdue him by force. This war produced nothing but mutual ravages, and the *Straſburgers* were fain to retreat for the ſafety of their city, which was endangered by an affair of greater conſequence. *Rapolſtein*, an *Alſatian* nobleman, on whom they had conferred the right of burgherſhip, impriſoned an *Engliſhman*, called *Harleſton*, becauſe he had ſerved in the army of *Enguerrand de Couci*, when that nobleman laid waſte the territory of *Straſburg*. The king of *England* demanded the releaſe of his ſubject: the emperor commanded the *Straſburgers* to ſet him at liberty; and they diſregarding the order of ſuch a weak ~~place~~ prince, he put the city to the ban of the empire.

Straſburg *is put to the ban of the empire.*

1392.

ABUNDANCE of noblemen, jealous of the power of *Straſburg*, took this opportunity to engage in a league to humble her pride: the biſhop himſelf joined in the confederacy; and, an army being raiſed, the allies undertook the ſiege of the place, which, however, they could not reduce. At length peace was effected by the mediation of the biſhop of *Bamberg*, tho' the emperor would by no means conſent to the treaty, until the citizens purchaſed his condeſcenſion with a preſent of thirty thouſand florins [t].

Partition of the dominions of Bavaria. A. D. 1393.

PEACE being thus re-eſtabliſhed, *John*, *Stephen*, and *Frederic*, dukes of *Bavaria*, agreed to a partition of their dominions, which had hitherto been undivided, and ſubſcribed a pactum or treaty for regulating the order of ſucceſſion, and the alienation of their fiefs; by which any one of them was reſtricted from parting with his lands, until he ſhould have firſt offered the purchaſe to the other two, and obtained their conſent to alienate his property; and all diſputes were referred to arbitration [u].

---

[r] SOLOM. REN. Virg. æt. clx. p. 151.

[t] Arch. Imp. t. vi. p. 30.

[u] ADLZR. Annal. Boior. Gent. part ii. l. 6.

Mean while *Winceſlaus* continued immerſed in debauchery, and ſeemed induſtrious in acquiring the implacable hatred of his people, by the extraordinary taxes he impoſed, and the cruelties he exerciſed indifferently upon all ſorts of people; not even reſpecting the magiſtrates of *Prague*, whom he ordered to be beheaded without form of proceſs. Nay, in order to familiarize himſelf to blood and carnage, he deſcended ſo low, as to contract an intimacy with the common executioner, whom he diſtinguiſhed by the appellation of his goſſip (F). Nevertheleſs, ſome authors allege, that this cruel diſpoſition was not natural to him. He is ſaid to have been twice poiſoned, and the medicines he took prevented the doſes from having their whole effect; but they left an extraordinary heat and dryneſs in his conſtitution, which he was obliged to aſſuage with drinking. Thus he contracted the habit of drunkenneſs, which ſometimes inflamed him to ſuch a degree of fury, that it was dangerous to be near him; for, in one of thoſe fits of intoxication, he is ſaid to have ordered his cook to be roaſted alive [x].

Winceſlaus's *cruelty the effects of poiſon which he had received.*

A. D. 1394.

The noblemen of *Bohemia*, perceiving that his cruelty and exceſſes daily augmented, thought it highly neceſſary to lay him under ſome reſtriction; and by the advice of his brother *Sigiſmund*, king of *Hungary*, actually confined him in cloſe priſon, from which, however, he found means to eſcape. After having laid ſeveral months in a dungeon, he obtained permiſſion from the ſenate to be conducted to a bath to refreſh himſelf. There perceiving a fiſher's little boat on the banks of the river hard by the bath, he embarked with the woman who attended him (both being naked), and, rowing to the other ſide of the river, retired to a fortreſs, which he had formerly cauſed to be built as an aſylum againſt the enterprizes of his enemies [y]. He was ſuffered to reſume

He is confined by the noblemen of Bohemia, *and eſcapes from a bath.*

1396.

---

[x] Dubrarv. l. xxiii. p. 606.

[y] Hiſt. Luxemb. lvii.

(F) This executioner is ſaid to have periſhed at laſt by the hands of his prince. *Winceſlaus*, ſending for him one day, ſaid he wanted to know the ſituation of a man's mind, when he expected to have his head ſevered from his body; he, therefore, bound up his own eyes, and, kneeling, deſired his friend to cut off his head. The executioner, inſtead of obeying this order, ſtruck him with the flat part of the ſword: upon which *Winceſlaus* ordered him to be blinded in his turn, and, taking the ſword in his own hand, actually ſhortened him by the head (2).

(2) *Auct. in Chron. Belg. p.* 326.

the reins of government; but as he did not reform his behaviour, his ſubjects had recourſe to his brother *Sigiſmund*, king of *Hungary*, who marched into *Bohemia* at the head of a ſtrong army, compelled the emperor to ſubmit, was declared regent of the kingdom, changed the miniſters and officers of ſtate, and redreſſed the grievances of the people.

Is committed to the care of Albert *duke of* Auſtria.

Wincеſlaus, being again apprehended, was kept priſoner, ſometimes in one caſtle and ſometimes in another, till at length he was privately ſent to *Vienna*, and committed to the care of *Albert* archduke of *Auſtria*, who ordered him to be ſhut up in one of the towers of the city: from thence alſo he made his eſcape by the aſſiſtance of an old fiſherman, called *Grundler*, who uſed to come and diſtribute his charity among the priſoners.

Eſcapes by the aſſiſtance of one Grundler, *a fiſherman, and reſumes his authority.*

Winceſlaus, perceiving him one day from his window, promiſed him an ample recompence, provided he would aſſiſt him in procuring his liberty (G). *Grundler*, induced by his promiſes, conveyed to him a ſilken cord, by means of which he deſcended from the tower; then, being rowed by him acroſs the *Danube*, he returned to *Bohemia*, regained poſſeſſion of the city of *Prague*, by means of ſome noblemen who were his friends, and was permitted to reſume his authority, on condition of amending his way of life [z].

Meaſures taken to terminate the ſchiſm in the church.

DURING theſe viciſſitudes in *Bohemia*, the theologicians in *Germany* endeavoured, by their writings, to finiſh the ſchiſm in the church, occaſioned by the two competitors for the papacy. The univerſity of *Cologne*, tho' it had owned *Boniface* as the lawful pope, nevertheleſs inclined to the convocation of a general council, as the only ſure method of re-eſtabliſhing the peace of the church; and wrote to the univerſity of *Paris* on this ſubject.

Clement VII. *dies, and is ſucceeded by* Benedict XIII.
A. D. 1397.

The death of *Clement* VII. which happened at this period, ſeemed to be a favourable conjuncture for attaining ſuch a deſirable end. The archbiſhops of *Mentz* and *Cologne*, and ſeveral other princes and prelates of the empire, conjured the cardinals at *Avignon* to deſiſt from a new election, until ſome meaſures could be taken to terminate the ſchiſm; and the king of *France* wrote to the ſame purpoſe: yet, in ſpite of all theſe remonſtrances, they elected *Pedro de Luna*, cardinal of *Arragon*, who aſſumed the name of *Benedict* XIII. His election was no ſooner known in *Germany*, than the archbiſhops of *Cologne* and *Mentz*, together with the other princes, convoked a diet at *Frankfort*; where, after due deliberation, it was reſolved to exhort both competitors to abdicate the papacy, ſo as that a canonical election might take place; and this was the declared opinion of the *French* king, whoſe ambaſſadors were preſent in the aſſembly.

---

[z] BARRE, t. vii. p. 58.

(G) He was not ungrateful to his deliverer; for, as ſoon as he re-aſcended the throne, he ſent for *Grundler* and his whole family from *Vienna*, ennobled, and granted to him a conſiderable revenue (3).

(3) *Remarq. ſur Heiſs, ubi ſup.*

Diet at Frankfort.

IN conſequence of the determination of the diet, deputies were ſent to *Rome*, to communicate the ſentiments of the king of *France*, and the princes of *Germany*; but although they were careſſed by *Boniface*, who affected to heap favours upon them, they could never bring him to treat upon the affair of the ceſſion, which he evaded with great dexterity. *Winceſlaus*, tho' he did not aſſiſt at the diet, believing his own perſonal importance ſufficient to determine this diſpute, propoſed an interview to *Charles* king of *France*, at *Rheims*, where, tho' he was almoſt conſtantly intoxicated with ſtrong liquor, he agreed with the *French* monarch to ſend the biſhop of *Cambray* to *Rome*, in order to perſuade *Boniface* to reſign the papal chair. *Boniface*, having conſulted his cardinals, anſwered, that he would willingly comply with the requeſt of the emperor and the king of *France*, provided they would oblige the pretended pope of *Avignon* to quit his pretenſions alſo, and appoint a proper place, where he might appear with his cardinals to proceed to a new election. In conſequence of this anſwer, the ſame deputy was diſpatched to *Benedict*, who flatly refuſed to comply with the propoſal, and declared he would maintain his dignity to his lateſt breath: an inſtance of obſtinacy which incenſed *Charles* to ſuch a degree, that he and his kingdom renounced *Benedict*, the marſhal *de Boucicaut* was ordered to inveſt *Avignon*, and the antipope was kept priſoner in the caſtle for the ſpace of five whole years [a].

Deputies ſent to Rome.

The emperor has an interview with the king of France;

who renounces and impriſons Benedict.

A. D. 1398.

PERHAPS his confinement would not have been of ſuch long duration, had not the revolutions in the north hindered the kingdoms of *Sweden*, *Denmark*, and *Norway*, from attending to the ſchiſm in the *Roman* church. *Margaret* was engroſſed by the project of uniting theſe three kingdoms, and employed her endeavours to engage the *German* princes in the ſupport of her ſcheme. Being importuned by the *Swedes* to marry, ſhe lent a deaf ear to their remonſtrance on this

Margaret, *queen of* Sweden, Denmark, *and* Norway, *effects the union of theſe three kingdoms*;

---

[a] FROISSARD. l. iv. c. 97.

head; but, in order to quiet their apprehenſions, ſhe appointed the ſon of *Wratiſlaus*, duke of *Pomerania*, her ſucceſſor, and her choice was approved by the ſtates of the three kingdoms aſſembled at *Colmar*, where alſo they formed that union which ſhe had ſo much at heart, and confirmed it by the famous edict called the *Union of Colmar*. After this tranſaction ſhe engaged in a war with the *Teutonic* order, about the iſland of *Gothland*, which the knights refuſed to ſurrender, on pretence of having acquired the right of conqueſt, by expelling the tyrants by whom the greateſt part of it was poſſeſſed. *Margaret*, finding her arms did not ſucceed to her expectation, had recourſe to the mediation of the emperor, who appointed a congreſs at *Helſingbourg*, to which he ſent his deputies, and there a treaty of peace was concluded, on condition that the knights ſhould cede the iſland to *Margaret*, in conſideration of a ſum of money to indemnify them for the expence of the war [b].

and goes to war with the Teutonic *order.*

The emperor eſpouſes Sophia, *daughter of* Stephen, *duke of* Bavaria.

A. D. 1399.

WINCESLAUS, having in this manner reſtored peace to thoſe northern countries, eſpouſed *Sophia*, daughter of *Stephen* duke of *Bavaria*; and, after this marriage, his extravagance increaſed to ſuch a degree, that his revenues were not ſufficient to defray the prodigious expence of his houſehold. Notwithſtanding the promiſe he had made at his reſtoration, he regarded the affairs of the empire as little as ever, except in thoſe things that related to his own private emolument; and, as he neglected nothing that could produce money, he received, with extraordinary demonſtrations of joy, an embaſſy from *John Galeazo*, count of *Vertus*, nephew and ſucceſſor of that *Bernabo Viſconti*, who, as we have already obſerved, had ſeized the ſovereignty of *Milan*, *Placentia*, *Cremona*, *Pavia*, *Lodi*, *Breſcia*, *Bergamo*, *Vercelli*, *Novara*, *Tortona*, and others belonging to the *Milaneſe* and *Lombardy*, which depended upon the empire.

Winceſlaus *ſells the royalty of ſundry cities and territories in* Italy.

THE ſubject of this embaſſy was to buy of him the ſeignories and royalties of all theſe countries, together with the title of duke of *Milan* [c]. Theſe *Winceſlaus* ſold for a conſiderable ſum of money, without the participation or conſent of the princes of the empire. This was one of the reaſons, that ſome time after induced them to think of diſpoſſeſſing him in good earneſt. They perceived, that he ſeemed to take pleaſure in diſmembring the empire for his own ſordid views, at a time when it was but too much divided by the ſchiſm which prevailed in the church; and when Chriſtendom was weakened by the enterprizes of the *Turks*, who had gained divers ſignal advantages over the Chriſtians, which were followed by the famous victory obtained over them by *Bajazet*, near *Nicopolis*.

---

[b] HUITFELD. Hiſt. Dan. t. iv. ad ann. 1397.

[c] AVENT. Ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 642.

The electors, after long delays, concluding that the public ſafety demanded a chief capable of re-eſtabliſhing and protecting the peace, as well as of ſupporting the dignity of the empire, aſſembled at *Boppard*, and afterwards at *Frankfort*, in order to deliberate upon the preſent poſture of affairs; and notwithſtanding the repreſentations of *Winceſlaus*, who ſent the margrave of *Nuremberg* to inform the electors, that he could not quit *Bohemia* on account of ſome domeſtic troubles, and the coronation of his empreſs, they convoked a diet at *Frankfort*, where they reſolved to oblige the emperor to chuſe an adminiſtrator, and made him acquainted with their determination. But, *Winceſlaus* abſolutely refuſing to comply with their deciſion, they entered into a confederacy, confirmed by oath, to redreſs the grievances of the *Germanic* body, preſerve the rights of the empire, and prevent the alienation of its domains.

The reſult of this aſſociation was a diet at *Mentz*, to which they invited the emperor; and he refuſing to appear, it was determined that he ſhould be obliged to make a formal renunciation of the empire, and the imperial inſignia, after which they would proceed to a new election. *Winceſlaus*, far from abdicating the throne by a voluntary renunciation, gave the electors to underſtand, that he annulled, by anticipation, all the reſolutions of their aſſembly, and that he would put all thoſe to the ban of the empire who ſhould preſume to execute their decrees. Without paying the leaſt regard to his menaces, they, by the advice of pope *Boniface* IX. aſſembled at the caſtle of *Laenſtein* on the *Rhine*, in the archbiſhopric of *Triers*; and, having declared *Winceſlaus* incapable, pronounced and publiſhed the ſentence of his depoſition, revoking at the ſame time all the rights, exemptions, privileges, and domains, ſold or mortgaged by his own particular authority, without the conſent of the princes and ſtates of the empire[d] (H). Then, proceeding to the election of

The electors aſſemble at the caſtle of Laenſtein;

depoſe Winceſlaus, *and elect* Frederic *duke of* Brunſwick *and* Lunenburg, *who is aſſaſſinated: he*

---

[d] Tom. Rer. Ger. Urstitii in fin. Bzov. in hoc ann. Hartman in ann.

(H) The authors of this depoſition, were *John de Naſſau*, archbiſhop of *Mentz*, *Frederic de Severden*, archbiſhop of *Cologne*, *Wernier de Konigſtein*, archbiſhop of *Triers*, *Robert*, elector

count

is ſucceeded by Robert

of a new emperor, they raiſed to that dignity *Frederic* duke of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg*, a wiſe and valiant prince; but

count palatine of the *Rhine*, and *Rodolphus*, duke of *Saxony* and *Lunenburg* (4).

After having ſummoned *Winceſlaus* to appear, and waited ten days in vain for his arrival, they proceeded to his trial; and the ſentence of depoſition was pronounced by the archbiſhop of *Mentz* to this effect. "In the name of the lord, *Amen*. We *John*, by the grace of God, archbiſhop of *Mentz*, arch-chancellor of the holy *Roman* empire in *Germany*, to all men who now are, or may be hereafter, we give to underſtand, that, for many years, intolerable abuſes have been introduced into the church of God, and, far from being repreſſed, multiply daily, to the great ſcandal of the good, and the utter perdition of the wicked. But the moſt melancholy circumſtance is, that he, whom the holy empire and the church have appointed to reform theſe diſorders, is himſelf the author of them; and, inſtead of remedying theſe evils, his pernicious example, and wicked government, have annihilated the *Police* of the empire, and occaſioned civil wars in *Germany*, and in *Italy*."

"For which reaſons, upon the preſſing remonſtrances of the holy church, the princes, noblemen, towns, and ſubjects of the empire, we the co-electors, and we for our own ſhare, have often cautioned the moſt ſerene prince *Winceſlaus*, king of the *Romans* and of *Bohemia*, and repreſented to him, either verbally or by letter, his ſcandalous conduct, his negligence in the adminiſtration of affairs, his tolerating or authorizing, by his own example, the moſt enormous abuſes, his diſmembring the empire conſiderably, without aſſembling diets, or conſulting the princes; and of all the grievances, of which he is attainted and convicted, we have drawn up an abſtract, of which theſe are the particular articles."

"He has ſold to *France* the town of *Genoa* and its territory, notwithſtanding the oppoſition of the ſtates of the empire, on which that fief depends: he has ſurrendered to *Galeazo Viſconti* the *Milaneſe*, and even *Lombardy*, under the title of duchy: he has alienated ſeveral domains, which had devolved to the empire on the death of the proprietors: he has ſold to divers perſons blank patents, ſanctioned by his own ſeal, to be diſpoſed of at their pleaſure, to the great prejudice of the empire: he hath granted impunity to thieves and robbers: he hath, with his own hand, or by the help of his executioners, murdered, drowned, or burned, prelates, prieſts, and a number of other perſons of diſtinction: in contempt of Chriſtianity, he hath made a league with the king of *Poland*, protector of the *Tar-*

---

(4) *Struv. Period.* ix. *ſect.* 7.

ıe being baſely murdered by the count of *Waldeck* [e], *count palatine.*
he went to *Frankfort* to take the imperial crown, they
d *Robert* count palatine in his place [f].

---

[e] RANTZ Metrop. xi. c. ii. [f] FABR. Ann Miſn. ad ann.

gainſt the knights of the
ic order : he hath, with-
nſe or danger, ſquandered
the revenues of *Bohemia*
he empire, and put the
ıment of his kingdom in-
hands of unexperienced
vil-minded perſons, who
loaded his ſubjects with
ve taxes: in his negocia-
with the princes of the
e, he hath practiſed ſuch
ocation and diſingenuity,
ione of them will truſt
ord : he hath deſtroyed
iverſity of *Prague*, found-
the emperor his father:
th expelled the doctors,
ut many of them to death,
ut form of proceſs or pre-
ſentence : finally, he hath
oned himſelf, night and
to debauchery ; he hath
y neglected the affairs of
npire ; and, having been
than once exhorted and
ted to reform his conduct,
th perſecuted thoſe who
him ſuch ſalutary ad-

Ve therefore, the electors,
g invoked the holy name
d, and ſitting in our tri-
of juſtice, moved by the
nces afore-mentioned,
her cauſes of ſtill greater
tance, have, by our pre-
entence, depoſed *Wince-*
a diſſipator of the *Germa-*
dy, as a uſeleſs member,
s a chief unworthy to go-
the holy *Roman* empire;
and as ſuch we have deprived him of the dignities thereunto annexed, we likewiſe intimate to all princes, potentates, knights, cities, dominions, and ſubjects of the holy empire, that they are abſolved from the oath of allegiance they owed him as emperor."

"Moreover we caution and forbid them to obey the ſaid *Winceſlaus* for the future, or to ſerve him under any title whatever ; but require them to reſerve their obedience and ſervice for a more uſeful and worthy prince, to be ſubſtituted in his place."

"On the faith of which, we *John* archbiſhop of *Mentz* have taken care to make a tranſcript of the preſent act of depoſition, ſealed with our great ſeal. Enacted and ſolemnly publiſhed at *Landſtein*, in the year after the nativity of Chriſt 1400, on *Friday*, *Auguſt* 20, a little before nine o' clock, in the eleventh year of the pontificate of our holy father pope *Boniface* IX. in the preſence of the noble princes *John* and *Robert*, *Frederic*, burgrave of *Nuremberg*, *Philip* of *Naſſau* and *Sarbruck*, *George de Leiningen*, *John de Zigenſtein*, *Conrad* count palatine of the *Rhine*, *Renard de Weſterburg*, *John de Limburg*. *John d'Iſemburg*, *Renard de Hanau*, and ſeveral other lords, knights, and perſons, both ſecular and eccleſiaſtic (5)."

---

(5) *Windeck. Hiſt. Sigiſmund. c.* 15.

WINCE-

A. D. 1400. Winceſlaus *bears his diſgrace with reſignation.* WINCESLAUS was ſo little mortified at the news of his depoſition, that, when he received them, "We are overjoyed (ſaid he) to be delivered from the burden of the empire, becauſe we ſhall have more leiſure to apply ourſelves to the government of our kingdom;" and indeed, during the nineteen years that he afterwards reigned in *Bohemia*, his conduct was conſiderably amended, and he applied himſelf ſeriouſly to calm the diſturbances which had been raiſed by *John Huſs*, profeſſer of theology in the univerſity of *Prague*, who had embraced the doctrine of *Wickliffe* (I).

AFTER he had reigned twenty-two years as emperor, and fifty-five as king of *Bohemia*, being one day at dinner informed of a tumult in the city of *Prague*, he roſe from table in great conſternation; and one of his domeſtics imprudently ſaying, he knew three days before that this diſturbance would happen, *Winceſlaus* flew upon him, pulled him to the ground by the hair of his head, and would have inſtantly put him to death, had he not been reſtrained by the interpoſition and *His death.* remonſtrances of thoſe who were preſent; ſuch was the exceſs of his paſſion, that he fell down in an apoplectic fit, and in a few days after expired (K), in the fifty-ſeventh year of his age [g].

---

[g] ÆN. Hiſt. Boem. c. 37. DUBRAV. l. xxiii. ad fin. COCHLÆ, lib. iv. ad fin.

(I) *Wickliffe*'s doctrine had gained ground in *Bohemia*, and been embraced by ſeveral maſters of the univerſity of *Prague*, particularly by *John Huſs*, who became the head of a ſect, which grew very formidable to the church. *Winceſlaus* found his account in conniving at the progreſs of this reformation, by the taxes which he levied on pretence of quelling the tumults which it daily occaſioned. He was even heard to ſay, that he muſt take eſpecial care of a gooſe (the interpretation of *Huſs* in the *Bohemian* tongue) which laid to him ſuch eggs of gold (6).

(K) *Winceſlaus* was twice married: his firſt wife was *Jane* daughter of *Albert* duke of *Bavaria* and count of *Holland*; who was crowned with him at *Aix la Chapelle*, and died in the year 1387. After he had eſcaped for the ſecond time from priſon, he, in order to fortify himſelf on the ſide of *Germany*, eſpouſed *Sophia* daughter of *Stephen* duke of *Bavaria*; but he had no iſſue by either, tho' the annals of *Poland* import, that he had one daughter, named *Euphemia*, married to *Uladiſlaus* II. king of *Poland* (7).

(6) *Spond. Contin. Barr. tom.* xi. *p.* 159. *Remarq. ſur Heiſs, ubi ſupra.*
(7) *Heiſs Hiſt. l.* xi. *c.* 28.

ROBERT

ROBERT.

ALTHOUGH *Rupert* or *Robert* count palatine of the *Rhine*, duke of *Bavaria*, ſurnamed *the Short and the Debonair*, had been formally choſen emperor by all the electors, in the field of *Reintz* upon the *Rhine*, then conſecrated and confirmed in the church of *Cologne*, by the archbiſhop of that metropolitan; yet the inhabitants of *Aix-la-Chapelle* would not allow him to be crowned in their city, alleging they were not yet abſolved from the oath they had taken to *Winceſlaus*; but the true reaſon was their affection and attachment to that prince. They were, therefore, put to the ban of the empire, and otherwiſe maltreated, until they had taken the oath of allegiance to *Robert*. But the citizens of *Nuremberg* were more fortunate; for in conſideration of a preſent of the wine of *Bocharac*, that prince diſcharged them from the oath which they had taken in his favour [h].

Robert *refuſed entrance by the citizens of* Aix la Chapelle.

NOTWITHSTANDING this tame reſignation of *Winceſlaus*, ſeveral powers of *Europe* diſapproved of his depoſition. The king of *France*, in particular, ſent ambaſſadors to *Mentz*, to expreſs his concern for the difference between *Robert* and *Winceſlaus*, and deſired that a certain day might be fixed, when all parties ſhould aſſemble, and treat of an accomodation. For this purpoſe he offered his own good offices, and demanded that *Robert* would conſent to a year's truce, and be perſonally preſent at the aſſembly, while he undertook for the appearance of the king of *Bohemia*, who had already referred himſelf to his arbitration. He himſelf likewiſe engaged to be there in perſon, or, in caſe of impediment, to ſend thither ſome princes of the blood. *Robert*, and the electors of *Mentz* and *Cologne*, pretended to liſten to this propoſal of an accommodation; which in order to effect, they promiſed to be at *Cologne* on the day of *Epiphany* of the following year; but as their ſole intention was to gain time to ſtrengthen their party, the negociation did not ſucceed [i]. That which was ſet on foot by the king of *Hungary*, and the principal noblemen of *Bohemia*, had no better effect, altho' they had aſſembled, and agreed to aſſiſt *Winceſlaus* in his endeavours to recover the imperial crown. This affair miſcarried, becauſe, when they were deliberating upon meaſures for raiſing money to defray the expence of the war, *Winceſlaus* refuſed to contribute, and the aſſembly, being in-

The king of France *offers his mediation between* Robert *and* Winceſlaus.

The king of Hungary *and the noblemen of* Bohemia *intereſt*

---

[h] KRANTZ, x. Wand. 1.

[i] HEISS, l. ii. c. 29.

themſelves for the depoſed emperor.

cenſed at the ſordid refuſal, broke up abruptly, without having come to any reſolution. The king of *Bohemia*, indeed, earneſtly intreated them to renew the negociation, and *Sigiſmund*, in conſequence of his intreaties, conſented to an interview, when he promiſed to ſupply him with conſiderable ſuccours, provided he would yield to him ſome territories, and bequeath to him the kingdom of *Bohemia* at his death; conditions that were ſo diſpleaſing to *Winceſlaus*, that he retired without taking leave of his brother [k].

Robert *remedies the diſorders of the empire, and reclaims the dominions and rights which had been alienated.*

MEAN while the new emperor employed his whole care in remedying the diſorders and diviſions which had crept into the empire, during the reigns of *Charles* IV. and his ſon, and in reclaiming the dominions which they had alienated. For this purpoſe, in the firſt year of his reign, a diet was convoked at *Frankfort*, where he deliberated with the electors, princes, noblemen, and deputies of towns, upon ways and means for re-eſtabliſhing tranquility, order, and ſecurity in the empire; and, in conſequence of theſe deliberations, ſeveral laws were enacted and put in execution. As the electors, in their ſentence of depoſition pronounced againſt *Winceſlaus*, had alleged, among other things, that he had, for a ſum of money, created *John Galeazo* duke of *Milan*, tho' he was no other than governor of *Lombardy*; and that the new duke, not contented with this promotion, pretended to withdraw thoſe countries from the ſovereignty of the empire, and by force of arms make himſelf maſter of *Florence*, *Mantua*, *Bologna*, and other towns and countries, to be incorporated with his duchy; *Robert* found himſelf under the neceſſity of raiſing an army for reſtoring the affairs of *Italy* to their former ſituation; being moreover invited to this expedition by pope *Boniface*, and the *Florentines*, who promiſed to advance two hundred thouſand florins for the expence of the undertaking [l]. He therefore made long marches to *Italy*, and encamped before the city of *Brixen*, in the duchy of *Milan*: but *Galeazo*, being well provided with cavalry, had in all their ſkirmiſhes the advantage of the imperialiſts, whom he fatigued and diminiſhed in ſuch a manner, that, notwithſtanding conſiderable ſuccours which arrived that ſame year, with the archbiſhop of *Cologne* and *Leopold* duke of *Auſtria*, *Robert* was obliged to return to *Germany*, without having been able to ſtrike any one ſtroke of importance. Beſides, his return was rendered neceſſary, becauſe the other ſtates refuſed to perform their promiſe to ſecond the enter-

He is preſſed by the pope and Florentines *to undertake an expedition into* Italy; *where he is worſted by* John Galeazo, *and obliged to re-*

---

[k] Id. ibid. [l] SPOND. Cont. Baron. t. xi. p. 114. Chron. Magdeb. ex MEIB. t. ii. p. 348.

prize,

turn to Germany *without having done any thing of conſequence.*

prize, being in this particular influenced by the elector of *Mentz*, who, not contented with hindering the eccleſiaſtics from paying the tenth which the pope had granted to *Robert* for his *Italian* expedition, had alſo alienated their affection from the emperor. For theſe reaſons he was obliged, next year, to march back into his own country [m], without having advanced his own cauſe in *Italy*, either againſt *Galeazo* duke of *Milan*, or done any thing in favour of the pope, againſt *Ladiſlaus* king of *Naples*, who ſome years after took the city of *Rome*, and expelled *Boniface* [n] (L).

A. D. 1402.

Galeazo *aſpires to the throne of* Italy; *but dies in the midſt of his career.*

THE retreat of *Robert* leaving the field free to *Galeazo*, he propoſed no leſs than the conqueſt of the whole kingdom of *Italy*; and fortune ſeemed at firſt to declare in favour of this undertaking; for he made himſelf maſter of the city of *Bologna*, and was on the eve of reducing *Florence*, when he was attacked by a malignant fever, which put an end to his life. As he left but one daughter, who was not of age, the pope availed himſelf of this opportunity to wreſt from the *Milaneſe*, *Bologna*, *Perugia*, and ſome other places. The city of *Milan* ſhook off the yoke of *Galeazo*: *Verona* ſubmitted to the vicar of the empire eſtabliſhed at *Padua*, but ſome time after the *Venetians* poſſeſſed themſelves of that city. *Ladiſlaus*, who had been invited to aſcend the throne of *Hungary*, found himſelf, in conſequence of a ſtrange revolution, unable to cope with his competitor *Sigiſmund*, and at the ſame time in danger of loſing his hereditary kingdom of *Naples*, the nobility of which had revolted in his abſence. Thither, therefore, he repaired with all imaginable diſpatch, and puniſhed the rebels with ſuch ſeverity, as ſeemed to be rather the effect of cruel revenge, than the ſacrifice of deliberate juſtice [o].

A. D. 1403.

THIS was a favourable conjuncture for retrieving the authority of the empire in *Italy*, if *Robert* had undertaken a ſecond expedition into that country; but this he found impracticable, becauſe the elector of *Mentz*, *Cologne*, and *Triers*, oppoſed the levy of the tenths. He, therefore, employed

---

[m] ARET. lib. xii. ANTON. tit. xxii. c. 3. § 35. [n] AVENT. Ann. &c. lib. vii. p. 646. [o] GUESTIN. Hiſt. Venet. l. iv.

(L) *Ladiſlaus* was ſo ſucceſsful in *Italy*, that he aſpired to the empire, publicly aſſumed the title, and ordered this motto to be wrought in embroidery upon his robes; *Aut Cæſar aut nihil* (8).

(8) *Remarq. ſur Heiſs, l. xi. c.* 29.

The emperor employs himſelf in aggrandizing his own electorate.

ployed himſelf at home, in pacifying the troubles of the empire, in reducing the towns that refuſed to acknowlege him for emperor, and in aggrandizing the dominions of his own electorate; for which purpoſe he purchaſed of *William*, biſhop of *Straſburg*, the fiefs of *Gegenbach*, *Ortemberg*, *Offenbourg*, *Zell*, *Hermanbach*, and ſeveral other lordſhips of *Alſace*, tho' not without great oppoſition from the chapter and body of burghers, who would by no means conſent to this alienation; and the emperor did not think proper to uſe violent methods for the ſupport of his acquiſition, as he was not yet quite fixed on the imperial throne.

Makes war on Bernard *marquis of* Baden; A. D. 1401.

BERNARD, marquis of *Baden*, had eſtabliſhed tolls in his dominions, contrary to the regulations of the public peace, compelled paſſengers to pay ranſom, and impoſed exceſſive duties upon commerce; ſo that complaints of theſe exactions were laid before the emperor, who deſired *Bernard* to ſuppreſs theſe iniquitous impoſitions; but he, inſtigated by the elector of *Mentz*, refuſed to obey the orders of *Robert*, who declared war againſt him, took the caſtle of *Mulberg*, and compelled him to ſue for peace; which was granted, on condition that he ſhould, for the future, attempt nothing againſt the liberties and immunities of the noblemen, cities, and ſubjects, of the empire [p].

who joins in a confederacy againſt him, with Straſburg *and the towns of* Suabia. 1405.

NOTWITHSTANDING this accommodation, he afterwards engaged in a treaty with *Eberhard* count *de Wirtemberg*, the magiſtrates of *Straſburg*, and the towns of *Suabia*; the principal article of which imported, that, ſhould the emperor preſume to encroach upon the rights and privileges of any one of the confederated parties, the reſt ſhould aſſiſt the ſaid party with their troops and money. *Robert* complained of this injurious aſſociation, which ſuppoſed that he had an intention to invade the privileges of his ſubjects, and even ſummoned the towns of *Suabia* to appear at a general diet, and explain their motives for this confederacy, which, however, ſubſiſted to the day of his death [q].

War breaks out between the houſe of Auſtria *and the city of* Baſil. 1406.

IN ſpite of all his endeavours to preſerve the peace of the empire, a war broke out between *Catherine* of *Burgundy*, wife of *Leopold* of *Auſtria*, and the inhabitants of *Baſil*; and notwithſtanding the interpoſition of *Lewis* count palatine of the *Rhine*, who attempted to compromiſe the diſpute, hoſtilities were committed with various ſucceſs, and great cruelty on both ſides (tho' the *Auſtrians* were the greateſt ſufferers in the deſolation of the province of *Suntgau*), until peace was at laſt eſtabliſhed, after the war had raged for the ſpace of two years. The negociations were renewed by means of *Rodolphus*, marquis of *Hochberg*, allied to the city of *Baſil*. A congreſs being appointed at *Enſiſheim*, the peace was happily concluded, and a league, offenſive and defenſive, for the term of ſix years, took place between the town of *Baſil* and *Frederic* duke of *Auſtria*, ſucceſſor to *Leopold*, who died without male iſſue; tho' his widow *Catherine* was left in poſſeſſion of *Suntgau*, and the territories belonging to the houſe of *Auſtria* in *Alſace* [r].

---

[p] BARRE, t. vii. p. 96.

[q] STRUV. Period. ix. § 7.

John Huſs *preaches the doctrine of* Wickliffe *at* Prague, A. D. 1408.

DURING this conteſt in *Alſace*, *Bohemia* was involved in new diſorders, in conſequence of a new doctrine in religion, firſt broached by *Wickliffe*, in *England*, and now adopted by *John Huſs*, rector of the univerſity of *Prague*; who, tho' oppoſed by the archbiſhop, and cenſured by pope *Alexander* V. elected by the council of *Piſa*, continued to preach, and make converts with great ſucceſs, under the protection of *Winceſlaus* and his queen, who even condeſcended to reconcile him with the archbiſhop.

Is excommunicated by pope John XXIII. A. D. 1409.

JOHN XXIII. who ſucceeded *Alexander*, cited *Huſs* to appear at his tribunal, and the rector, refuſing to obey, was excommunicated. At the ſame time the pope laid the city of *Prague* under interdiction, and forbad all the prieſts to celebrate maſs, baptize, marry, or perform any other religious function, while *Huſs* ſhould reſide in that capital. The publication of this ſentence was followed by troubles and ſedition: *Winceſlaus* ſhut himſelf up in the fortreſs of *Viſigrade*, and *John Huſs* retired to *Huſſinet*, the place of his nativity, where he appealed from the judgment of the pope, to the holy trinity, and wrote to the cardinals, offering to give an account of his faith, even at the hazard of the fire, before the univerſity of *Prague*, and in the preſence of thoſe who had attended his lectures and ſermons [s].

His ſucceſs prejudicial to the univerſity of Prague.

THE ſucceſs of *John Huſs*, however, was extremely prejudicial to the univerſity of *Prague*; for he was no ſooner admitted into that body, than, by his cabals and intereſt with *Winceſlaus*, he deprived the *Germans* of two in three votes which they had in the election of a rector; and this deprivation incenſed them ſo much, that they abandoned the univerſity; ſome repairing to the academy at *Leipſic*, lately founded by *Frederic William* duke of *Saxony*; and others ſettling at *Erford*, *Ingoldſtadt*, *Roſtock*, and *Cracovia* [t].

---

[r] Annal. de l'Emp. t. ii. p. 489.

[s] RAINALD. ad an. 1409.

[t] ÆN. SYLV. c. 35.

The ſchiſm of the church continues.

THE church of *Rome* not only ſuffered from theſe innovations, but alſo continued in a ſtate of diſtraction from the ſchiſm which ſtill prevailed, and which the emperor attempted in vain to extinguiſh.

A cruel war kindled by a competition for the biſhopric of Liege.

BENEDICT XIII. and *Gregory* XII. tho' they had ſworn to reſign the pontificate, ſtill found new pretences to evade the performance of their oath; and in the mean time their diſpute was attended with very tragical conſequences. *John* of *Bavaria* was appointed biſhop of *Liege* by *Gregory*, and *Theodoric de Pervis* nominated to the ſame ſee by *Benedict*. This competition produced a civil war, in which were engaged the counts of *Flanders*, *Namur*, *Holland*, and the elector of *Cologne*, as the ſupporters of *John*; while the party of *Pervis* was ſupported by *Liege*, *Louvain*, *Bruſſels*, and all the towns of *Brabant*, which raiſed fifty thouſand men for his ſervice. *Pervis*, at the head of this army, inveſted *Maeſtricht*, to which *John* had retired, and carried on the ſiege with ſuch vigour, that the place was reduced to the utmoſt extremity; when it was relieved by the duke of *Burgundy*, who marched to the ſuccour of *John*, defeated his adverſary in a pitched battle, and conducted him in triumph to *Liege*, which was abandoned to pillage. *John*, upon this occaſion, condemned one hundred and twenty noblemen to loſe their heads; a greater number was hanged; and four-and-twenty were thrown headlong into the *Meuſe*, together with the legate of *Benedict*, and all the officers of *Pervis*. The ſavage prelate, not contented with theſe ſacrifices to his revenge, re-united to his ſee all the privileges of the city of *Liege*, the county of *Loos*, the *Haſbaye*, *St. Tron*, and the duchy of *Bouillon*: he ſuppreſſed the offices of bailie, provoſt, mayor, and ſheriff, and fined the province and the town of *Liege* in two hundred thouſand crowns, for which he took hoſtages [u].

WHILE *Gregory* XII. who was acknowleged pope in *Italy*, convened a council at *Aquileia*, to which he invited *Robert* and other Chriſtian kings; and *Benedict* XIII. who was owned for pope in *France*, held another council at *Catalonia*; the cardinals convoked a third at *Piſa*; and the emperor, aſſembling the electors at *Bacharat*, and afterwards at *Nuremberg*, appointed the meeting of a diet in the city of *Frankfort*; at which were preſent two cardinals, one from *Gregory*, and another from the ſacred college. After long and public debates, the opinions of the aſſembly were divided between the two popes, the greateſt part of the archbiſhops, prelates, and princes, eſpouſing the cauſe of the cardinals; and the emperor, together with the archbiſhop of *Triers*, the duke of *Bavaria*, and ſome others, declaring for *Gregory*, who propoſed that a council ſhould be held at *Udina*, in the *Friuli*, under the direction of the emperor, by whoſe deciſion he promiſed to abide [x]. *Robert*, therefore, ſent an archbiſhop, two biſhops, two doctors, and his chancellor, as ambaſſadors to *Piſa*, to prove, by learned arguments, that the cardinals ought not to have depoſed *Gregory*; but finding they could gain no converts to this opinion, and that the cardinals, being attached to *Winceſlaus*, would not even own their maſter for emperor, they appealed from the council of *Piſa* to an œcumenical council, and retired without taking leave [y]. Notwithſtanding this appeal, the council proceeded to the depoſition of the two popes, and raiſed *Alexander* V. to the papal chair; by which election the ſchiſm was augmented. The emperor wrote to ſeveral princes, aſſuring them, that the council at *Piſa* was not canonical, and that he would continue to acknowlege *Gregory* as the true pope, until a lawful and canonical ſentence ſhould be pronounced againſt him.

---

[u] MONSTREL, a l'Ann. 1408, p. 51.

A. D. 1410.

The emperor declares for Gregory; *ſends ambaſſadors to the council at* Piſa; *writes to ſeveral princes in his favour.*

As for *Alexander*, he notified his elevation to the ſovereigns of *Europe*, and, in his letter to *Winceſlaus*, beſtowed upon that prince the title of king of the *Romans*; a circumſtance which intailed upon him the hatred of *Robert*, who complained of the inſult to the princes of *Germany*, and prohibited them from acknowleging *Alexander* as pope. This laſt, in order to weaken the force of the emperor's reſentment, found means to detach ſeveral *German* biſhops from his party, by creating them legates of the holy ſee; and theſe exerted all their endeavours to eſtabliſh the authority of the council at *Piſa*. But the efforts of their zeal were in a little time ſuſpended by the death of *Alexander*, in whoſe room ſeventeen cardinals, in the conclave, elected *Balthazar Coſſa*, cardinal dean of *St. Euſtache*, who aſſumed the name of *John* XXIII. and was acknowleged by the greateſt part of *Europe*; for *Benedict* was owned by no nation but *Spain* and *Scotland*; and all *Gregory*'s influence extended no farther than ſome dominions of *Italy* and *Germany*, in which the authority of *Robert* prevailed [z].

Pope Alexander *dies, and is ſucceeded by* John XXIII.

Ladiſlaus, king of *Poland*, was diverted from intereſting himſelf in theſe events, by a war in which he was engaged with

Ladiſlaus *king of*

---

[x] Niem. 3. de Schiſm. 39. Gobel. in Coſmod. & ap. Mag. Chron. Belg. [y] Moine de Saint Denys, l. xxviii. [z] Chron. Sponheim.

Poland *engaged in a war with the* **Teutonic** *order.*

with the knights of the *Teutonic* order, who had detained twenty of his ſhips laden with corn for the uſe of the *Lithuanians*, and refuſed to make proper ſatisfaction. Both parties had recourſe to arms; the knights made an irruption into *Poland*, and were defeated, with great ſlaughter, near *Kaliſch*. This misfortune was the more ſevere, as it produced a revolt in the towns of *Pruſſia*, which returned to the dominion of *Poland*[a].

By this time *Robert* had almoſt extinguiſhed all the factions in *Germany*, and would have enjoyed the peaceful fruits of his policy and diſcretion, had not *John*, elector of *Mentz*, who was his indefatigable enemy, ſtill found freſh expedients to keep him in vexation. He had been the inſtrument of forming aſſociations and leagues againſt the imperial authority; he had traverſed him in all the ſteps he took for terminating the ſchiſm in the church; and another cauſe of miſunderſtanding between them was a caſtle, which the elector began to build in *Hochſt* againſt the will of the emperor, who put his troops in motion, in order to hinder him by force from proceeding; but this deſign was fruſtrated by a fever, which attacked him at *Oppenheim*, and put a period to his life, in the ninth year of his reign[b]. He was buried at *Heidelberg* (M), where, before his elevation to the throne, he had founded an academy, which was confirmed by pope *Urban* VI.[c]

Robert *takes the field againſt the elector of* Mentz; *but dies.*

This prince acquired the ſurname of *Short*, on account of his ſtature, tho' he was extremely vigorous and active. Yet he is more celebrated for his juſtice and clemency to men, and his piety to God, than for his magnanimity, or warlike exploits. He had made ſome progreſs in letters, was endowed with uncommon penetration, and there is no other blemiſh in his character, than that of being a little addicted to the love of money. During his laſt illneſs, he named

His character.

---

[a] Dougl. Hiſt. Polon. l. x.

[b] Spond. Contin. Baron. t. ii. p. 175.

[c] Cuspinian. p. 393.

(M) Some authors allege, that he was buried at *Spire*; but that he was interred at *Heidelberg* plainly appears from the teſtimony of *Cuſpinianus*, who not only poſitively affirms that he was royally interred in the church of the Holy Ghoſt in this city, but even inſerts the inſcription on his monument (9).

(9) *Cuſpinian.* p. 393.

ſeven

even truſtees (N) for the diſtribution of his dominions among is children; and, according to their regulation, *Lewis with he long Beard*, otherwiſe ſurnamed *the Blind*, whoſe elder brothers, *Rupert*, *Pepin*, and *Frederic*, were dead, ſucceeded to the electorate of *Palatine* and the lordſhip of *Amberg*. *John* had *Sulzbach*, *Nuburg*, and the county of *Cham*. *Simmerin*, *Deux Ponts*; *Lutzelſtein*, fell to the ſhare of *Stephen*, and *Sintzheim* was *Otto*'s patrimony (O).

The diſtribution of his hereditary dominions.

JOSSE, or *JODOCUS*.

AFTER the death of *Rupert*, *Jodocus*, or *Joſſe*, marquis of *Moravia*, is ſaid to have been elected emperor [d], and to have lived ſix months after his election; but as he was never acknowleged, he cannot be juſtly ranked among the emperors. Not but that he was regularly elected at *Frankfort* by a majority of the members aſſembled at the diet convoked by *John* archbiſhop of *Mentz*: tho' *Sigiſmund* was at the ſame time proclaimed king of the *Romans* by the archbiſhop of *Triers* and the count palatine; ſo that at this period there were three emperors and three popes, and each had a number of adherents; for *Winceſlaus* ſtill maintained his title to the imperial throne [e].

Jodocus elected, tho' never acknowleged;

SIGISMUND, hearing that his couſin *Joſſe* was elected, threatened to invade the marquiſate of *Moravia*, and was actually employed in making preparations for that expedition, when he received the news of his death; which happened at *Brin* about three months after his election [f].

dies in Moravia. A. D. 1411.

---

[d] GOLDAST. t. iii. GOBEL. Coſm. æt. vi. c. 90. AVENT. Ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 647. [e] ECCARD. t. i. [f] Hiſt. Sigiſ. apud VONDER HARD.

(N) The truſtees were *Raban*, biſhop of *Spire*, *John* of *Hertzhern*, *John* of *Dalburg*, *Herman* of *Rodenſtein*, *Francis Wolbert* of *Sickingen*, *Rupert* of *Helmſtadt*, nd *Tham Knebel* (10).

(O) His daughters were, *Elizabeth*, married to *Frederic* archduke of *Auſtria*; *Agnes*, wife of *Adolphus* duke of *Cleves*; and *Margaret*, matched with *Charles* I. duke of *Lorrain*. All theſe children were born to *Robert* by his wife *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Frederic* burgrave of *Nuremberg* (11).

(10) *Remarq. ſur Heiſs, ubi ſup.* (11) *Id. ibid.*

SIGIS-

SIGISMUND.

THIS prince's death was no ſooner known, than the archbiſhop of *Triers*, and the count palatine of the *Rhine*, preſſed the electoral college to confirm the choice which they had made during the preceding year; but as it refuſed to decide an affair of ſuch conſequence, without the participation of the ſtates, the archbiſhop of *Mentz* aſſembled a diet at *Frankfort*, where *Sigiſmund* was elected by the unanimous conſent of the electors.

Sigiſmund *ſucceeds to imperial throne.*

Sigiſmund, the ſon of the emperor *Charles* VI. and brother to *Winceſlaus*, had, before his elevation to the imperial dignity, reigned ſeven-and-twenty years in the kingdom of *Hungary*, ſince the death of *Lewis* his father-in-law, whom he ſucceeded. As this prince was promoted to the empire on account of his great qualities, and the wiſe conduct he maintained in his own government, in the midſt of many difficulties, it will not be unſeaſonable to ſay ſomething in this place of the means by which he was raiſed to that throne.

A retroſpective account of this prince.

His education in Hungary.

HE had been ſent, while he was yet very young, to the court of *Lewis* king of *Hungary*; who had no other children than two daughters, *Mary* and *Heduvige*, the younger of whom had been promiſed to *Jagellon*, grand duke of *Lithuania*, who married her, and afterwards aſcended the throne of *Poland*, while *Mary* the eldeſt was betrothed to *Sigiſmund*. *Lewis*, for this reaſon, cauſed him to be educated with great care, and prevailed upon the ſtates of the kingdom to nominate him as his ſucceſſor, on condition that his marriage with *Mary* ſhould be conſummated. But, before this condition could be fulfiled, *Lewis* died, and *Mary* ſucceeded to the throne, under the regency of queen *Elizabeth*, her mother, aſſiſted by the counſels of *Nicholas Gara*, count or grand maſter of the palace, becauſe *Sigiſmund*, being at that time but fifteen years of age, had not married the princeſs, nor was ſuppoſed capable of governing the dominions. This miniſter engroſſed the whole authority under theſe queens, and became extremely arrogant in conſequence of his ſucceſs; yet, in order to render his power ſtill more abſolute, he began to ſow ſuſpicions and jealouſies between his miſtreſſes and the principal noblemen of the kingdom; a wicked piece of policy, which proved fatal to the ſtate, by creating a general averſion againſt the government; and to ſuch a degree did this diſſaffection prevail, that the nobles privately ſent the biſhop of *Zagabria*, with an offer of the crown of *Hungary*

The queen mother Elizabeth *liſtens to the counſels of* Nicholas Gara.

to *Charles Durazzo*, king of *Naples*, who was related to the young queen. That prince joyfully embraced the propoſal, notwithſtanding the diſſuaſions of his queen, and moſt faithful adherents; and, after having ſettled the affairs of *Sicily* to his own mind, began to prepare for his journey to *Hungary*[g]: Queen *Elizabeth*, appriſed of theſe ſecret tranſactions, and underſtanding that *Charles* was actually upon the road to take poſſeſſion of the kingdom, and effect a marriage between *Mary* and his ſon *Ladiſlaus*, in order to ſecure the crown to his own family by that alliance; the queen, I ſay, informed of theſe circumſtances, reſolved, if poſſible, to fruſtrate his deſigns, and, as the firſt ſtep, ſolemnized the marriage of *Sigiſmund* with her daughter. This affair was no ſooner concluded, than ſhe ſent *Sigiſmund* into *Bohemia*, becauſe he was not yet powerful enough to maintain an open war againſt his competitor. In the mean time, *Charles* arrived at *Offen*, where the court of *Hungary* reſided; and was very honourably received by the queens; who, diſſembling their reſentment, ſeemed even to concur with the *Hungarians* in raiſing him to the throne. He was no ſooner acknowleged king, than he took the adminiſtration into his own hands; and the ceremony of his coronation was performed with great magnificence. But, as his promotion was intirely owing to popular paſſion and caprice, the noblemen and people in a little time grew tired of his government; and, changing their note, expatiated on all occaſions upon the virtues of their queens. *Elizabeth*, who had amuſed *Charles* with the hopes of a treaty, by which *Sigiſmund* would reſign the kingdom in his favour, having obſerved this happy change in the minds of the ſubjects, reſolved to profit by the occaſion, and rid herſelf of this new intruder; and this expedient ſhe uſed to effect her purpoſe. She and her daughter, together with the *Palatine Gara*, invited him to their apartment in the palace, in order to communicate a letter, which ſhe pretended to have received from *Sigiſmund*, touching his renunciation of the crown. *Charles* went thither without the leaſt ſuſpicion, and had no ſooner ſat down by *Elizabeth*, than the *Palatine* entered the room, accompanied by a man employed for that purpoſe; who, paſſing behind the king, cleft his head with a ſabre, tho' he did not die till ſome days after he had received the ſtroke[h] (P).

Charles Durazzo, *king of* Naples, *invited to aſcend the* Hungarian *throne.*

Sigiſmund *retires to* Bohemia.

Charles *takes the adminiſtration into his own hands;* *is amuſed by queen* Elizabeth, *and treacherouſly murdered by her direction.*

ELIZA-

---

[g] SPOND. Cont. BARRE, t. ii. p. 44.

[h] THUR. in Car. Parv. c. 8. BONFIN. 3. Dec. 1. Car. Par. 3.

(P) He was wounded by one *Blaſius Forgatch*, a man remarkable for his bodily ſtrength and audacity, while the palace was

She reſumes the ſupreme authority;

is put to death by Hiornard, *governor of* Croatia;

ELIZABETH, thinking ſhe had thus diſſipated the faction of *Charles* by his death, re-eſtabliſhed herſelf in her former authority; and few people preſumed to call her conduct in queſtion, as this cruel ſcheme had been executed in conſequence of the aſſurances ſhe had received of the fidelity of her ſubjects. Nevertheleſs, this murder did not paſs unpuniſhed; for ſome time after, the queens being on a progreſs through *Lower Hungary*, with the *Palatine Gara* and their ordinary retinue, *Hiornard*, governor, or judge provincial, of *Croatia*, who had been appointed by king *Charles*, reſolved to ſurpriſe the aſſaſſins. For this purpoſe he aſſembled a good number of men, and laid an ambuſcade upon the road; by which the court was ſurrounded, the *Palatine* and murderer of *Charles* were cut to pieces, and all the domeſtics of *Gara* killed, without pity, in their endeavours to ſave the life of their maſter. Nor was leſs inhumanity uſed towards the queen-mother *Elizabeth*, whom they pulled out of her vehicle, and dragged by the hair of the head before the judge provincial [1]. There ſhe, in a pathetic manner, pleaded her own cauſe; alleging, that king *Charles* had treated the princeſs *Mary* with contempt and deriſion, and unjuſtly diſpoſſeſſed her of her kingdom. She, moreover, threw herſelf on her knees before him, implored his pardon for the aſſaſſination, and conjured him to remember the favours he had received from the late king *Lewis* her huſband. The princeſs *Mary*, kneeling alſo before him, reinforced the ſupplications of her mother, beſeeching him to manifeſt his gratitude to her father's houſe; but their grief, humiliation, and remonſtrances, had no effect. *Mary* was incloſed in a diſmal dungeon, and the queen-mother, notwithſtanding all her tears and intreaties, miſerably drowned in the rivulet of *Roſeth*. Such was the fruit of her miniſter's violent counſels, to which ſhe had paid a blind and implicit regard. *Sigiſmund* no ſooner underſtood the particulars of this piteous cataſtrophe, than he ſet out with a powerful army, which he

and her daughter Mary *thrown into a dungeon*

Sigiſmund *marches*

---

[1] BONFIN. ubi ſup. THUR. in Sigiſ. cap. i.

was ſecured againſt his attendants and friends by *Nicholas Gara*. After having received the wound, he was thrown in priſon, a poiſoned plaiſter applied to his head, and, that not producing the deſired effect, he was ſtrangled. His body was buried, without pomp, in the church of *St. Andrew*; and afterwards, being dug up, lay a long time expoſed, on account of his having died under a ſentence of excommunication (12).

(12) Spond. Cont. *Barre*, *t.* xi. *p.* 48.

had gradually aſſembled, and marched ſtrait into *Hungary*, where he was received with open arms, and univerſal applauſe. His arrival in that kingdom did not a little diſconcert *Hiernard*, who had no reaſon to expect that his cruelty would paſs unpuniſhed. With a view, therefore, to divert, or at leaſt diminiſh, the fury of the impending ſtorm, he removed queen *Mary* into a comfortable apartment, and ordered her to be treated according to her quality. He even viſited her in priſon, and propoſed that ſhe ſhould be allowed to return to *Hungary*, provided ſhe would inſure his life, his office, and his fortune. This was ſuch a welcome propoſal, that ſhe confirmed the promiſe by an oath; adding, that ſhe would look upon him as her father, from the moment ſhe ſhould obtain her liberty. In conſequence of this promiſe, the judge provincial ſent her with an eſcort of troops to *Offen*, where her huſband king *Sigiſmund* waited for her coming, and where ſhe was received with all the demonſtrations of public joy[k].

with a powerful army into Hungary, *and is received with open arms.*

Mary, *his queen is ſet at liberty by* Hiornard.

Some days after her return, the ſtates of *Hungary* aſſembled at *Cronweiſſembourg*, where *Sigiſmund* was crowned, in the twentieth year of his age; and this ceremony was no ſooner performed, than he reſolved to revenge the cruelty which had been exerciſed upon the queen his mother-in-law: his wife, indeed, had promiſed, and even ſwore, that ſhe would never puniſh the perpetrators of that murder; but ſhe could not undertake for the conduct of her huſband, who determined to make an example of the chief actor in that tragedy. He accordingly ſent proper perſons into *Croatia*, who apprehended the judge provincial and his accomplices, and conducted them to the city of the *Five Churches*, or *Funfkerchen*. There, in conſequence of a ſentence pronounced by *Sigiſmund*, *Hiornard*'s hands being tied behind his back, he was dragged through the ſtreets, his fleſh tore off with red hot pincers, and, being quartered, the four parts of his body were hung up in the four moſt conſpicuous places of the city; while all his accomplices were beheaded, except the biſhop of *Zagabria*, whoſe life was ſpared on account of his function, tho' he was expelled from the ſee, and his eſtate confiſcated. *Sigiſmund* had not been many years in poſſeſſion of his good fortune, when, upon a journey, he received the news of his queen's death, which affected him to ſuch a degree, that he detached himſelf from the world for ſome time, and indulged his grief in retirement at *Offen*. Whether this melancholy occaſion recalled the remembrance of

He is crowned.

Revenges the death of his mother-in-law.

Loſes his queen.

---

[k] Spond. Contin. tom. ii. p. 49.

Reſolves to puniſh thoſe noblemen who had invited Charles *to the throne.*

They are apprehended,

and put to death.

of the revolt, in conſequence of which *Charles* had been invited to the throne; or that he could no longer ſuppreſs the reſentment which he harboured againſt the authors of that revolution, who ſeemed to brow-beat him in ſecurity, without having ever condeſcended to ſollicit his forgiveneſs; certain it is, he reſolved to call them to a ſevere account for the rebellion in which they had been engaged; and employed an officer, whoſe name was *George Weidaſſen*, to arreſt them privately, without reflecting on the troubleſome conſequences of ſuch a meaſure. A prince cannot too cautiouſly revolve every circumſtance of a ſtep which he propoſes to take without the advice of his council, every member of which is, in ſome meaſure, an addition to the ſagacity, as well as a ſanction to the conduct, of his ſovereign. *Weidaſſen*, having aſſembled a good number of troops, on pretence of going to viſit *Lower Hungary*, fell in with the delinquents; who, ſuſpecting his deſign, had united in a body and taken the field: but he attacked them in the night, took them all priſoners, loaded them with fetters, and ſent them to the king at *Offen*. When they were brought to their trial before *Sigiſmund*, and ſome princes and noblemen, they would not make an obeiſance to the king, nor anſwer to the queſtions that were aſked; ſo much did they deſpiſe the danger of their ſituation. An inſtance of indifference and diſreſpect, which provoked *Sigiſmund* to ſuch a degree, that he ordered them to be inſtantly beheaded[1]; and the ſentence was accordingly executed upon two-and-thirty noblemen, diſtinguiſhed not only by their birth, but alſo by the ſervices they had done the ſtate. *Stephen Contus*, one of the chiefs of this confederacy, looked upon death with ſuch fortitude and contempt, that he deſired the executioner to ſtrike him on the fore part of the neck, becauſe he could never brook the thought of receiving a wound behind. This cruel execution made ſuch an impreſſion on many of the princes, that they conceived an abhorrence for *Sigiſmund*, whom they inveighed againſt as a tyrant, and againſt whom they afterwards rebelled.

Bajazet marches towards the frontiers of Hungary;

BAJAZET, the *Turkiſh* ſoltan, taking the advantage of theſe inteſtine troubles, and probably invited by the malcontents of the kingdom, marched towards the frontiers, in order to invade the country; but chancing to intercept a meſſenger with a letter from *Emanuel*, emperor of *Conſtantinople*, to *Sigiſmund*, appriſing this laſt of the *Turkiſh* expedition, he was ſo much incenſed againſt the ſender, that, poſtponing

---

[1] HEISS, l. ii. c. 30.

his

and defeats Sigiſmund at Nicopolis.

ſign upon Hungary, he turned his arms againſt Con- ople, which he ſuddenly inveſted by ſea and land: g there informed that Sigiſmund had taken the field with merous army, reinforced by French and Germans, to the nt of 100,000 men, and advanced to the city of Nico- he inſtantly raiſed the blockade; and, marching thither great expedition, attacked the Chriſtians in the night, cut their whole army in pieces [m]. In this battle, a great of the Hungarian nobility was ſlain; and the kingdom ined ſuch a loſs, as laid it open to the incurſions of the y (Q). As for Sigiſmund, who eſcaped the carnage by inſtead of exerting his endeavours to repair this fatal hrow, he abandoned himſelf wholly to his pleaſures, out beſtowing the leaſt attention to the neceſſities of the ſo that the averſion and contempt of his ſubjects every increaſed againſt him; the nobles and governors of pro- s openly taxed him with indolence and mal-adminiſtra- and, finding the people ripe for revolt, ſecured his per- and committed him to the cuſtody of the two ſons of whom he had put to death, becauſe they were known his moſt bitter enemies [n]. Then they proclaimed La- king of Hungary; and this prince, who was ſon of king of Naples, entering Dalmatia, was received as eign in the city of Zara: nevertheleſs, the caſtle of , and the other fortreſſes of the kingdom, together High Hungary, ſtill faithfully adhered to the oath they had taken in favour of Sigiſmund, even while he miſerable priſoner, ſubjected to all the inſolence and

The Hungarians confine their king;

---

[m] Chalcond. l. ii. Leuncl. l. vi. Thur. in Sigiſ. cap. 6. Dec. 2.

[n] Thur. in Sigiſ. c. 9, & ſeq.

(Q) Hiſtorians are much di- d about the battle of Nico- Leunclavius affirms, that as fought in the year 1393; Juvenalis Urſinus, archbi- of Rheims, an hiſtorian of confirms this date, obſerving, that Sigiſmund a letter that ſame year to king of France, deſcribing battle, and ſollicitng ſuc- s to repair his loſs. On the hand, Bonfinius, Thoroſius, agree in placing ree years later; ſo that, in all probability, the Hungarians were twice beaten near the ſame place; but the overthrow they ſuſtained in the year 1396 ſeems to have been the moſt important: for we do not find, that Sigiſmund made another effort againſt the victor. It appears alſo, that there was a great number of French in his army at this battle, who were probably ſent in conſequence of his ſollicitations, after his firſt defeat.

can-

who prevails upon his keepers to ſet him at liberty.

rancour of his moſt inveterate foes. Notwithſtanding this deplorable ſituation, ſuch was his addreſs, that he gradually inſinuated himſelf into the favour of *Gara*'s widow, who, at length, fairly undertook to effect his enlargement. With this view ſhe held frequent conſultations with her ſons, to whom ſhe obſerved, that ſuch attempts upon the perſon of a ſovereign were uſually attended with fatal conſequences; that the people were unſteady in their reſolutions, and might as ſuddenly reſtore as they had depoſed the king; and, even if ſuch a revolution ſhould not happen, that the ſucceſſor would revenge upon them the cauſe of *Sigiſmund*, thro' fear of meeting with the ſame ill uſage. She likewiſe diſplayed the honour and advantage which they might acquire by ſetting the king at liberty. Theſe remonſtrances were not loſt upon her ſons, whom the king promiſed, upon oath, to inveſt with *Moravia*, provided they would enable him to make the grant effectual. Thus perſuaded, they enlarged, and conducted him to that province, from whence he repaired to *Bohemia*.

He retires to Bohemia;

returns with an army, and reſumes his authority;

THERE having raiſed a conſiderable army, he marched back into his kingdom, and, without oppoſition, reduced the whole country to obedience. He kept the promiſe which he had made to his deliverers; and, during the reſt of his reign, comported himſelf with ſuch clemency and affability towards his enemies, as well as friends, that he ſoon retrieved the friendſhip and confidence of his people. From his own experience, which coſt him ſo much, he extracted this maxim, that he who can neither forgive, nor occaſionally connive, will never make great proficiency in the art of reigning.

He is called to the empire.

HIS reputation extended to the neigbouring nations; and the ſtates of *Germany* thought they could not find a more accompliſhed prince to wear the imperial crown.

THE news of his confirmation found him in *Hungary*, from whence he immediately ſet out for the empire; and, in order to fulfil the expectation of thoſe who called him to this high dignity, he reſolved to employ his whole attention in remedying two grievances, under which *Germany* at that time groaned; theſe were, the confuſion, oppreſſion, and diſorder, which prevailed in the provinces, and the ſchiſm which had for thirty years diſtracted the church [*]. He began his reign with alienating the electorate of *Brandenburg* in favour of *Frederic* burgrave of *Nuremberg*, ſprung from the counts of *Hohenzollern*, a prince of great merit, from

Sigiſmund *alienates the elect-*

---

[*] GOBEL. Coſm. æt. vi. c. 96.

whom the preſent marquiſſes of *Brandenburg* are deſcended (R). For this purchaſe he gave four hundred thouſand florins; but *Sigiſmund* reſerved to himſelf and his brother the right of redemption for the ſame ſum, in caſe the male heirs of the burgrave ſhould fail [p].

orate of Brandenburg.

A. D. 1411.

He effects an accommodation between William *count* de Berg *and* Theodoric de Meurs;

At this aſſembly too, he mediated an accommodation between *William* count *de Berg* and *Theodoric de Meurs*, who had been at war for ſeveral years about the archbiſhopric of *Cologne*, for which *William* and *Theodoric* were competitors. The firſt had been confirmed by *Gregory* XIII. and the other by *John* XXIII. The diſpute was left to the deciſion of arms. *Theodoric* defeated his adverſary, and returned in triumph to *Cologne*, where he was received with extraordinary acclamations; while *William* was fain to ſue for peace, which he obtained, on condition of renouncing all his pretenſions to the archbiſhopric, and marrying *Theodoric*'s niece, daughter of the count of *Tecklembourg* [q].

exhorts Winceſlaus *to reform his conduct*;

This affair being happily compromiſed, the emperor endeavoured, by remonſtrances, to reform the court of his brother *Winceſlaus*, which was a ſcene of riot, luxury, and exceſs, and afforded a dangerous example to the whole kingdom of *Bohemia*; but all his repreſentations proved ineffectual, even tho' *Sigiſmund* threatened to put him to the ban of the empire, unleſs he would amend his way of life.

The next affair that engroſſed the emperor's attention, was the war between *Ladiſlaus* king of *Poland*, and the *Teutonic* order, which, tho' generally diſadvantageous to the knights, was ſtill maintained by the induſtry of *Henry de Plaven*, the grand maſter, who raiſed ſums of money, by mortgaging to *Winceſlaus* ſome fiefs belonging to the order in *Bohemia*, and even found means to detach the duke of *Lithuania* from the intereſt of *Poland*. *Ladiſlaus*, in this emergency, made advances towards a peace, which was accordingly effected, on condition that his *Poliſh* majeſty ſhould relinquiſh all his pretenſions upon *Pruſſia* to the *Teutonic* order. But he afterwards engaged in a private treaty with the

---

[p] Heiss, ubi ſupra.

[q] Coſmod. ubi ſupra.

(R) At the ſame time he granted, by letters patent, to the city of *Nuremberg*, the privilege of keeping the imperial ornaments and the jewels of the crown, which are ſent to the coronations of emperors by a ſolemn deputation from that city (13).

(13) *Remarq. ſur Heiſs, l.* xi. *ch.* 30.

engages in a treaty with Ladiſlaus, *king of* Poland, *againſt the* Teutonic *order;*

the emperor, who repaired to *Cracovia* on pretence of a viſit; by which agreement the two princes promiſed to join their forces, invade *Pruſſia*, deſtroy the *Teutonic* order, and divide between them the conquered dominions [r]. At the ſame time, both theſe princes made an offenſive and defenſive alliance with *Saladine*, cham of the *Tartars*, who engaged to aſſiſt them againſt all their enemies.

marches againſt the Venetians *in* Dalmatia.
A. D. 1412.

Some time after this agreement, he was obliged to march towards *Dalmatia*, in conſequence of a quarrel with the *Venetians*, touching the poſſeſſion of that country, on which they had laid violent hands, as well as upon many places that belonged to the empire: provoked by theſe invaſions, he marched againſt them with an army of *Hungarians*, and reduced ſeveral caſtles and ſtrong places; but as he had, by a public edict, commanded the *German* princes to take the field, and aſſiſt him in this war, and not one of them had obeyed the ſummons, he did not think it prudent to proceed at his own expence; but concluded a peace with the firſt opportunity [s]. After this treaty, he advanced into *Lombardy*, under various pretences, tho' his ſole aim was to finiſh the negociation which he had begun with pope *John* XXIII. touching the convocation of a general council, by which the peace of the church might be reſtored, in extinguiſhing the ſchiſm produced from the factions of three pretended popes. Upon this ſubject, he had ſeveral conferences with the legates of *John*, who waited upon him in perſon at *Placentia*, and then accompanied him at *Lodi*, where they came to a determination of convoking a council. Bulls were accordingly expedited, appointing it to be held at *Conſtance*, and to be opened on the firſt day of *November*, in the following year [t].

Advances into Lombardy; *and confers with pope* John, *who convokes a council at* Conſtance.
A. D. 1413.

The emperor, upon this occaſion, publiſhed a memorial, inviting all the biſhops of Chriſtendom to the council, and promiſing ſafe conducts to all thoſe who ſhould think them neceſſary: he ſent ambaſſadors to *Charles* VI. of *France*, to ſollicit his perſonal appearance at this aſſembly; he wrote on the ſame ſubject to *Benedict* XIII. who had retired into the dominions of *Spain*; and in a letter to *Gregory* XII. who reſided in the kingdom of *Naples*, earneſtly deſired he would repair to *Conſtance*, and refer his cauſe to the deciſion of an oecumenical council, which he (the emperor) had agreed with *John* to aſſemble, in order to terminate the fatal diſputes of the church [u].

---

[r] Dugl. Hiſt. Polon. l. xi.

[s] Avent. Ann. Boior. l. vii. p. 659, & ſeq.

[t] Spond. Contin. Barr. t. ii. ad ann. 1415.

[u] Vond. Hard. t. vi. p. 5.

Over and above theſe precautions, *Sigiſmund*, overflowing with zeal for the intereſts of religion, repaſſed the *Alps*, and made a progreſs through divers provinces in *Germany*, in order to diſpoſe the minds of the people for concurring with his pious intention of finiſhing the ſchiſm. He reconciled the biſhop and chapter with the citizens of *Straſburg*, and confirmed the privileges granted by his predeceſſors to the imperial towns united to the prefecture of *Alſace*; but the two antipopes exerted all their endeavours to traverſe his deſign: both proteſted againſt the council with great virulence. *Benedict* convoked an aſſembly at *Perpignan*, where he did not fail to fulminate bulls of excommunication; and *Gregory*, who ſojourned at *Rimini*, appeared in public with the pontifical ornaments, and enjoyed the protection of *Ladiſlaus*, whom he had gained over to his intereſt.

Ladiſlaus, *king of* Naples, *aſpires to the conqueſt of* Italy, *and dies.*

A. D. 1414.

Sigiſmund *grants a ſafe conduct to* John Huſs;

This prince, contrary to the peace which he had lately made with pope *John*, took poſſeſſion of the city of *Rome*, together with the church-lands, and reſolved to make himſelf maſter of all *Italy*. With this view he marched towards *Tuſcany*, with a powerful army, to act againſt the *Florentines* and pope *John*, who had retired to *Bologna*; but being attacked with a violent diſorder, which was the effect of poiſon, he retired to *Naples*, where, in a few months, he expired [x]. The peace of *Italy* being reſtored by his death, left the pope, cardinals, archbiſhops, and prelates, at liberty to repair to *Conſtance*, where *John* arrived in the end of *October*. In the mean time *Sigiſmund*, who had returned to *Germany*, in order to be crowned before he ſhould ſet out for the council, being at *Spire* upon ſome buſineſs which had called him thither, granted a ſafe conduct, on the faith of which *John Huſs* repaired to *Conſtance*, to give an account of his doctrine [y]. Then *Sigiſmund* ſet out for *Aix*, where he was crowned on the eighth of *November*; and the ceremony was no ſooner performed than he departed, with his empreſs queen, and a very numerous court, for *Conſtance*, where he arrived on the twenty-third day of *December*, in the evening (S). Next day he aſſiſted at the midnight maſs, which pope *John* celebrated in his pontificals, the emperor himſelf being cloathed in the imperial dalmatic, and performing the office of a deacon, according to the cuſtom on ſuch occaſions. On his firſt arrival

---

[x] Barre, t. vii. p. 144.

[y] Spond. Cont. Barre, t. ii. ad ann. 1415.

(S) For the particular tranſactions of this famous council, ſee the Hiſtory of the Popes.

aſſiſts at the council of Conſtance.

at *Conſtance*, he convoked a general congregation, in which he gave an account of his negociations with *Gregory* and *Benedict*, and, in particular, gave them to underſtand, that he had ſent a doctor of laws to *Spain*, to expoſtulate with *Benedict*, who had promiſed to give the emperor a meeting at *Nice* in *Provence*, in the month of *June*. At the ſame time, meaſures were taken for preventing that confuſion, which might have ariſen from a concourſe of above one hundred thouſand ſtrangers, who repaired to *Conſtance* on this occaſion; and *Sigiſmund* left the fathers of the council at free liberty to treat of the affairs of the church.

John *promiſes to renounce the papacy, retracts his promiſe, and flies into* Switzerland.

In the firſt ſeſſion, which was held on the ſixteenth of *November*, the meeting was prorogued to the ſecond of *March*, in the next year, when they expected the emperor in perſon; and that day being arrived, the fathers of the council having deliberated upon expedients for removing the ſchiſm, and re-eſtabliſhing the union of the church, concluded, that nothing would ſo effectually conduce to this ſalutary end as the reſignation of the competitors. *John* himſelf, who preſided in the council, aſſented to this opinion, and promiſed authentically to renounce his title, provided *Angelo Corrario*, who had aſſumed the name of *Gregory* XII. and *Peter de Luna*, diſtinguiſhed by that of *Benedict* XIII. would imitate him in that act of ſelf-denial. He had no ſooner made this declaration, than the emperor, riſing from his chair, ran and embraced his feet, applauding him for ſuch a Chriſtian reſignation; for which alſo he was ſolemnly thanked by the patriarch of *Antioch*, in the name of the whole council; but ſome days after he repented of this condeſcenſion, and, by the advice and aſſiſtance of *Frederic* duke of *Auſtria*, fled from *Conſtance* in the night, diſguiſed in a lay habit, and retired to *Schaffhauſen* *; whither he was followed by ſeveral cardinals, and from whence he afterwards withdrew to the caſtle of *Luffenberg*.

A. D. 1415.

The council confirms his depoſition, excluding alſo Angelo Corrario *and* Peter de Luna *from the papacy.*

Tho' this ſudden retreat at firſt diſconcerted the council, which *John* declared to be diſſolved in conſequence of his ſeceſſion, they at length agreed that a council was ſuperior to the pope; and, after many debates and proceedings, confirmed the ſentence of his depoſition, decreed that no other pope ſhould be choſen without the deliberation and conſent of the council; and that he, together with his competitors, *Angelo Corrario* and *Peter de Luna*, ſhould be for ever excluded from the papacy. *John*, finding them determined, thought proper to yield to the torrent, rather than run the riſque of meeting with worſe treatment in attempting to oppoſe it; and quietly acquieſced in the ſentence, freely renouncing the pontificate, the marks of which he immediately reſigned. Some days after this reſignation, *Gregory* XII. ſent a legate to the emperor and council, to renounce his title in the ſame manner. As for *Frederic*, duke of *Auſtria*, he had been ſummoned by the emperor to appear and anſwer to the charge of being acceſſary to the flight of *John*; and as he did not think proper to obey, was outlawed, put to the ban of the empire, and diveſted of his dominions; which the *Swiſs* were impowered to ſubdue for their own benefit [a]. They accordingly conquered the country of *Tergow*, which they afterwards refuſed to reſtore, upon the emperor's reconciliation with *Frederic*; who was obliged to confirm their conqueſt by an authentic deed.

---

* Theod. de Niem. in Vit. Joan. XXIII. ex Meib. t. i. p. 27.

The duke of Auſtria *is diveſted of his dominions.*

In the following ſeſſions of this council, the affair of *John Huſs* and *Jerom* of *Prague* was brought upon the carpet; the former, as hath been already ſaid, had imbibed his new doctrine from the writings of *Wickliffe* (T), and converted to his opinions ſeveral maſters of the univerſity of *Prague*, together with an infinite number of other people. Among others, his ſect was eſpouſed by *Jerom*, maſter of arts, whom he engaged as his collegue, and prevailed upon to preach againſt the primacy of the pope; who, being appriſed of their preſumption, had cited them both to appear at *Rome*. Tho' they refuſed to obey this citation, they afterwards condeſcended to appear at the council of *Conſtance*, in order to juſtify the doctrine they profeſſed. *John Huſs*, being provided with a ſafe conduct from the emperor, attempted to defend the articles of his faith before the fathers of the council, who were diſpoſed to condemn him unheard, when *John* of *Chlum* and *Winceſlaus* of *Duba*, having proteſted againſt ſuch unjuſt proceedings, the emperor ſent the count palatine and margrave of *Brandenburg* to deſire the cardinals would hear what *Huſs* had to ſay in his own defence. He was accordingly queſtioned in preſence of *Sigiſmund*, and accuſed of hereſy in thirty-nine articles, part of which he denied, and part he offered

John Huſs *appears before the council;*

A. D. 1415,

is accuſed of hereſy

---

[a] Cod. Vict. part ix. fol. 36.

(T) *Wickliffe*, who was principal of *Baliol* college in *Oxford*, wrote and preached againſt the infallibility and ſupremacy of the pope, the temporal power of eccleſiaſtics, the order of mendicants, auricular confeſſion, and the doctrine of tranſubſtantiation (14).

(14) *Bibliotb. Angloiſ. t. xi. p.* 138.

his thirty-nine articles; convicted, degraded, and condemned to the flames.

to defend; but his voice was drowned by the noiſe which was purpoſely made by the fathers of the council (U). At length, being aſked if he was willing to abjure all the thirty-nine articles, he anſwered in the negative. He was immediately declared by the council a ſower of ſedition, a hardened heretic, a diſciple and obſtinate defender of *Wickliffe*. As ſuch he was degraded by four biſhops, ſtripped of his ſacerdotal habit, and cloathed with another dreſs. His hair was cut in form of a croſs; upon his head was put a paper mitre, painted with the repreſentation of three devils, and he was delivered over to the ſecular judge, who condemned him and his writings to the flames, and fixed the ſixth of *July* for his execution.

Dies with great conſtancy.

Being brought to the place of puniſhment, he was tied to the ſtake, and ſurrounded with faggots of wood and bundles of ſtraw, and before they were kindled, the duke of *Bavaria* and the count of *Papenheim* approached, and exhorted him to recant; but as he rejected their advice with diſdain, proteſted his own innocence, and began to declaim againſt the emperor and fathers of the council, the duke retired, and ordered the executioners to do their duty [b]. That his adherents might not carry off his aſhes, they were thrown into the *Rhine*; but this precaution did not hinder his followers to take up the earth on which he ſuffered; of this they tranſported parcels to their ſeparate homes, and preſerved them as ſacred relicks. Nay, they proteſted, in public writings, againſt the execution, as an act committed contrary to the law of God, of nature, and of nations, as well as to the inclination of the emperor himſelf. Certain it is, that prince took umbrage at theſe proceedings, which he thought prejudicial to his honour, on account of the ſafe conduct which he had granted. But he was given to underſtand that his word could not be called in queſtion, becauſe the

Sigiſmund *is diſpleaſed, becauſe no regard* council, being ſuperior to the emperor, his ſafe-conduct had been over-ruled and annulled by the ſentence of the church, to which the princes ought to ſubmit in matters of faith [c].

---

[b] Chron. Magd. ex Meib. 353, & ſeq. Avent. Ann. l. vii. p. 650. Spond. Cont. t. ccvi. & ſeq.

(U) *John Huſs* is ſaid to have ſpoke to this effect. "I am come hither to prove my innocence, and give an account of my faith; but I did not come until I had obtained the paſſport of the emperor, who is here preſent, and who undertook for the ſecurity of my perſon." So ſaying, he fixed his eyes upon *Sigiſmund*, who bluſhed at this addreſs, as being aſhamed of his breach of promiſe (1).

(1) *Idem ibid.*

was paid to his ſafe-conduct.

Peter de Luna refuſes to reſign his pretenſions to the papacy.

After the execution of *John Huſs*, the council reſumed the affair of *Peter de Luna*, who ſtill obſtinately refuſed to quit his pretenſions to the papacy. Upon this occaſion *Sigiſmund* offered to go to *Spain* in perſon, and engage the mediation of *Ferdinand*, king of *Arragon*, with whom *Peter* had taken refuge, by which he hoped to effect a voluntary renunciation like that of the other two, before the council ſhould proceed to extremity. His journey had before been reſolved upon; but the time and place of meeting were changed. He ſet out for *Spain*, accompanied by twelve deputies from the council; and on his arrival at *Perpignan*, he entered into a negotiation with *Peter de Luna*, the reſult of which was ſent to the council, though his interpoſition had not the deſired effect [d].

Sigiſmund *undertakes to mediate that affair, but miſcarries.*

The obſtinacy of *Benedict* incenſed the emperor to ſuch a degree, that he threatened to obtain by force that aſſent, which the other refuſed to give by fair means; and *Benedict*, in conſequence of theſe menaces, retired ſuddenly to the fortreſs of *Paniſcola*, where he reſolved to preſerve his pontifical dignity to his lateſt breath. This unexpected flight deprived him of all his partizans. The king of *Arragon*, with all the princes and biſhops of his party, ſent deputies to the emperor, at *Narbonne*, with whom they agreed, that the council ſhould invite all the former adherents of *Benedict* to come to *Conſtance*, and join their endeavours for re-eſtabliſhing the peace of the church; and that, on their arrival, a new pope ſhould be choſen. This agreement, known by the name of the *Capitulation of Narbonne*, being tranſmitted to the fathers in council, was forthwith put in execution; and *Sigiſmund*, that he might neglect nothing which could contribute to the peace of the church, or the re-eſtabliſhment of concord among Chriſtian princes, particularly the kings of *France* and *England*, reſolved to viſit *Charles* VI. by whom he was ſo magnificently received, that the people took umbrage at the honours that were paid to him; for he ſat in parliament as if it had been his own tribunal, and created knights by his ſole authority. From thence he croſſed the ſea to *England*, and propoſed a truce between the two crowns, which, however, was not concluded, becauſe in the interim the *Engliſh* received an account of their having been worſted by the

He repairs to France, *and proceeds to* England.

A. D. 1416.

---

[c] Vonder. Hardt. t. v. part ii. p. 12, 50. [d] Theod. Niem. in vit. Joh. XXIII. p. 34, ex Meib.

French at *Harfleur*; and as they had been very much elated by the victory of *Agincourt*, they could not brook the thoughts of peace, until they ſhould have wiped off the ſtain of this ſubſequent diſgrace[e] (X). *France*, in all probability, ſuſpected *Sigiſmund* of partiality in favour of *England*; for his propoſals of mediation were rejected: and indeed that ſuſpicion ſeems to have been well grounded; for the emperor, before he quitted *England*, engaged in a treaty with king *Henry*, by which he obliged himſelf to aſſiſt the *Engliſh* monarch againſt *Charles* VI. in recovering *Guienne* and *Normandy*; and in conſideration of this aſſiſtance, the king of *England* promiſed to compel *Charles*, and ſome other princes, to do homage to the emperor, for certain countries to which the empire had ſome old pretenſions. On his return to *France*, he, at the earneſt intreaty of *Amadeus* VIII. of *Savoy*, erected his county into a duchy, and inveſted him in the caſtle of *Chambery*[f].

In the abſence of *Sigiſmund*, the affair of *Jerom* of *Prague* engaged the attention of the council. This man had repaired to *Conſtance*, with a deſign to aſſiſt *John Huſs* in making his defence; but perceiving he had nothing to hope from the clemency and juſtice of the fathers, he reſolved to retreat with all expedition into *Bohemia*; but being apprehended upon the road, he was loaded with chains, and brought back to *Conſtance*, where, in order to avoid the puniſhment which had been inflicted upon his collegue, he ſolemnly abjured the hereſies of *Wickliffe* and *Huſs*. He afterwards, however, eſpouſed the ſame doctrines, was, in the twenty-firſt ſeſſion of the ſame council, condemned as a wicked apoſtate to the flames, and ſuffered with great conſtancy and fortitude[g].

Jerom *of* Prague *is burnt for hereſy.*

Tho' the public ſeſſions of the council were leſs frequent in the abſence of the emperor, ſomething always occurred to employ the deliberation of the fathers. The biſhop of *Trent*, who had been impriſoned by the duke of *Auſtria*, and deprived of the towns and caſtles depending on his ſee, complained to the council of theſe outrages; and *Frederic*, who remained as an hoſtage at *Conſtance* ſince his reconciliation with *Sigiſmund*, was ordered to releaſe the biſhop, and reſtore his lands, on pain of privation. But, inſtead of complying with this deciſion, he withdrew privately from *Conſtance*, and repaired to the *Tyrol*, which he found in great confuſion, occaſioned by the intrigues of his brother *Erneſt*, who had uſurped his dominions, and gained over the greateſt part of the nobility and clergy to his intereſt; ſo that the two brothers began to make preparations for a bloody war.

---

[e] Ibid. p. 43. Krantz 10. Wand. 23. [f] Monstrel. lib. i. cap. 164. [g] Spond. Cont. tom. ii. p. 230.

(X) *Æmilius*, who aſſigns this reaſon as an obſtacle to the peace, pretends, that 400 *Engliſh* were cut in pieces by the *French* at *Harfleur*. Perhaps there may have been ſome ſkirmiſh in which the *Engliſh* were worſted; but at the battle of *Harfleur*, which was fought in this very year, the conſtable of *France*, who had inveſted the town, was entirely defeated (1).

(1) *Mezeray's Abrege Chronologique, tom.* ii. *p.* 655.

The duke of Auſtria *is put to the ban of the empire.* *His brother* Erneſt *uſurps his dominions.*

Mean while the council, incenſed at the refuſal and retreat of *Frederic*, complained of his conduct to the emperor; who cauſed him to be put to the ban; and the biſhop of *Lodi*, preſident of the *Italian* nation at the council, ordered, in the name of the fathers, the ſyndics of the church of *Trent* to compel *Frederic* to ſet the biſhop at liberty and reſtore his domains. At the ſame time *Erneſt* reſolved to ſupport his uſurpation by force of arms; and abundance of bloodſhed muſt have enſued, had not the neighbouring princes, interpoſed and brought about an accommodation; in conſequence of which *Frederic* recovered the *Tyrol*, and *Erneſt* returned to *Stiria*, which was his inheritance [h].

Frederic, *burgrave of* Nuremberg, *created elector of* Brandenburg. A.D. 1417.

Sigismund, on his return to *Conſtance*, beſtowed the inveſtiture of their fiefs upon *John de Naſſau*, archbiſhop of *Mentz*, the elector of *Saxony*, the count palatine, the count of *Nillembourg*, and the duke of *Pomerania*; and upon this occaſion, he conferred upon *Frederic*, burgrave of *Nuremberg*, the electorate of *Brandenburg*, which reverted to the emperor by the death of *Joſſe*, marquis of *Moravia*; though this alienation was not made without the murmurs of the *Bohemians*, who alleged, that it was a fief belonging their kingdom: nor did the new elector find the *Brandenburghers* very well diſpoſed to receive him; but in a little time conciliated their affection, by his mild and prudent adminiſtration. Among the princes who appeared at *Conſtance*, he who ſhone with greateſt magnificence was *Frederic*, ſurnamed *the Warlike*, margrave of *Miſnia*, and landgrave of *Thuringia*, who, by his noble qualifications, had acquired the emperor's particular eſteem; notwithſtanding which they now parted with great animoſity. Beſides the inveſtiture of *Miſnia*, *Frederic* demanded that of ſome towns in *Bohemia*, which he poſſeſſed by right of conqueſt: and *Sigiſmund*, who was himſelf heir of that kingdom, abſolutely refuſed to comply with his deſire; ſo that he left *Conſtance* in great wrath. But the emperor

Frederic, *margrave of* Miſnia, *in dudgeon.*

---

[h] Vonder. Hardt. tom. i. p. 200.

appeaſed him in the ſequel, by putting him in poſſeſſion of the electorate of *Saxony*, vacant by the death of *Albert* III. the laſt elector of the houſe of *Anhalt* [i].

Peter de Luna *depoſed by the council, and* Martin V. *elected pope.*

After theſe tranſactions, the council proceeded againſt *Peter de Luna* for contumacy; and in the thirty-ſeventh ſeſſion, the definitive ſentence of his depoſition was pronounced and publiſhed. Then their next care being to elect a new pope, *Odo* or *Otho Colonna*, a *Roman*, was propoſed, and choſen on St. *Martin*'s day, whence he took the name of *Martin* V. and his elevation met with univerſal applauſe. The conclave was no ſooner opened after the election, than the emperor entered, and proſtrated himſelf before the new pope; then his holineſs, mounting a white horſe, rode in proceſſion to the cathedral, *Sigiſmund* holding the reins on one ſide, and the elector of *Brandenburg* on the other: during the cavalcade, the *Jews* of *Conſtance* did him homage in certain prayers, while certain elders held the pentateuch in his hand. The pope gave them his benediction, ſaying, "You have a law, but you do not underſtand it; may the "Lord take the veil from before your eyes."

Martin *reconciles the emperor with* Frederic, *duke of* Auſtria. A. D. 1418.

Martin being conſecrated and crowned, ſent the cardinal of *Piſa* to exhort *Benedict* to reſign his pretenſions; but all his remonſtances proved ineffectual. Then holding a public conſiſtory in the epiſcopal palace of *Conſtance*, he endeavoured in vain to accommodate matters between the dukes of *Bavaria*, who had quarrelled about the diviſion of their dominions; though his endeavours were more ſucceſsful in reconciling the emperor with the duke of *Auſtria*, who promiſed to take the oath of allegiance, and pay 70,000 florins by way of fine to *Sigiſmund*, who, on his part, undertook to reſtore him to the poſſeſſion of thoſe dominions, which he had loſt when he was outlawed. In conſequence of this agreement, *Frederic* waited upon the emperor at *Conſtance*, and was abſolved, by the pope's order, of the ſentence of excommunication which he had incurred, by oppreſſing and impriſoning the biſhop of *Trent*. *Sigiſmund* reſtored part of his dominions; but, as we have already obſerved, the *Swiſs* refuſed to part with what they had conquered, and ſeveral towns had been mortgaged by the emperor; ſo that the duke could not recover them until the debts ſhould be paid. *Sigiſmund*'s finances being very ſcanty, he was fain to have recourſe to various expedients for raiſing money. He borrowed a conſiderable ſum from the city of *Bruges*; and the *Engliſh*, with the conſent of the elector palatine, paid him part of the portion of the princeſs *Blanche*, who was married to that elector [k]. But all theſe reſources being inſufficient to defray the expence, pope *Martin*, after having crowned him king of the *Romans* with great ſolemnity, granted him a tenth of all the eccleſiaſtical effects in *Germany*, as a remuneration for the pains he had taken to eſtabliſh the peace of the church; though this impoſition gave great offence, and had well nigh involved the empire in trouble and confuſion.

---

[i] Barre, tom. vii. p. 195.

War in Holland *between* Jaqueli-na *and* John *of* Bavaria.

WHILE *Sigiſmund* practiſed theſe ſchemes for filling his exhauſted treaſury, *Holland*, *Hainault*, and *Brabant*, groaned under the miſeries of a civil war, kindled by a conteſt between *Jaquelina*, daughter and heireſs of *William*, duke of *Frieſland*, and *John* of *Bavaria*, her uncle, biſhop of *Liege*, who pretended to the tutorage of his niece, and even to the ſucceſſion of theſe provinces. The country was divided into two factions, one of which eſpouſed the cauſe of the princeſs, while the other adhered to the biſhop. The duke of *Burgundy* declared for his niece *Jaquelina*, who married the duke of *Brabant*, and obtained a victory over her competitor; while the emperor countenanced *John* of *Bavaria*, who having reſigned his biſhopric, in conſequence of a diſpenſation from the pope, eſpouſed *Elizabeth de Gorlitz*, ducheſs of *Luxemburg*, after *Sigiſmund* had promiſed to inveſt him with the dominions in diſpute, as fiefs devolved to the empire, upon the demiſe of the laſt poſſeſſor without male iſſue. Thus ſupported, both parties carried on the war with equal vigour. *John* equipped a fleet at *Dordrecht* and the *Brill*, with which he inſulted the coaſt, and ſupriſed ſome of the towns in *Holland*; while the duke of *Brabant* ſent an army into the field, in order to maintain the pretenſions of his wife.

HIS operations, however, were not ſucceſsful; and *John* having made himſelf maſter of *Rotterdam*, the duke was fain to make advances towards a pacification. A congreſs being accordingly held at *Gorcum*, peace was concluded, on condition that the duke of *Brabant* ſhould appoint *John* of *Bavaria* governor of *Holland*, *Zealand*, and *Frieſland*, for the term of three years, and cede to him ſeveral towns; in conſideration of which *John* renounced his pretenſions to *Holland* and *Hainault*. *Sigiſmund*, for his part, acknowledged that this laſt province did not hold of the empire, and *Jaquelina* continued in poſſeſſion of it, without being ſollicited to do homage for the fief to the emperor of *Germany* [l].

[k] Idem ibid. [l] Hiſt. de Hainault. p. 375.

THE important affair of the ſchiſm being concluded, every thing elſe was regulated by the council, which at length broke up in its forty-fifth ſeſſion. The diſputes about religion ſtill raged with greater violence than ever. The decrees againſt the *Huſſites* were no ſooner publiſhed, than *Winceſlaus*, king of *Bohemia*, began to put them in execution, forbiding all communicants to partake of both ſpecies; a prohibition which incenſed the inhabitants of *Prague* to ſuch a degree, that they raiſed a deſperate tumult, forced the town-houſe, and murdered the magiſtrates who were concerned in publiſhing this order.

A tumult in Prague *by the* Huſſites.

A. D. 1419.

THE news of this maſſacre filled the court of *Winceſlaus* with the utmoſt conſternation, and made ſuch an impreſſion on that puſillanimous prince, that he was ſeized with an apoplexy, of which he died in a few days. *Sigiſmund* being acknowleged king of *Bohemia*, conferred the regency upon his brother's widow *Sophia*, who fortified herſelf in the caſtle of *Wiſrhade* againſt the *Thaborites*, or followers of *Ziſca*, who was at this time general of the *Huſſites*, and revenged the death of *Huſs* and *Jerome* of *Prague*, by committing the moſt terrible outrages.

A. D. 1420.

WITHOUT entering into the particulars of the war, in which *Bohemia* was involved by this perſecution, we ſhall only obſerve, that *Sigiſmund* having ſucceeded to his brother *Winceſlaus* in the kingdom of *Bohemia*, was, after his coronation, obliged to employ that army againſt the *Huſſites*, which he had raiſed for an expedition againſt the *Turks*. He could not reduce them to obedience; for as they had been incenſed to a degree of enthuſiaſtic rage, by the tyranny which had been exerciſed over their conſciences, and the cruelty with which they and their brethren had been perſecuted, they were now alſo encouraged to perſevere in their own defence, by ſeveral advantages which they had gained over the king's troops, by the valour and conduct of *John Ziſca*, who is ſaid to have retorted thoſe barbarities upon the catholic party, to have ſacrificed the prieſts, and to have deſtroyed the churches with fire and ſword [m]. Nor was this famous leader's ſagacity inferior to his valour. *Sophia*, being informed that he was in the territory of *Pilſen* with an handful of *Thaborites*, aſſembled a body of troops, which were reinforced by the lord of *Schwamberg*, and marched againſt him, in hope of ſurprizing him unawares; but the event did not anſwer his expectation. *Ziſca*, knowing himſelf too weak for ſuch a formidable oppoſition, had recourſe to a ſtratagem,

Sigiſmund *enters that kingdom*,

---

[m] Chron. Magd. ex MEIB. tom. ii. p. 255.

and is defeated by Ziſca, *chief of the* Huſſites.

which ſucceeded according to his wiſh. He poſted his troops behind hedges, in ſuch a manner, that the emperor's cavalry could not act againſt them without diſmounting; and the women, according to his direction, went forth from this ſort of intrenchment with bundles of linen in their arms, like ſo many children in ſwaddling cloaths, whom they offered as hoſtages for their huſbands: perceiving that the imperial horſemen had alighted in order to attack on foot, they found means to looſe their bundles, by which the ſpurs and arms of the troopers were ſo entangled, that they could not diſengage themſelves; and *Ziſca*, ſeizing that opportunity, attacked them with great fury, cut in pieces the beſt part of them, and obliged the reſt to conſult their ſafety by flight[n].

Sigiſmund *puts the frontiers of* Hungary *in a poſture of defence againſt the* Turks.

Sends ſuccours to the regent of Bohemia.

Convokes a diet at Brin.

Ziſca *defeats the duke of* Auſtria.

THO' *Sigiſmund* was very well informed of all theſe diſorders, he did not think himſelf in a condition to repreſs them, becauſe the fear of a *Turkiſh* invaſion detained him in his kingdom of *Hungary:* and indeed *Mahomet* I. who reſided at *Adrianople*, was employed in preparations for making an irruption into that kingdom; but the vigilance of *Sigiſmund*, who fortified all the frontier places, diſconcerted his deſign, and he turned his forces againſt the *Greeks*. The emperor was no ſooner delivered of this apprehenſion, than he ſent ſuccours to enable *Sophia* to act againſt *Ziſca*, who was by this time deprived of his eyeſight, and the arrival of theſe troops enabled him to obtain a truce for four months, at the expiration of which the *Huſſites* broke out in a general revolt againſt the emperor. Alarmed at this rebellion, *Sigiſmund* convoked a diet at *Brin*, the capital of *Moravia*, where he received affectionate addreſſes from all the towns and noblemen of *Bohemia*; but abſolutely refuſed liberty of conſcience to the inhabitants of *Prague*, a great number of whom retired to their general at *Thabor*, who continued to ſurprize and pillage the towns and caſtles belonging to the catholics, ſo as to find his followers and his fame daily increaſed. He obtained a complete victory over *Albert*, duke of *Auſtria*, and *Henry de Kravatz*, commandant of *Moravia*; then he made himſelf maſter of the new town of *Prague*, and reduced the citadel of *Wiſrhade*, which, however, was afterwards retaken by the imperialiſts[o].

War carried on by Eric, *king of* Denmark, *againſt the*

WHILE the chief of the *Huſſites* proceeded in his operations with ſuch rapidity of ſucceſs, *Lower Germany* was expoſed to the calamities of war, by a quarrel between *Eric*, king of *Denmark*, and the princes of *Holſtein*, who refuſed to hold the duchy of *Sleſwic* as a fief of the *Daniſh* crown.

---

[n] Hiſt. Huſs, t. i. l. 6.

[o] Idem ibid.

princes of Holſtein.

They were ſupported in their right of independency by their uncle *Henry*, duke of *Brunſwic-Lunenburg*, and the dukes of *Pomerania, Mecklenburgh*, and *Stetin*; and though the emperor decided in favour of the *Daniſh* king, the princes choſe rather to hazard the determination of arms, than comply with a ſentence which they deemed oppreſſive and unjuſt. *Eric* equipped a formidable fleet, and aſſembled a numerous army, with which he marched into the duchy of *Sleſwic*, where he built ſeveral forts, and gained other advantages; while the counts of *Holſtein* and their allies, reinforced by the *Frieſlanders, Hamburghers*, and *Henry* of *Oſnabrug*, took the field, in order to oppoſe his operations. The war was carried on with various ſucceſs for ſome time, until *Eric* was totally defeated in the battle fought at *Immerſwed* in *Jutland*, and compelled to ſue for a truce, during which he intreated the emperor to act the part of mediator between him and his enemies; and, leſt his interpoſition ſhould not prove effectual, he ſtrengthened his intereſt, by forming alliances with the towns of *Wandalia*, which afterwards enabled him to maintain the war [p].

Sigiſmund *marches into* Bohemia,

But, before *Sigiſmund* could effect this accommodation, he was obliged to take meaſures for appeaſing the troubles of *Bohemia*, which ſtill groaned under the miſeries of a religious war. With this view he aſſembled a body of troops, and being joined by *Frederic*, elector of *Brandenburg, William* and *Frederic the Warlike*, marquiſſes of *Miſnia, Albert*, duke of *Auſtria*, and the princes of *Bavaria*, he inveſted *Prague*, which was poſſeſſed by the *Thaborites*; but in one of his attacks he was repulſed by *Ziſca* with great ſlaughter, and obliged to retreat into *Moravia*, while the *Huſſites* undertook the ſiege of *Wiſrhade*, in which they proceeded with incredible vigour. *Sigiſmund* having recruited his army in *Moravia*, marched to the relief of this fortreſs, and attacking *Ziſca* in his intrenchments, had the mortification to ſee his whole army cut in pieces. That ſame day the citadel of *Wiſrhade* ſurrendered to the *Huſſites*, who, elevated with the repeated advantages they had obtained over *Sigiſmund*, reſolved to chooſe another ſovereign, who ſhould maintain them in their religious liberties. They accordingly, by a ſolemn embaſſy, offered the crown of *Bohemia* to *Jagellon*, king of *Poland*; and he declining the proffer, they made a tender of it to *Corebut*, nephew to the duke of *Lithuania*: and in the mean time, until that prince ſhould aſſume the

and is defeated by Ziſca.

The Huſſites *offer the crown of* Bohemia *to* Jagellon, *king of* Poland, reins of government, they choſe a regency of twenty perſons, to take charge of the adminiſtration.

---

[p] Huitfeld. Hiſt. Dan. t. iv.

and afterwards to Corebut, *nephew to the grand duke of* Lithuania. A. D. 1421.

THE emperor, alarmed at theſe proceedings, ſent a commiſſary to their diet, with propoſals of accommodation, which they rejected: while the army of cruſards, raiſed in *Germany* to war againſt the *Huſſites*, and commanded by the archbiſhop of *Triers*, was defeated and diſperſed by the invincible *Ziſca*. *Sigiſmund* in perſon had no better ſucceſs: he levied another army, advanced into *Bohemia*, made himſelf maſter of *Cuttemburg*, and reſolved to beſiege *Breda*, when *Ziſca* attacking him with his uſual impetuoſity, routed the imperialiſts, of whom a great number was ſlain, acquired as much plunder as loaded forty waggons, and compelled the emperor to take refuge in *Hungary*.

The emperor is again worſted by Ziſca. 1422.

IT was immediately after this battle that *Corebut* made his entry into *Prague*, where the catholics proteſted againſt his election, which was equally diſagreeable to the *Thaborites* under *Ziſca*, who profeſſed themſelves enemies to monarchical government. The firſt ſtep he took was to beſiege *Carlſtein*, whither the catholics had tranſported the crown; but the beſieged made ſuch an obſtinate defence, that he was obliged to abandon the enterprize, eſpecially as he underſtood ſome diſturbances were raiſed in *Prague* by the *Thaborites*, whom he quelled and puniſhed with great ſeverity.

Corebut *arrives at* Prague. 1423.

ZISCA, incenſed at his behaviour, and jealous of his power, exhorted the *Huſſites* to ſend him back to his own country; and they refuſing to cloſe with this advice, he reſolved to ruin the city of *Prague*. As a previous ſtep to the execution of this deſign, he defeated the count *de Vartemberg*, who endeavoured to hinder him from ſurprizing *Graditz*, which he afterwards entered in triumph. He expelled from the kingdom *Albert* of *Auſtria*, to whom the emperor had ceded *Moravia*, ravaged the circle of *Pilſen*, defeated *Corebut*, compelled that prince to abdicate the crown of *Bohemia*, and entered *Prague*, where he was received with great ſplendour and magnificence [q]. In a word, the repeated victories of this chieftain compelled *Sigiſmund* to propoſe ſuch honourable and advantageous terms of peace, that *Ziſca* ſet out in order to conclude the accommodation, in a perſonal conference with the emperor; but he was unfortunately infected with the plague, of which he died upon the road. His death, no doubt, produced a manifeſt change in the affairs of the *Huſſites*. Nevertheleſs their reſolution did not fail; nor did they ſlacken in their zeal for the common cauſe,

Ziſca *declares himſelf enemy to* Corebut, *whom he defeats, and compels to abdicate the throne.* A. D. 1424.

Ziſca *dies of the plague.*

---

[q] ÆN. SYLV. Hiſt. Bohem. p. 70.

which they cheriſhed to ſuch a degree of ſuperſtitious policy, as to ſtretch the ſkin of their deceaſed captain upon a drum, that the ſound might awake the remembrance of his valour, and inſpire them with the notion that they ſtill marched to battle under the auſpices of *Ziſca* [r].

The emperor pronounces a final ſentence againſt the princes of Holſtein.

SIGISMUND, inſtead of proſecuting the *Bohemian* war, indulged the indolence of his diſpoſition at *Buda*, where he was viſited by *Eric*, king of *Denmark*, who ſummoned the counts of *Holſtein* to the tribunal of the emperor, and obtained a final ſentence, importing, that all the ſouthern *Jutland*, comprehending the towns of *Sleſwic* and *Gottorp*, with the *Daniſh* foreſt, the iſle of *Alſen*, and the province commonly called *Friſchiden*, with all their rights and dependencies, did belong, under the title of a direct and profitable domain, to the crown of *Denmark* [s]. In the ſame aſſembly at *Buda*, *Sigiſmund* determined a diſpute between the duke of *Savoy* and the prince of *Orange*, which laſt laid claim to the county of *Geneva*, in right of his great aunt; but, as the emperor had already granted the inveſtiture of this county to *Amadeus* VIII. he now decided the proceſs in his favour, and forbad *Lewis de Chalon*, prince of *Orange*, to aſſume the quality or arms belonging to the count of *Geneva* [t].

The Teutonic *order degenerates from the valour of their predeceſſors.*

ABOUT this period the knights of the *Teutonic* order, of which ſome account hath already been given, degenerating from the courage and virtue of their predeceſſors, loſt a great part of *Pruſſia*, which was wreſted from them by the *Poles*, who had defeated them in ſeveral engagements. From this date we may derive the decay of the knights in thoſe countries; for they continued to ſuſtain one loſs on the back of another, and to forfeit their reputation more and more, notwithſtanding ſome aſſiſtance which they received from *Sigiſmund*, in the heat of his operations againſt the *Huſſites*; which laſt entering *Sileſia*, and ſeparating into three bodies, at the ſame time attacked *Hungary*, *Poland*, and *Auſtria*, which they ravaged without mercy [u].

The Huſſites *ravage* Hungary, Poland, *and* Auſtria.

Troubles in Holland *and* Brabant.

WHILE *Bohemia* continued a prey to theſe ravages, *Holland* and *Brabant* did not enjoy tranquillity. Theſe unhappy provinces were expoſed to the cruelties of a civil war, by the partizans of *John* of *Bavaria* and the adherents of *Jaquelina*, who exerciſed all ſorts of violence upon each other. That princeſs, diſguſted by the duke of *Brabant* her huſband, had prevailed upon *Benedict*, the antipope, to annul the marriage, and actually given her hand to the duke of *Glouceſter*, brother of *Henry* V. king of *England*, who reſolved to recover by force of arms the dominions of his new wife, which were in poſſeſſion of her former huſband. The duke of *Brabant* made preparations to oppoſe his progreſs; and being aſſiſted underhand by *Philip*, duke of *Burgundy*, defeated the troops which the duke of *Glouceſter* had ſent to ſupport the intereſt of the princeſs. Her laſt marriage was diſſolved by a ſentence of pope *Martin*; but as the duke of *Brabant* died in a few months after the deciſion, *Jaquelina* flattered herſelf with the hope of taking peaceable poſſeſſion of her own dominions. In this diſappointment, however, ſhe was miſtaken. The duke of *Burgundy* had employed emiſſaries in *Hainault*, *Frieſland*, *Holland*, and *Zealand*, to detach their inclination from her government; and they ſucceeded ſo well in their endeavours, that the greateſt part of the nobility and people refuſed to acknowlege her as their ſovereign. In this emergency ſhe referred her caſe to the duke, who, before he would undertake the office of mediator, obliged her to put the government of her dominions in his hands, and declare him her ſucceſſor.

---

[r] THEOB. Bell. Huſſ. p. 115.

[s] PONTAN. Hiſt. Dan.

[t] Hiſt. Gen. de Savoye, t. i. p. 462.

[u] SPOND. Cont. BARON, t. ii. p. 285.

Jaquelina *declares the duke of* Burgundy *her ſucceſſor.*

A. D. 1425.

IN this manner *Philip* acquired *Hainault*, *Holland*, *Zealand*, and *Frieſland*. He had already purchaſed the reverſion of *Zutphen* and *Namure*; and he inherited the duchies of *Brabant*, *Lothier*, *Limbourg*, and the marquiſate of *Antwerp*, by the death of his kinſman *Philip* of *Brabant*, who died without iſſue. All theſe acquiſitions, added to *Flanders*, *Artois*, the two *Burgundies*, and ſeveral towns ſituated upon the *Somme*, rendered *Philip* one of the moſt powerful princes of *Europe*[x].

Progreſs of the Thaborites *in* Bohemia.

A. D. 1426.

BOHEMIA was ſtill in agitation. The fanaticks were divided into three bodies, which aſſumed the appellations of *Thaborites*, *Orphans*, and *Horebites*; and their chief general was *Procopius the Shaven*, whom *Ziſca* had recommended as his ſucceſſor in command. This leader, who had been a prieſt, ſeemed to emulate his predeceſſor in courage, capacity, cruelty, enthuſiaſm, and ſucceſs. He reduced the town of *Graditz* to aſhes, committed terrible outrages againſt the catholics; defeated the duke of *Auſtria*, and obtained a complete victory over a numerous army which had been raiſed by the princes of *Germany*, and attacked the *Thaborites* in their intrenchments. After having obtained this ſignal advantage, *Procopius* reduced *Kamenitz*, routed *Meinard de Maiſon Neuve*, pillaged *Auſtria*, took *Ritzen* on the confines of *Moravia*, and nothing ſeemed capable of reſiſting the torrent of his arms and his fortune[y].

---

[x] Hiſt. de Hainault, l. xii.

Sequel of the troubles in the north of Germany.

THE war in the north kept pace with the troubles in *Germany*. The princes of *Holſtein* refuſing to comply with the deciſion of the emperor touching *Sleſwic*, *Eric* levied a numerous army, in order to maintain his pretenſions, which, by the bye, were not very juſtly founded, inaſmuch as neither he nor *Sigiſmund* had alleged any good reaſon to prove, that *Sleſwic* alone was a perſonal fief, when all the other fiefs of the empire were hereditary. The towns of *Wandalia*, which had formerly eſpouſed his intereſt, conſcious of *Sigiſmund's* partial deciſion, and tired of a long war, which interrupted their commerce and laid waſte their country, preſented a remonſtrance to *Eric*, intreating him to liſten to equitable terms of accommodation; but he paying little regard to their repreſentations, they declared for the counts of *Holſtein*, and equipped a conſiderable fleet for their ſervice. Hoſtilities were immediately recommenced; and though the allies ſuſtained ſome diſadvantages, *Eric* not only made advances to an accommodation with the towns, but alſo prevailed upon the emperor to give them notice, that, as almoſt all the princes and towns of the empire had reſolved to join their forces for quelling the ſedition in *Bohemia*, it was incumbent upon them to make peace with the king of *Denmark*, that he, as well as they, might be at liberty to join in this confederation; and that in caſe they ſhould obſtinately perſiſt in acting offenſively againſt his *Daniſh* majeſty, he, the emperor, would take effectual meaſures to puniſh them for their contumacy and diſobedience. In order to ſtrengthen this intimation, he ſent *Nicholas Stack* to the city of *Lubec*, with propoſals of peace to the ſenate; from thence he repaired to the counts of *Holſtein*, who inſiſted upon the king of *Denmark's* declaring *Sleſwic* an hereditary fief; and as for *Eric*, he agreed to comply with every thing the emperor ſhould propoſe. A congreſs was appointed at *Nikoping*, in the iſle of *Falſter*; but as hoſtilities were not ſuſpended, the conferences produced no effect, becauſe the demands of the parties concerned roſe or fell according to the ſucceſs of their arms, which ſometimes declared for one ſide, and ſometimes for another. The princes of *Holſtein* offered to refer their cauſe to the determination of the pope; but rejected the emperor as judge or arbitrator, becauſe he was related to the king of *Denmark*. *Sigiſmund*, on the other hand, forbad all the eccleſiaſtical judges whatever to take cognizance of this diſpute, and or-

The emperor endeavours to mediate a peace between Eric *and the counts of* Holſtein.

Conferences begun at Nikoping.

---

[y] CZECHOR. p. 578.

dered the electors of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg*, together with the duke of *Lunenburg*, to ſupport *Eric* with their whole force, and compel the counts to obey the imperial decree. Perhaps this vigorous ſtep contributed to detach the cities of *Stralſund* and *Roſtock* from the confederacy; for they made a ſeparate peace with *Eric*, who, about this period, gained ſome advantages over the allies; but the negotiations begun at *Nikoping*, and afterwards carried on at *Helſenbourg*, proved altogether ineffectual [a].

They produce no effect.

A. D. 1427.

INDEED both parties were extremely obſtinate; nor did they abſtain from the moſt virulent recrimination. The confederated towns accuſed *Eric* of having aboliſhed the privileges and interrupted the freedom of trade, of oppreſſing the princes of *Holſtein*, and of being author of a war that deſolated the north of *Germany*. On the other hand, the king of *Denmark* reproached them as the favourers of rebellion, not only in the north, but alſo in *Bohemia*, where the *Thaborites* ſtill carried all before them, under the conduct of *Procopius the Shaven*. Not but theſe ſectaries were by this time divided into two factions, one of which, called the *Calixtins*, had favoured the return of *Corebut*, though they now ſhut him up in a monaſtery, on ſuſpicion of having carried on an intelligence with *Procopius*.

Both parties have recourſe to recrimination.

Procopius *ſtill domineers in* Bohemia.

Corebut *is ſhut up in a convent.*

A. D. 1428.

DURING the captivity of this prince, the *Thaborites* and *Orphans* ravaged *Sileſia*, took a number of ſtrong places, defeated the imperial army ſent thither to reduce them, under the command of *Henry*, cardinal of *Wincheſter*, made an irruption into *Moravia*, which they laid waſte; then pillaged the circle of *Glatz*, and proceeded in ſuch an uninterrupted courſe of victory, that the emperor was fain to ſue for peace, in a deputation to *Procopius*, who gave the deputies audience at *Guttemberg*, and was by this time heartily tired of a war, which kept him in a continual alarm. He prevailed upon the different orders of the kingdom to aſſemble at *Prague*, and propoſed that they ſhould receive *Sigiſmund* for their king, provided he would indulge them with liberty of conſcience. In a word, he ſent ſome noblemen of his adherents with propoſals of peace to the emperor, who was then at *Moravia*. A general truce was agreed to for three months, during which a diet was convoked at *Preſburg*, where *Procopius* appeared as chief of the *Bohemian* deputation, and demanded, in the name of his conſtituents, that they ſhould be allowed to communicate of both ſpecies; that *Sigiſmund*

The emperor ſends a deputation to the Thaborites.

A diet convoked at Preſburg.

1429.

---

[a] MEURSIUS Hiſt. Dan. ad an. 1328.

ſhould confirm all their privileges, and promiſe upon oath to defend them againſt all innovation.

The conferences break up, and hoſtilities are recommenced.

To theſe demands the emperor replied, that the firſt article was not in his power; and that, before he could grant the reſt, he muſt examine into the nature of thoſe immunities to which they alluded, and if he ſhould find them equitable, he would confirm them without heſitation. This anſwer was deemed evaſive, and even interpreted into a refuſal by the *Thaborites*; ſo that the negotiation was laid aſide, and hoſtilities recommenced. The *Huſſites*, to the number of 20,000 horſe and 30,000 foot, commanded by *Procopius*, *William de Roſtka*, and *John Smirzlik*, entered *Miſnia*, which they ravaged with fire and ſword; and having routed *Polleutz*, general of the troops ſent to the relief of that province by the emperor, ſubdued one place after another, until the whole country was reduced and pillaged. From thence they marched into *Thuringia*, which, finding in a poſture of defence, they immediately quitted, in order to fall upon *Franconia*, where they ravaged the duchy of *Cobourg*, obliged a number of princes and towns to redeem themſelves from plunder, and then returned to *Bohemia* with a very conſiderable booty [a].

The Thaborites *are every-where ſucceſsful.*

Diviſions among the princes of the empire.
A. D. 1430.

Had the princes of the empire united againſt theſe adventurers, their career, in all probability, would have been ſtopped long before this period; but ſuch unanimity was prevented by inteſtine diviſions and feuds that hardly ever ceaſed to rage among the towns and noblemen. *Conrad*, archbiſhop of *Mentz*, having been appointed *Sigiſmund*'s vicar in the empire, the electors of *Saxony* and the *Palatinate* took umbrage at his being inveſted with a dignity to which they claimed pretenſions; and he prudently reſigned the office, rather than endanger the public peace: but, notwithſtanding his peaceful diſpoſition, he was afterwards involved in an obſtinate war with the landgrave of *Heſſe*. *Ernest* and *Lewis*, dukes of *Bavaria*, had been for ſeveral years at variance about ſome fiefs of that province; and the electorate of *Triers* was ſubjected to the horrors of a civil war, by two competitors for the archbiſhopric [b].

The kingdom of *Hungary* was no leſs expoſed to continual alarms from the incurſions of the *Turks*, under *Amurath* II. who, without paying any regard to the truce ſubſiſting between him and *Sigiſmund*, committed terrible outdges in *Servia*, and generally defeated the ſmall bodies of roops which the emperor ſent to oppoſe his progreſs. All emonſtrances to the ſoltan having proved ineffectual, *Sigiſ-mund* had recourſe to *Uladiſlaus*, king of *Poland*, and his rother *Withond*, grand duke of *Lithuania*, with whom he ad an interview at *Lutzko* in *Upper Vohinia*, where a congreſs was opened to deliberate upon the affairs of *Hungary*, and the reduction of the rebels in *Bohemia*: but the *Pole* ſeemed extremely backward in engaging himſelf in theſe troubles. He had no affection for the perſon of *Sigiſmund*, who had ſupported the *Teutonic* order in their enterprizes againſt the *Poles*; and he was far from being deſirous of entailing upon himſelf a war with the *Huſſites* of *Bohemia*, who were by this time ſo much accuſtomed to victory, and even deemed altogether invincible. He therefore evaded the ſollicitations of the emperor when he demanded ſuccours, and propoſed, that the method of negotiation ſhould be tried, preferably to the hazards of war.

---

[a] Byzinius Diarium Bell. Huſſ.

[b] Barre, t. vii. p. 324.

Sigiſmund *has an interview with the king of* Poland, *and the grand duke of* Lithuania *at* Lutzko.

At this aſſembly *Sigiſmund* reſolved to erect the duchy of *Lithuania* into a kingdom; and *Withond*'s vanity was ſo much flattered by the propoſal, that his brother *Uladiſlaus* in vain uſed all his rhetoric and influence to divert him from ſuch an extravagant project: nor did he pay the leaſt regard to the remonſtrances of the *Poles*, who gave him to underſtand, that they would never conſent to any ſcheme ſo prejudicial to their country, which, by the erection of *Lithuania* into a kingdom, would be diſmembered of one of its faireſt provinces. *Uladiſlaus*, perceiving the obſtinacy of his brother, ſollicited the interpoſition and good offices of pope *Martin* V. who, in pathetic letters to *Sigiſmund* and *Withond*, conjured them to deſiſt from the proſecution of a deſign which would certainly kindle a civil war in *Europe*, and involve their allies in confuſion and calamity. The emperor and duke lent a deaf ear to all theſe inſinuations, and the day was fixed for the coronation; when *Uladiſlaus*, thinking it incumbent upon him to exert himſelf on this occaſion, cauſed the emperor's envoys to be apprehended in their journey to *Lithuania*, while all the nobility of *Poland* took arms and diſtributed themſelves in different bodies, in order to guard the paſſages, and oppoſe the progreſs of *Sigiſmund*'s ambaſſadors, who had halted in *Frankfort* on the *Oder*.

He reſolves to erect Lithuania *into a kingdom.*

The project is oppoſed by the Poles.

Withond, finding it would be impracticable for him to obtain the crown without the conſent of the *Poles*, affected to lay aſide the ſcheme, reconciled himſelf with his brother, and died at *Trocko*, whither he had accompanied *Uladiſlaus*, who had come to make him a friendly viſit.

The grand duke dies at Troc-ko.

WHILE this idle ſcheme was on the carpet, the *Turks* extended their devaſtations with impunity, and the *Thaborites* ravaged *Bohemia* and the neighbourhood without controul [c].

A cruſade publiſhed againſt them.
A. D. 1431.

POPE *Martin* being informed of this their progreſs, had ſent orders to cardinal *Julian*, who was legate *a latere* at the court of *Sigiſmund*, to preſs the princes of *Germany* to engage in the cruſade which he had ordained againſt thoſe heretics. It was accordingly publiſhed anew at the diet of *Nuremberg*, where the emperor had aſſembled the electors and other princes, eccleſiaſtic as well as ſecular, a great many of whom embarked as volunteers in the expedition; and that each might contribute proportionably to the expence, *Sigiſmund*, with their own conſent, made a regulation, which is the firſt regiſter that ever was made for diſtinguiſhing the quota of money or ſoldiers to be furniſhed by each prince and ſtate, not only for this purpoſe, but alſo for every other occaſion, in which the intereſt of the empire might be concerned. In conſequence of this regulation, the princes prepared for the war againſt the *Huſſites*, which they undertook with the more eagerneſs, becauſe they were excited by freſh inſtances of *Eugenius* IV. who had ſucceeded *Martin* V. lately deceaſed. The army which they aſſembled conſiſted of 40,000 horſe and the ſame number of infantry: the emperor beſtowed the command upon *Frederic*, marquis of *Brandenburg*, and the legate reſolved to attend the expedition in perſon. With theſe forces they marched into *Bohemia*, and committed horrible barbarities upon the *Huſſites* that fell in their way; but as ſoon as the forces of that ſect appeared, they were ſeized with an univerſal panic, and fled with great precipitation, notwithſtanding all the remonſtrances, prayers, and threats, of the legate, who finding his endeavours ineffectual, thought proper to fly with the reſt. Such was the hurry and trepidation with which they fled, that all their baggage, furniture, and riches, together with the croſs of the legation, and veſtments of the legate, fell into the hands of the enemy [d].

The forces of the empire march into Bohemia, *and are routed.*

ALBERT of *Auſtria*, who had begun his march in order to reinforce the imperial army, was obliged to return to *Moravia*, and thence to *Auſtria*, before *Procopius*, ſurnamed *the Little*, in contradiſtinction to the other of that name, who had acquired the epithet of *Great Chieftain*. He found all the villages abandoned, and pillaged the whole country without oppoſition. Then joining his nameſake, they entered *Hungary*, where they reduced ſeveral places, and enriched themſelves with booty; but ſome diſputes ariſing between the *Orphans* and *Thaborites*, the two generals parted. *Procopius the Shaven* marching towards *Moravia*, while the other remained in *Hungary*, though it would have been more for his advantage to retire with the plunder he had acquired; for the noblemen of *Hungary* no ſooner underſtood that the *Huſſites* were divided, than they took the field, under the command of *Rozgon*, governor of *Hava*, and advancing to the river *Wag* gave battle to the *Orphans*, who were intirely defeated; ſo that ſcarce 2000 returned to *Bohemia* with *Procopius* [e].

---

[c] DUGLASS. Hiſt. Polon l. ii.

[d] Cochl. in Hiſt. Huſs, lib. vi. ÆN. Hiſt. Boem. c. xlviii. MECHOV. in reb. Polonic. lib. iv. c. 52.

The Huſſites *enter* Hungary, *and are defeated.*

Cardinal *Julian*, after his defeat, returned to *Nuremberg*, and adviſed *Sigiſmund* to ſummon the *Bohemians* to the council at *Baſil*, in which he, the cardinal, was appointed to preſide. Pope *Martin* V. had nominated *Julian* as his repreſentative at this aſſembly, to concert meaſures for aboliſhing hereſy, and reſtoring the tranquillity of the church; and this nomination was now confirmed by his ſucceſſor *Eugenius* IV. who, nevertheleſs, reſolved to transfer the council from *Baſil* to *Bologna*, where he might preſide in perſon. His pretence for this tranſlation was, that it would facilitate the union of the *Greek* and *Roman* churches: but his real motive was the dread of the *Huſſite* intereſt, and the armies of *Auſtria* and *Burgundy*, which hovered over the city of *Baſil*. In vain did the cardinal repreſent to his holineſs the bad conſequences that would attend ſuch a tranſlation; in vain were his repreſentations ſupported by repeated remonſtrances of the emperor, who refuted all the reaſons *Eugenius* urged for removing that aſſembly. The pope iſſued a bull for diſſolving the council of *Baſil*, and convoking another at *Bologna*; while the fathers, already aſſembled, continued their ſeſſion, to which the *Bohemians* were invited in conſequence of *Julian*'s advice [f].

Pope Eugenius *iſſues a bull for diſſolving the council at* Baſil.

Mean while the emperor aſſembled a diet at *Preſburg*, to which he ſummoned the *Bohemians*, who ſent thither deputies; though they could not be perſuaded to enter the town, leſt they ſhould be detained, but ſojourned in tents pitched in the open field, where the conferences were begun with all the marks of ſincerity on both ſides. *Sigiſmund* expreſſed his ſurprize and concern at their rejecting his adminiſtration, after they had been governed by his father and grandfather;

Diet at Preſburg.

---

[e] Theob. Bell. Huſſ. c. 77.

[f] Pagi, Brev. Geſt. Pont. Rom. t. iv. p. 527.

and promiſed to redreſs all their grievances, provided they would acknowlege him as their ſovereign. The deputies replied, that their refuſal of him was not owing to any averſion which the nation entertained for his perſon, but the effect of their being overawed by the adverſe armies which had ravaged the kingdom. They ſaid the *Bohemians* had no objection to the propoſal of ſending deputies to *Baſil*, provided proper ſecurity could be given for the ſafety of their perſons: but that they had a right to take this precaution, conſidering the treatment of *John Huſs* and *Jerome* of *Prague*, who had been burnt at *Conſtance*, in direct oppoſition to public faith.

The Bohemians *inſiſt upon a ſecurity for the perſonal ſafety of their deputies.*

THE emperor, who could not help aſſenting in his heart to the truth of what they alleged, aſſured them he would convoke the aſſembly at *Egra*, where they ſhould be informed of the intentions of the council, and ſatisfied with reſpect to the ſecurity they demanded. Accordingly, the *Bohemian* deputies and thoſe of the council, together with *Frederic*, elector of *Brandenburg*, *John*, duke of *Bavaria*, and ſeveral other princes of the empire, repairing to that place at the appointed time, the *Huſſites* demanded hoſtages of the nobility, for the ſafety of thoſe they ſhould ſend to the council; and, after great and violent altercation, the princes and deputies aſſembled agreed to engage their word for the ſafety of the *Bohemians*, and a ſafe-conduct was expedited for them at *Baſil* in the moſt ample form [g].

An aſſembly at Egra. A. D. 1432.

SIGISMUND having taken theſe meaſures for reſtoring the quiet and tranquillity of *Bohemia*, and appointed *William*, duke of *Bavaria*, protector of the council, choſe this conjuncture to paſs the *Alps*, and repair to *Milan*. In that city he received the iron crown from the hands of the archbiſhop, together with the ring, the ſword, the ſcepter, and the golden apple; though *Philip*, duke of *Milan*, would not aſſiſt at the ceremony, but ſtaid at *Placentia*, on pretence of an indiſpoſition. The real cauſe, however, was a grudge which he had conceived againſt the emperor, whom he ſuſpected of an attachment to the *Florentines* and *Venetians*, the profeſſed enemies of *Philip*. By this ſuſpicion he was altogether alienated from *Sigiſmund*, who had come to *Italy* on his invitation, though he now refuſed to admit him with a few attendants into the city of *Milan*, which he wanted to ſee out of pure curioſity [h]. This inſtance of diſreſpect, together with the non-performance of the promiſe he had made to aſſiſt the emperor with money and troops, provoked *Sigiſmund* to ſuch

Cardinal Julian *repairs to the council of* Baſil, *and* Sigiſmund *to* Italy. *He is crowned at* Milan.

Is incenſed againſt the duke of Milan.

---

[g] THEOB. Bell. Huſſit. ubi ſupra.

[h] COR. Hiſt. Mediol. par. 5. BLOND. iii. Dec. 4 & 5.

a degree, that he became the duke's implacable enemy. Nevertheleſs, he found it convenient to diſſemble his reſentment, and even to reject the offers of the *Genoeſe*, who having been for ſome years oppreſſed by *Viſconti*, made a tender of their city and territory to *Sigiſmund*, which he declined accepting, that he might not add ſuch a powerful prince as the duke of *Milan* to the number of his enemies.

Mean while he employed his whole attention in compromiſing the difference between pope *Eugenius* and the council. The fathers aſſembled at *Baſil* demanded his protection againſt the pope, who had diſſolved the council; and this being granted, they ſent a legate to perſuade *Eugenius* to annul what he had done in prejudice of their deliberations; or in caſe he ſhould not revoke the diſſolution of the council within the term of ninety days, to declare they would proceed againſt him in the ſevereſt manner. He was accordingly declared contumacious, and ſummoned to appear in perſon, or by proxy, to give an account of his conduct; and as he did not comply with this citation, they certainly would have proceeded to his depoſition, had not the emperor interpoſed his mediation, in conſequence of which the pope confirmed the council of *Baſil*.

He at the ſame time impowered them to concert meaſures for the reformation of manners, as well as the extinction of hereſy; while *Sigiſmund*, having ſucceeded in his endeavours, reſolved to be crowned at *Rome*, after having wintered at *Parma* and *Placentia*. When he approached the city, the pope ſent out ſeveral cardinals, prelates, and *Roman* noblemen, together with a great part of the clergy and people, who conducted him to *Rome* with great magnificence. He was received by the pope at the ſteps of the *Vatican* church, with the uſual ceremony, and on the day of *Pentecoſt* crowned with the appellation of emperor and *Auguſtus* [l], after he had taken an oath of fidelity to the church, and truckled to the pope in all his demands. Having ſtaid ſome time at *Rome*, he retired to *Ferrara*, and afterwards to *Mantua*, where he created *John Franciſco Gonzaga*, lord of that city, a marquis, and allowed him to bear the imperial arms. He afterwards croſſed the *Alps*; and, what was ſingular in his journey, he quitted *Italy* in enmity to the duke of *Milan*, who had invited him to that country, and in friendſhip with the *Venetians*, whom he had formerly mortally hated [k] (A). At

A. D. 1433.

Crowned at Rome.

Creates Gonzaga *marquis of* Mantua.

---

[l] Spond. Cont. tom. ii. p. 313. Ant. tit. xxii. c. 10. ſect. 1.

[k] Blond. iii. Dec. 5.

(A) While the emperor was at *Baſil*, embaſſadors are ſaid to have arrived from the *Turks* with offers of a perpetual peace, and mag-

Negotiation between the fathers of the council and the Huſſites,

At this time the fathers of the council of *Baſil* were employed in a negotiation with the deputies of the *Huſſites*, whom they wanted to re-incloſe within the pale of the church. They had ſent *Procopius the Shaven*, at the head of their deputies, to *Baſil*; and after a fruitleſs diſpute with the catholics, which laſted fifty days, he returned to *Bohemia*, made an alliance with the king of *Poland*, and ravaged the new march of *Brandenburg*, belonging to the knights of the *Teutonic* order, whom they conſidered as the emperor's adherents.

During theſe deliberations, the emperor being informed that the *Huſſites* began to diſagree among themſelves, and that the barons and nobility of that ſect, who could not bear the tyranny of their chiefs, had ſeparated from the reſt in a diſtinct body, he reſolved to draw towards *Bohemia*, in order to take the advantage of this diviſion. Beſides, he foreſaw that the difference between the council and the pope could never be totally determined, while the firſt perſiſted in the opinion of its ſuperiority over the pope, and he continued to arrogate to himſelf a pre-eminence over the council.

who are defeated by the catholics.

His imperial majeſty therefore ſet out for *Germany*, and on his arrival at *Ulm*, received information that the *Thaborites*, who had for ſeveral months been engaged in the ſiege of *Pilſen*, had been totally defeated by the catholics, whom the *Bohemian* barons, already mentioned, had joined in this expedition.

The *Calixtins*, and almoſt all the nobility of *Bohemia*, agreed to the famous treaty of peace called *Compactata*, which was drawn up by the biſhops in council; but the *Orphans* and *Thaborites* oppoſing it with all their might, *Riſemberg* and *Maiſon Neuve*, at the head of the nobleſſe, attacked them unawares in the city of *Prague*, and cut 20,000 of them in pieces on the ſpot. Fluſhed with this ſucceſs, they marched againſt *Procopius the Shaven*, who was employed in the ſiege of *Pilſen*, and charged him ſuch fury, that, notwithſtanding the incredible efforts he made, his troops were totally defeated, he himſelf being mortally wounded, and his nameſake left dead on the field of battle. The braveſt of

---

magnificent preſents to *Sigiſmund*, who ordered a throne to be erected in the church, where he received them with great ſtate, embraced the propoſals of peace, accepted the preſents, acted munificently towards the ambaſſadors, and ſent by them royal teſtimonies of his eſteem for their monarch (1).

(1) *Krantz. Sax.* ii. c. 22.

A. D. 1434.

the priſoners were burnt alive in a large barn; thoſe that fled were purſued, and maſſacred without mercy; and, in a word, the whole ſect was utterly exterminated.

Lewis, duke of Bavaria, *of* Ingoldſtadt, *is put to the ban of the empire.*

SIGISMUND did not fail to avail himſelf of this conjuncture, in his endeavours to regain the affection of both parties; and he managed matters with ſuch dexterity, by means of ambaſſadors, that they afterwards owned him as the lawful heir of his brother *Winceſlaus*: and when he advanced as far as *Ratiſbon*, to hold a general diet of the empire, the deputies of the ſtates of *Bohemia*, and of the remains of the *Thaborites*, went thither, and did homage to him as to their king. But, in the mean time, he was obliged to employ his attention in remedying other diſorders of the empire. *Lewis*, duke of *Bavaria*, of *Ingoldſtadt*, being accuſed of tyranny, extortion, peculation, robbery, and ſacrilege, was ſummoned to his trial at the diet of *Ulm*; and as he refuſed to appear, the emperor put him to the ban of the empire. In purſuance of this ſentence, the biſhops and noblemen in the neighbourhood declared war againſt him, and levied troops to make repriſals on his dominions; but he averted the ſtorm, by making his ſubmiſſion to *Sigiſmund*, who pardoned him, on condition that he would make good the damage he had done to his neighbours, and renounce all the rights he had to the ſovereignty of *Donawert*, which henceforward enjoyed the liberty of an imperial town.

Diet at Frankfort *the emperor confirms the houſe of* Miſnia *in poſſeſſion of the electorate of* Saxony.

WITH reſpect to the reſtitution he conſented to make, it was referred to the diet which the emperor convoked at *Frankfort*, in order to determine the difference between *Frederic the Warlike*, marquis of *Miſnia*, *Lewis* count palatine, the marquis of *Brandenburg*, and *Eric* V. of *Saxe-Lawembourg*, who were competitors for the electorate of *Saxony*, vacant by the death of *Albert* III. the laſt of the electoral branch of the antient family of *Aſcania*. The emperor, upon the demiſe of this prince, ten years ago, had ſequeſtered the electorate *per interim*, and declared *Frederic the Warlike* elector of *Saxony*, as a fief devolved to the empire; but *Eric* of *Lawembourg* appealed to pope *Martin* V. and afterwards to the council of *Baſil*; and *Frederic*, ſurnamed *the Peaceable*, ſon and ſucceſſor of *Frederic the Warlike*, having proteſted againſt this ſtep, as an encroachment upon the *German* liberty, *Sigiſmund* iſſued an imperial decree, importing, that the cognizance of fiefs, the adminiſtration of juſtice, and impoſition of taxes in *Germany*, had no dependence upon the church, but were the prerogatives of the emperor, electors, and princes; and, finally, at the diet of *Frankfort*, with the advice and conſent of the noblemen and deputies that were preſent, he confirmed the houſe of *Miſnia* in poſſeſſion of the duchy and electorate of *Saxony*, which belongs to it at this day; though the family of *Lawembourg* ſtill proteſt againſt their poſſeſſion [1] (B).

Ambaſſadors are ſent by the Bohemians *to the emperor.*

THE next diet was aſſembled at *Ratiſbon*, where *Sigiſmund* gave audience to ambaſſadors from *Bohemia*, who came to congratulate him upon his happy return to *Germany*, and to propoſe, that all the *Bohemians* ſhould be obliged to communicate of the two ſpecies: but this propoſal was rejected by the emperor; and one of the *Thaborites* belonging to the embaſſy chancing to die, his body was denied Chriſtian burial.

Death of Uladiſlaus *king of* Poland.

LEWIS of *Ingoldſtadt* having, at this aſſembly, made full ſatisfaction to the noblemen of *Bavaria* and *Suabia*, whom he had pillaged, the parties were reconciled, and the emperor repaired to *Alba Regalis*, where he received an embaſſy from young *Ladiſlaus*, king of *Poland*, notifying his father's death, and propoſing a match between him and the daughter of *Albert*, duke of *Auſtria*, who was ſon-in-law to the emperor; but this alliance was poſtponed, until the differences between *Hungary* and *Poland* could be adjuſted.

The Thaborites *are reconciled to the church of* Rome,

IT was during his reſidence in this place, that the deputation arrived from the ſtates of *Bohemia*, promiſing to acknowlege him as their ſovereign, and *Albert* his ſucceſſor, provided he would agree to certain articles, which he ſolemnly ſwore to fulfil: and this affair being ſo happily eſtabliſhed, he intereſted himſelf with the deputies of the council,

---

[1] FABRIC. orig. Sax. l. vii.

(B) One great deſign for convoking the diet at *Frankfort*, was to concert meaſures for a reformation of the empire, both with reſpect to its head and members; that the reciprocal duties of the emperor and ſubjects ſhould be aſcertained; that the rights and poſſeſſions of the empire might be recovered, and all her revenues ſettled upon a ſolid footing. But great difficulties aroſe, on account of the alienations which had been made by *Charles* ~~VI.~~ IV. in favour of thoſe who refuſed to part with their poſſeſſions, in which the kings at their election promiſed, upon oath, to maintain them: and though the grievances of the empire, which required an immediate remedy, were ſpecified in ſixteen articles, yet, as there was not preſent a ſufficient number of electors and princes to give a proper ſanction to their proceedings, the aſſembly was prorogued, and the attempt proved abortive (1).

(1) *Krantz.* ii. *Sax.* 25 & 11. *Wandal*, 35.

cil, in order to facilitate a total reconciliation between the *Bohemians* and the church. After abundance of diſputes and negotiations, an aſſembly was called at *Iglave*, in the dioceſe of *Olmutz*, at which theſe deputies, as well as thoſe of *Bohemia*, were preſent. There every thing was regulated by an authentic act, ſigned and ſealed by the emperor and deputies; in conſequence of which act, the *Bohemians*, having proteſted that they would for the future be obedient to the church of *Rome*, were abſolved from the excommunication, and other cenſures, which had been fulminated againſt them, and introduced into the church by the deputies of the council [m].

and abſolved from the ſentence of excommunication.

A. D. 1436.

THE emperor reſolving to eſtabliſh a ſolid peace in that kingdom, and concluding that nothing could contribute ſo much to re-involve it in new diſorders as the affair of church lands, which had been uſurped during the war, and might be a bone of contention, he made an accommodation upon that ſubject with the principal noblemen, who thought themſelves the more obliged to him for this condeſcenſion, as the deputies of the council had refuſed to comply with their demands. In order therefore to manifeſt their gratitude, they conducted him to *Prague*, where he was magnificently received, and crowned on the 24th of *Auguſt*. Then the barons and deputies of the cities did homage to him, and took the oath of allegiance [n].

Sigiſmund *is crowned at* Prague.

A SMALL reſidue of the *Thaborites* ſtill held out againſt *Sigiſmund*, under the auſpices of a gentleman called *John de Rohac*, who was beſieged in his caſtle, taken by ſtratagem, and hanged, with 100 of his adherents. The town of *Gratz* likewiſe refuſed to acknowlege the emperor for its ſovereign, and ſuſtained a long ſiege with great valour and perſeverance, until, being quite exhauſted, it ſubmitted on honourable terms.

He reduces the Thaborites *and the whole kingdom of* Bohemia *to obedience.*

IMMEDIATELY after this pacification, the empreſs *Barbara* was crowned queen of *Bohemia*, with great magnificence; and this ceremony being performed, *Sigiſmund* applied himſelf in earneſt to the police of the kingdom, which he found in terrible confuſion, occaſioned by the miſeries of the civil war. He eſtabliſhed tribunals, appointed *Maiſon-neuve* governor of *Bohemia*, recalled the clergy who had been exiled, and, in order to prevent all poſſibility of a religious revolt for the future, enliſted the remains of the *Thaborties* and *Orphans* to be employed againſt the *Turks*, who had made an irruption into *Hungary*.

Reforms the police, and enliſts the remains of the Huſſites,

---

[m] COCHL. lib. viii. [n] ÆN. SYLV. c. 52.

who defeat the Turks *in* Hungary. A. D. 1437.

THESE infidels had ravaged the country, and would have maintained themſelves in poſſeſſion of the whole diſtrict between the *Save* and the *Drave*, had not they been prevented by the *Thaborites* in the imperial pay, who attacked them with ſuch fury, that they were utterly defeated, with the loſs of 20,000 men, beſides thoſe who were butchered by the peaſants, or drowned in attempting to ſwim acroſs the *Save* [o].

He forfeits the favour of the Bohemians, *by tyrannizing over their conſciences.*

THO' *Sigiſmund* had addreſs enough to regain the affection of the *Bohemians*, his prudence was not ſufficient to preſerve it. His zeal for religion, and implicit obedience to the church, had entailed upon him the war with the *Huſſites*, in which he had ſuffered abundance of damage and diſgrace; and now, after he had concluded an advantageous peace with thoſe people, inſtead of improving the footing he had gained in their good-will, by gentle remonſtrances and a mild adminiſtration, the ſame indiſcreet zeal prompted him to tyrannize as formerly over their conſciences, and to uſe violence in compelling ſeveral of their principal men to abjure the religion which they profeſſed. Theſe arbitrary proceedings diſobliged his friends, and revived the hatred of his ſubjects, which increaſed to ſuch a degree, that, finding it uncomfortable and inconvenient to live among a people by whom he was not beloved, he reſolved to quit the kingdom, and retire to ſome place where he could end his days in peace and tranquillity. But before he could put this reſolution in practice, he found himſelf attacked by a diſtemper, which was the conſequence of poiſon. One of his toes was cut off by the advice of his phyſicians, who believed a cure might be effected by ſuch amputation; but ſome time after, the diſorder re-appearing, the empreſs began to think of ſecuring to herſelf the throne by a new marriage. For this purpoſe ſhe privately aſſembled the greateſt part of the barons, who had great authority in that kingdom; and aſſuring them that the emperor muſt die in a very little time, obſerved, that the only expedient for preventing the troubles which could not fail attending his death, would be a regulation before-hand, obliging *Sigiſmund*'s ſucceſſor to marry his widow. This advice being reliſhed by the barons, a ſecret agreement was made for that purpoſe, and confirmed by the oath of all parties concerned. Yet this treaty was not managed with ſuch ſecreſy, but that it reached the ears of the emperor, who at the ſame time was informed by his phyſicians that he had not long to live. He ordered himſelf to be tranſported

Is ſeized with a diſtemper, which was the effect of poiſon.

The empreſs intrigues with the barons touching the ſucceſſion.

---

[o] Coch. Hiſt. Huſſ. p. 303.

from

The emperor is carried to Znaim *in* Moravia.

Settles the ſucceſſion and dies.

from the kingdom of *Bohemia*, which he had great reaſon to ſuſpect of diſaffection, to *Znaim* in *Moravia*, that he might ſee his daughter before his death [p]. There he ordered his empreſs, who had followed him, to be arreſted, and the barons of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* being called into his bed-chamber, he, in their preſence, nominated his ſon-in-law *Albert*, duke of *Auſtria*, for his ſucceſſor, appointing ambaſſadors, who ſhould, immediately after his death, repair to *Bohemia*, and preſent his laſt will to the grandees of that kingdom. In the mean time all thoſe who were preſent aſſented to his nomination, and agreed to acknowlege duke *Albert* as king of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. In a little time after he had thus ſettled the ſucceſſion, he died, on the 9th day of *September*, in the 70th year of his age, having reigned 50 years in *Hungary*, 27 in quality of emperor, and 17 as king of *Bohemia*. His body was, in conſequence of the direction which he himſelf had given, carried to *Waradin* in *Hungary*, and honourably interred in the church of St. *Ladiſlaus* [q].

His character.

SIGISMUND was remarkable for the beauty of his perſon, and the majeſty of his air. He was liberal, and a patron of learned men (C), he himſelf having been ſo well verſed in the languages, as to obtain the epithet of the *Light of the world*. Though he neither wanted courage nor military ſkill, he was very unfortunate in all his warlike expeditions, and, what is very remarkable in the diſpoſition of a prince, he had a mortal antipathy to all flatterers, who he uſually compared to crows, which pick out the eyes of their fellow-creatures. The *Roman* catholic writers extol him for his piety and zeal for the advantage of the church, manifeſted in his conceſſions to the pope, in his endeavours to remove the ſchiſm of the church, and his repeated efforts to extinguiſh those doctrines, which they thought proper to brand with the name of hereſy; but it plainly appears, that every ſtep he took in conſequence of this zeal, was the effect of blind ſuperſtition, exciting him to the prejudice of ſound policy and common ſenſe.

---

[p] ÆN. cap. 55. BONFIN. iii. Dec. 3. NAUCLER. gen. 49. COCHL. lib. viii. in fin. DUBRARV. lib. 27. [q] KRANTZ Sax l. ii. c. 28. AVENT. Ann. &c. l. vii. p. 663. HEISS. liv. ii. ch. 30.

(C) Having honoured with the order of knighthood one *George Fiſcelin*, the ableſt lawyer of his time, and he chancing one day to have ſome diſpute about his new rank, the emperor, by way of rebuke, ſaid to him, "I can create a thouſand "knights in one day; but, in "the ſpace of one thouſand "years, I could not create one "learned man (1)."

(1) *Remarq. ſur Heiſs, liv.* ii. *ch.* 30.

and that of the empreſs Barbara.

As for his widow, ſhe is ſaid to have equalled the famous *Meſſalina* in point of libertiniſm; and though *Sigiſmund* had often caught her in the act of adultery, he always forgave her backſliding, becauſe he knew himſelf addicted to the ſame vice. When ſhe recovered her liberty after his death, ſhe retired to *Koniggingratz* in *Bohemia*, where ſhe lived to a great age, in the midſt of a number of courtezans, whom ſhe maintained to adminiſter to her infamous pleaſures. To ſuch an exceſs of debauchery did ſhe degenerate, that ſhe held the ſovereign good to conſiſt in the ſenſual delight. She treated thoſe nuns who, during the religious troubles, preferred death to violation, as ſo many infatuated wretches who did not underſtand the true end of their being. She denied a future ſtate; for that reaſon alleging, that we ought to make the moſt of life; and when a certain lady of reputation mentioned to her the example of the turtle, who, after having loſt its mate, never chuſes another, "Wherefore (ſaid ſhe) do you inſtance a bird who lives in ſolitude among the mountains, rather than the example of pigeons and ſparrows, thoſe domeſtic animals, who are always in our view, and whoſe loves and joys are without interruption [r] (D)."

---

[r] ÆN. SYLV. c. 53. Idem in vit. Fred. III. p. 43. DUBRAVY. l. xxviii. p. 736.

(D) *Sigiſmund* had two wives. The firſt was *Mary*, daughter of *Lewis*, king of *Hungary*, and the ſecond *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Herman*, count of *Celley*, by whom he had one only daughter *Elizabeth*, wife of *Albert*, his ſucceſſor (1). Perhaps the empreſs *Barbara* owes part of this character to the enmity of the catholics, which ſhe incurred by embracing the doctrines of *Huſs*.

(3) *Heiſs*, *Hiſt.* *liv.* ii. *ch*, 30.

CHAP. IX.

Containing the Hiſtory of

ALBERT II.

Albert II. *duke of* Auſtria, *ſucceeds to the imperial crown.* A. D. 1438.

ALBERT II. duke of *Auſtria,* ſurnamed *the Grave and the Magnanimous*, was the ſon of *Albert* of *Auſtria*, called the *Wonder of the World*, and married *Elizabeth*, daughter of the emperor *Sigiſmund.* Upon the death of his father, his couſin *Leopold* IV. was, by the ſtates of *Auſtria*, declared his guardian; but *Erneſt*, the brother of *Leopold*, having proteſted againſt this diſpoſition, the office was divided between them; and when the former died, *Albert* took the reins of government in his own hands. By his wiſe conduct he re-eſtabliſhed the ſecurity of his ſubjects in *Auſtria*, which had a long time been interrupted by inteſtine wars, rapine, and licence, the authors of which he ſeverely puniſhed, until the peace and tranquillity of his dominions were reſtored. The great reputation which he acquired by his merit, joined to the favours of fortune, which never forſook him, would in all probability have rendered him the greateſt prince that ever ſat upon the imperial throne, had heaven thought proper to prolong his life[s]. In one year he was honoured with three crowns; on the firſt of *January* he was raiſed to the *Hungarian* throne, in conſequence of the laſt will of *Sigiſmund*, whoſe daughter and heireſs he had eſpouſed; on the ſixth of *May* he was elected king of *Bohemia*, the choice being founded upon an antient convention between the two families, implying, that when the lawful heir male of the houſe of *Bohemia* ſhould chance to fail, they ſhould beſtow the crown upon a prince of the houſe of *Auſtria*. Yet notwithſtanding this agreement, and the other pretenſions of *Albert*, he met with a ſtrong oppoſition from one part of the ſtates of *Bohemia*, who, by the intrigues of *Taſm*, a *Bohemian* nobleman, and chief of that faction, elected *Caſimir*, brother of the king of *Poland*[t], and even crowned him in the city of *Prague*. Theſe were the very people who had conſpired with the empreſs *Barbara* againſt *Sigiſmund*. This competition produced a war againſt *Al-*

He is oppoſed in his election by Caſimir, *brother of the king of* Poland;

---

[s] SPOND, Contin. BAR. tom. ii. p. 348.

[t] ÆN. Boem. cap. 25. CROMAR. lib. ii.

bert, in which *Caſimir*, being aſſiſted by the *Poliſh* troops, for ſome time diſputed the throne.

Casimir, and his brother *Ladiſlaus*, advanced with a body of troops into *Bohemia*, where joining the *Calixtins*, by whom he had been invited, he obtained ſeveral advantages over the *Auſtrians*, and great barbarities were committed by both ſides. At length *Albert* aſſembled all his forces, of which he gave the command to the marquis of *Brandenburg*, who had acquired the appellation of *the German Achilles*, and then ſent a defiance to the enemy, whom he attacked in their intrenchments, and compelled to retreat to *Thabor*.

After this action the marquis of *Brandenburg* made an irruption into *Upper Poland*; and this diverſion obliging *Ladiſlaus* to retire for the defence of his own dominions, *Albert* returned to *Prague*, where he again exacted the oath of allegiance from the citizens, appointed the count *de Celley* governor of *Bohemia*; and having taken other means for ſecuring the tranquillity of that kingdom, repaired to *Breſlau*. Here he found *Roderic*, biſhop of *Burgos*, deputed from the council of *Baſil*, to negotiate a peace between him and his competitor for the *Bohemian* crown: but all the endeavours of this able miniſter proved ineffectual, neither would he reſign his pretenſions; and all that the prelate could obtain was, that both would continue to own the authority of the council againſt the pope, who attempted to transfer it to *Ferrara*. At length, however, *Albert*'s fortune prevailed; he diſperſed the forces of his competitor, made himſelf maſter of the whole kingdom, except one or two places, which ſtill held out for his antagoniſt, and was crowned at *Prague* with univerſal applauſe, after he had made an accommodation with thoſe noblemen who had eſpouſed the cauſe of *Caſimir*, and promiſed, though unwillingly, to be governed by their advice [u].

whom he defeats.

The empreſs *Barbara*, about this time, having reſigned her right to the fortreſſes of *Hungary*, was ſet at liberty, and accommodated with an allowance of 12,000 ducats a year. In the midſt of his expedition againſt *Caſimir*, *Albert* received the news of his being elected emperor at *Frankfort*, by the electors and princes there aſſembled, in order to concert meaſures for terminating the differences between the pope and the council of *Baſil*. He was, however, obliged to conceal his ſentiments on his election, until he had obtained the conſent of the ſtates of *Hungary*, who had choſen him king on condition that he ſhould not accept the imperial

---

[u] Struv. Hiſt. Germ. per. x. ſect. 1.

crown,

The ſtates of Hungary *conſent to his elevation to the imperial throne.*

own, in caſe he ſhould be ſollicited to receive that honour. or the barons of *Hungary* alleged, that it was a great diſdvantage to their ſtate to be governed by an emperor, on he experience they had of *Sigiſmund*, who, while he was ccupied in the affairs of *Italy*, *Germany*, and his other dominions, left the kingdom of *Hungary* expoſed to the incurſions of the *Turks*, who pillaged it with impunity. Nevertheleſs the ſtates, ſeeing *Albert* ſtrongly preſſed to accept of the imperial dignity, conſented to his elevation, rather than run the riſque of loſing a prince whoſe merit was ſo conſpicuous *.

The electors, princes, and prelates of Germany *embrace a neutrality between pope* Eugenius *and the fathers of the council of* Baſil.

But two days before he was declared emperor, the electors of the empire, perceiving that the council of *Baſil* and the pope did nothing but publiſh decrees againſt each other, reſolved to adhere to neither ſide, until they ſhould have deliberated ſix months upon their different claims. This was the beginning of the *German* neutrality, which was protracted to the eighth year, and was equally diſapproved by *Eugenius* and the council (E). Nevertheleſs, *Albert* was no ſooner in poſſeſſion of the imperial throne, than he ſent ambaſſadors to the council, to renew the engagements of public faith and ſecurity which they had received from *Sigiſmund*: while the fathers, in return for this favour, granted him the money which had been raiſed by indulgences in *Auſtria*, on account of the arrival of the *Greeks* (F).

Albert *regulates the tribunal of the empire.*

After his election and coronation at *Aix la Chapelle*, his chief care was to reform the abuſes which had crept into the adminiſtration of juſtice: he laid the tribunal of *Auſtregues* under proper reſtrictions; ſuppreſſed what was called the ſecret and *Weſtphalia* judgment, ſaid to be as old as

---

* Æn. d. c. 55. Naucler. gener. 48. Trithem. in Chron.

(E) Pope *Eugenius* having publiſhed bulls for transferring the council of *Baſil* to *Ferrara*, the electors, princes, and prelates, aſſembled at *Frankfort*, reſolved to continue neutral, that they might be the more able to negotiate a pacification. With this laudable view they wrote letters to the fathers in council, the pope, and *Paleologus*, emperor of the *Greeks*, exhorting them to peace and unity, and intreating them to contribute their ſeveral endeavours to prevent a ſchiſm in the church (1).

(F) This was a ſum of money raiſed to defray the expences of the *Greek* emperor and the eaſtern princes, to the number of 700, who arrived this year in *Italy*, in order to celebrate an œcumenical council (2).

(1) *Barre, tom.* vii. *p.* 407.

(2) *Vide Hiſtory of the Popes.*

Charlemagne, in conſequence of which people were condemned to death on ſimple information, without knowing the crime that was laid to their charge, until the very moment of the execution; and yet, amidſt all theſe ſalutary regulations, he never dreamed of aboliſhing the manner of proceeding obſerved at *Klagenfurt*, the capital of *Carinthia*, where a perſon accuſed, or even ſuſpected, of theft, is hanged upon the ſpot, and tried next day, when, if he is convicted, his body is left ſuſpended on the gibbet; but if his innocence appears, his corpſe is honourably interred at the public expence [y].

Confirms the neutrality of the electors and princes.

Albert confirmed the neutrality which had been embraced by the electors, and by their advice propoſed, that a general council ſhould be convoked in ſome third town, diſtinct from the aſſembly at *Baſil*, as well as from that which was maintained at *Ferrara*. Though both parties ſeemed averſe to this propoſal, the princes of the empire aſſembled at *Mentz*, in order to facilitate the expedient: as a previous ſtep to which, they agreed that the council of *Baſil* ſhould be obliged to ſuſpend the depoſition of the pope, which was at that time the ſubject of their deliberations. The deputies of many *European* ſtates, which were preſent on this occaſion, approved of the ſtep; yet, the legates from the fathers would not acquieſce in this meaſure, but returned to *Baſil*; and thoſe that were ſent by the pope repaired to *Mentz*, where they in vain employed all their efforts in perſuading the princes to reject the council, and then retired, after having proteſted againſt the neutrality [z].

Gives his opinion in favour of a new council,

Makes peace with the king of Poland.

Nevertheless, both pope and council courted the friendſhip of the emperor, and even exerted themſelves in mediating a peace between *Hungary* and *Poland*. Their legates employed their influence in his favour, during the diet at *Petricow*: and a congreſs, being opened at *Breſlau* in *Sileſia*, a treaty of peace was concluded, on condition that *Albert* ſhould beſtow his eldeſt daughter in marriage upon *Ladiſlaus*, and give his younger to prince *Caſimir*, together with the kingdom of *Bohemia*, by way of dower [a].

Hitherto every thing ſucceeded proſperouſly with *Albert*, and his ſubjects began to preſage happy things under his government, when *Amurath*, ſoltan of the *Turks*, who had employed a whole year in preparing to invade *Bulgaria*, now reſolved to put his deſign in execution. He accordingly entered that province, though it belonged to his own father-in-law, *George*, the duke or deſpot, and began his operations with the ſiege of *Semendria*. *Albert*, who before his elevation to the imperial throne had rendered himſelf formidable to the infidels, and engaged in a treaty with this prince, armed for the defence of his ally, as well as of his hereditary dominions, which, in all probability, would be attacked in their turn, and took the field with ſuch force as he could aſſemble in thoſe kingdoms and in the empire; but in the midſt of exceſſive heats, having indulged himſelf in eating a great quantity of fruit, he was attacked with a violent dyſentery, which obliged him to quit *Buda*, in order to return to *Vienna*; but he never reached that city; for death overtook him on the road, at the village of *Long*, and his body was interred at *Weiſſenburg* [b]. He left the empreſs with child of a ſon, who was called *Ladiſlaus*, and by the biſhop of *Strigonia* crowned king of *Hungary*, four months after his birth [c] (G).

---

[y] Knichin Jur. Territorii Synoptica Tract. c. 5.

[z] Æn. Sylv. de Con. Baſil, part. ii. n. 7, 9.

[a] Duglass. l. xii. p. 712.

Albert *dies on his return to* Vienna.
A. D. 1439.

His death was no ſooner known, than *Frederic*, ſon of *Erneſt*, count of *Tyrol*, his neareſt relation, was choſen adminiſtrator of *Auſtria*, by the ſtates aſſembled at *Vienna*, until the empreſs ſhould be delivered, that in caſe ſhe ſhould bring a prince into the world, he might take upon him the office of tutor; or if the fruit of her womb ſhould be a female, ſucceed to the duchy as coheir with his brother *Albert*.

At the ſame time the catholics and *Calixtins* of *Bohemia* laid aſide their mutual animoſity; and in conſequence of pathetic letters from the empreſs *Elizabeth*, aſſembled in a friendly manner at *Prague*, and reſolved to wait for her delivery, before they would proceed to the election of a new king [d].

In the ſhort courſe of *Albert's* reign, ſeveral diets of the empire were held in the city of *Nuremberg*. In one of theſe, at which were preſent a great number of princes, all *Germany*, except *Bavaria* and *Auſtria*, was divided into four circles; the firſt comprehended *Bavaria* and *Franconia*; the ſecond including the countries about the *Rhine*, together with *Allemania*; *Weſtphalia* and the *Low Countries* were contained in the third; and the fourth was conſtituted by *Saxony* alone. In another diet it was propoſed to divide the empire into ſix circles; and this diviſion was afterwards eſtabliſhed and followed for the firſt time by the emperor *Maximilian* the firſt, as the death of *Albert* for the preſent fruſtrated the ſcheme. This prince having inherited the kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* in quality of ſon-in-law of the emperor *Sigiſmund*, he may be ſaid to have been the baſis of that power and grandeur to which the houſe of *Auſtria* hath ſince attained. He was of a tall ſtature and extraordinary ſtrength, liberal, juſt, and virtuous; he cheriſhed a warm affection for his people, a great zeal for religion, and an uncommon eſteem for learned men [e].

---

[b] Ger. Roo. l. v. p. 164. [c] Heiss, tom. ii. p. 258.
[d] Theob. Bell. Huſſ. c. 8.

(G) He had by the ſame venter two daughters, *Elizabeth* and *Ann*, the firſt married to *Caſimir*, prince of *Poland*, and the other to *William*, duke of *Saxony*. There was likewiſe another ſon, who died in his infancy (1).

(1) *Heiſs, liv. iii. ch. 1.*

CHAP. X.

Including the Emperor's Conteſts for the Crowns of Bohemia *and* Hungary.

FREDERIC III.

A. D. 1440. Frederic *of* Auſtria *elected emperor.*

AFTER the death of *Albert*, the electors, aſſembling at *Frankfort*, unanimouſly agreed to fill the vacant throne with *Frederic* of *Auſtria*, ſurnamed *the Pacific*, ſon of *Erneſt* of *Auſtria*, of the *Stirian* line, and *Cimburge*, daughter of the duke of *Mazovia*; he was alſo couſin-german of his predeceſſor *Albert*, and no more than twenty-five years of age at his election [f] (H). The electors had at firſt agreed to name *Lewis* III. landgrave of *Heſſe*, as *Albert*'s ſucceſſor; but he having declined the dignity, on account of the troubles in which the empire was involved, all the ſuffrages were re-united in favour of *Frederic*, and the archbiſhop of *Triers* was ſent to *Vienna* to notify his election, and invite him to come and take poſſeſſion of the throne.

---

[e] ÆN. SYLV. Europ. c. 3.

[f] KRANTZ Sax. lib. xi. c. 30.

(H) This prince is by ſome called *Frederic* IV. and by others *Frederic* V. but the greateſt number of writers give him the denomination of *Frederic* III. becauſe the laſt *Frederic* of *Auſtria*, who was only choſen by part of the electors, afterwards renounced his pretenſions to the crown, and the election of *Frederic* of *Brunſwic* was not according to form; ſo that neither the one nor the other are inſerted in the number of the emperors.

We have already obſerved, that the infant *Ladiſlaus* was crowned king of *Hungary* by the cardinal archbiſhop of *Strigonia.* This ceremony was no ſooner performed, than his mother *Elizabeth* carried him to *Vienna*, and put him under the protection of the emperor, to ſcreen him from the ill offices of one part of his ſubjects, who had actually offered the crown to *Ladiſlaus*, king of *Poland*, and concluded a treaty with him on that ſubject.

The Calixtins *offer the crown of* Bohemia *to* Albert, *elector of* Bavaria.

As for *Bohemia*, it was ſtill divided between the catholics and *Calixtins*, the former of whom were inclined to appoint adminiſtrators, until the young *Ladiſlaus* ſhould be capable of aſſuming the reins of government: but *Ptaczeck*, at the head of the *Calixtins*, made violent efforts in favour of a new election, and even ſent ambaſſadors to *Munich*, to notify to *Albert*, elector of *Bavaria*, that they had elevated him to the throne of *Bohemia*; that prince, however, having made proper acknowlegements for their good opinion and intended favour, declined interfering with the intereſt of the lawful heir.

Being diſappointed in this quarter, the *Calixtins* agreed to aſſemble with the catholics, in order to provide for the ſecurity of the kingdom; and as it appeared abſolutely neceſſary to appoint ſome perſon who ſhould take upon him the adminiſtration of affairs, they pitched upon the emperor, who deſired to be excuſed from accepting ſuch a troubleſome office. Nay, ſuch was the moderation of this prince, that when the ſtates of *Bohemia* made him a tender of their crown, he refuſed their offer, proteſting he would preſerve it for *Ladiſlaus*, the ſon of *Albert* II. his relation and pupil, whom he conſidered as the lawful heir of the crowns of *Bohemia* and *Hungary* [g].

The Bohemians *chooſe two adminiſtrators.*

The *Bohemians* having ſuffered theſe two repulſes, proceeded to the election of adminiſtrators from among their fellow ſubjects, when *Ptaczeck* was choſen by the *Calixtins*, and *Maiſon-neuve* by the catholics; and their government was for ſome time very quiet, thoſe of both communions enjoying full liberty of conſcience.

Mean while the king of *Poland*, aſſiſted by the famous *Hunniades*, had obtained a victory over queen *Elizabeth*, mother of young *Ladiſlaus*; though his progreſs was ſoon ſtopped by his *German* allies, commanded by a *Bohemian* gentleman called *John Giſora*, who gave ſurpriſing proofs of

---

[g] Bonfin. iii. Dec. 4. Phil. Call. lib. i.

Accommodation between the king of Poland *and queen* Elizabeth A. D. 1441.

his gallantry and conduct. Pope *Eugenius* being informed of theſe troubles in *Hungary*, ſent cardinal *Julian* thither to negotiate a peace, which was effected on theſe conditions. That the king of *Poland* ſhould be declared regent of *Hungary* during the minority of *Ladiſlaus*, and ſucceed him on the throne, in caſe he ſhould die without iſſue; that the *Pole* ſhould eſpouſe queen *Elizabeth*'s eldeſt daughter, and his brother *Caſimir* take the younger to wife; and that all the acts and military promotions made in *Hungary* by the king of *Poland* ſhould be confirmed [h].

Pruſſia *revolts from the* Teutonic *order.*

While theſe meaſures were taken for reſtoring the peace of *Hungary*, the knights of the *Teutonic* order were guilty of ſuch outrages and oppreſſion in the neighbourhood of *Culm*, that the nobility entered into an aſſociation for their mutual defence, and the difference was referred to the arbitration of the emperor, who decided in favour of the knights; this ſentence reduced the ſtates of *Pruſſia* to ſuch deſpair, that they revolted from the *Teutonic* order, and acknowleged the king of *Poland* as their ſovereign, after he had promiſed to confirm the rights and privileges of *Pruſſia* [i].

Frederic *intereſts himſelf in the affairs of the church.*

Frederic, in the beginning of his reign, made ſundry regulations touching the adminiſtration of juſtice, the police, and coin of the empire; nor did he manifeſt leſs concern in his endeavours to extinguiſh the ſchiſm that ſtill continued in the church. He convoked ſeveral diets, to deliberate upon this ſubject, in conſequence of an embaſſy which he received at the ſame time from *Eugenius* and the council of *Baſil*, which had elected to the papacy *Amadeus*, duke of *Savoy*, under the name of *Felix*. Theſe ambaſſadors attended him during his coronation at *Aix la Chapelle*, which being performed, they returned to the aſſembly at *Frankfort* (I), where each party pleaded their own cauſe; and, after long debates, it was agreed, that the empire ſhould ſtill adhere to the neutrality, until another council ſhould be convoked in ſome part of *Germany*, in order to determine all differences, and re-eſtabliſh the tranquillity of the church [k]. Deputies were accordingly ſent to notify what had paſſed to the fathers of the council at *Baſil*, and to pope *Eugenius* at *Florence*, though the behaviour of the ſtates of the empire on this occaſion was agreeable to neither party.

---

[h] Duglass. Hiſt. Pol. l. xii.

[i] Barre, tom. vii. p. 538.

[k] Spond. Contin. t. ii. p. 418.

(I) In this diet farther regulations were made touching the combat proof, the ſecret judgment of *Weſtphalia*, and the current coin, the preciſe value of which was now aſcertianed; and the *pacta familiæ*, between the houſes of *Brandenburg* and *Mecklenburg*, were confirmed (1).

(1) *Ludowig. de Formula Duc. Brand. p.* 78.

Has an interview with Felix, *whom, however, he refuſes to acknowlege for pope.*

Mean while *Frederic* ſet out in perſon for *Baſil*, where he exhorted the fathers to concord and accommodation with *Eugenius*, and had an interview with *Felix*, whom, however, he would not acknowlege as pope, though he is ſaid to have been tempted with an offer of one of his daughters in marriage, a young princeſs of exquiſite beauty, and a portion of 200,000 ducats: a propoſal which he rejected with diſdain, and upon which he ſaid to one of his courtiers, by way of pleaſantry, “This man would fain purchaſe holineſs, if he could but find a ſeller (K).”

A. D. 1442.

Altho' *Frederic* failed in his efforts to aboliſh this ſchiſm in the church, he was more ſucceſsful in the war which he carried on againſt his brother *Albert* VI. ſurnamed *the Prodigal*. This prince, under the pretext of having been defrauded of his ſhare of his father's eſtate, had aſſembled ſome forces, with the aſſiſtance of *Walrick de Celley*, and ſeveral other noblemen, beſieged the city of *Laubach*, the capital of *Carniola*, and ſuffered a repulſe from the inhabitants, ſupported by ſome *Auſtrian* troops which had come to their ſuccour. *Albert* being incapable of paying the auxiliaries, they abandoned his cauſe, and reſolved to invade *Auſtria*, in order to extort money from *Frederic* the emperor. They accordingly began their ravages, and the diſorders continued till *Frederic* was obliged to ſet on foot a treaty with his brother, to whom he paid a certain ſum of money, and yielded *Suabia*, and his territories bordering upon the *Swiſs*, for the ſpace of ſix years. He was likewiſe obliged to gratify his brother's ſoldiers with 70,000 ducats, before they would deſiſt from the rapine and robbery which they had ſo long practiſed with impunity [1].

Makes peace with his brother Albert, *who had ravaged his dominions.*

---

[1] Fugger. l. v. c. 3.

(K) About this time the art of printing was firſt invented, or at leaſt firſt known in *Europe*. The *Dutch* aſcribe this excellent and happy invention to *Laurentius Janſon*, an inhabitant of *Leyden*, while the city of *Mentz* attributes that honour to a gentleman of their city, called *John Guttenburg*, and others contend for *John Menthel*, and *John Fauſtus*, inhabitants of the ſame place (1).

(1) *Barre, tom.* vii. *p.* 439.

Eric, *king of* Denmark, *makes peace with the princes of* Holſtein.

DURING all theſe diſputes, the war had ſtill raged between the king of *Denmark* and the princes of *Holſtein*; and now, in the 18th year of this diſpute, an accommodation took place between the contending parties, who agreed, that count *Adolphus* ſhould retain, during life, the portion of *Sleſwic* which he then poſſeſſed, together with the iſle of *Femeren* and leſſer *Frieſland*; but that, on the expiration of two years after his death, the king of *Denmark* and his heirs ſhould ſubmit to a fair trial of his pretenſions. In conſequence of this treaty, the towns of *Lubec*, *Hamburgh*, *Lunenbourg*, and *Wiſmar*, made their ſubmiſſion to his *Daniſh* majeſty, who did not, however, long enjoy the fruits of this pacification.

Is depoſed, and Chriſtopher *of* Bavaria *elected in his room.*

HE reſoved to ſettle the ſucceſſion upon his nephew *Bugiſlaus*, duke of *Pomerania*; and this attempt, ſo contrary to the liberties of *Denmark*, the crown of which was elective, gave ſuch diſguſt to the ſtates, that they ſummoned him to the diet at *Hörſoe*, and he refuſing to appear, they deprived him of the ſovereign power, and elected *Chriſtopher* of *Bavaria*, who was accordingly acknowleged king of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*, and ſolemnly crowned at *Rypen* by the archbiſhop of *Lunden*.

A. D. 1443. *The* Swiſs *beſiege* Zurich, *and the emperor ſollicits the aſſiſtance of the king of* France.

THIS revolution was ſucceeded by a war between the *Auſtrians* and *Swiſs*, which engroſſed the emperor's whole attention. A difference had happened between the *Swiſs* and the city of *Zurich*, on account of *Toggenburg*, and of its having put itſelf under the protection of the emperor, who not only refuſed to confirm the privileges of the *Swiſs*, but likewiſe demanded the reſtitution of all the territories which they had wreſted from the houſe of *Auſtria*. The inhabitants of *Zurich* refuſing to renounce the treaty which they had made with the emperor, the *Swiſs* had recourſe to arms, and actually inveſted the city. *Frederic*, in this dilemma, demanded ſuccours againſt the *Swiſs* from the princes of the empire, not one of whom would take the field in his behalf. He then ſollicited the aſſiſtance of *Charles* VII. of *France*, who ſent the dauphin his ſon into *Germany*, at the head of 40,000 men, although he had only engaged to furniſh 5000; for whom the emperor promiſed to find free quarters in *Alſace*. The king of *France* may have been induced, by ſeveral motives, to ſend ſuch a conſiderable army into the empire. Perhaps he wanted to revenge an irruption which had been made by the governor of *Montbelliard* into the territories of *France*. He might have had deſigns upon *Alſace*: his intention might have been to aſſiſt *Rene*, duke of *Lorrain*, to make himſelf maſter of the city of *Metz*; and it is not improbable that he was ſollicited to make ſuch a powerful armament by *Sigiſmund* of *Auſtria*, or pope *Eugenius*, in order to diſſolve the council of *Baſil*. Be that as it will, the dauphin approached this city at the head of his army, in which were 8000 *Engliſh*, under the name of auxiliaries. The *Swiſs*, though few in number, not only kept the field, but alſo gave them battle; but they were almoſt all cut in pieces by the *French* cavalry, who, nevertheleſs, paid dear for the victory [m] (L). About the ſame time the *Swiſs* received another check before *Zurich*, which obliged them to raiſe the ſiege, and the dauphin returned to *Germany*. He thought proper, however, to ſeize upon *Montbelliard*, and ſome other cities of *Alſace*.

The dauphin cuts in pieces 4000 Swiſs *near* Baſil, *who fight with ſurpriſing valour.*

He ſeizes ſome towns in Alſace.

A. D. 1444.

In the midſt of theſe tranſactions, *Ladiſlaus*, king of *Poland*, taking advantage of his nameſake's minority and abſence, as well as of the ſloth of the emperor, who neglected the intereſt of his people; encouraged, I ſay, by theſe favourable circumſtances, the *Pole* formed a ſtrong party in *Hungary*, and was actually acknowleged ſovereign of that kingdom. Immediately after his elevation, he, at the deſire of pope *Eugenius*, eſpouſed the cauſe of *Stephen*, deſpot of *Raſcia*, whom *Amurath* had ſtripped of his dominions, and raiſing an army of *Poles*, *Walachians*, *Germans*, and *Bohemians*, under the command of the gallant *Giſera*, he paſſed the *Danube*, made himſelf maſter of the town of *Sophia*, and by the valour and conduct of his general *Hunniades*, obtained a complete victory over the *Turkiſh* army, commanded by the famous *Scanderbeg*, who, by the bye, was ſuſpected of partiality towards the Chriſtians.

Ladiſlaus *of* Poland *is acknowleged king of* Hungary.

Defeats the Turks;

Amurath was greatly diſheartened by this defeat, eſpecially as he found himſelf attacked on one ſide by *Ibrahim*, prince of *Cilicia*, and on the other ſide by *Scanderbeg*, who immediately after this battle revolted, declaring himſelf a Chriſtian, and took poſſeſſion of *Albania*, which was his paternal inheritance. The ſoltan therefore, in this emergency, ſued for peace, which was ratified on conditions very advantageous to the *Hungarians*, and ſolemnly ſworn to by

---

[m] Mez. Abr. Chron. t. ii. p. 698.

(L) The *Swiſs* army is ſaid to have amounted to no more than 4000 men, who ſlew double their number of the *French*; and, rather than own themſelves conquered, died upon the ſpot, except one man, who, at his return to his canton, was beheaded for cowardice (1).

(1) *Mez. abreg. Chron. tom.* ii. *p.* 698.

Ladiſlaus; who, nevertheleſs, regardleſs of his oath, from which he was abſolved by the pope, and inſtigated by the *Greek* emperor *Paleologus*, he and *Hunniades* reſumed their arms, and inviting *Scanderbeg* to join them, advanced by the way of *Thrace* towards the *Euxine* ſea. They came in ſight of the *Turkiſh* army, commanded by *Amurath* in perſon, at a village called *Varna* [m], where a bloody battle enſued, in which *Ladiſlaus* loſt his life, *Hunniades* his liberty, and the Chriſtian army was intirely defeated [n].

but afterwards loſes his life in the battle of Varna.

The fate of *Ladiſlaus* was no ſooner known in *Poland*, than the diet, aſſembling at *Cracovia*, elected his brother *Caſimir* in his room; and the *Hungarians* having in vain ſollicited the emperor to ſend his young pupil as their king, committed the adminiſtration of their kingdom to *Hunniades*, whom they revered as the ſaviour of their country. This general having been ranſomed after the battle of *Varna*, had defeated the *Turks* in *Upper Meſia*, and compelled the count *de Cilley*, though the emperor's father-in-law, to do homage for his dominions to the kingdom of *Hungary*.

Caſimir *is elected king of* Poland. Hunniades *is appointed governor of the kingdom of* Hungary.

The ſtates aſſembled at *Peſt*, ſent deputies to the emperor to demand their crown, which had been delivered to him by queen *Elizabeth*; and, upon his refuſal to give it up, they reſolved to obtain it by force of arms. With this view they declared war againſt him, and *Hunniades*, at the head of 10,000 choſen men, made an irruption to the very gates of *Vienna*, from whence he returned to *Preſburg* loaden with booty, and terrified the emperor to ſuch a degree, that he durſt not quit the fortreſs of *Neuſtadt*, until a truce for three years was eſtabliſhed through the good offices of the count *de Cilley* [o].

By this time the *Bohemians*, tired and harraſſed by the factions ſupported by their two adminiſtrators, began to long for the arrival of their young king, under whoſe authority they hoped peace and union might be re-eſtabliſhed in the kingdom. Mean while, *Ptaczeck* dying, the *Huſſites* elected *George de Podiebrad* in his place, that he might counterbalance the power of *Maiſon Neuve*, who was their enemy; and their religious diſputes continuing, the diet of the kingdom was convoked at *Prague*, where it was reſolved to ſend one embaſſy to the emperor to demand their young king, and another to the pope, ſolliciting the confirmation of their archbiſhop *Rockizane*, who had been excommunicated by the court of *Rome* [p].

The diet of Prague *ſend ambaſſies to the emperor and the pope.*

---

[m] See the Hiſtory of Hungary.

[n] Bonfin. Decad. iii. l. vii.

[o] Barre, t. vii. p. 477.

[p] Theob. Bell. Huſſ. par. ii.

Fre-

The dauphin ravages Alſace.

FREDERIC's attention was at this period employed in contriving expedients for defending the dominions of the empire from the troops of the dauphin, called *Armagnacs*, which committed terrible ravages in *Alſace*; when the princes of the empire, incenſed at theſe hoſtilities, reſolved to take arms againſt *France*, and entruſted *Lewis* count palatine with the conduct of that expedition; but, before things came to that extremity, a diet was held at *Spire*, in which, by the mediation of the archbiſhops of *Cologne* and *Triers*, who were in the *French* intereſt, it was reſolved firſt to try the expedient of a negociation. In conſequence of this reſolution, ambaſſadors were ſent to the dauphin to demand ſatisfaction, upon which he nominated five perſons of rank as his deputies, who had orders to declare, in his name, that, as the emperor had invited him into *Germany*, he inſiſted upon a confirmation of the treaties made with the nobility of *Alſace*, and upon having winter-quarters aſſigned to his troops, otherwiſe the hoſtilities ſhould be continued. The *French* had been for ſome time in poſſeſſion of *Lauffinburg*, *Sickingen*, and ſome other places; but, not contented with theſe, they likewiſe demanded *Briſac* and *Fribourg*; finally, they propoſed that *Sigiſmund* duke of *Auſtria* ſhould repair to *France*, and conſummate the marriage with the daughter of king *Charles*, the dauphin's ſiſter, and for that purpoſe remit the jewels and money which had been left to them by *Frederic* of *Auſtria*. To theſe demands the emperor replied by the mouth of *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, that he had indeed ſollicited the king of *France* for a ſuccour of 5000 men, but had never dreamt he would ſend 40,000; and that, by the cuſtom of *Germany*, the treaſure and jewels of princes always devolved to their ſucceſſors. At length it was agreed, that the dauphin ſhould retreat with his troops from the territories of the empire, and that the *Germans* ſhould demand no reparation for the damage they had ſuſtained [q].

Ambaſſadors are ſent to demand ſatisfaction.

The affair is compromiſed.

THE dauphin's retreat did not re-eſtabliſh the peace of *Alſace*; for the troops of the count palatine plundered the fiefs belonging to the noblemen and towns that favoured the *French*; and the *Auſtrians* committed the ſame exceſſes upon the territory of *Baſil*, which was in alliance with the *Swiſs*. Theſe outrages were retorted with great rancour upon the lands, ſubjects, and allies, of the houſe of *Auſtria*, and the whole country became a ſcene of rapine, cruelty, and confuſion, until peace and order were reſtored by the

---

[q] HEISS, l. iii. p. 269.

A. D. 1445.

mediation of the elector palatine, the marquis of *Baden*, and the count of *Willemberg*[r].

The electors aſſemble at Frankfort, *and enter into an aſſociation againſt pope* Eugenius;

These troubles being appeaſed, the electors of the empire aſſembled at *Frankfort* on account of *Theodoric* archbiſhop of *Cologne*, and *James* archbiſhop of *Triers*, whom *Eugenius* had depoſed, becauſe they adhered to *Felix* and the council of *Baſil*, agreed among themſelves, that unleſs *Eugenius* would declare their depoſition void, ſuppreſs the taxes with which the *German* nation was burthened by the court of *Rome*, and own the authority of councils, ſuch as it had been declared at *Conſtance*, they would aſſent to the ſentence which had been pronounced againſt him at the council of *Baſil*. This reſolution being intimated to *Frederic*, he ſent *Æneas Sylvius*, his ſecretary, to *Eugenius*, exhorting him to treat the electors of the empire with more reſpect, and, above all things, to reſtore the archbiſhops to their former dignity, if he expected to ſee an end of that ſchiſm, which divided the church. His remonſtrances had ſuch weight with *Eugenius*, that he promiſed to be ſwayed by the emperor's advice; and ſent ambaſſadors to another aſſembly at *Frankfort*, in which certain articles of accommodation were propoſed, and afterwards ratified at *Rome*[s].

who is brought to reaſon by the emperor's remonſtrances.

The fathers of the council of Baſil *aſſent to the convocation of a new council.*

The fathers of the council of *Baſil*, finding themſelves in danger of being utterly deſerted, had, a little before this accommodation, publiſhed a decree, in which, after having obſerved, that the beſt method for removing the ſchiſm would be to hold a new council, they profeſſed their readineſs to concur with that expedient, and agree to any place that ſhould be pitched upon by the emperors and electors aſſembled at the diet of *Frankfort*. But no meaſures could be contrived to heal the diviſions that ſtill remained in *Bohemia*. The politicians convoked diet after diet, without being able to form any reſolution, but that of ſending another deputation to demand *Ladiſlaus* of the emperor, who would not even indulge them with an audience. In vain did the pope ſend cardinal *Carvajal* to pacify the troubles at *Prague*: tho' the Catholics and *Maiſon Neuve* ſubmitted to the directions of the holy ſee, *Podiebrad* and his *Huſſites* perſuaded the people that the pope and *Frederic* intended to deprive them of their religious liberties; and taking advantage of the commotion they had raiſed, attacked and impriſoned *Maiſon Neuve*, who died in a few days after this misfortune, not

A. D. 1447. Maiſon Neuve *is impriſoned and dies.*

---

[r] Crusius, p. 385.

[s] Æne. Comment. l. i. Ant. tit. 22. c. 11. ſect. 17. Cochlæ. Hiſt. Huſſit. l. ix.

without

ſuſpicion of poiſon. In conſequence of his death, ad remained in peaceable poſſeſſion of *Prague* and the ingdom, and *Rockizane* was re-eſtabliſhed in his ca- [t]

Podiebrad remains in peaceable poſſeſſion of Bohemia.

as *Bohemia* began to reſpire from the horrors of a d religious war, *Alſace* was involved in freſh confuſion arrel between *Frederic* elector palatine and the counts *elſtein*, who declared war againſt him on pretence of ng ſeized their caſtle of *Einertzhauſen*, and plundered bjects. They firſt of all wrote him a letter, contain- etail of their grievances, and then committed hoſtili- his lands and officers. *Frederic*, incenſed at their pre- n, levied a numerous army, and, inveſting the caſtle *zelſtein*, carried on the ſiege with ſuch vigour, that ſtanding the brave defence made by count *James*, mmanded the beſieged, he was fain to make his eſcape e *Palatine*'s intrenchments, and the garriſon ſurren- pon honourable conditions. As for the counts, they bliged to go in queſt of a livelihood in ſome other , where they died without iſſue, after having made uitleſs efforts to relieve their caſtle.

War in Alſace *between* Frederic, *elector palatine, and the counts of* Lutzelſtein, *who loſe their all.*

emperor concerned himſelf very little in theſe private s, ſo much was he engroſſed in the affairs of religion: r, his endeavours to terminate the ſchiſm were at laſt d with ſucceſs; for about this time he prevailed with o abdicate upon certain conditions, which were con- by *Nicholas* V. who had ſucceeded *Eugenius* (N). DERIC, who acknowleged *Nicholas* for lawful pope, dered the inhabitants of *Baſil* to put an end to the which was held in their city, and diſmiſs the fathers efore the feaſt of *St. Martin*. To this firſt order, was publiſhed on *Michaelmas-day*, the citizens of *Baſil* paid no regard, the emperor, towards the latter end ſame year, ſent to them a ſecond imperial decree, and

The ſchiſm occaſioned by the council of Baſil *is finally terminated.*

---

[t] ÆN. SYLV. Hiſt. Boh. c. 58, p. 100.

In the year 1447, pope us, after his election, ſent te into *Germany*, to take ance of certain grievances g church benefices, of the *Germans* loudly com- l. Theſe grievances were ingly diſcuſſed in preſence emperor and the eccleſi- and ſecular *princes*, and certain articles agreed upon under the name of *Concordata*, which were afterwards confirmed and ratified by the pope. Theſe concordata, which are almoſt as famous as the articles of the golden bull, ſhall, for the information of the reader, be inſerted at the end of this hiſtory.

The great diſpute between the council and the pope determined.

afterwards a third, in which he threatened to put them to the ban of the empire for diſobedience. In conſequence of theſe menaces, the fathers were obliged to transfer their council to *Lauſanne*, where they earneſtly exerted their endeavours to terminate the ſchiſm; and this grand affair was afterwards concluded, on condition that *Felix* ſhould renounce the papacy in favour of *Nicholas*, who ſhould confirm the decrees of the ſynod of *Baſil*[u].

A war between the marquis of Brandenburg *and the city of* Nuremberg.

FREDERIC, beſides his endeavours to re-eſtabliſh the peace of the church, employed his good offices, though in vain, to terminate a conteſt, which had laſted ſome years, between the city of *Nuremberg* and *Albert* marquis of *Brandenburg*, who was diſtinguiſhed by the appellation of *The German Achilles* (O). The city pretended to be free, and independent of any other ſovereignty than that of the emperor and empire; while the marquiſſes of *Brandenburg*, being likewiſe burgraves of *Nuremberg*, affirmed, that not only the city, but all the country adjacent belonging to the city, depended upon and held of their burgraviate. This diſpute was gradually inflamed to an open war. *Albert*, by the aſſiſtance of ſeventeen princes of the empire, who were his friends or relations, had raiſed a ſtrong army, with which he attacked the city; and the magiſtrates and burghers of *Nuremberg*, being well provided with ammunition, proviſion, and men, which they received from ſeveral imperial cities, ſuſtained the ſiege with great bravery and reſolution. In a word, the war being maintained on both ſides in ravaging and ruining the little towns, boroughs, and villages, in the neighbourhood, together with the whole adjacent country, both ſides were conſtrained, by the dearth of proviſions, to liſten to propoſals of peace, which was accordingly concluded [x].

---

[u] VANDERT. in Hiſt. Sabaud. PLATIN. in Nich. V.

(O) The foundation of *Albert*'s claim was this: *Frederic* IV. his father, had appropriated to himſelf the title of burgrave of *Nuremberg*, not that he had any right of ſovereignty over the city, but only becauſe he had acquired a ſort of right of protection, from having frequently aſſiſted it againſt his neighbours. The emperor, *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, had, in the year 1315, mortgaged *Nuremberg* to *Adolphus* of *Auſtria*, who did not enjoy it above twenty years; for the people, having ſhook off his yoke, entered into an aſſociation with the *Swiſs* cantons for the mutual defence of their liberties, and engaged in their confederacy the cities of *Conſtance*, *Baſil*, and *Straſburg*, which ſtill retained their freedom (1).

This *Albert* was diſtinguiſhed by the names of *the German Achilles* and *the Fox of Germany*. He was a prince of great perſonal prowesſ, and abounded with all the ſtratagems of war; was remarkable for his vivacity, eloquence, and craft, as well as for the innumerable ſcars with which his whole body was covered (2).

(1) *Remarq. ſur Heiſs*, l. iii, c. 2.

(2) Camper. *Epiſt.* l. vi.

Chriſtian II. *ſucceeds* Chriſtopher *king of* Denmark: *But* Canutſon *is elected king of* Sweden *and* Norway.

A. D. 1448.

In the courſe of this year *Chriſtopher* of *Bavaria*, king of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*, dying, was ſucceeded by *Chriſtian* II. ſon of *Theodoric* count of *Oldembourg*, from whom the preſent king of *Denmark* is deſcended; but the *Swedes*, being tired of a foreign domination, elevated *Canutſon* their grand marſhal to the throne of that kingdom; and at the ſame time he had addreſs enough to acquire the ſovereignty of *Norway* by the unanimous election of the ſtates of that antient monarchy, to which he repaired; and, after his coronation at *Drontheim*, conferred the charge of the adminiſtration upon two principal noblemen of the country [y].

Hunniades *is defeated by the* Turks.

A. D. 1449.

Hungary being again threatened by *Amurath*, *Hunniades* made preparations for giving him a warm reception, and, hurried on by the impetuoſity of his courage, paſſed the *Danube*, and advanced to the frontiers of *Bulgaria*, in order to ſtop the ſoltan in the midſt of his career. Though his troops were greatly inferior in number to the *Turks*, he attacked them with undaunted valour; but, after having maintained the battle three days, was at length overpowered, and intirely defeated. The greateſt part of the nobility, together with the pope's legate, were left dead upon the ſpot; and *Hunniades* himſelf, after having ſuſtained incredible hardſhips in making his eſcape, fell into the hands of *George*, deſpot of *Raſcia*, who would not releaſe him until he had given one of his ſons as hoſtage [z].

Freſh troubles in Bohemia.

One would imagine the inhabitants of *Ladiſlaus* had been in a peculiar manner deſtined to unceaſing calamities. The Catholics of *Bohemia*, being oppreſſed by *Podiebrad* and his *Calixtins*, had recourſe to arms, and the war revived with all its former vivacity, though it was in a little time ſuſpended by a truce; during which the ſtates aſſembled at *Czaſlaw*, in order to concert meaſures for appeaſing the troubles; and the party of *Podiebrad* propoſed, that they ſhould elect a ſovereign from among the natives, without expoſing themſelves to further repulſes from the emperor: but the majority were of opinion, that they ſhould ſend another embaſſy to redeem *Ladiſlaus*; and *Podiebrad* aſſenting to this propoſal, it was forthwith put in execution.

---

[x] Krantz Sax. l. ii. c. 32.

[y] Barre, t. vii. p. 507.

[z] Fugger. l. v.

FREDERIC, however, ſtill excuſed himſelf, on account of the minority of his pupil; but being alarmed at the deſign of the *Huſſites*, he ſent his ſecretary *Æneas Sylvius* to remonſtrate to the *Bohemian* diet upon the injuſtice and ingratitude they ſhould be guilty of in chuſing another king to the prejudice of *Ladiſlaus*, whoſe anceſtors had laid their country under ſuch obligations. In a word, this miniſter, by his ability, eloquence, and inſinuating addreſs, diſpoſed the *Bohemians* to acquieſce in the conduct of the emperor, who promiſed to ſend *Ladiſlaus* to *Prague*, as ſoon as he ſhould be capable of performing the kingly function; and at the ſame time he gained over *Podiebrad* to the intereſt of *Frederic*, who afterwards acknowleged his ſervices, by creating his two ſons princes of *Munſterberg* [a].

The emperor ſends Æneas Sylvius *to the ſtates of that kingdom, and gains over* Podiebrad *to his intereſt.*

A. D. 1450.

THE peace of *Bohemia* being thus reſtored, and the important diſpute touching the council, in which all Chriſtendom had been intereſted, happily compromiſed, *Frederic* began to direct his attention to the affairs of *Italy*. Upon the death of *Philip Maria*, the laſt of the family of *Galeazo*, who had no legitimate male iſſue, ſeveral pretenders to the ſucceſſion ſtarted up, though the duchy, as a fief, of right devolved to the empire. Nevertheleſs, *Alphonſo* king of *Naples* demanded it, on pretence, that the laſt duke had declared him his heir. On the other hand, *Charles* duke of *Orleans*, ſon of *Valentina*, who was daughter of *John Galeazo*, the firſt duke of *Milan*, claimed that duchy, by virtue of his mother's contract of marriage; in which it was expreſly ſtipulated, that her children ſhould ſucceed to the duchy of *Milan*, in caſe her brother ſhould die without heirs male; and this clauſe was confirmed by the pope's approbation. The third competitor was *Francis Sforza*, one of the greateſt warriors of his time, who having married *Blanche Maria*, natural daughter of *Philip Maria Galeazo*, by whom he was alſo adopted, aſpired to the poſſeſſion of his fortune; and reſolved to ſupport his pretenſions by force of arms. The city of *Milan* was of courſe divided into factions, who eſpouſed the cauſe of this or that pretender; but the people, deſirous of profiting by this occaſion, choſe twelve perſons, into whoſe hands they put the adminiſtration of the ſtate, and offered a certain annual ſum to the emperor, provided he would allow the city to be erected into a republic. Mean while the ſucceſſion of duke *Philip* became a prey to all who had inclination and force to ſeize it. *Placentia*, *Cremona*, and *Lodi*, fell into the hands of the *Venetians*; the duke of

The affairs of Italy; where the territories of the empire are diſmembered.

---

[a] COCHL. Hiſt. Huſſ. l. xii. p. 429.

Savoy made himſelf maſter of *Valentia* and *Conflans*; other territories were uſurped by other powers; and *Francis Sforza* attached himſelf to the city of *Milan*, the ſiege of which he undertook in form. The inhabitants, ſeeing themſelves thus inveſted, had recourſe to *Frederic*, who ſent two of his miniſters to aſſiſt them with their advice. The beſieged offered to put themſelves wholly under his power, provided he would raiſe the ſiege; but after having in vain waited for ſuccour two whole months, and endured the utmoſt extremity of want, they were fain to capitulate, and open their gates to the conqueror [b].

The city of Milan *taken by* Sforza.

Next year *Frederic* reſolved upon a journey to *Italy*, in order to be crowned at *Rome*, with *Eleanora*, ſiſter of the king of *Portugal*, to whom he was contracted in marriage, and whom he had promiſed to meet at *Sienna*. Mean while he diſpatched *Æneas Sylvius*, with an intimation of his deſign, to the pope, who at firſt ſeemed very well diſpoſed for his reception; but was afterwards ſo terrified by the inſinuations of the duke of *Milan* and other *Italian* noblemen, who repreſented *Frederic* as an ambitious prince, who wanted to invade the eccleſiaſtical dominions, that he ſent his ſecretary to diſſuade the emperor from his journey, as an expedition impracticable in the winter. But *Æneas Sylvius*, who tarried at *Sienna*, being informed of his apprehenſions, found means to diſpel them ſo effectually, that *Nicholas* no longer dreaded the views of the emperor, whom he now invited to *Rome* with great cordiality; for, at bottom, he was ambitious of having the honour to confer the imperial crown [c].

The duke of Milan *endeavours to create a jealouſy between the emperor and the pope.*

Frederic's departure, however, was retarded by a revolt in *Vienna*, excited by a *Bavarian* gentleman, called *Eiſinger*, who had quarrelled with the emperor about the purchaſe of a caſtle belonging to the duke of *Auſtria*. He alleged, that *Frederic* had defrauded him of his purchaſe, and, in order to be revenged, inſtigated the *Auſtrian* noblemen to aſſemble at *Melſperg*, and demand that the emperor would ſend *Ladiſlaus* among them, otherwiſe they would renounce his authority, and expel the governor, whom he had eſtabliſhed. The malecontents afterwards entering *Vienna*, raiſed an inſurrection among the people, and, finally, being joined by the counts of *Celley*, ravaged all the towns, villages, and lands, belonging to the friends and adherents of *Frederic*, who, having tried to appeaſe theſe diſorders by remonſtrances, in-

Frederic's *departure is retarded by a revolt in* Auſtria.
A. D.
1451.

---

[b] Mez. Chron. Abreg. t. ii. p. 700. Anton. tit. 22, c. 12, ſect. 2. Cor. Hiſt. Mediol. par. v.

[c] Comment. Pii II. l. i. Cochlæ. l. ii. Krantz. Sax. l. xi. c. 33.

veſted the duke of *Auſtria* with full power and authority to levy troops for oppoſing the progreſs of the rebellion; and, in the mean time, he himſelf departed for *Italy*, accompanied by young *Ladiſlaus*, and great part of the *Bohemian* and *Hungarian* nobility [d]. The princeſs *Eleonora* at the ſame time embarked at *Liſbon*; and arriving at *Piſa*, was conducted to *Sienna*, where ſhe found the emperor waiting to receive her [e]. *Frederic* was met, juſt as he had croſſed the *Alps*, by the ambaſſadors of *Venice*, who conducted him to their city, where he made his public entry with great magnificence (O): from thence he repaired to *Ferrara*, where he found ambaſſadors from *Francis Sforza* duke of *Milan*, inviting him to return by that city, where he ſhould receive the iron crown; and here too he was waited upon by the deputies of *Florence* and *Bologna*, who craved the honour of entertaining him at theſe cities, which he accordingly viſited: from *Florence* he took the route of *Sienna*, where (as we have already obſerved) he was joined by the princeſs *Eleonora*, attended by a ſplendid and numerous retinue; and in this city he gave audience to the pope's legates, who repreſented to him, that by antient cuſtom, and eſtabliſhed right, the emperors always took an oath to the pope before they entered the territories of *St. Peter's* patrimony; and demanded, that, if he deſigned to proceed, he ſhould conform to the ſame practice. *Frederic*, in this particular, complied with the deſire of his holineſs (P).

Sets out for Italy.

Is ſplendidly entertained at Venice; *repairs to* Ferrara; *paſſes thro'* Bologna *and* Florence; *join* Eleonora *at* Sienna.

WHILE

---

[d] ÆN. SYL. vit. Fred. II. p. 136.

[e] BARRE, t. vii. p. 528.

(O) When he was about to depart from that city, a curious cup-board of glaſs was brought as a preſent from the inhabitants, and placed upon a table in his apartment. It was ſcarce ſet down, when his jeſter, directed by his nod, ſhook the table to ſuch a degree, that the cup-board fell off, and broke into a thouſand pieces; upon which the emperor obſerved, with a ſmile, that, if it had been made of gold, it would not have met with ſuch a misfortune; a hint, in conſequence of which he was afterwards preſented with ſome other curioſities of that precious metal (1).

(P) The oath, which the emperor took, was conceived in theſe terms: "Sanctiſſimo Domino noſtro, domino Nicolao, "Divina Providentia papæ, Ego "Fredericus, rex Romanorum, "promitto et juro, per Patrem, "et Filium, et Spiritum Sanctum, et per lignum vivificæ

(1) *Dubrav*, *lib*. xxviii.

"crucis,

WHILE he ſpent a few days in this place, until the princeſs ſhould be recovered from the fatigue of her voyage, which had been long and dangerous, he was ſollicited for recommendations to the court of *Rome* by the chief of an embaſſy from the *Auſtrians*, who pretended they were ſent by the ſtates to requeſt ſome favours of his holineſs; but *Frederic*, ſuſpecting his ſincerity, ordered his papers and inſtructions to be ſeized, and found that this deputation was from *Eiſinger*, and the malecontents, who repreſented *Frederic* to the pope and cardinals as a tyrant, oppreſſor, and uſurper of the dominions belonging to young *Ladiſlaus*; and gave the college to underſtand, that for theſe reaſons they had withdrawn themſelves from his authority. Theſe remonſtrances might have operated at the court of *Rome* to the prejudice of the emperor, had not he luckily made this diſcovery; in conſequence of which he anticipated the malice of the *Au-*

He intercepts an embaſſy from the malecontents of Auſtria *to the pope.*

"crucis, et per has reliquias ſanctorum, quod ſi, permittente Domino, Romam venero, ſanctam Romanam eccleſiam, et ſanctitatem ſuam rectorem ipſius exaltabo, ſecundum meum poſſe. Et neque vitam, neque membrum, neque honorem, quem habet, mea voluntate, meo conſilio, meo conſenſu, aut mea exhortatione, perdet: et in Roma nullum placitum aut ordinationem faciam, de omnibus quæ ad ſanctitatem ſuam, aut ad Romanos pertinerit, ſine veſtro conſilio. Et quicquid de terra Sancti Petri ad noſtram poteſtatem pervenerit, ſuæ ſanctitati reddam. Et cuicunque Italicum regnum commiſero, jurare faciam illum, ut adjuſtor ſuæ ſanctitatis ſit ad defendendam terram S. Petri ſecundum ſuum poſſe: ſic me Deus adjuvet, et hæc ſancta Dei Evangelia (1)."

Thus engliſhed: "To our moſt holy lord, *Nicholas*, by the Divine Providence, pope, I *Frederic*, king of the *Romans*, promiſe and ſwear, by the Father, Son, and Holy Ghoſt, by the wood of the vivifying croſs, and of theſe relics of ſaints, that if, by the permiſſion of the Lord, I ſhall come to *Rome*, I will exalt the holy *Roman* church, and his holineſs, who preſides over it, to the beſt of my power. Neither ſhall he loſe life, limb, nor honour, by my will, council, conſent, or exhortation. Nor will I, in the city of *Rome*, make any law or decree, touching thoſe things that belong to his holineſs or the *Romans*, without your advice. Whatever part of *St. Peter*'s patrimony ſhall fall into our hands, we will reſtore to his holineſs: and he, to whom we ſhall commit the adminiſtration of our kingdom of *Italy*, ſhall ſwear to aſſiſt his holineſs in defending *St. Peter*'s territory to the beſt of his power So help me God, and his Holy Evangeliſts."

---

(1) *Fugger. lib.* v. c. 7. n. 4.

ſtrians, and found means to juſtify himſelf to the pope in ſuch a manner, that his holineſs entered into his reſentment, and promiſed to excommunicate the rebels as ſoon as *Frederic* ſhould be in a condition to chaſtiſe them with the temporal ſword.

Is endangered by a tumult in Viterbo.

THE emperor was received at *Viterbo* with great ſplendour, according to the directions of *Nicholas*. Nevertheleſs a great tumult happened when he approached the palace at which he was to alight. Some young people, who had taken poſſeſſion of an elevated place, drew towards them, with iron hooks, the cloth of gold that adorned the canopy under which the emperor rode; and a diſpute ariſing among themſelves, it was torn to pieces. This example encouraged others to practiſe the ſame licence. The pope's ſoldiers advancing, endeavoured to pull the emperor from his horſe, which they imagined would become the property of that perſon who ſhould have addreſs enough to ſeize him; and others, ſtill more preſumptuous, attempted to ſnatch off his hat, which they ſaw adorned with a jewel of great value. In the midſt of this tumult, *Frederic* turning towards the legates, "I find, ſaid he, we muſt make uſe of our hands, "and think of repelling force by force." With theſe words he ſnatched a ſtaff from one of his domeſtics, and, diſengaging himſelf from thoſe who attacked him, wheeled about, put ſpurs to his horſe, and charged them with great fury, overturning all that ſtood in his way. The legates followed the example of the emperor, and, arming themſelves with the ſame kind of weapons, employed them to the ſame purpoſe. The gentlemen of *Frederic*'s retinue drew their ſwords, and ruſhed among the crowd, and this ſort of battle laſted upwards of an hour; when the populace, being no longer able to reſiſt the blows and wounds which were dealt among them, betook themſelves to flight. The governor of the patrimony, who was the pope's own nephew, committed ſeveral of thoſe ſeditious people to priſon; but *Frederic*, who was more apt to forgive than to revenge an inſult, interpoſed in their behalf, and obtained their releaſe [f].

Arrives at Rome;

FROM *Viterbo*, *Frederic* repaired to *Rome*, accompanied by the empreſs and the young king of *Bohemia* and *Hungary*, who was ſtill under his tuition. He was no ſooner in the ſight of that capital, than the whole college of cardinals went out to meet him; and as it was cuſtomary for the emperor, who went thither to be crowned, to ſtay ſome time before the town, *Frederic* ordered tents to be pitched before the walls, where he paſſed that night. Next day he made a public entry, and was crowned king of *Lombardy*, notwithſtanding the remonſtrances of the deputies of *Milan*, who proteſted againſt this coronation, which was performed, at the requeſt of the emperor, on account of the plague at *Milan*, as well as of the umbrage which that city had given to *Frederic*, in embracing the yoke of a ſtranger, to the prejudice of the empire, to which it properly belonged.

---

[f] HEISS, l. iii. c. 2.

Is crowned king of Lombardy;

THE cardinals, being conſulted upon this ſubject, were of opinion, that the pope, by virtue of the plenitude of his power, could confer the crown of *Lombardy*; and that the emperor's requeſt ought not to be refuſed; though they inſtituted a new oath, which he took upon the occaſion. Three days after this ceremony, he was married to *Eleonora*, and with her received the imperial crown; then he and the pope ratified the *Concordata* of the *German* nation, touching the collation of prelacies and other benefices, which had been ſome years before agreed to by cardinal *Carvajal*, his legate in *Germany*. A few days after his marriage he and the empreſs ſet out for *Naples*, on a viſit to king *Alphonſo*, who was her uncle. There being treated with incredible magnificence, during *Holy Week* and *Eaſter*, he returned to *Rome*, where, in two orations ſpoken publickly by his ſecretary, he returned thanks to the pope and cardinals for the great favours he had received, and exhorted them to promote the general *paſſagium*, or military expedition, in favour of the *Greeks* againſt the *Mahometans* [g] (Q).

married and crowned emperor with his empreſs;
ratifies the Concordata;
viſits the king of Naples;
A. D. 1452.

HAVING tranſacted his affairs at *Rome*, he departed from that city on his return to *Germany*, and in his paſſage thro' *Ferrara* was waited upon by *Borſi* marquis of *Eſte*, a prince of extraordinary merit, whom he created duke of *Modena* and *Reggio*. There alſo he knighted *Galcazo*, ſon of *Francis* duke of *Milan*, a youth of moſt engaging behaviour and great expectation [h]. Being afterwards royally received at *Venice*, he quitted *Italy*, leaving behind him a very contemptible character, both in point of underſtanding and liberality; nor was he altogether pleaſed with the ſucceſs of his

departs from Rome;

---

[g] Comment. Pii II. l. i. Ext. apud Æne. ep. 399. [h] NAUCLER. ſub ann. 1449.

(Q) He was again invited by *Sforza* to go and receive the iron crown at *Milan*; but, as he had been offended by that nobleman, he declined the invitation on pretence of the plague, which then raged in that city (1).

(1) *Nauclerg. Gener.* 49.

journey,

and returns to Germany.

journey, as having had occaſion to ſee a great many territories of the empire uſurped by thoſe who had no other right to poſſeſs them, than that which was derived by force of arms. The duke of *Milan* had applied to him for the inveſtiture of his duchy, which the emperor refuſed to grant, unleſs he would agree to pay him a certain yearly ſum, or put him in poſſeſſion of the city of *Corno* or *Parma*.

Diſobliges the Hungarians; *who force him to an accommodation.*

On his return to *Auſtria* he found himſelf involved in abundance of difficulties, particularly in a diſpute with the *Hungarians*, who had often intreated him to ſend home their king *Ladiſlaus*, whom he ſtill detained at his court, on pretence of being guardian to that young prince. They had, likewiſe, by the moſt earneſt and repeated inſtances, beſought him to reſtore their crown and regalia, which were in his cuſtody; but he found means, under various pretences, to poſtpone his compliance with their demands. The *Auſtrians*, being joined by a number of *Bohemians*, and encouraged by ſeveral princes of the empire, ſent another deputation to expoſtulate with him upon the ſame ſubject; but he ſtill lent a deaf ear to their requeſt, and amuſed them with freſh evaſions, till at length, tired with his excuſes, and provoked by his delays, they had recourſe to arms, took the field under the conduct of *Eiſinger*, ſurprized and beſieged him at *Neuſtadt*, and compelled him to ſign an accommodation; in which it was concluded, that *Ladiſlaus*, being yet of too tender an age to take upon him the adminiſtration of his kingdom, he ſhould be put under the tuition of *Ulrick* count *Celley*, his uncle by the mother's ſide; and that the diſpute, touching the wardſhip of the emperor, ſhould be diſcuſſed and determined at *Vienna* [i].

Count *Celly's* ambition increaſed with the power which he derived from being governor of *Ladiſlaus*. He attempted to make himſelf abſolute maſter in *Auſtria*: he ſecured the principal fortreſſes, by giving the command of them to his creatures; and gradually removed *Eiſinger* and the *Auſtrian* nobility from all offices of importance, which he beſtowed upon his own friends and favourites.

Ladiſlaus *is crowned at* Prague.
A. D.
1453.

These proceedings gave great umbrage to the people; and *Eiſinger*, profiting by their diſcontent, rouſed their reſentment to ſuch a degree, that the count was obliged to retire to his own country, after having delivered up the perſon of *Ladiſlaus*, who conſented to take the oath impoſed upon him by the *Bohemians*, and repaired to *Prague*, where he was crowned with great ſolemnity [k].

---

[i] ÆNE. Boem. c. 60, 61, & Europ. c. 22, & ep. 409. NAUCLER. Gener. 49. [k] COCHL. p. 392.

DURING

Conſtantinople *is taken by* Mahomet II.

DURING theſe conteſts, *Mahomet* II. ſucceeding his father *Amurath* II. and being equally ambitious of extending his conqueſt, ſubdued the reſt of *Greece*, took the city of *Conſtantinople* by aſſault, in which the emperor *Conſtantine Paleologus* was ſlain with all his followers. By this expedition the *Roman* empire in the eaſt was utterly annihilated, under a prince of the ſame name with him to whom it owed its beginning; and the *Turks* at that time ſeemed bent upon adding the weſtern empire to their conqueſt. This progreſs of the *Mahometans* alarmed the princes of Chriſtendom, and induced them to unite, in order to check the career of the common enemy. A diet was convoked at *Ratiſbon* on this ſubject, and the members unanimouſly agreed, that there was a neceſſity for taking ſome ſpeedy methods to ſtop the progreſs of the infidels; but what theſe methods ſhould be, was a conſideration referred to another aſſembly at *Frankfort*, where, though there was a great concourſe of princes, and a vaſt appearance of zeal, very little was done for the common cauſe. A.D. 1455. It was agreed, indeed, that the *Hungarians* ſhould be reinforced with ten thouſand horſe and two-and-thirty thouſand infantry; and that the electors and princes ſhould repair to *Neuſtadt*, to concert meaſures with the emperor for raiſing theſe troops. Pope *Nicholas* dying in the interim, was ſucceeded by *Calixtus* III. who ſent legates to all the princes in Chriſtendom, exhorting them to engage in a cruſade; and all of them expreſſed abundance of zeal for the intereſts of Chriſtianity: but, how promiſing ſoever appearances might be, they produced very little effect to the advantage of the common cauſe. The pope himſelf, indeed, by dint of preſents and ſollicitations, excited the ſophi of *Perſia* to make a diverſion on his ſide, while the Chriſtians ſhould attack them on the other. The *Germans*, by the exhortations and remonſtrances of cardinal *Carvajal*, legate of the holy ſee in that country, were prevailed upon to raiſe troops and ſend them to *Hunniades*, who alone ſuſtained the efforts of the *Mahometans* in *Hungary*. Reinforced by theſe ſuccours he marched directly to *Belgrade*, which was inveſted by *Mahomet*, and, after a very obſtinate engagement, compelled him to raiſe the ſiege, and retreat with the loſs of 40,000 killed upon the ſpot[1]. But *Hunniades* dying a few days after of a fever, occaſioned by the fatigue he had undergone in the battle, the Chriſtians were ſo diſconcerted by the loſs of their general, that, in minding their own par-

Hunniades, *being reinforced, compels him to raiſe the ſiege of* Belgrade,

---

[1] ANTONIN. tit. 22, c. 14, in pr. ÆNE. Europ. c. 8. Boem. c. 65. THUR. Chr. Hun. in Ladiſ. c. 55.

and retreats with great loſs.

A. D. 1456.

Frederic's backwardneſs.

ticular affairs, they utterly abandoned the common cauſe. Indeed all the ſchemes, which had for two years been projected for the ſupport of this holy war, proved abortive, thro' the interruptions occaſioned by particular quarrels in *Germany*, as well as by the ſloth and timidity of the emperor himſelf; for *Frederic*, notwithſtanding the preſſing inſtances of the pope, the zeal and induſtry of the legate *Carvajal*, who had effected the convocation of two diets to deliberate upon meaſures for the ſupport of this war, preaching up the cruſade, with great energy and eloquence; I ſay, notwithſtanding theſe incitements, the emperor would never heartily embark in the undertaking. He even declined an interview with *Philip* duke of *Burgundy*, who had come into *Germany* on purpoſe to confer with him and the princes on that ſubject; being, in all probability, averſe to a war, which would infallibly expoſe him to danger and expence.

A miſunderſtanding between Calixtus III. *and the princes of the empire.*

Articles of their complaint.

Besides, a miſunderſtanding happened between pope *Calixtus* III. and the princes of the empire. *Frederic* had ſent an ambaſſador to congratulate the new pope upon his elevation, and to aſſure him of his implicit obedience. This ſtep he had taken contrary to the inclination of ſome electors, who uſed their utmoſt endeavours to perſuade him, that it was time to bridle the power of the popes, who could not, reaſonably expect to be obeyed, until they ſhould have granted better conditions; for the *Germans* were much more oppreſſed by them than either the *Italians* or *French*. The electors of the *Rhine* alſo aſſembled and drew up a ſchedule of the grievances, which the nation ſuſtained from the tyranny of the court of *Rome*. This remonſtrance, among other things, imported, that the pope did not obſerve the decrees of the councils of *Conſtance* and *Baſil*: that he did not think himſelf obliged by the *Concordata* made with pope *Nicholas* V. his predeceſſor: that he deſpiſed the *German* nation, and ſeemed bent upon exhauſting it intirely: that the elections of prelates were generally rejected: that the benefices and dignities of any conſideration were reſerved for cardinals and prothonotaries: that livings, for the moſt part, were promiſed before they became vacant: that the annates were not only exacted with extreme rigour, but more was extorted on that account than was really due: that the government of churches was not conferred according to merit, but always upon thoſe who paid the higheſt price: that new indulgencies were granted every day, by which the empire was drained of its money: that, under the pretext of a war againſt the *Turks*, the eccleſiaſtic tythes were ſeized, without the privity or conſent of the biſhops: that cauſes which ought to be tried in *Germany*, were continually appealed to the tribunal of the pope; and a thouſand methods invented to attract all the money of the empire to *Rome*. The emperor himſelf was diſpoſed to join the electors in this remonſtrance; but he was hindered by the influence which his miniſters had over him; and the pope anſwered this accuſation article by article in ſeveral epiſtles contained in the collection of *Æneas Sylvius*, who indeed wrote them for the juſtification of his holineſs [m].

A. D. 1457.

As it was abſolutely neceſſary, for checking the progreſs of the *Turks*, that the Chriſtian princes ſhould act with concord and unanimity, the pope, underſtanding that the old grudge between the emperor and *Ladiſlaus*, originally owing to *Frederic*'s having detained him longer than he deſired under his tuition, had now broke out into open war, he not only wrote letters to both, exhorting them to peace and reconciliation, but alſo ſent his apoſtolic legate, *John* cardinal of *St. Angelo*, to uſe his endeavours for an accommodation, which *Lewis* duke of *Bavaria* undertook to effect as mediator between them [n]: but, before this peace could be eſtabliſhed, *Ladiſlaus* being at *Prague*, in order to celebrate his nuptials with *Magdalen*, daughter of the king of *France*, he was ſuddenly taken ill, and died, not without ſuſpicion of poiſon, which the Catholics fix upon *Rockizane*, who had declared himſelf protector of the *Huſſites*, to whom he knew the king was averſe; while others charge it to *Podiebrad*, who was ſuppoſed to aſpire to the ſovereignty. Upon the death of this young prince ſeveral competitors aroſe for the ſucceſſion of the crown of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* [o].

The pope uſes his endeavours for effecting an accommodation between the emperor and Ladiſlaus; *who dies before the concluſion of the treaty.*

The emperor pretended to diſpoſe of the crown of *Bohemia*, becauſe *Ladiſlaus* had neglected to do homage to the empire, and intended to beſtow it either upon himſelf or upon ſome other prince of his houſe. *Caſimir*, brother-in-law of *Ladiſlaus*, claimed it in right of his wife; *William* duke of *Saxony* demanded the preference of this prince, becauſe he had married the eldeſt ſiſter of the laſt king; while *Albert* and *Sigiſmund*, dukes of *Auſtria*, founded their title upon a *pactum familiæ* between the two houſes, touching a reciprocal ſucceſſion, in caſe of failure of male iſſue; but *Podiebrad*, by means of *Rockizane*, had the good fortune to foil all his competitors, and was actually proclaimed king of *Bohemia*, almoſt without oppoſition [p].

Podiebrad *proclaimed king of* Bohemia.

A. D. 1458.

---

[m] ÆNE. Ep. 371.

[n] Id. Ep. 329. 331. 339.

[o] See the Hiſtory of Bohemia and Hungary

[p] KRANTZ. Sax. l. xi. c. 33.

Matthias *elected king of* Hungary.

Hungary likewiſe was claimed by ſundry pretenders; but the remembrance of the great ſervices done to that kingdom by *Hunniades* united all the ſuffrages in favour of his ſon *Matthias*, who was then a priſoner in *Bohemia*, whither he had been removed by *Ladiſlaus*, in conſequence of the murder of the count *de Celley*, for which the elder brothers of *Matthias* had been beheaded at *Buda*.

Podiebrad, underſtanding that this young prince was elected king of *Hungary*, promiſed to ſet him at liberty, provided he would marry his daughter; and this condition was fulfilled with the conſent of the *Hungarian* ſtates.

Two other competitors diſpute the duchy of Auſtria *with* Frederic.

As for the dominions of *Auſtria* that belonged to *Ladiſlaus*, the ſucceſſion involved the emperor in a war with two princes, from which he reaped nothing but damage and diſgrace. Theſe were his own brother *Albert* IV. ſurnamed *The Prodigal*, and *Sigiſmund* count of *Tyrol*, his couſin-german, who, as well as himſelf, were deſcended from *Albert the Sage*. *Frederic*, as eldeſt, claimed the poſſeſſion of *Auſtria*; *Albert*, his brother, alleged that he already was in poſſeſſion of too many provinces; that he had already too much availed himſelf of his birth-right in ſharing the ſucceſſion of his father; and that, in the caſe of this duchy, it was but reaſonable he ſhould have ſome regard to the rights of his brother and couſin. On the other hand, the ſtates of *Auſtria* would not yield obedience to either of theſe competitors; ſo that all three concurred in deſolating the country[q]. After theſe ravages had continued for ſome time, the affair was accomodated by the mediation of *Lewis* count palatine. By this agreement the emperor acquired the poſſeſſion of *Lower Auſtria* as far as the river *Ems*; the country on the other ſide of that river was given to *Albert*; *Upper Carinthia*, in the neighbourhood of *Tyrol*, became the portion of *Sigiſmund*; and it was agreed, that each of theſe princes ſhould have a ſeparate palace in the caſtle of *Vienna*[r].

An agreement made by the mediation of Lewis *count palatine.*

Pope Pius II. *convokes an aſſembly at* Mantua.

This diſpute furniſhed *Frederic* with an excuſe for abſenting himſelf from the aſſembly at *Mantua*, convoked by *Æneas Sylvius*, who had by this time ſucceeded to the papacy by the name of *Pius* II. To this congreſs the new pope invited all the princes of Chriſtendom, that they might form a league againſt the *Turks*: but ſo many countries, and *Germany* in particular, were embarraſſed with inteſtine broils, that the ſucceſs of this aſſembly did not anſwer the zeal and expectation of his holineſs. The northern parts of the empire were embroiled by *Chriſtian* king of *Denmark*, who ſeized upon the duchies of *Holſtein* and *Sleſwic*, upon the death of duke *Alphonſus*, and did homage for both to the emperor.

---

[q] Æne. Europ. c. 22.

[r] Heiſs, l. iii. c. 2.

A ſtorm ready to burſt upon the head of the emperor.

PODIEBRAD was not yet firmly eſtabliſhed upon the throne of *Bohemia*, which he had mounted in direct oppoſition to *Frederic* and the pope: *Matthias* did not think himſelf ſecure of the kingdom of *Hungary*, becauſe he had not yet received the crown, which the emperor detained without any ſhadow of pretence; and this defect in *Matthias* had great weight with his ſuperſtitious ſubjects. The kings of *France* and *England* abſolutely refuſed to engage in this cruſade; *Sigiſmund* of *Auſtria* had incurred the ſentence of excommunication from the pope for having outraged and impriſoned cardinal *Cuſa*; the dukes of *Bavaria*, the elector of *Mentz*, the count palatine of the *Rhine*, and almoſt all the princes of *Germany*, were ſo much diſguſted at the indolence, puſilanimity, and ſordid diſpoſition of *Frederic*, that they held private conſultations, in order to deliberate on the means for ſetting him aſide, and electing a new king of the *Romans*.

HE found means, however, to appeaſe *Matthias* with fair promiſes, and to attach *Podiebrad* to his intereſt, by renouncing his pretenſions to the crown of *Bohemia*, and undertaking to ſupport the new king with all his influence; and he was ſcreened from the reſentment of the other princes by the interpoſition and good offices of *Albert* marquis of *Brandenburg*[a].

Lewis *duke of* Bavaria-Landſhut *revives his pretenſions to* Donawert.

A. D. 1460.

BESIDES thoſe diſſentions, which in a great meaſure prevented the ſucceſs of the aſſembly at *Mantua*, other diſputes intervened to harraſs and diſtract the empire. *Lewis* duke of *Bavaria-Landſhut* revived his pretenſions upon *Donawert*, which the emperor *Sigiſmund* had declared a free imperial town, and actually inveſted the place with an army of 20,000 men, which he was enabled to raiſe by a treaty he had made with *Frederic* elector palatine, *Otho* and *John* counts palatine of the *Rhine*, *Ulric* of *Wirtemberg*, and ſeveral other noblemen of the empire.

FREDERIC complained of theſe proceedings to the diet held at *Naremberg*; and the *Bavarian* refuſing to withdraw his troops, war was declared, and a ſtrong body of forces ſent againſt him under the command of *Albert the German Achilles*, who ſoon retook the city of *Donawert*, which had ſurrendered to *Lewis*; and conducted himſelf with ſuch intrepidity and diſcretion, that the emperor created him judge through all *Germany*, with a delegated power to ſummon all perſons guilty of ſtate crimes before his tribunal.

---

[a] BARRE, t. vii. p. 594.

He is put to the ban of the empire.

Engages in a war with Albert *marquis of* Brandenburg, *whom he defeats.*

LEWIS duke of *Bavaria-Landſhut* appealed from this authority to the diet at *Nuremberg*, and demanded a ſight of the patent that eſtabliſhed his office, which, being preſented to him for his peruſal, he read, and tore it in pieces, even in preſence of the emperor, who was ſo much incenſed at his preſumption, that he forthwith put him to the ban of the empire. The ſtates were ordered to furniſh the margrave of *Brandenburg* with troops to execute the ſentence; and tho' the imperial towns of *Suabia* obeyed, thoſe of *Franconia* refuſed their contingent; while the *Huſſites* of *Bohemia*, part of *Auſtria*, and all *Bavaria*, declared for *Lewis*. Both armies took the field, hoſtilities commenced, and notwithſtanding the efforts of *Podiebrad*, who endeavoured to mediate a peace, the war was protracted about three years with various ſucceſs: *Brandenburg* and *Lower Bavaria* were ravaged in their turns: *Lewis* was aſſiſted by the count palatine of the *Rhine*, the biſhops of *Wirtzbourg* and *Bamberg*, and *Otho* duke of *Moſbach*; the elector of *Brandenburg* numbered among his allies the count of *Wirtemberg*, the margrave of *Baden*, and thirty-two imperial towns of *Suabia*. At length the two armies met between *Ulm* and *Nodlingen*, and a very obſtinate and bloody battle enſued, in which *The German Achilles*, being utterly defeated, was obliged to ſue for peace. This was accordingly effected by the mediation of *Podiebrad*, in a treaty concluded at *Prague*, importing, that the emperor ſhould permit *Lewis* to enjoy the rights he claimed to the biſhopric of *Archlet*, the honorary of the *Jews* at *Ratisbon*; and the fiefs he demanded as of right belonging to the *Bavarian* houſe in *Auſtria* [t].

THIS was not the only war that diſtreſſed the interior parts of the empire. Another flame broke out between *Dithric* count *d'Yſembourg*, and *Adolphus* of *Naſſau*, who were competitors for the archbiſhopric of *Mentz*. The firſt had been elected by a majority of the canons; but he was excommunicated by pope *Pius* II. becauſe he had not paid the annates; and, by direction of his holineſs, recourſe was had to a new election, which determined in favour of *Adolphus*. Then both parties appealed to the deciſion of arms, and mutual ravages were committed for ſome years, until *Diethric*, tired of the diſpute, ceded his right to *Adolphus*, received abſolution from the pope's nuncio, and ſpent the remainder of his life as a private gentleman.

---

[t] DUMONT. Corp. Dipl. t. i. p. 288.

BEFORE theſe differences were compromiſed, *Albert* of *Auſtria*, ſtill diſſatisfied, and being ſupported by *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, took up arms again againſt the emperor, ſtill on pretence that he had been injured in the diviſion of his father's dominions; though he now reinforced that pretext by alleging the *Auſtrians* complained that the emperor had incroached upon their privileges. This quarrel was alſo made up for the preſent by the interpoſition of the king of *Bohemia*, who prevailed upon both parties to lay down their arms; but the diſpute was afterwards inflamed to a greater degree of rancour, which broke out in a more cruel inteſtine war. *Albert*, appearing before *Vienna* at the head of his troops, was engaged by the emperor's forces, who obliged him to retreat. The inhabitants of that city, though very little attached to the emperor, were divided into two factions: the ſenate, and wiſer part of the burghers, ſeemed to eſpouſe the intereſt of *Frederic*, while the people, and the conſul *Holzer* at their head, inclined to *Albert*. In the midſt of theſe tranſactions, the emperor preſented himſelf before *Vienna* at the head of 4000 men, and was at firſt refuſed admittance. Some time after, however, the gates were opened, but not before he had promiſed to overlook the affront he received. He then took cognizance of their affairs, changed the magiſtrates according to the inclination of the burghers, and re-eſtabliſhed the tranquillity of the city, which, however, was ſoon interrupted by a tumult that aroſe among the people. In the neighbourhood of the city were ſome ſoldiers, part of whom, during the preceding wars, had been in the ſervice of the emperor, and part of them in the army of *Albert*. Theſe, joining in a body, demanded the arrears that were due to them; and, as no ſatisfaction was given, they began to pillage the country. Complaints of theſe ravages were carried to *Frederic*, who being either diſtreſſed for want of money, or deſirous of trying the affection of the people, demanded of the city a loan of 6000 ducats, to which, he ſaid, he would add the like ſum, in order to maintain the troops neceſſary to quell the diſturbances of which they complained. The inhabitants of *Vienna*, refuſing to comply with this requeſt, or even to furniſh the half of that ſum, to which he afterwards lowered his demand, he threatened the city with his reſentment, and would neither ſatisfy the ſoldiers, nor take any ſtep for putting an end to the violences which they daily committed. The diſorders of conſequence

The quarrel afterwards renewed.

A. D. 1462.

The emperor takes poſſeſſion of Vienna, *which is divided into two factions.*

An inſurrection againſt Frederic;

who is beſieged in the caſtle;

and relieved by the interpoſition of George Podiebrad *king of* Bohemia.

Another ineffectual treaty.

increaſed, and the mutineers, rendered more audacious by impunity, inſulted the vintages, and would not ſuffer them to carry their wine into the city; while thoſe inhabitants who were in *Albert*'s intereſt, took this opportunity to raiſe an inſurrection againſt the emperor. The populace accordingly aſſembled in a tumultuous manner, renounced their allegiance, and ſeized all the money that was found in the public offices. *Frederic*, who with the empreſs, and his young ſon *Maximilian*, reſided in the caſtle, thought he could appeaſe the ſedition by ſending two of his officers to make repreſentations to the ringleaders, and exhort the reſt to return quietly to their homes: but, inſtead of liſtening to theſe remonſtrances, they impriſoned the two officers, and actually formed the ſiege of the caſtle, after having concluded, for two years, a treaty of alliance with *Albert*. In a word, the emperor was ſo harraſſed, and reduced to ſuch extremity, that he and all his attendants muſt have periſhed by famine, had not he been relieved by the interpoſition of *George Podiebrad*, king of *Bohemia*[u]. By his management a treaty was concluded, importing, that the priſoners on both ſides ſhould be releaſed: that *Albert* ſhould reſtore the fortreſſes, towns, and territories, of which he had poſſeſſed himſelf: that he ſhould for eight years enjoy the government of *Lower Auſtria* in quality of vicar, and pay yearly to his brother the ſum of 14,000 ducats[x]. Yet the articles of this agreement were obſerved by neither ſide. *Albert* could not prevail upon himſelf to part with his acquiſitions, and *Frederic* not only refuſed to beſtow upon him the adminiſtration of *Lower Auſtria*, but even put him to the ban of the empire, and perſuaded the pope to ſaddle him with the ſentence of excommunication.

A. D. 1463.

They have again recourſe to arms.

The difference is terminated by

THESE violent proceedings induced them both to have recourſe again to arms; and their troops engaging near *Neuſtadt*, a battle enſued, in which a great deal of blood was ſpilt on both ſides. *Sigiſmund* of *Auſtria*, *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, the empreſs *Eleonora*, and the pope, uſed their utmoſt endeavours to promote a reconciliation between the two brothers; but all their efforts proved ineffectual: *Albert* would not yield what was in his poſſeſſion, and *Frederick* inſiſted upon being maſter of all *Auſtria*, in conſideration of a ſum of money, which he was willing to pay. What could not be compromiſed by human interceſſion, was determined by the decrees of Heaven. *Albert* was overtaken by a ſudden death,

---

[u] Comment. Pii. II. l. x. COCHLÆ, l. xii. HEISS Hiſt de l'Empire, l. iii. c. 2.

[x] DUMONT. ut ſupra.

the death of Albert.

which ſome conſidered as a puniſhment from above, on account of his wicked life, and undutiful behaviour; while others aſcribed it to poiſon; and a third ſet to an apoplexy, occaſioned by his debauchery and incontinence [y]. The phyſicians confirmed the ſuſpicion of poiſon, by declaring they had obſerved marks of it when they inſpected the body, and ſeveral perſons were apprehended in conſequence of their declaration; but, as no proofs of their guilt appeared, they were in a little time ſet at liberty. In the beginning of the following year, *Sigiſmund* yielded to the emperor that portion of *Auſtria* which he inherited from *Ladiſlaus*; ſo that *Frederic* at length found himſelf in peaceable poſſeſſion of that whole duchy [z].

A. D. 1464.

The Hungarians *chuſe* Matthias *for their king.*

THE *Hungarians*, as we have already obſerved, ſeeing the difficulties in which the emperor was involved, inſtead of chuſing a king from the houſe of *Auſtria*, had elected, in the room of *Ladiſlaus*, *Matthias Corvinus*, ſon of the valiant *Hunniades*; but the ceremony of his coronation was not performed at that time, becauſe the emperor ſtill detained the crown which they had always uſed for that purpoſe; beſides he had actually declared open war againſt them, with deſign to add that kingdom to his hereditary dominions; but his efforts were ſo feeble, that they had no apprehenſion of his being able to accompliſh his aim by force of arms. At length, however, being heartily tired of the war, he conſented to reſtore the crown, and concluded a treaty with *Matthias*, in which it was ſtipulated, that a mutual adoption of father and ſon ſhould take place between theſe two princes; and that, in caſe the king of *Hungary* ſhould die without legitimate children or nephews, the crown ſhould devolve to *Frederic* and the heirs of his body [a].

Makes peace with the emperor, who, being alarmed by the incurſions of the Turks, *ſets out for* Italy.

A. D. 1465.

Affairs of Denmark.

POPE *Paul* II. who had ſucceeded to the pontificate on the death of *Pius*, underſtanding that *Mahomet* II. was employed in making great preparations againſt *Scanderbeg* king of *Albania*, wrote to the ſtates of *Germany*, demanding the 32,000 men to fight againſt the *Turks*, according to the promiſe their deputies had made in the aſſembly at *Mantua*; and at the ſame time he ſent a legate to exhort *Chriſtian* king of *Denmark* to join the *German* troops in this expedition; but the princes paid very little regard to his repreſentations, and his *Daniſh* majeſty was too much embarraſſed at home to engage in a foreign war. *Gerhard* count of *Oldembourg*, on pretence of demanding certain ſums that were due to him as ſucceſſor to his brother *Maurice*, took advantage of *Chriſtian*'s abſence in *Sweden* to invade *Holſtein* and *Lower Friezland*, from the inhabitants of which he exacted the oaths of allegiance. The king of *Denmark*, being informed of this irruption, poſtponed his operations in *Sweden* againſt *Charles Canutſon*, who had aſcended the throne of that kingdom, and began his march towards *Holſtein*, to check the progreſs of his brother *Gerhard*. Nevertheleſs, he was prevailed upon, by the mediation of his ſenators, to pardon this prince, who made his ſubmiſſion to him at *Segeberg*, and the *Friezlanders* took the oath of allegiance anew to *Chriſtian* [b].

---

[y] Roo. l. vii. p. 251.

[z] Heiss, l. iii. c. 2.

[a] Leibnitz. Cod. Dipl. p. 422.

Mean while every thing tended to a rupture in *Bohemia* and *Sileſia*. *Podiebrad* laid ſuch religious reſtraints upon the Catholics of *Sileſia*, that the pope declared them exempted from all ſubmiſſion to that prince, and put them under the protection of *Matthias* king of *Hungary*. At the inſtigation of *Rockizane* he exerted the ſame tyranny over his catholic ſubjects of *Bohemia*, forcing upon them the ritual of the *Calixtins*, and puniſhing ſeverely thoſe who refuſed to communicate of both ſpecies. This ſpiritual oppreſſion drove them to ſuch deſpair, that they revolted againſt their ſovereign, and were abſolved from their allegiance by the pope, who ſummoned *Podiebrad* to appear at *Rome* within a ſpecified time, impowered his legate to publiſh a cruſade againſt him, and, finally, declared him convicted of perjury, ſacrilege, and hereſy, deprived of his crown, and all his children and poſterity incapable of receiving any dignity whatſoever [c].

The pope excommunicates Podiebrad, *and abſolves his ſubjects from their oath of allegiance.*

A. D. 1466.

Peace between the Poles *and the* Teutonic *knights of* Pruſſia.

Though *Rodolphus* did not ſucceed in his endeavours to excite the *German* princes againſt *Podiebrad*, he was more lucky in another negotiation, which he undertook at the ſame time; namely, that of mediating a reconciliation between the *Poles* and *Teutonic* knights, which, after a war of fourteen years, was confirmed by a treaty, importing, that all *Pomerania*, and ſome other provinces, ſhould revert to the *Poles*; and that the *Teutonic* order in *Pruſſia* ſhould be feudatory to the king of *Poland* [d].

As for the emperor, he indulged his indolence and timidity to ſuch a degree of careleſſneſs and indifference for the affairs of the empire, that he never dreamed of interpoſing his good offices or authority in order to prevent the deſolation and ſlavery of *Liege*, which had revolted againſt its biſhop, *Lewis* of *Bourbon*, on account of ſome privileges he

---

[b] Huitfeld, t. vi. [c] Papien. Ep. 209. [d] Michom. l. iv. c. 62.

wanted

Philip *duke of* Burgundy *unites the duchy of* Luxemburg *to his dominions.*

wanted to retrieve, and by this inſurrection intailed upon itſelf a war with his uncle, *Philip* duke of *Burgundy*. He had by this time united *Luxemburg* to his dominions by a ſolemn contract with the duke and ducheſs of *Saxony*, who quitted all their pretenſions to that duchy, in conſideration of 50,000 crowns of gold; and this purchaſe was ratified by *Lewis* XI. of *France*, who likewiſe pretended to have ſome right to *Luxemburg* and its dependencies: but a war afterwards breaking out between the *French* king and *Philip*, the inhabitants of *Liege* ſollicited the aſſiſtance of that monarch, who ſent them a ſmall reinforcement; and now they breathed nothing but reproach and defiance. The citizens of *Dinant* in particular, truſting to the ſtrength of their fortifications, let ſlip no opportunity of mortifying the pride and reviling the perſon of *Philip*'s ſon, the count *de Charolois*, who had taken the field, and entered the territory of *Liege*. But they ſoon repented of their inſolence; for he inveſted the town, which he carried by aſſault, and reduced to aſhes, after having put all the men to the ſword, without mercy or diſtinction; and thoſe of *Liege* were fain to deprecate his wrath by the moſt abject ſubmiſſions, reinforced with 300 hoſtages choſen by their biſhop.

The inhabitants of Liege *revolt againſt their biſhop.*

They are humbled by Charles the Warlike, Philip's *ſon and ſucceſſor.*

A. D. 1467.

NEVERTHELESS, upon the death of *Philip*, they had recourſe to arms again, confiding in the temerity and inexperience of *Charles* his ſucceſſor; and arreſted the biſhop, who found means, however, to eſcape, and repaired to his patron at *Bruſſels*. Duke *Charles*, incenſed at this outrage, levied an army, with which he entered the *Liegois*, and inveſted *St. Trou*; and the inhabitants of *Liege* marching out to the relief of the place, were intirely defeated. In conſequence of this battle, *St. Trou* ſurrendered, and was diſmantled: 300 of the principal citizens of *Liege* came with the keys of their town to implore the clemency of the duke, who entered the place ſword in hand, ordered all the fortifications to be razed, the territory to be pillaged, and the whole country to be loaded with taxes[e] (S).

NOR did *Frederic* intereſt himſelf with more ſpirit in the troubles of *Bohemia*, which was now threatened with a civil war,

---

[e] Hiſt. du HAINAULT, t. v. l. xiii.

(S) About this period the celebrated *Scanderbeg* king of *Albania* died in the ſixty-third year of his age, after having obtained a ſeries of victories againſt the *Turks*, which raiſed his character to a level with the moſt famous heroes of antiquity (1).

(1) *Barre*, t. vii. p. 629.

The Catholics of Bohemia *offer the crown to* Caſimir *of* Poland; *and to* Matthias *of* Hungary.

war, in conſequence of the excommunation thundered out by the pope againſt *Podiebrad*. The Catholics, thinking themſelves abſolved by this ſentence from their allegiance, ſent deputies with a proffer of their crown to *Caſimir* king of *Poland*, who had married the ſiſter of their laſt monarch; but that prince declined accepting it, becauſe he dreaded the power and policy of *Podiebrad*, who beſides was ſupported by *Lewis* of *Bavaria-Landſhut*, and ſome other princes of *Germany*. Then the pope made a tender of it to *Matthias* king of *Hungary*, who would have gladly embraced this occaſion of gratifying his ambition, had not he dreaded the reſentment of the emperor, naturally jealous of ſuch an addition to his power; and, moreover, being engaged in a war with the *Tranſylvanians* and *Moldavians*, which did not much redound to his honour; for, in the courſe of his operations, he was ſurpriſed in *Batka*, dangerouſly wounded with an arrow, and obliged to fly for his life acroſs the mountains of *Walachia*.

Diet at Nuremberg.

The princes of Germany *refuſe to act againſt* Podiebrad.

A. D. 1468.

Pope *Paul* II. diſappointed in both theſe quarters, ſollicited the emperor to declare againſt *Podiebrad*; but all he could obtain was the convocation of a diet at *Nuremberg*, to deliberate upon this affair, as well as upon a war againſt the *Turks*. At this aſſembly, the biſhop of *Ferrara*, as legate from the pope, uſed all his endeavours to engage the princes in a war againſt the king of *Bohemia*, who oppreſſed the Catholics, and refuſed to ſubmit in matters of religion to the holy ſee: but their different intereſts influencing them differently, and *Lewis* of *Bavaria-Landſhut* openly eſpouſing the cauſe of *Podiebrad*, no ſtep was taken to the prejudice of that prince. The diet broke, up after having reſolved, that, for the term of five years, the empire ſhould maintain 20,000 men to ſerve againſt the *Turks*; and that the pope ſhould be exhorted to negotiate a ſolid peace among the princes of Chriſtendom[f].

Matthias *advances into* Moravia *againſt* Podiebrad.

Mean while the Catholics of *Bohemia* and *Moravia*, aſſembling at *Iglaw*, ſent an embaſſy to offer the crown to *Frederic*, who ſeemed very well pleaſed with the compliment, but deſired time to conſider on an affair of ſuch importance: but before he could take a final reſolution on this ſubject, *Matthias*, at the preſſing ſollicitations of the pope, accepted the crown, advanced with his troops into *Moravia*, and beſieged *Gradiſch*, while *Zdinion de Sternberg*, chief of the *Bohemian* malecontents, ravaged the fiefs of *Podiebrad*, as miniſter of the holy father, who had declared that prince an excommunicated heretic. But all theſe efforts were ineffectual. *Matthias* was obliged to raiſe the ſiege; and after having had a fruitleſs conference with *Podiebrad* between the two armies, retired to *Hungary* at the approach of winter[g].

---

[f] Avent. l. vii. c. ult.

Proceedings of the diets of Milbenſtadt *and* Neuſtadt.

THE emperor being at the ſame time preſſed by his holineſs to reconcile the princes and towns of *Germany* that were at variance with each other, in order to draw ſuccours from them againſt the infidels, he convoked a diet at *Milbenſtadt*, where he expatiated upon the fatal effects of civil diſcord, and exhorted the ſtates to forget their mutual animoſities, that they might be the better enabled to revenge the cauſe of religion againſt the infidels. His exhortations had ſome weight with the members of the aſſembly; and it was propoſed, that a tribunal ſhould be erected for terminating the differences ſubſiſting between particular towns and noblemen, as well as to puniſh rapine, repreſs violence, and re-eſtabliſh good order.

THE confirmation of this ſcheme, however, was referred to a ſubſequent diet at *Neuſtadt*, where every article and appointment of the tribunal was regulated: but the towns, which complained of being already almoſt overwhelmed with burthenſome taxes, refuſed to contribute to the expence of ſuch a college, though its duration was limited to five years; and the aſſembly broke up without having done any thing material for the public peace[h].

The princes take meaſures for compromiſing particular quarrels between individual noblemen and towns.

SOME ſtates, indeed, ſeeing the neceſſity for eſtabliſhing tranquillity in the empire, compromiſed their reciprocal diſputes; and the electors, with ſeveral other princes, meeting at *Landſhut*, endeavoured to pacify the troubles of *Bohemia*; but this convention was alſo ineffectual, becauſe the Catholics demanded liberty of conſcience, and *Podiebrad* inſiſted upon their communicating of both ſpecies.

WHATEVER precautions might have been taken by ſome of the princes and ſtates for terminating their quarrels in an amicable manner, it was hardly poſſible that peace ſhould long ſubſiſt between individuals who hated one another perſonally. The duke of *Bavaria-Landſhut* omitted no opportunity of exciting the enemies of the elector of *Brandenburg*: *Sigiſmund*, archduke of *Auſtria*, could not abandon the hope and deſign of one day ſubduing the *Swiſs*; and the people of *Liege* watched for an occaſion to break with the duke of *Burgundy*, whom they deteſted with the moſt implacable rancour. Inſpired by theſe ſentiments, they ſurpriſed the town of *Tongres*, put the *Burgundian* garriſon to the ſword;

The inhabitants of

---

[g] BONFIN. dec. iv. l. ii. [h] STUVIUS, period. x. ſect. 2.

Liege revolts against Charles *duke of* Burgundy;

made their own biſhop priſoner, and murdered ſeveral canons before his eyes, with circumſtances of horrid barbarity.

The news of this maſſacre arriving at *Peronne*, where *Charles* of *Burgundy* then reſided, with *Lewis* XI. of *France*, who had viſited him on the faith of a ſafe-conduct, and the duke being at the ſame time informed that the *Liegois* had been inſtigated to this revolt by the intrigues of *France*, he was ſo tranſported with rage, that in all probability *Lewis* would have periſhed by his reſentment, had not that prince ſigned the treaty of *Peronne* on the duke's own terms, and conſented to ſerve as a volunteer in his army againſt the rebels of *Liege*. Thus appeaſed with reſpect to the *French* king, but glowing with indignation againſt the *Liegois*, he marched directly to their city, whither he was accompanied by *Lewis*; refuſed all their tears, intreaties, and ſubmiſſions; inveſted the place, which he carried by aſſault, after the beſieged had made ſeveral deſperate ſallies; ordered the priſoners to be murdered, without diſtinction of ſex or age; and the city to be burnt to aſhes. Not yet ſatiated with theſe ſpectacles of horror, he laid waſte the country of *Franchemont* with fire and ſword; while the wretched inhabitants fled for ſhelter to the woods, where they periſhed by famine or the rigour of the winter, which was remarkably ſevere.

who takes and deſtroys their town; puts his priſoners to death, and ravages the country of Franche-mont *with fire and ſword.*

It was in the courſe of this year that the emperor, finding himſelf expoſed to numberleſs diſquiets from the continual irruptions which the *Turks* made upon the frontiers of his dominions, was alarmed to ſuch a degree, that he reſolved to make another journey into *Italy*, to conſult with pope *Paul* II. upon ways and means for engaging the Chriſtian princes in a new aſſociation againſt the infidels, and to accompliſh a vow which he pretended to have made, though he never explained himſelf on this ſubject. For theſe purpoſes therefore he ſet out, with a ſmall retinue, in the ſevereſt ſeaſon of the year, and on *Chriſtmas-eve* arrived at *Rome*, where he was received by torch light[k]. Mattins being begun in *St. Peter*'s church, where he alighted, he was preſent during the ſervice, performed his vow, and received the communion from the hands of the pope. He ſtaid in this city fourteen days, during which he had divers conferences with his holineſs, touching a war with the *Turks*; but theſe conſultations produced little or no effect. He propoſed to hold a council at *Conſtance*, at which he and the pope ſhould aſſiſt in perſon, with a view to promote a general

Arrives at Rome;

---

[i] Memoires de Philip de Commines.

[k] Papiens Comment. lib. vii.

ral expedition againſt the infidels; but this expedient was declined by *Paul*, and all their deliberations amounted to this iſſue: That letters ſhould be written, in the name of the emperor and the pope, to all Chriſtian princes, deſiring and exhorting them to ſend ambaſſadors to *Rome*, at an appointed day, to treat of meaſures for defending the faith; and that the *Venetians*, who were exhauſted in a tedious war againſt the *Turks*, ſhould be indulged with a tenth of the clergy, a twentieth of the *Jews*, and a thirtieth of the laity, within their own dominions [l]. Theſe negotiations being tranſacted, he ſet out on his return to his own dominions, whither he travelled with the greater expedition, as he received information that *Matthias* king of *Hungary*, taking the advantage of his abſence, had made divers incurſions into *Bohemia* and *Moravia*, and laid waſte the whole country. He was likewiſe given to underſtand, that *Charles* duke of *Burgundy*, who had three years before ſucceeded to the extenſive dominions which *Philip the Good*, his father, had ſo long governed in peace, not contented with that fair inheritance, had increaſed it with the addition of the duchy of *Guelderland* and the county of *Zutphen*, and even intended to proceed farther in point of acquiſition: for the ambition of this prince was unbounded; and, in order to gratify it, he had augmented the taxes, and ſaddled his ſubjects with new impoſitions: neither did he wholly depend upon his riches and power for accompliſhing the ſcheme which he had projected to aggrandize his name: he ſet on foot ſecret negotiations in the empire, and privately tampered with the electors, in hopes of being choſen king of the *Romans*. *Frederic* was not ignorant of his practices, being appriſed of all theſe tranſactions by *Lewis* XI. of *France*, who narrowly watched the conduct of *Charles*, with a view to countermine his ambition [m].

holds ſeveral conſultations with the pope;

and departs from that city in his return to his own dominions.

Charles *duke of* Burgandy, *his ambition.*

A. D. 1470.

Tampers with the electors.

11. DURING theſe tranſactions, *Matthias* was proclaimed king of *Bohemia* by the Catholic party, and his intereſt increaſed every day in that kingdom, when *Podiebrad*, by the advice of the emperor, aſſembled the ſtates at *Prague*, and propoſed they ſhould ſettle the ſucceſſion upon *Ladiſlaus*, ſon of *Caſimir* king of *Poland*. This propoſal they readily embraced, not without admiration and applauſe of the diſintereſtedneſs of *Podiebrad*, who, for the peace and advantage of his ſubjects, had voluntarily made this motion, to the excluſion of his own children. This ſettlement compoſed the diſ-

---

[l] SPOND. Contin. BARON. t. ii. p 607.

[m] HEISS, lib. iii. c. 2.

quietude of the nation, ſo as to enable *Podiebrad* to oppoſe the progreſs of *Matthias*, to whom he gave battle, in which the *Hungarian* was vanquiſhed, and obliged to fly for ſhelter to his own country [n].

Meaſures concerted at Frankfort *for carrying on a general war againſt the* Turks.

Mean while a diet being called at *Ratisbon*, at the deſire of the pope, in order to concert meaſures for carrying on the war againſt the *Turks*, the princes and ſtates aſſembled in great numbers, ambaſſadors from *Charles* duke of *Burgundy* were preſent, and *Campanus*, in the name of cardinal *Francis Piccolimini*, who was ſent thither from the court of *Rome* for that purpoſe, made an elegant harangue; in which he expatiated upon the glory of their anceſtors, and the zeal which they on all occaſions manifeſted in behalf of the church; and exhorted them, in imitation of ſuch noble examples, to take arms againſt the infidels, whoſe progreſs and ſucceſs were not ſo much owing to their own valour, as to the indolence and unjuſtifiable neglect of the Chriſtian powers. The biſhop of *Trent* ſpoke to the ſame purpoſe; and their remonſtrances had ſuch an effect upon the aſſembly, that they ſeemed zealouſly determined to proſecute the war with vigour. Accordingly, after much deliberation and debate, it was unanimouſly decreed, that every perſon, who enjoyed a revenue of a thouſand ducats, ſhould furniſh one horſeman; and that a foot ſoldier ſhould be provided by every perſon who poſſeſſed one-half of that fortune. Had this expedient been carried into practice, an army of near 200,000 men might have been brought into the field; but the pacific and ſlothful diſpoſition of the emperor, which was altogether averſe to war and expence, threw a damp upon the ſcheme, and the ſpirit and zeal of individuals inſenſibly decayed. Notwithſtanding the admonitions and ſolicitations of the *Venetians*, in whoſe behalf *Paul Moroſini*, in a pathetic and nervous oration, repreſented the neceſſity of taking ſome meaſures to ſtop the career of the *Turks*, and plainly demonſtrated the probability of putting a ſtop to their conqueſts, provided the *Germans* would attack them by land, while the *Venetians*, aſſiſted by *Ferdinand* king of *Apulia*, ſhould undertake to cope with them at ſea [o].

Rendered ineffectual by the avarice and ſloth of the emperor.

A. D. 1471.

Ladiſlaus *ſucceeds to the throne of* Bohemia,

In this year *George* king of *Bohemia* dying, great conteſts aroſe among the ſubjects touching a ſucceſſor (for the party of *Matthias* ſtill ſubſiſted), till at length the friends of *Ladiſlaus*, the king of *Poland*'s eldeſt ſon, prevailing, that young prince, whoſe mother was ſiſter of *Ladiſlaus*, the predeceſſor of *George*, aſcended the throne, in the fifteenth year of his age, and was crowned at *Prague*, tho' not without conſiderable oppoſition from *Matthias*, who was exaſperated at his election [p]. This *George Podiebrad* was not long ſurvived by pope *Paul*, who had condemned him as an heretic, and depoſed him by virtue of his apoſtolic power; for he was ſuddenly carried off by a fit of the apoplexy, after he had made a chearful meal (no perſon being preſent when he expired (T)), and ſucceeded in the papacy by *Francis Ruvereus*, cardinal of *St. Peter ad Vincula*, who, after his elevation, aſſumed the name of *Sixtus* IV. [q]. This new pope was no ſooner raiſed to the chair, than he exerted his endeavours in perfecting the plan againſt the *Turks*, for the execution of which his predeceſſor had laboured ſo ineffectually. Legates were ſent with full powers to reconcile the Chriſtian princes, who were at variance with each other, that they might unite in the common cauſe againſt the enemies of their faith. Indulgencies were granted, and ſubſidies raiſed, to forward the expedition, and the emperor very warmly ſollicited to act with vigour as the chief power of this confederacy [r]. But *Frederic*, whoſe genius was better turned for negociation than war, found means to procraſtinate all the meaſures that were concerted for the benefit of this grand aſſociation, employing his chief attention in thoſe domeſtic affairs, which he thought more nearly concerned his intereſt. He had, for ſome time, been engaged in treating privately with the electors about obtaining their votes for chuſing his ſon *Maximilian* king of the *Romans*; and the ſteps which he had taken in this affair, were the chief obſtacles which *Charles* duke of *Burgundy* met with in aſpiring to the ſame honour. That enterprizing prince, therefore, finding it impracticable to carry his point, altered his ſcheme, and reſolved to cultivate the friendſhip of the emperor, who, he did not doubt, would be prevailed upon to erect his dominions into a kingdom, and confer upon him the title of king of *Burgundy*, and vicar of the empire in theſe parts. In conſequence of this reſolution, he made the propoſal to *Frederic*, by which he ſaid, all the countries, which had been diſmembred, would be re-united to the em-

---

[n] Barre, t. vii. p. 657.

[o] Krantz Sax. l. xii. c. 7. Camp. Ep. l. vi. & ap. Pap. Ep. 375, 376, 377. 386, 387.

and Sixtus IV. *to the papacy;*

who exerts himſelf in forwarding the expedition.

---

[p] Michov. iv. c. 62. Chron. lib. 27. [q] Spond. Cont. Barre, t. ii. p. 621. [r] Onuphr. in Vit. Sixt. IV.

(T) Some authors allege that he was ſtrangled by the devil in the very act of uncleanneſs (1).

(1) *Chron. Euſeb. ap. Murat.*

pire, and at the ſame time offered his only daughter *Mary* in marriage to *Maximilian*, ſon of the emperor. While this treaty was upon the carpet, he invited *Frederic* to a conference at *Triers*, where he did not doubt of being able to manage him for his own intereſt. Nay, ſo ſure was he of his compliance, that he had prepared his royal ornaments and regalia, together with the throne, canopy, and all the other requiſites for a pompous coronation. The emperor, who had his own private deſigns upon *Charles*, accepted of the invitation, and repaired to *Triers*, where he was treated with infinite ſplendor. The match was ſeemingly agreed to, tho' the emperor deſired it might be conſummated before the duke ſhould be crowned; but *Charles* inſiſted upon its being deferred until that ceremony ſhould be performed. At laſt *Frederic*, in all appearance, yielded to his intreaties, and the following day being fixed for the coronation, he in that expectation did homage to the emperor, and took the oath of fidelity for *Guelderland*, and all the other territories he poſſeſſed within the dominions of the empire. *Frederic* having thus accompliſhed his aim, and being unwilling to cater for the ambition of a prince, who was already too proud, inſolent, and formidable, retired next morning from *Triers*, at the dawn, on pretence of going to compromiſe a difference between the archbiſhop and city of *Cologne*, leaving the duke overwhelmed with ſhame and vexation [s] (U). Affronted and chagrined as he was at this diſappointment, he did not deſiſt from his enterprize; but, on the contrary, employed all his efforts to atchieve it, ſparing neither men nor money in the exertion of his endeavours. Among other things, he thought proper to grant his protection to *Robert* count palatine, who diſputed the archbiſhopric of *Cologne* with *Herman* landgrave of *Heſſe*. For this purpoſe he beſieged the town of *Nuys*,

Charles, *duke of* Burgundy, *invites the emperor to an interview at* Triers. A. D. 1473.

From whence Frederic *retires abruptly.*

---

[s] PHIL. DE COMM. l. ii. c. 8. HEISS, l. iii. c. 2. KRANTZ Sax. l. xii. c. 11.

(U) *Heiſs* alleges, that the duke of *Burgundy* incurred the ſuſpicion of *Frederic*, in conſequence of the under-hand inſinuations of *Lewis* XI. of *France*, who was alarmed at the proſpect of ſuch a formidable alliance; while the author of the notes upon that hiſtorian pretends, that *Charles*, having aſſumed the arms of *Auſtria*, becauſe ſome territories belonging to that family had been mortgaged to him by *Sigiſmund*, *Frederic* was extremely incenſed at this inſtance of his preſumption, and for that reaſon commenced his inveterate foe.

The duke beſieges the town of Nuys.

ſituated upon the *Rhine*, which was defended with great valour and perſeverance by *Herman*, for the ſpace of a whole year, until the beſieged were reduced to the utmoſt extremity and want; when the troops of the empire marched to its relief, and obliged him to raiſe the ſiege[t] (X).

Lewis *engages in a league with* Rene, *duke of* Lorrain, Sigiſmund *of* Auſtria, *and the* Swiſs, *againſt* Charles, *duke of* Burgundy.

A. D. 1476.

Lewis XI. of *France*, having attempted ineffectually to engage the *Germanic* body in a war with *Charles*, endeavoured to form an alliance againſt that ambitious prince, with *Rene* duke of *Lorrain*, *Sigiſmund* duke of *Auſtria*, and the *Swiſs* cantons; and in theſe negociations he ſucceeded to his wiſh. The firſt was perſuaded, by the emiſſaries of *Lewis*, that *Charles* duke of *Burgundy* intended to include *Lorrain* in the kingdom which he had projected for himſelf; *Sigiſmund* was flattered with the hope of recovering the county of *Ferreſe*, *Suntgau*, and other fiefs in *Alſace*, which he had mortgaged to the *Burgundian*; and the *Swiſs* entered into the pay of *France*, after *Lewis* had terminated, in an amicable manner, a war that raged between them and *Baſil*, aſſiſted by *Straſburg* and the imperial cities of *Alſace*; and reconciled them with *Sigiſmund*, whoſe family they had ſtripped of the towns of *Raperſwil*, *Dreſſanhaw*, *Frewenſfeld*, and the county of *Turgow*.

Hagenbach, *the duke's governor, oppreſſes the towns of* Alſace.

This league being eſtabliſhed, *Sigiſmund* offered to redeem the mortgage with a ſum of money which he had borrowed from the imperial towns for that purpoſe; and *Charles* refuſing to part with the fiefs, he had good reaſon to complain of the injuſtice. At the ſame time *Hagenbach*, governor of the towns for the duke of *Burgundy*, oppreſſed them in ſuch a manner, that their patience forſook them, and they revolted from his authority. *Enſiſheim* was the firſt that ſhook off his yoke, and repulſed him in the attempt he made to enter and deſtroy the town. Enraged at his diſappointment, he retired to *Briſac*, where he laid a ſcheme for maſſacring the inhabitants; but the garriſon, compoſed of *Germans* and *Walloons*, refuſed to execute his orders. His perſon was ſeized upon by the burghers; he underwent a fair trial, in which being convicted of tyranny, murder, and treaſon, he was condemned to loſe his head, and ſuffered accordingly, by torch light, in the preſence of an innumerable concourſe of people.

---

[t] Id. c. 12. Chron. Mindenſ. ex Meib. p. 573.

(X) *Krantz* affirms, that the ſiege was raiſed in conſequence of a treaty with the emperor, confirming the match which had before been projected between his daughter and *Maximilian*; while *Philip de Comines* imputes his retreat to the remonſtrances of the *Engliſh*, who had made preparations for invading *France* at his inſtigation, and now threatened to deſiſt from the expedition, unleſs he would immediately march into that kingdom, that they might the more eaſily act in conjunction. He was alarmed by the incurſions of the duke of *Lorrain*, who had declared war againſt him, and invaded his dominions, at the deſire of *Lewis* XI. of *France*.

He is beheaded by the inhabitants of Briſac.

His brother ravages the Suntgau. *The* Swiſs *and their allies take* Hericourt *in* Franche Comté.

The duke of *Burgundy*, exaſperated at this execution, ſent ſix thouſand men into the *Suntgau*, under the command of *Hagenbach*'s brother, who committed horrible ravages; but he was ſoon obliged to retire before the *Swiſs*, who haſtened to the relief of that province. They were joined by the inhabitants of *Baſil*, *Straſburg*, and other towns on the *Rhine*; and, advancing into *Franche Compte*, they defeated *Blamont*, the marſhal of *Burgundy*, who had come to raiſe the ſiege of *Hericourt*, which afterwards ſurrendered to the victors.

The duke loſes a battle, and his life.

A. D. 1477.

This was the prelude of a war, that ended in the deſtruction of *Charles*. Had that prince contented himſelf with maintaining the war againſt *Lewis*, he might have acquired reputation and advantage from his riches and his power; but, blinded by ambition, he neglected to cultivate the friendſhip of the duke of *Lorrain*, and his confederates the *Swiſs*, who entered into alliance with *Lewis*, and defeated *Charles* in three battles; in the laſt of which, fought at *Nancy* on the fifth of *January*, he was mortally wounded, and next day found dead upon the ice.[u] (Y).

As he had exhauſted his finances, and ruined his troops with continual wars, ſo as to impoveriſh his ſubjects, the principal noblemen of his dominions reſolved to beſtow his daughter upon ſome prince, who ſhould be capable to protect them in their independency. *Lewis* XI. demanded the princeſs for the dauphin, and the emperor claimed her as being already betrothed to his ſon *Maximilian*. *Lewis*, immediately after the death of *Charles*, re-united to his crown all *Burgundy*, *Picardy*, and *Ponthieu*, *Artois*, with the cities of *Arras*, *Tournay*, and thoſe upon the river *Somme*, as fiefs and appendages of *France*, which could never be poſſeſſed by a woman. The precipitation and rapacity with which he made theſe acquiſitions, and the wars he maintained for that purpoſe, gave ſuch umbrage to the inhabitants of *Ghent*, that they reſolved to break with him intirely, ſeized the perſon of their princeſs, beheaded two of her counſellors, and diſmiſſed the reſt, becauſe they were in the *French* intereſt, and levied an army, the command of which they beſtowed upon *Adolphus* duke of *Guelderland*, whom *Charles* of *Burgundy* had impriſoned in the caſtle of *Namur*, as an unnatural wretch, who had treated his own father with unheard-of barbarity. They even deſtined this wicked and debauched prince for the huſband of the young ducheſs, who was delivered from the horrors of ſuch a marriage by death; for he was ſlain in an action with the *French*, whom he undertook to drive from *Tournay*, which they had ſurpriſed. Upon his demiſe, the people of *Ghent* no more intereſted themſelves in the fate of their princeſs, who at one time received the addreſſes of the dauphin of *France*, the ſon of the duke of *Cleves*, the earl of *Rivers*, and the archduke *Maximilian*. The intereſt of the dauphin was ſupported by *Lewis* of *Bourbon*, biſhop of *Liege*, and uncle to the ducheſs; but he was betrayed by *La Marck*, his own favourite, who cauſed an inſurrection againſt the biſhop, at *Liege*, where that prelate was hated, as author of all the miſchief which *Charles* of *Burgundy* had done to that city and its territory. *La Marck*, having ſtipulated with the *Liegois*, that one of his ſons ſhould be raiſed to the vacant biſhopric, levied a powerful army, with which he beſieged *Lewis*; who, hazarding a ſally, was betrayed by his own people, and ſlain by the treacherous *La Marck*. This miſcreant not only killed his benefactor with his own hand, but afterwards ſtripped his dead body, and threw it into the river *Meuſe*[x].

---

[u] Comm. l. v. Krantz Sax. l. xii. c. 15.

(Y) See the Hiſtory of the *Swiſs*.

The inhabitants of Liege *revolt againſt their biſhop; who is ſlain by the hands of his own favourite* La Marck.

The death of this prelate deſtroyed the intereſt of *France* at the court of *Flanders*; the young ducheſs herſelf declared againſt the ſon of the duke of *Cleves*, who was a youth of very unpromiſing parts; and the earl of *Rivers* was rejected on account of his birth, which was not deemed illuſtrious enough for the huſband of the heireſs of *Burgundy*; ſo that all theſe competitors gave place to the fortunate *Maximilian*, who had nothing to boaſt of but his birth and natural endowments; for his father was ſo ſordidly avaritious, that he would not beſtow the leaſt expence upon his education.

Maximilian*'s intereſt prevails at the court of* Flanders; *and he eſpouſes* Mary, *ducheſs of* Burgundy.

Frederic, however, ſeemed to ſhake off his natural indolence, when the buſineſs was to acquire a rich inheritance for his poſterity: he ſent ambaſſadors to demand the young ducheſs in marriage for his ſon; and at the firſt audience they produced the letter and ring, which ſhe had formerly ſent to *Maximilian*, with the conſent of her father. *Lewis* XI. of *France* endeavoured to traverſe the ſucceſs of this embaſſy, by the intrigues of *Robert Guguin*, general of the *Trinitarians*, whom he ſent to *Flanders* for that purpoſe; but the ducheſs-dowager's efforts co-operated with the inclinations of her daughter-in-law, in favour of *Maximilian*, and the emperor managed his intereſt ſo ſucceſsfully, that the marriage was effected between *Mary* of *Burgundy* and his ſon *Maximilian*, who was then about twenty years of age[y]. This young prince was no ſooner married, than, in order to gain the eſteem and good will of his people, he, with the aſſiſtance of the *Flemings*, put himſelf in a condition to oppoſe the enterpriſes of the *French*, whom he compelled to reſtore *Queſnoi* and *Bouchain*; in conſideration of which reſtitution, he granted them a truce; and *Lewis* took this opportunity to make new preparations for war.

---

[x] Hiſt. Eccleſ. Leop. part ii. l. 10.

A. D.
1479.
A treaty concluded between Caſimir, *king of* Poland, *and* Matthias *of* Hungary.

DURING theſe tranſactions, *Matthias* king of *Hungary*, and *Caſimir* of *Poland*, took the field againſt each other, in order to maintain their different pretenſions to the crown of *Bohemia*, and an obſtinate battle was fought near *Breſlaw*, in which *Caſimir* ſaw himſelf defeated. However, as the *Turks* had invaded *Moldavia*, taken *Croia* in *Albania*, and threatened *Italy* itſelf, the pope employed all his influence in mediating a peace between the *Pole* and the *Hungarian*, that they might turn their arms againſt the common enemy; and a treaty was concluded on the following conditions: that *Matthias* ſhould poſſeſs *Moravia* and *Sileſia*, with the titular dignity of king of *Bohemia*, during life; but the ſovereignty of that kingdom ſhould be veſted in *Ladiſlaus*, ſon of *Caſimir*; tho', in caſe of the death of that prince without iſſue, *Matthias* ſhould be acknowleged as his ſucceſſor[z].

Matthias *lays ſiege to* Vienna.

AFTER this accommodation, *Matthias* continued very quiet, until *Maximilian* was engaged in the war with *France*, when, either inſtigated by ſome new provocation from the emperor, or allured by the proſpect of advantage, he marched into *Auſtria* with a ſtrong body of forces, and laid ſiege to *Vienna*. *Frederic*, terrified at this irruption, and being altogether unprovided, and naturally averſe to war, propoſed and purchaſed an accommodation, by renouncing all his pretenſions to the crown of *Hungary*, and giving the inveſtiture of *Bohemia* to *Matthias*, together with a preſent of one hundred and fifty thousand crowns; in consequence of which, the king of *Hungary* raised the siege and retired [a] (Z).

---

[y] FUGGER. l. v. c. 26. [z] BARRE, t. vii. p. 682.

In a few months after this event, the archducheſs *Mary* was delivered of a ſon, baptized by the name of *Philip*, and *Maximilian*, ſeeing the ſucceſſion of the *Low Countries* confirmed to his family by the birth of this prince, renewed hoſtilities againſt *Lewis* XI. in order to recover the dominions of which the *French* had diſmembred the duchy. He was aſſiſted in theſe endeavours by *John de Chalons*, prince of *Orange*; but as his father, and uncle *Sigiſmund*, refuſed to aſſiſt him with money or troops, and the *Flemings* were almoſt quite exhauſted; he made but ſmall progreſs in the war; while *Lewis* renewed his alliance with the *Swiſs*, who furniſhed him with ſix thouſand men, and gained ſeveral advantages over the *Flemings* and the prince of *Orange*.

In this emergency, *Maximilian* addreſſed himſelf to the diet of the empire convoked at *Nuremberg*, repreſenting that the king of *France* had made himſelf maſter of *Cambray*, *Bouchain*, and *Queſnoy*, three towns that were under protection of the empire; and at the ſame time *Frederic* exhorted the ſtates to arm for the recovery of theſe imperial fiefs.

Lewis, intimidated by theſe repreſentations, in conſequence of which he expected to ſee the forces of the empire in his dominions, evacuated the places in queſtion, and propoſed a truce for a year; which was accepted by *Maximilian*, who found himſelf unable to maintain the war. During this ceſſation, however, he found means to intereſt the people of *Liege* in his cauſe, by ſending back their peron, or great ſtandard, which duke *Charles* had tranſported to *Bruges*; and they reinforced him with a body of troops; ſo that, when the truce expired, he found himſelf in a condition to act with advantage.

---

[a] Cromer. l. viii. in fin.

(Z) In the courſe of this year, *Christian* king of *Denmark* arrived at *Ratembourg*, on a viſit to the emperor, who, at his requeſt, erected the country of the *Dythmarſians*, *Stormaria*, and *Holſtein*, into a duchy, of which *Chriſtian* received the inveſtiture. Then he proceeded on a pilgrimage to *Rome*, and, on his return to his own dominions, ſolemnized the marriage of his ſon *John* with *Chriſtina*, daughter of *Erneſt*, elector of *Saxony*: on which occaſion he is ſaid to have inſtituted the order of the elephant (1).

(1) *Barre*, t. vii. p. 714.

He accordingly took the field againſt *Des Cordes*, the *French* general; and hazarding a battle at *Guinegaſte*, near *Terouane*, obtained a victory, which, in ſome meaſure, re-eſtabliſhed the affairs of the *Low Countries* [b].

A. D. 1480.

After this action, a truce was agreed to for ſeven months, during which the pope offered his mediation to effect a ſolid peace: but *Lewis* in the mean time being ſeized with a dangerous diſtemper, *Edward* IV. king of *England*, who was in alliance with *Maximilian*, counſelled that prince to evade a treaty; but, if poſſible, to prolong the truce for two years, before the expiration of which, the death of the *French* king would, in all probability, enable him to procure a more advantageous accommodation.

As for the pope, his efforts of interceſſion were ſuſpended by the progreſs of the *Turks*; who, having taken *Otranto*, filled all *Europe*, and *Italy* in particular, with ſuch conſternation, that his holineſs made peace with the *Florentines*, againſt whom he and the king of *Naples* had been engaged in a war, and wrote to the emperor and the ſtates of *Germany*, as well as to all other princes of Chriſtendom, to compromiſe their differences, and march againſt the infidels. The *German* princes were likewiſe ſollicited to the ſame purpoſe by *Matthias* king of *Hungary*, to whom *Mohammed* had offered the kingdom of *Boſnia*, provided he would grant him an unmoleſted paſſage through his dominions. In compliance with the pope's requeſt, ſeveral princes and ſtates engaged in a league againſt the *Turks*; but the emperor's ſloth and avarice would not allow him to contribute to the ſucceſs of this expedition, and it was well for *Europe* that *Mohammed* II. died at *Nicomedia*, before he could execute the ſchemes he projected [c].

Mohammed *dies at* Nicomedia.

Maximilian *appeaſes the troubles of the* Low Countries.

Maximilian, far from inheriting the ſluggiſh diſpoſition of his father, exerted uncommon activity during the truce with *France*, in appeaſing the troubles of the *Low Countries*. He ſuppreſſed a mutiny at the *Hague*, and exacted a conſiderable fine from the burghers of *Leyden*, who had afforded an aſylum to ſome of the mutineers; then he repaired to *Luxemburg*, where he renewed the oath of allegiance from the magiſtracy of the town, and the noblemen of the country; and, on his return to *Holland*, created his ſon *Philip* knight of the golden fleece.

After having been proclaimed duke of *Brabant*, he defeated the people of *Guelderland*, who had made incurſions into the province of *Holland*, and he and his wife were publicly acknowleged at *Nuremberg*, as duke and ducheſs of *Guelderland*. This expedition being happily terminated, he beſieged and took *Venloo*, which had revolted; from thence he marched to *Mons*, which ſurrendered, after having been reduced to the utmoſt extremity; and there he received the accuſtomed oath from the nobility, clergy, and commons, in quality of count of *Hainault*.

---

[b] Krantz. Sax. l. xii. c. 19.

[c] Bonfin. dec. iv. l. 6.

LEWIS, terrified at the rapidity of his conqueſts, ſent *Philip de Commines* to *Flanders*, to negociate an accommodation; but the archduke kept aloof, in expectation of the king's death, when he hoped *France* would purchaſe a peace at the expence of all ſhe had taken from the houſe of *Burgundy*; and, in all probability, *Philip*'s endeavours would have been ineffectual, had not an unforeſeen accident contributed to his ſucceſs. *Mary* died while ſhe was big with child, leaving a ſon called *Philip*, and a daughter, whoſe name was *Margaret*; and great diſputes aroſe about the guardianſhip of theſe children, which *Maximilian* claimed as the father, tho' he was oppoſed by the near relations of the deceaſed princeſs, ſupported by the ſuffrages of the ſtates general. Mean while both ſides agreed, that it was neceſſary to negociate a peace with *France*, which was accordingly concluded at *Arras*, and ſignified by *Maximilian* himſelf [d]; and, in purſuance of this accommodation, the young princeſs *Margaret* was ſent to *Amboiſe*, in order to be educated for a wife to the young dauphin; whoſe father dying ſoon after the peace, he aſcended the throne of *France* by the name of *Charles* VIII.

A. D. 1482.

Mary *dies.*

MAXIMILIAN's hands were no ſooner rid of this troubleſome war, than he turned his arms againſt the *Liegois*, made himſelf maſter of *Tongres*, and defeated their general *La Marck*, who marched to the relief of the place. He met with the ſame ſucceſs in ſeveral other petty quarrels, and perhaps his pride increaſed with his good fortune. Certain it is, the *Flemings* were very much diſguſted with his adminiſtration, and loudly complained, that he beſtowed the beſt offices and governments upon *Germans* and *Burgundians*: nor did he ſeem to regard their complaints; on the contrary, ſome of his council, for their own private ends, having perſuaded him that he had a right, not only to the guardianſhip of his own children, but alſo to the government of his dominions, he reſolved to take both into his own hands; and, with this view, poſſeſſed himſelf, by ſurprize, of *Dendermond*, *Oudenarde*, and ſome other places. The inhabitants

A conteſt enſues about the guardianſhip of her children.

---

[d] Peuves. de Mem. de COMMIN. t. iv. p. 272.

ants of *Ghent* and *Bruges*, dreading the ſame fate, ſecured the perſon of his ſon *Philip*, and ſent to demand protection from the king of *France*; who, in order to take the advantage of this quarrel among his neighbours, detached ſome forces to their aſſiſtance, under the command of the Sieur *Crevecœur*; ſo that *Flanders* was involved in a civil war, which laſted three years, to the ruin and deſolation of the country. At length, by the interpoſition of ſome of the principal noblemen, peace was concluded, on condition that *Maximilian* ſhould continue tutor to his own ſon, under certain reſtrictions[e].

A. D. 1485.

An accommodation.

War between Albert *of* Bavaria *and his brother* Chriſtopher.

During the troubles of *Flanders*, there were ſeveral commotions in *Germany*, one of which was produced from a quarrel between *Albert* of *Bavaria* and his brother *Chriſtopher*, about the domain of *Landſperg*, which the latter continued to poſſeſs, in oppoſition to a previous agreement. The inhabitants, being oppreſſed by *Chriſtopher*, complained to *Albert*, who aſſerted his own right by force of arms; and hoſtilities commenced with various ſucceſs; until, at length, *Albert* made advances to peace, which was concluded at *Landſhut*, on condition that he ſhould enjoy *Landſperg* and its dependencies, and yield *Schongaw*, with all its fiefs, in exchange to his brother[f].

Albert *reduces* Ratiſbon *under the dominion of his houſe, and marries the emperor's daughter* Cunegunda.

In the following year, he prevailed upon the inhabitants of *Ratiſbon*, which had been enfranchiſed, and declared a free imperial town, by *Frederic Barbaroſſa*, to ſubmit again to the ſway of the *Bavarian* houſe; and afterwards eſpouſed the emperor's daughter *Cunegunda*, with whom her uncle *Sigiſmund* gave him the county of *Tyrol* by way of portion. This match being made without the conſent or privity of the emperor, he complained of the alliance as an incroachment upon his paternal authority, as well as upon the rights of the empire, and threatened to proſcribe both *Sigiſmund* and *Albert*; but, as they knew his indolence and incapacity, they gave themſelves no concern about his menaces.

Matthias *declares war againſt the emperor, and invades* Auſtria.

Matthias, piqued at a repulſe he had ſuſtained from the emperor, when he demanded this princeſs in marriage, and incenſed, moreover, at *Frederic*'s ſtill continuing to aſſume the title of king of *Hungary*, declared war againſt him, entered *Lower Auſtria* with an army of twenty thouſand men, and inveſted *Haimbourg*, which ſurrendered after a ſiege of four months. From thence he advanced into the territory of *Vienna*, from which he carried off an immenſe load of booty;

---

[e] Fugger. l. v. c. 50.

[f] Adlzr. Ann. Bojor. Gent. part ii. l. 9.

Next year he divided his forces, which had acquired the appellation of *Black Bands*, into two armies, one of which he led in perſon to the frontiers of *Lower Hungary*, which was threatened by the *Turks*, and ſent the other, under the command of *David Hazi*, to beſiege *Pruck* on the river *Leit*, one of the ſtrongeſt places in *Auſtria*; which he took by aſſault, and made himſelf maſter of all the other towns, except *Vienna* and *Cornenbourg*. The next enterprize he undertook was the ſiege of this laſt place, which was gallantly defended by the governor, in the hope of his being ſpeedily ſuccoured.

The indolence of the emperor.

Frederic had retired to *Gratz*, where he convoked the ſtates of his provinces, to demand ſubſidies; but, as he was not at all beloved by his ſubjects, they lent a deaf ear to his intreaties. His chancellor adviſed him to open his treaſures, and enliſt foreign troops; but he could not be prevailed upon to try that expedient, until his friends repreſented, that, ſhould *Matthias* once make himſelf maſter of *Cornenbourg* and *Vienna*, he would eaſily ſubdue *Carinthia, Stiria*, and *Carniola*; then the fear of loſing all his dominions triumphed over his avarice; he ſet on foot levies in *Bavaria* and *Suabia*, and a conſiderable body of forces being inliſted, were ordered to march, with all expedition, to the relief of *Cornenbourg*. *Hazi*, informed of their motions, quitted his lines, and gave them battle; when, after an obſtinate diſpute, they were totally routed; then he re-commenced the operations of the ſiege, and tho' he himſelf loſt his life in a ſally made by the beſieged, his place was filled with *Stephen* count *Scepu*, and the town at laſt obliged to ſurrender.

His forces are defeated by the Hungarians; *who take* Cornenbourg, Vienna, *and* Neuſtadt, *and make themſelves maſters of all the* Lower Auſtria; A.D. 1486.

Matthias, encouraged by this ſucceſs, took the command of the army upon himſelf, and ſat down before *Vienna*, which he reduced after a very deſperate reſiſtance, while count *Stephen* blocked up the fortreſs of *Neuſtadt* in ſuch a manner, that no ſupplies could enter the place, and the governor having held out ſix months, during which one half of his garriſon periſhed by famine, ſubmitted to the king of *Hungary*; who, in this manner, became maſter of all the *Lower Auſtria* [g].

while Frederic *refuſes to take any ſtep for its preſervation.*

While *Matthias* was thus employed, *Frederic* kept aloof, and looked upon the loſs of his capital with indifference; anſwering to thoſe, who preſſed him to take meaſures for its relief, that it had not yet ſuffered that extremity, to which he himſelf had been formerly reduced by its rebellious adherence to the intereſt of his brother *Albert*. Inſtead of exerting himſelf, therefore, in its behalf, he cooly abandoned it to the fate of war; and in order to divert his imagination from a miſfortune, which he either would not or could not avoid, he reſolved to viſit his ſon *Maximilian* in the *Low Countries*, conſoling himſelf with an obſervation, which he had long adopted as an infallible maxim, "that oblivion is the beſt "remedy for irreparable ills." At length, however, he condeſcended to ſollicit the aſſiſtance of the ſtates, and *Albert* duke of *Saxony* was appointed to march into *Auſtria*, at the head of ſome forces; where finding *Matthias* too powerful to be attacked, and being unwilling to involve *Germany* in a war, he endeavoured to compromiſe the affair, and at length brought it to a tolerable concluſion. In a word, it was agreed, that there ſhould be a truce for eight months; that *Matthias* ſhould keep poſſeſſion of *Auſtria*, until he ſhould receive the ſum of money which he had before ſtipulated for defraying the expence of the preceding war; and that, provided *Matthias* ſhould die in the mean time, *Auſtria* ſhould return to its old maſter, who ſhould alſo retain the title of king of *Hungary*. Theſe articles were ratified by the emperor, and peace for the preſent re-eſtabliſhed [h].

---

[g] Czechor. l. vii. c. 5.

of

5

An accommodation effected.

In the mean time, the emperor repaired to the *Low Countries*, where he reſided three months; at the expiration of which, he ſet out on his return, by the way of *Aix la Chapelle*, where he beſtowed upon *William the Young* the inveſtiture of *Juliers* and *Bergue*; then he viſited *Cologne*, where he received the oath of allegiance from the prince of *Cleves*, for his duchy, together with the counties of *La Marck* and *Genap*; and from thence he took the road to *Frankfort*, accompanied by *Maximilian*, who was unanimouſly choſen king of the *Romans*, by ſix electors, notwithſtanding the oppoſition of *Matthias*, who made ſundry efforts to traverſe his election.

Maximilian *is choſen king of the* Romans, *and*

The princes of the empire had long ago ſollicited *Frederic* to aſſemble a diet for this purpoſe; but, knowing the activity of the archduke, he was afraid of loſing the little authority he had left, and ſtill evaded their requeſt till this occaſion, and even now conſented with reluctance.

Ladislaus, king of *Bohemia*, proteſted againſt this election, to which he had not been ſummoned, and, on the ſuppoſition that the *German* princes deſigned to deprive him of his vote, he threatened to do himſelf juſtice by force of arms; but he was appeaſed in the ſequel, by an authentic act of the diet, confirming the right of voting to him and his ſucceſſors; and *Maximilian* was crowned at *Aix la Chapelle*, with the con-

crowned at Aix la Chapelle;

---

[h] Heiss Hiſt. de l'Emp, l. iii. c. ii.

ſent of the pope, who congratulated him upon his promotion [i] (A).

After this ceremony, he repaired to *Bruges*, to put the finiſhing ſtroke to the treaty between him and the ſtates of *Flanders*, which was confirmed in the preſence of the emperor, who had gone thither at the head of a good body of troops; and perceiving that his ſon would have occaſion for them, to ſupport the war againſt *France*, left them under his command, when he himſelf returned to *Germany*. As theſe forces committed great ravages in the country, which was already deſolated; and the neareſt relations of the deceaſed princeſs *Mary* were excluded from all ſhare in the education of their young prince *Philip*, who was intirely under the management of *Margaret* dowager of *England*, and ſome other ſtrangers; the ſubjects ſoon forgot the duty they owed to their prince, and now liſtened to nought but the ſuggeſtions of ſuſpicion and diſguſt. To ſuch a degree did this diſſatisfaction prevail, that, upon *Maximilian*'s arrival at *Bruges*, where the ſtates general of *Flanders* were aſſembled, in order to apply ſome remedy to the diſorders which were daily committed by his troops, a report was ſpread, that he intended to uſe them for making himſelf maſter of the city. The citizens and tradeſmen, alarmed at this intimation, ran immediately to arms, and ſecured his perſon under a guard in the caſtle [k]; at the ſame time impriſoning ſome of his counſellors and favourites, four of whom were afterwards beheaded. The inhabitants of *Ghent*, following the example of *Bruges*, brought *Fayart*, archdeacon of their church, to his trial, together with ten other perſons, who loſt their heads, for having allowed *Maximilian* to enter the city with

is impriſoned by the inhabitants of Bruges.
A. D. 1488.

---

[i] Freher. t. iii. Rer. Ger.

[k] Oliv. Marchian. l. ii. Krantz, xiii. Sax. 8. & ſeq. Beuter. de Reb. Maximil. l. iii.

(A) In this diet at *Frankfort*, a law was made for preſerving the peace of the empire for ten years, during which, if any perſon ſhould injure another, in body or eſtate, he ſhould be proſecuted by all the reſt as a violator of the public peace. This law was religiouſly obſerved by a great many, particularly by the *Suabians*, who entered into an aſſociation with each other, by which they were rendered ſo formidable to their neighbours, that ſeveral cities of the empire, and powerful princes, deſired to be included in their confederacy, which was diſtinguiſhed by the name of the *Suevicum Fœdus*, or the *Suabian* league (2).

(2) *Naucler. Gener.* 50.

five thouſand men, in lieu of five hundred, to which number his train had been limited by agreement. On account of this impriſonment of *Maximilian,* the ſtates of the country were convoked at *Mechlin* by the young prince *Philip*, in order to concert meaſures for obtaining his father's enlargement; and the aſſembly, at the unanimous deſire of the members, was transferred to *Ghent*, which they conſidered as a more convenient place for their deliberations. The *Flemings* began the conferences with heavy complaints againſt *Maximilian*, whom they accuſed of having committed divers miſdemeanours and acts of arbitrary power: theſe articles were anſwered by his friends and partiſans, who defended his conduct with great warmth and reſolution; and ſtrong debates enſued upon the reaſons alleged on both ſides. At length, pope *Innocent* and the emperor interpoſed in behalf of their impriſoned ſovereign; the firſt threatening them with ſpiritual, and the other with temporal arms, in caſe they ſhould perſiſt in detaining him in cuſtody; and the ſtates, in conſequence of theſe remonſtrances, engaged in a treaty with *Maximilian*, which being concluded, ſigned, and ratified, he was ſet at liberty, after a detention of ten months, and conducted to his troops, who kept the field, and advanced to meet their delivered monarch [l]. Such was the precaution of the ſtates, in executing this treaty, that they obtained an obligation from *Philip* duke of *Cleves*, in conſequence of which he accompanied *Maximilian* into the middle of his forces, and intreated him, now he was at full liberty, to confirm the accommodation by word of mouth. To this requeſt that prince anſwered, "Nephew, I will keep my promiſe." Nevertheleſs, at his arrival in *Brabant*, where he was met by his father with a ſtrong army of *Germans*, he changed his reſolution, at the ſollicitation of the emperor, the princes of *Saxony*, *Bavaria*, *Brandenburg*, *Brunſwick*, *Heſſe*, *Baden*, and others, who accompanied *Frederic*, and could not approve of ſuch an extorted peace, which was immediately declared void, and the war re-commenced [m].

He is ſet at liberty.

He renounces the articles of the peace.

THE emperor and *Maximilian* at firſt endeavoured to engage the duke of *Cleves* in their party, and threatened him, as a vaſſal, with the ban of the empire, and proſcription, unleſs he would obey his ſovereign: but the duke excuſed himſelf, on account of the oath, which, by the expreſs order of *Maximilian*, he had ſworn to the ſtates of *Flanders*; and, proteſting againſt the infringement of the treaty, he continued firmly to oppoſe them, reſolved to live and die with ho-

---

[l] Chron. Car. VIII, &c.

[m] Chron. Brabant. c. 161.

nour,

ions, rather than incur the charge of perjury and equivocation. *Frederic*, finding him thus obſtinately determined, reſolved to inflict upon him exemplary chaſtiſement: for this purpoſe, being at *Antwerp*, he ordered a throne to be raiſed in the court of *St. Michael*'s cloiſter, upon which ſeating himſelf in his imperial robes, he ſolemnly put the duke to the ban of the empire, declaring him a traitor, and diveſting him of his honours and dominions [n]. He at the ſame time undertook the ſiege of *Ghent*, in which, after he had ſpent ſix weeks, without being able to do any thing of conſequence, he abandoned his enterprize, laid waſte the country, and returned to *Germany*, leaving the command of his troops to *Albert* duke of *Saxony* (B).

Philip *of* Cleves *put to the ban of the empire.*

THIS abrupt return was owing to the information he had received that the *Hungarians* had again invaded *Auſtria*, becauſe he ſtill delayed the payment of that ſum with which he had formerly purchaſed their forbearance. He therefore, in his own name, and in that of his ſon *Maximilian*, ſent an embaſſy to *Matthias*, who was at that time ſick in *Vienna*, deſiring that a negotiation might be ſet on foot; and when his ambaſſadors returned to *Lintz*, they were accompanied by the biſhop of *Waradin*, who was inveſted with full powers to conclude a treaty of peace. The negotiation laſted a long time without ſucceſs, becauſe *Frederic* demanded the reſtitution of *Auſtria*, and refuſed to reimburſe *Matthias* for the expence of the war; whereas the king of *Hungary* now raiſed his demand to a very conſiderable ſum. *Maximilian*, equally diſpleaſed at the extortion of *Matthias*, and the intereſted proceedings of the emperor, propoſed to obſerve a medium, and purchaſe a peace with part of the ſum which the king of *Hungary* demanded: but whether this moderate advice was not agreeable to the emperor, or that he had taken umbrage at the good intelligence that ſubſiſted between the enemy and his own ſon, he would not allow *Maximilian* to aſſiſt at the conferences. Whatever his motive might be, certain it is, he ſought nothing leſs than the concluſion of a peace; for he could not bear the thoughts of parting with

Frederic *enters into a negotiation with the king of* Hungary;

---

[n] HEISS, Hiſt. liv. iii. c. 2.

(B) About this time the emperor erected *Auſtria* into an archduchy, and conferred the title upon *Philip* the ſon of *Maximilian*, who was the firſt of the family of *Hapſburg* diſtinguiſhed by the name of archduke (1).

(1) *Marian. lib.* xxv. *c.* 12.

who dies, and is ſucceeded by Ladiſlaus, *notwithſtanding the oppoſition of the emperor;*

who concludes a peace with the new king,

his money for the redemption of a province which he ſaw himſelf on the eve of retrieving without expence, as the diſtemper of *Matthias* was ſaid to be incurable: in effect, his malady every day increaſed, and *Frederic* found means to invent new delays, which retarded the treaty until the king of *Hungary* actually expired, when, inſtead of concluding a peace, he demanded the vacant throne, either for himſelf or his ſon *Maximilian*. Notwithſtanding this requeſt, the *Hungarians* elected *Ladiſlaus* king of *Bohemia*, though *Maximilian* had already recovered all *Auſtria*, made himſelf maſter of a good part of *Hungary*, and had the promiſe of powerful ſuccours from the empire: in ſpite of theſe advantages, *Frederic* made peace with *Ladiſlaus* [*], on condition that he ſhould be reimburſed in one hundred thouſand florins, to defray the expence of the war; that he ſhould remain ſole poſſeſſor of *Auſtria*; that *Ladiſlaus* ſhould retain the crown of *Hungary*; and that *Maximilian* and his deſcendents ſhould enjoy the title, with the right of ſucceeding to the crown in default of iſſue.

During theſe diſputes, *Frederic*, by an authentic act, annulled the donation of the *Tyrol*, which his brother *Sigiſmund* had made in favour of *Albert* duke of *Bavaria*, on his marriage with *Cunegunda*; declaring that, like the other fiefs belonging to *Sigiſmund*, it ought to have reverted to the king of the *Romans*, who was his ſole and lawful heir. *Albert* proteſted againſt this act, and engaged a number of princes and towns in his intereſt; while the emperor, tho' diſſuaded by *Maximilian* from ſuch violent meaſures, put the duke of *Bavaria-Munich* to the ban of the empire, together with the inhabitants of *Ratiſbon*, who had acknowledged the ſovereignty of that prince. In a diet convoked at *Nuremberg* he adjuſted the proportion of money and troops to be furniſhed by each prince and town of the empire, in order to execute this ſentence, and the command of the army was given to the elector of *Brandenburg*, who, though he took the field, could do nothing of conſequence againſt the *Bavarian*, ſo well had this prince ſecured his dominions.

At length *Frederic*, being tired of the war, which was not at all adapted to his diſpoſition, liſtened to the remonſtrances of *Maximilian*, who mediated a peace, on condition that *Ratiſbon* ſhould be re-eſtabliſhed in the privileges of an imperial town; and that *Albert* ſhould reſtore *Tyrol* to the houſe of *Auſtria*, in conſideration of being put in poſſeſſion of the lordſhip of *Abenſperg*, and receiving a proper dowry with the princeſs *Cunegunda*.

---

[*] To Rer. Hungar. poſt. Bonfin. Ranz. Indic. 37.

IN *Flanders* the war ſtill continued to the utter ruin of the country, till at length an accommodation was patched up between *Maximilian* and *Charles* king of *France*[p], who wanted to cultivate the friendſhip of the king of the *Romans*, that he might, in the courſe of their correſpondence, find ſome favourable occaſion for diſengaging himſelf, without giving offence, from his match with *Margaret*, *Maximilian*'s daughter, who had been educated at the court of *France*, and actually betrothed to *Charles*. Beſides this motive, he longed for an opportunity of weaning *Maximilian* from the thought of conſummating his marriage with *Ann* heireſs of *Brittany* (C), which had been performed by proxy, and which the king of *France* intended, if poſſible, to diſſolve in his own favour; for his deſign was to reunite *Brittany* to his kingdom. With this view, *Charles* had recourſe to arms, invaded the duchy of *Brittany*, made himſelf maſter of the greateſt part of it by force, beſieged *Rhiden* where the princeſs was with her court, and, by preſents and promiſes, brought over to his intereſt the noblemen of that country, who delivered the city and the ducheſs into his hands. A few days after this atchievment, he married *Ann*, by virtue of a double diſpenſation from the pope, ſetting aſide his former contract with *Margaret* the daughter of *Maximilian*, as well as removing the impediment of conſanguinity with his new bride. The king of the *Romans*, incenſed at this double affront, by which his daughter was diſhonoured and his marriage annulled, reſolved to be revenged upon the author of his wrongs, and ſollicited the aſſiſtance of the princes of the empire and the *Swiſs*; but, at a time when every thing threatened war and confuſion, a treaty of peace was concluded at *Senlis*, in which it was agreed that the king of *France* ſhould ſend back *Margaret* to her brother the archduke, and reſtore with her the counties of *Artois* and *Burgundy*; but that he ſhould retain

and with Charles *king of* France; A. D. 1489.

1491. *who invades* Brittany, *and marries the ducheſs* Ann.

Is threatened by Maximilian, *with whom, however, a treaty is concluded at* Senlis. 1492.

---

[p] Vide TIL. in Trait. int. reg. Franc. & Angl. in Carol. VIII.

(C) This marriage was publicly celebrated in the church, and, that it might be held the more binding, the proxy, by order of *Maximilian*, conſummated it, by putting his naked leg, as far as the knee, into the bed where the princeſs lay undreſſed; this being the firſt time that ſuch a ceremony was performed (2).

(2) *Remarq. ſur Heiſs, lib* iii. *c.* [illegible]

the citadels in the four cities in *Artois*, until *Philip* ſhould be of age to ratify the peace[q].

In the courſe of this year died *Caſimir* IV. king of *Poland*, and father of *Ladiſlaus*, who now reigned over *Hungary* and *Bohemia*; and the death of the *Poliſh* monarch was ſoon followed by that of pope *Innocent* VIII. ſucceeded in the papacy by *Roderic Borgia*, who aſſumed the name of *Alexander* VI.

Nor did the emperor long ſurvive theſe alterations. After the laſt effort of his reſentment againſt the duke of *Bavaria*, which rouſed him from the lethargy of his ſloth, to the aſtoniſhment of the whole empire, he reſolved to give himſelf no farther trouble with the affairs of government, but to ſpend the remainder of his life in a peaceful retreat.

The emperor Frederic *retires to* Lintz, *where he dies.* A. D. 1493.

With this view he retired to *Lintz*, and applied himſelf to the ſtudy of chemiſtry, aſtronomy, and aſtrology; but, in the midſt of theſe amuſements, he was ſeized with a violent diſorder, which being increaſed by his eating melons to exceſs, put a period to his life, in the fifty-fourth year of his reign, and the ſeventy-ninth of his age[r]. His diſtemper is ſaid to have ariſen from a cancerated ulcer in his leg, which was amputated by the advice of his phyſicians, though he died of the fever that attended the operation. On this occaſion, when he beheld the limb cut off, “I am now convinced, ſaid “he, that a healthy peaſant is much better than a ſick emperor; and yet I hope I ſhall enjoy the greateſt good that “can happen to man, namely, a happy exit from this life.” It is obſerved of *Frederic*, that his reign was longer than that of any other emperor, ſince the days of *Auguſtus*, and that he never ſwore but twice during the whole courſe of his life; one of theſe oaths he took at his coronation at *Aix*, and the other when he received the imperial crown at *Rome*. He was ſurnamed *the Pacific*, becauſe he was averſe to war; yet there was an inconſtancy in his temper, which often prompted him to quarrels and diſputes, though when they came to an open rupture he generally ſued for peace. He held an infinite number of diets, in which nothing was ever determined, becauſe he always poſtponed the buſineſs to another meeting. In a word, he ſeems to have been a prince of a contemptible character, abſolutely void of generoſity, courage, and reſolution; yet, by the alliance made with the houſe of *Burgundy*, he greatly aggrandized the wealth and power of the *Auſtrian* family. He ſeldom or never had re-

His pacific character.

Dilatory diſpoſition.

---

[q] Mez. Chron. abr. tom. ii. p. 770.

[r] Nauclei. gen. 50. Michov. dit. iv. c. 77. Bonfin. v. Dec. iii.

ſe to the advice of his friends, was endowed with a fund
w cunning, and a tenacious memory; and ſcrupulouſly
r in the offices of devotion, in which he was rather ſu-
iptious than ſenſible. His perſon was agreeable, and his
tenance dignified with an air of majeſty. He was plain
apparel, moderate in his paſſions, and an enemy to all
of exceſs. He ate ſo little, that his life was one conti-
faſt, and diluted his wine to ſuch a degree, that it was
ſtronger than water. He choſe for his device the five
ls (D), which were imprinted upon all his books, carved
e buildings, and engraved on his plate. His body was
ed at *Vienna*, and his tomb diſtinguiſhed by an epitaph,
h contains an enumeration of his titles, an encomium
his ſagacity and moderation, and an account of the acqui-
he made of the *Low Countries*, by the marriage of his ſon
milian * (E).

His abſtemious manner of living, his device, funeral, and epitaph.

CHAP. XI.

xplaining the Beginning of the Reformation in Germany.

MAXIMILIAN I.

AXIMILIAN, who had been choſen and crowned
king of the *Romans* during the life of his father, re-
d the imperial crown with the unanimous conſent of all
lectors, immediately after the laſt offices were perform-
Frederic; and he brought with him to the throne all
ualities requiſite to ſignalize a great prince, being equal-
apted for the adminiſtration during war and in the time
ace. His childhood had been ſo remarkably unpromiſ-

A. D. 1493. Maximilian *ſucceeds to the imperial throne.*

---

* Heiss, liv. iii. c. 2.

) Among ſeveral explica-
of this device, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*,
which is moſt generally re-
d, is

*ſtriæ eſt imperare Orbi uni-
verſo.*

) This emperor, by *Eleo-*
daughter of *Edward* king
of *Portugal*, had three ſons and two daughters; namely, *Chriſtopher*, who died in his infancy; *Maximilian*, his ſucceſſor in the empire; *John*, who did not live to be of age; *Helen*, who died an infant; and *Cunegunda*, who married *Albert the Wiſe*, duke of *Bavaria* (3).

(3) *Heiſs, liv.* iii. *c.* 2.

ing,

His education.

Concern for the improvement of learning.

ing, that, even when he was ten years of age, it could not be determined whether he would be abſolutely dumb, or altogether idiotical; but this infirmity was ſo perfectly removed when he attained to a riper age, that in the ſequel he attracted the admiration of all thoſe who converſed with him, by the eloquence and facility with which he ſpoke the *Latin*, *French*, and *Italian* languages. He was particularly addicted to letters, and not only peruſed the beſt books with great application, but alſo employed many hours in writing hiſtory with his own hand: yet he owed all this progreſs ſolely to his own genius; for he often complained of the prepoſterous method in which he had been inſtructed by his preceptor, whoſe name was *Peter Engelbert*, afterwards biſhop of *Neuſtadt* in *Auſtria*, a perſon of great piety, but very ill qualified for forming the mind of a young prince. That very day on which *Maximilian* was elected king of the *Romans*, "Whatever obligations, ſaid he, we may have to our "preceptors, if mine was now alive, I believe I ſhould "make him repent of the manner in which I received his "inſtructions;" and in one of the firſt diets he held, he engaged all the electors to eſtabliſh academies in their reſpective dominions.

Marches againſt the Turks.

While he was making preparations for his father's funeral, he was informed that the *Turks* had invaded *Croatia*, upon which he began immediately to take meaſures for oppoſing their progreſs; and aſſembling a powerful army in *Auſtria*, advanced towards them, with all poſſible expedition; but the *Moſlems*, affrighted at his army, and aſtoniſhed at his diſpatch, retreated with great precipitation; ſo that, finding no enemy to cope with, he diſbanded his army, and applied himſelf to the domeſtic affairs of the empire[e].

He marries Blanche, *ſiſter to the duke of* Milan.

A. D. 1494.

As he had now been a long time a widower, he was preſſed to take another wife, and it was propoſed that he ſhould eſpouſe *Blanche Maria*, ſiſter to *John Galeazo* duke of *Milan*, and niece to *Lewis Sforza*, ſurnamed *the Moor*, who being guardian to his nephew *Galeazo*, took poſſeſſion of the ſtate of *Milan*, not without ſuſpicion of having poiſoned his ward. As this princeſs was reckoned one of the moſt beautiful women of her time, poſſeſſed of a thouſand amiable qualities, and a fortune of four hundred and ſixty thouſand ducats, *Maximilian* received the propoſal with all the demonſtrations of the moſt perfect joy, and married her on the ſixth day of *March*, of that ſame year; by which means *Lewis Sforza*, who had been the chief nogotiator in this match, reaped all the advantage which he expected from it, in acquiring the favour of the emperor, ſo as to be able to maintain himſelf in poſſeſſion of the duchy, the inveſtiture of which *Maximilian* in private conferred upon him as a fief vacated by the failure of homage and acknowlegement[u]. By this alliance, the emperor being engaged in the intereſts of *Italy*, reſolved to take the advice of the ſtates of the empire, touching the pretenſion which *Charles* VIII. king of *France* had to *Naples*, and the expedition he had undertaken to make a conqueſt of that kingdom. For this purpoſe, after he had aſſembled the ſtates of *Flanders* at *Louvain*, where he appointed his ſon *Philip* governor of the *Low Countries*, and ſaw the deputies take the oath of fidelity to that young prince, he convoked a diet at *Worms*, where he propoſed they ſhould determine whether it would be more for the advantage of the empire to oppoſe the deſigns of *Charles*, or to engage in a war againſt the *Turks*: but this alternative being deemed intirely foreign to the intereſts of the *Germanic* body, the propoſal was left undiſcuſſed, and the deliberations of the diet altogether reſtricted to the inteſtine affairs of *Germany*. An authentic conſtitution was enacted for the preſervation of the public peace among the princes and ſtates of the empire, that they might have recourſe to it as to an oracle, in all caſes of difficulty; and the emperor, reflecting upon the trouble to which people were ſubjected in following the imperial chamber, which always travelled about with the court, fixed that tribunal at *Worms*, from whence it was ſome time after transferred to another city, and at laſt ſettled at *Spire*[x]. In this diet alſo the county of *Wirtemberg* was erected into a duchy in favour of *Frederic* of *Wirtemberg*, with the unanimous conſent of all preſent; the league of *Suabia* was renewed; the inveſtiture of *Sforza* confirmed; the electors took the oath of fidelity, and *René* duke of *Lorrain* did homage for ſome of his fiefs which he held of the empire, though he declared his duchy free of all ſuch dependence[y] (F).

---

[e] Naucler & Bonfin. ubi ſupra.

Convokes a diet at Worms, *where a conſtitution is enacted for the preſervation of the public peace.*

A. D. 1495.

NOR

---

[u] KRANTZ. Sax. lib. iii. c. 21.

[x] SERRAZ. Hiſt. Mogunt. l. v.

[y] Cartulaire de Lorraine, p. 406.

(F) The elector of *Mentz* alleged, that the duke ought to uſe the ſame form of taking the oath, which was practiſed by the other ſtates of the empire; but *René* poſitively refuſing to comply with that propoſal, it was agreed, that he ſhould ſwear in theſe terms: "I *René* "king of *Jeruſalem* and *Sicily*, "duke of *Lorrain* and *Bar*, "marquis of *Pons*, count of "*Provence*, *Proceedings of the diet at* Worms.

Nor would he engage with the emperor in a war with the king of *France*, though *Maximilian* offered to ſupport his pretenſions to the kingdom of *Naples*, and even to create him vicar-general of the empire in *Italy*. The diet, however, in conſequence of the emperor's repreſentations, reſolved to keep an army on foot, in order to ſtop the progreſs of the *French* king on the other ſide of the *Alps*, and decreed that the ſtates of the empire ſhould raiſe one hundred and fifty thouſand florins for its maintenance [z].

The king of France *conquers* Naples.

Charles VIII. king of *France*, had compelled the *Florentines* to put four of their ſtrongeſt places into his hands, and lend him a ſum of money: then he marched to *Rome*, to the great terror of the pope, who ſhut himſelf up in the caſtle of *St. Angelo*, made himſelf maſter of the beſt fortified towns in the eccleſiaſtical ſtate, and, having received *Alexander*'s baſtard, *Cæſar Borgia*, as an hoſtage, marched to *Naples*, where he was acknowleged as ſovereign, while king *Alphonſo*, terrified at his approach, and knowing himſelf hated by his ſubjects, proclaimed his ſon *Ferdinand* king, and retired with that prince to the iſle of *Iſchia*, to wait for ſome favourable revolution [a].

The marriage of Philip *with the*

The pope and the princes of *Italy*, ſeeing the king of *France* maſter of *Naples*, *Siena*, and *Florence*, engaged in a league againſt that monarch, and their confederacy was joined by *Maximilian*, who pretended that the *French* king had uſurped the rights of the empire in *Tuſcany*; and *Ferdinand* and *Iſabella*, king and queen of *Arragon* and *Caſtile*, acceded to the ſame treaty. *Maximilian* took the opportunity of this conjuncture to propoſe a match, which was afterwards effected, between his ſon *Philip*, who had now attained to the eighteenth year of his age, and the Infanta *Jane*, one of the

---

[z] Cuspin. p. 488.

[a] Gaguin. l. ii. p. 284.

"*Provence*, *Vaudemont*, *Harcourt*, &c. ſwear and promiſe, "as duke of *Lorrain* and *Bar*, "to you *Maximilian*, king of "the *Romans*, to the ſacred "*Roman* empire, and your ſucceſſors in the empire, fidelity, "ſubmiſſion, and obedience, "according to the tenor of the "charters of my fiefs: *So help* "*me GOD, and his holy Evangeliſts.*"

Having taken this oath, he was infeoffed by the emperor, who ſat upon a throne, with the ſceptre of *Charlemagne* in his hand; then he paid ſeven hundred francs for the ranſom of his horſe, cloaths, and privileges, excluſive of the ſum due to the elector of *Mentz*, archchancellor of the empire (4).

(4) *Struv. period.* x. *ſect.* iii.

Infanta Jane.

daughters of their Catholic majeſties; and though at that time this princeſs was, by the order of birth, poſterior to her brother the Infant *John*, who, ſome months after, was married to *Margaret* the ſiſter of *Philip*, and alſo to her ſiſter *Iſabella*, wife of *Emanuel* king of *Portugal*, nevertheleſs, contrary to all appearance, ſhe, by the death of her brother and ſiſter, and the children of their reſpective marriages, became ſole heireſs of the kingdoms of *Spain*; ſo that this alliance was no leſs advantageous to the houſe of *Auſtria*, than that of *Maximilian* with the princeſs of *Burgundy* [b].

Charles *marches from* Naples; *defeats the allies in the plain of* Fornova, *and returns to* France.

THE league formed by the emperor, the pope, their Catholic majeſties, the duke of *Milan*, the marquis of *Mantua*, and the *Venetians*, being publiſhed at *Rome*, *Charles* VIII. thought it was high time for him to return to *France*, before the allies could oppoſe his paſſage. He therefore began his march with all expedition; but when he advanced into the plain of *Fornova*, about four leagues from *Parma*, he found them already drawn up in order of battle, and an engagement enſued, in which they were defeated, ſo that he purſued his route to the county of *Aſti* without farther interruption, while the duke of *Milan* laid ſiege to *Novarra*, which had been ſurprized by the duke of *Orleans*. By this time *Charles* was reinforced by fifteen thouſand *Swiſs*, with which he intended to attack *Sforza*; but, underſtanding that theſe mercenaries, who were much more numerous than his native troops, deſigned to exact of him a large ſum of money, on pretence of arrears, he clapped up a peace in a great hurry, reſtoring *Novarra* to the duke of *Milan*, on condition that he ſhould not aſſiſt the king of *Naples*, and retired to his own dominions.

Ferdinand *recovers the kingdom of* Naples.

As for *Ferdinand*, he no ſooner heard of the league againſt *Charles* than he quitted his retreat, and aſſembling an army, which was joined by a reinforcement of *Spaniards*, retook the places which had ſubmitted to the *French*, compelled the count *de Montpenſier*, whom *Charles* had appointed viceroy, to abandon *Naples*, and, in a little time, reduced the whole kingdom to his obedience.

The emperor's expedition into Italy.

A.D. 1496.

CHARLES, on the other hand, as ſoon as he arrived in *France*, began to make preparations for retrieving his conqueſt; and the emperor, being preſſed by the duke of *Milan* and the *Venetians* to march into *Italy* with a certain number of horſe and foot, to oppoſe theſe deſigns, he accordingly, without ſtaying for the ſupplies voted in the diet, croſſed the *Alps* with a ſmall body of troops: but, being too weak to attempt any thing of conſequence, he, by the advice of *Sforza*, marched to *Piſa*, where he was received as ſovereign by the inhabitants, who pulled down the arms of *France* which they had ſet up, and, in the room of them, erected thoſe of the emperor. He afterwards inveſted the city of *Leghorn*, but was obliged to raiſe the ſiege with diſgrace: then he retired into *Lombardy*, where having ſtaid ſome time, fluctuating in his counſels, and altogether undetermined, he at laſt returned to *Germany*, leaving behind him a very contemptible opinion of his capacity and power [c].

---

[b] PHIL. DE COMM. liv. viii. c. 16.

Proceedings of the diets at Lindaw *and* Worms. A. D. 1497.

He had convoked a diet at *Lindaw*, in order to forward the ſupplies, and it was determined to execute the reſolutions of the former aſſembly, under certain regulations, which were, however, referred to the conſideration of a ſubſequent diet, convened at *Worms*, where *James* marquis of *Baden*, *Wolfgang* count of *Naſſau*, and the landwogt or governor of *Guelderland*, preſided in the name of the emperor. The elector of *Mentz* opened the diet with a long harangue, expatiating upon the diſorders that afflicted the empire, and the means for remedying thoſe evils; and the grand maſter of the *Teutonic* order demanded immediate ſuccour againſt the *Pruſſians*, who had deſolated *Livonia*. But in this, as in the preceding diets, nothing was executed, though many ſchemes were projected.

The Frieslanders *revolt againſt* Maximilian;

This irreſolution ſerved only to nouriſh the diſſenſions of *Germany*, and in particular to encourage the *Frieſlanders* and *Gueldrians* in their revolt againſt the emperor. The inhabitants of *Frieſland* had refuſed to pay the ordinary tax impoſed by the diet for the occaſions of the empire; alleging that, as their country was not a fief thereof, they were not obliged to obey the decrees of the *Germanic* body: and indeed their dependency had never been clearly aſcertained; for, although the emperors had appointed governors or podeſtats of that province, theſe were always well or ill received, according as they favoured or oppoſed the liberties of the people: they had even threatened to hang the commiſſary of the late emperor, and, in all probability, would have executed the threat, had not he left the country without heſitation. *Maximilian*, reſolving to aſſert his right of ſovereignty over this ſtubborn people, nominated the duke of *Saxony* as podeſtat of *Frieſland*, and ordered them to receive and obey him as ſuch, on pain of being declared rebels to the empire.

---

[c] Mez. abr. Chron. tom. ii. p. 781. Rer. German. tom. iii. edit. Freher.

and put themſelves under the protection of Charles *duke of* Guelderland.

INSTEAD of ſubmitting to this command, they revolted againſt the duke, expelled him from their country, renounced all dependence upon the empire, and put themſelves under the protection of *Charles* duke of *Guelderland,* who was then engaged in a war with *Maximilian,* in order to recover the inveſtiture of his father [d].

Proceedings of the diet at Fribourg.
A. D. 1498.

THE emperor being ſtill in great want of money and troops, aſſembled another diet at *Fribourg,* in the *Briſgau,* where the princes whom he appointed to repreſent his perſon complained, that the ſtates had given him no aſſiſtance in his war againſt the *French* in *Italy,* and demonſtrated the neceſſity of taking vigorous meaſures againſt the *Frieſlanders* and the *Swiſs,* who were declared enemies to the confederacy of *Suabia.* The ſtates having deliberated upon theſe topics, agreed to raiſe a powerful army againſt the *Swiſs,* though in the ſequel they acquitted themſelves very ill of this engagement. Mean while they gave audience to the ambaſſadors of his *Poliſh* majeſty, who demanded ſuccours againſt the *Turk,* and ſent a deputation to engage the pope to accommodate that monarch with the money raiſed in *Germany* by the nuncio, againſt whoſe exactions they bitterly complained (G). This embaſſy had likewiſe orders to repreſent to his holineſs, that the *German* noblemen would exact as their undoubted right one-third of the money ariſing from indulgences, if the holy ſee ſhould refuſe to reſtrain the exceſſes of her miniſter; and to complain, that the *Concordata* were not obſerved in the article of benefices, which the pope either beſtowed on ſtrangers, when vacant, or diſpoſed of by way of reverſion, to the prejudice of the patrons [e].

Albert *duke of* Saxony *created hereditary podeſtat of*

A LAW was enacted in this aſſembly to regulate the ſucceſſion of grandſons in the room of their deceaſed fathers; and *Albert* duke of *Saxony* was confirmed in the prefecture of *Weſt Frieſland,* which was rendered hereditary in his family.

---

[d] Deſcript. Hiſt. de Provinces-unies, p. 91.

[e] GREG. DE GRAVAMIN. c. 7. §. 1.

(G) This prelate had power to permit people to eat fleſh on faſting days, and to diſtribute indulgences to all thoſe who ſhould contribute a certain ſum towards the cruſade againſt the Infidels. He collected this money with all the rapacity of a tax gatherer; and, not content with the conſiderable ſums of which he drained the empire, he employed part in trade, and the reſt at uſury, for his own advantage (5).

(5) *Struv. period.* x. *ſect.* 3.

Weſt Frieſland.

ALBERT being inveſted with this new dignity, endeavoured to attach to his intereſt one of the factions that divided *Frieſland*, but, notwithſtanding his utmoſt endeavours, they united againſt his authority, and looked upon the hereditary ſettlement of his office as an invaſion of their rights and privileges, granted to them by *Charlemagne* and his ſucceſſors (H): ſo that the duke of *Saxony* was on the point of reſigning his government, when he was diſſuaded from that renunciation by *Edſard* count of *Embden*, who undertook to form a party in his favour by means of the friends he had among the *Frieſlanders* [f].

Lewis XII. *of* **France** *claims the duchy of* **Milan.**

IN the midſt of theſe tranſactions, *Charles* king of *France*, having died ſuddenly at *Amboiſe*, was ſucceeded by the duke of *Orleans*, under the name of *Lewis* XII. This prince pretending to have an inconteſtible right to the duchy of *Milan*, reſolved to put himſelf in a condition to paſs the *Alps*, and take poſſeſſion of that duchy; which *Lewis Sforza*, that he might be able to withſtand the tempeſt, took all the neceſſary precautions to put himſelf in a poſture of defence, and had recourſe to the aſſiſtance of *Maximilian*.

HE ſpared neither pains nor money to involve *Lewis* in quarrels with his neighbours. *René* II. duke of *Lorrain* was well paid for laying claim to *Provence*, in right of his mother *Yoland*, a daughter of *René* of *Anjou*, titular king of the *Two Sicilies*, and real count of *Provence*; but this diſpute was referred to the examination of commiſſaries, and the duke acquieſced in their deciſion in favour of *Lewis*.

BUT a more formidable neighbour was *Philip* archduke of *Auſtria*, who reclaimed a great many towns of the ſucceſſion of *Burgundy*, which had been ſeized by *Lewis* XI. As *Philip* was very powerful, and well beloved by his ſubjects, and *Lewis* bent upon his *Italian* expedition, he reſtored part of thoſe places to the archduke, who did homage to him at *Arras* for *Flanders*, *Artois*, and *Charolois*, while his right to

---

[f] Chron. de Holl. & de Zeland, l. vi.

(H) They, in their diets, elected their own podeſtats, and depoſed them when they were diſpleaſed with the adminiſtration. They paid but a very ſlight tax or tribute to this governor; would contribute no other way to the welfare of the ſtate, but in marching to war when the buſineſs was to defend their own province, and they would fight under none but chiefs of their own chuſing (6).

(6) *Chron. de Holl & Zel. l. vi.*

Burgundy was referred to the deciſion of the parliament of *Paris*[g].

Maximilian *engages in the war of* **Guelderland.**

WHATEVER inclination the emperor had to ſuccour his ally the duke of *Milan*, he was obliged to ſuſpend his favourable intention, in order to attend to the war of *Guelderland*, in which he was now engaged. That the reader may have a diſtinct idea of this affair, it will be neceſſary to trace it back to its origin, and obſerve that *Arnold* of *Egmont*, duke of *Guelderland*, after having been detained priſoner for ſeveral months, and extremely ill uſed by his ſon *Adolphus*, had found means to obtain his liberty, and retort his impriſonment on his ungrateful ſon. As he had been very much obliged to *Charles* the late duke of *Burgundy*, who, upon this occaſion, had interpoſed his good offices and aſſiſtance in his favour, he, in order to manifeſt his gratitude, and puniſh his rebellious ſon at the ſame time, alienated his duchy for the benefit of that prince, who paid to him ninety-two thouſand crowns for the reverſion of it, and agreed that *Arnold* ſhould enjoy the revenues during his natural life. In conſequence of this purchaſe, *Arnold* was no ſooner dead than the duke of *Burgundy* took poſſeſſion of his dominions; but *Charles* being ſlain ſoon after at *Nancy*, the people of *Guelderland* ſet *Adolphus* at liberty from the caſtle of *Vilverden*, in which he had hitherto been detained; and he being afterwards entruſted with the command of the troops belonging to the city of *Ghent*, miſerably periſhed, as we have hinted above, in an expedition againſt the inhabitants of *Tournay*[h]. *Mary* of *Burgundy*, and, after her death, *Maximilian*, as guardian of her ſon *Philip*, had endeavoured to maintain, by force of arms, the right which they pretended to have to that duchy, as part of the ſucceſſion of the houſe of *Burgundy*. Nevertheleſs, the poſſeſſion of it was a long time conteſted by *Charles* of *Egmont*, the ſon of *Adolphus*, who, to his dying day, enjoyed a part of that duchy, notwithſtanding the power of the houſe of *Auſtria*, and the deciſion of the princes of the empire, who had adjudged it to *Philip*[i].

The cauſe of that quarrel.

The emperor turns his arms againſt the **Swiſs.**
A. D. 1499.

WHEN *Maximilian* was engaged in the very hotteſt of this war, he was obliged, all of a ſudden, to deſiſt, and even to make advances towards an accommodation with *Charles* of *Egmont*, that he might be able to turn his arms againſt the *Swiſs*, who had begun to make incurſions upon the *Auſtrian* territories; for the good intelligence between the emperor and that people no longer ſubſiſted. *Maximilian*, when he firſt ſucceeded to the dominions of *Sigiſmund* of *Auſtria*, by virtue of his being adopted by that prince, had often deſired that the *Swiſs* would renew with him the friendſhip and alliance which they had formerly maintained with *Sigiſmund*; but this renewal they always declined: beſides, the greateſt part of the princes, and all the nobility, looked upon theſe people with an evil eye, ſince they had erected themſelves into republics, and renounced the alliance of *Suabia*: on the other hand, the city of *Conſtance*, which had hitherto refuſed to enter into this league, or into the confederacy of the *Swiſs*, notwithſtanding repeated invitations from both, had at length united with the circle of *Suabia*. Finally, the revival of the antient quarrel between the inhabitants of *Etſchland* and the city of *Coire*, which had been frequently referred to arbitration to no purpoſe, contributed to bring matters to an open rupture.

---

[g] DUMONT. Corps. Dipl. tom. iii. part ii. p. 413. [h] KRAN. Sax. l. xiii. c. 22. [i] HEISS, l. iii. c. 3.

The Griſons *are checked by the* Auſtrians,

WHEN the biſhop of *Coire* died, the regency of *Tyrol* ſeized upon ſome fiefs of the biſhopric, in hope of obliging the chapter to own the archdukes of *Auſtria* as their avoyers; but theſe refuſing to comply with this demand, ſeveral boroughs and caſtles were pillaged and burnt. The *Griſons*, informed of theſe outrages, haſtened to the aſſiſtance of their allies, and were defeated by the *Auſtrians*, who purſued them to the valley of *Engadina*, which they laid waſte with fire and ſword.

who are defeated by the Swiſs.

IN this emergency they ſollicited ſuccours of the *Swiſs*, who forthwith marched to their aſſiſtance, and croſſing the *Rhine*, came in ſight of the enemy, in the neighbourhood of *Bregentz*, where a battle enſued, in which the *Auſtrians* were routed with great ſlaughter.

DURING this expedition, the inhabitants of the *Briſgaw* and *Suntgaw* fell upon the lands of *Nuremberg* and *Roſemburg*; but their career was ſoon ſtopped by the *Swiſs* of the neighbouring canton, who aſſembled to the number of two thouſand, and attacked them with ſuch fury, that they were forced to betake themſelves to flight, after having left a great part of their number killed upon the ſpot.

The Swiſs *renew their alliance with the* French *king*.

LEWIS the *French* king, taking advantage of this favourable conjuncture, renewed with the *Swiſs* the antient alliance which they had formed with his predeceſſors, and the treaty was concluded at *Lucerne*, with this reſerve, that *France* ſhould not moleſt the allies of the *Swiſs*; an article which ſecured the cities of *Straſburg*, *Baſil*, *Kayſerberg*, *Colmar*, *Sceleſtadt*, and other towns of *Alſace*.

Rout the imperial

THE emperor, enraged to find ſuch reſiſtance from a people he affected to deſpiſe, ordered a numerous army to rendezvous near *Conſtance*, which, being divided into ſmall bodies, pillaged the villages and caſtles in the canton of *Schaffhauſen*; but, while they were employed in acquiring booty, without dreaming of the enemy's approach, the *Swiſs*, who had aſſembled privately, and reconnoitred their motions, took the opportunity of falling upon them when they were thus divided and incumbered, and cut them all in pieces. The ſame fate overtook a body of the *Suabians*, who had ſurprized *Tungen*, and plundered the cantons of *Appenzel* and *St. Gall*: they fell into an ambuſcade, and were deſtroyed by the *Swiſs*, who retook *Tungen*, and demoliſhed its fortifications.

army in the canton of Schaffhauſen, *and at* Tungen.

THE news of theſe ſucceſſes having reached the emperor, while he was engaged in the war againſt *Charles* duke of *Guelderland*, over whom he had gained ſundry advantages, he left the command of his army to the duke of *Saxony*, and, with four thouſand choſen men, took the route of *Cologne* and *Mentz*, entered *Suabia*, croſſed the *Black Foreſt*, arrived at *Conſtance*, and from thence repaired to the *Suntgaw*, where he collected a body of fifteen thouſand men, and gave the command of them to *Henry* count of *Wirtemberg*.

THEN he demanded ſuccours from the towns and princes of the *Suabian* league; and though ſome of them ſupplied him with troops, the greater number evaded his requeſt, and preſſed him to convoke a diet at *Worms*, which was ſummoned accordingly; but, before the meeting of this aſſembly, the forces furniſhed by the towns of *Franconia* and the ſtates of *Suabia* were, in their march to *Titenang*, on the lake of *Bregentz*, met in the valley of *Engadina*, by the inhabitants of *Coire* and the *Griſons*, who put them to the ſword, and then ravaged the *Tyrol* without mercy.

Maximilian *receives ſupplies of men from the cities of* Franconia *and* Suabia, *who are cut in pieces by the* Griſons.

MAXIMILIAN hoped that the troops he expected from *Auſtria* would repair this loſs; but he was diſappointed in his expectation: for when they had advanced as far as *Oberdorf*, the *Swiſs* army appeared, and a very obſtinate battle enſued, in which the *Auſtrians* were totally defeated.

A body of Auſtrians *cut off near* Oberdorf.

THE victors having ſecured the ammunition and ſtores of the vanquiſhed, marched towards *Dormeck* upon the *Rhine*, which was inveſted by the count of *Furſtenberg*; and taking the advantage of this general's want of precaution, charged him unawares, while his troops were diſperſed; and, though the fight was maintained for ſome time with equal fury on both ſides, the imperialiſts received a total overthrow; the counts of *Furſtenberg* and *Bitſch*, together with four thouſand ſoldiers, fell upon the ſpot, and all the cannon and baggage were ſeized by the enemy, who gave no quarter during

The count of Furſtenberg *defeated and ſlain by the* Swiſs.

ing this engagement, which was the ſeventh battle loſt by the *Auſtrians* in leſs than ſix months.

The war is terminated by a treaty and arbitration.

A. D. 1500.

MAXIMILIAN was at *Lindaw* when he received the melancholy news of this misfortune, which effectually humbled his pride, and induced him to make the firſt advances to a peace, which, after ſome negotiations at *Zurich Schaffhauſen*, was at length eſtabliſhed by the mediation of the duke of *Milan*, and ſome other princes, and the articles were not very diſadvantageous to his intereſt, conſidering the ill fortune of his arms during the war. By this peace it was agreed, that the country of *Prettigaw* ſhould belong to the emperor, that the quarrel between the city of *Coire* and the inhabitants of *Tyrol* ſhould be referred to the arbitration of *Frederic* biſhop of *Augsburg*, and that all other differences ſhould, in like manner, be decided by impartial umpires. At the deſire of *Maximilian*, the houſe of *Auſtria*, the duke of *Milan*, the electors and other members of the empire, the cities of *Straſburg* and *Baſil*, with their biſhops, and the other imperial towns of *Suabia* and the *Rhine*, were comprehended in the treaty; while the *Swiſs* on their ſide included the king of *France* and his allies, the abbot and city of *St. Gall*, together with the canton of *Appenzel*[k].

The emperor makes peace with Charles *duke of* Guelderland.

THIS peace was ſucceeded by an accommodation between *Maximilian* and *Charles d'Egmont*, to whom the emperor reſtored the towns he had taken in *Guelderland*, permitting him at the ſame time to aſſume the title of duke, on condition that he ſhould acknowlege the duchy as a fief of the empire. As for the *Swiſs*, they acquired ſuch reputation by this war, which they maintained againſt *Maximilian*, that *Baſil* and *Schaffhauſen*, and afterwards *Appenzel*, engaged in their league, and completed the number of thirteen cantons which now compoſe their alliance[l].

MAXIMILIAN being freed from theſe broils, aſſembled a diet at *Augsburg*, in order to re-eſtabliſh the public peace, and reform the abuſes which had crept into the adminiſtration of juſtice; and the ſeſſion was opened with complaints touching the annates, benefices, and taxes, which the court of *Rome* exacted of the provinces, to defray the expences of a war againſt the *Turks*. The ſums thus levied had been remitted to *Cæſar Borgio*, who had ſquandered them away in debauchery; and the princes inveighing loudly againſt this abuſe, embaſſadors were ſent to complain of it to pope *Alexander*, who promiſed that ſuch profuſion ſhould be prevented for the fu-

ture. This ſtep being taken, they prolonged the league of *Suabia* for twelve years, re-eſtabliſhed the imperial chamber, which was grown into diſuſe; and, as this could be of little advantage, unleſs proper meaſures ſhould be taken to execute its decrees and ſupport its authority, the empire was divided into the ſix circles of *Bavaria*, *Franconia*, *Suabia*, *Saxony*, the *Rhine*, and *Weſtphalia*: but as the provinces poſſeſſed by the houſe of *Auſtria* in *Germany*, and thoſe of the electors, were not comprehended in theſe ſix circles, *Maximilian* formed his own *German* dominions into a circle, as an example to the other electors, and four new diviſions were added to the former ſix, namely, the circles of *Auſtria* and *Burgundy* for the provinces belonging to the houſe of *Auſtria*, that of *Upper Saxony* for the electors of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg*, and that of the *Upper Rhine* for the eccleſiaſtical electors and the *Palatinate* (I).

---

[k] KRANTZ, ubi ſup.

[l] BARRE, tom. viii. p. 824.

THE kingdom of *Bohemia* was not comprehended in this diviſion, becauſe it was not then connected with the *Germanic* body,

(I) Each circle choſe a director to conduct the civil affairs, and a duke or general to command in all military expeditions, and to keep the troops and fortreſſes in proper order. At firſt it depended upon the imperial court to nominate any prince it ſhould judge a proper perſon to convoke the diet and direct the affairs of the circle; but as this office was naturally beſtowed upon him who maintained the chief rank in every circle, it became hereditary in the ſequel; and it is now exerciſed in the circle of *Auſtria* by the archduke of that name; in the circle of *Bavaria* by the elector and the archbiſhop of *Saltzbourg*; in *Franconia* alternately by the biſhop of *Bamberg*, and the margraves of *Brandenburg*, *Barent*, and *Anſpach*; in *Suabia* by the duke of *Wirtemberg*, and the biſhop of *Conſtance*; in the *Upper Rhine* by the biſhop of *Worms* and the count *Palatine de Simmeren*; in the *Lower Rhine*, by the elector of *Mentz* alone; in *Weſtphalia*, by the biſhop of *Munſter*, conjunctly with the elector of *Brandenburg* and the *Palatine*, who inherited the office of director from the laſt duke of *Juliers* and *Bergue*, as part of his ſucceſſion, which was divided among them.

The directors of *Lower Saxony* are the dukes of *Magdeburg* and *Bremen* (formerly archbiſhops) and the dukes of *Brunſwic-Lunenburg*. The elector of *Saxony* is ſole director of *Upper Saxony*; and the circle of *Burgundy*, which heretofore comprehended *Franche-Comté*, and all the provinces of the *Low Countries*, was directed by the kings of *Spain*, while theſe countries were under their dominion (7).

---

(7) *Barre. tom.* viii. *p.* 828.

ing this engagement, which was the ſeventh battle loſt by the *Auſtrians* in leſs than ſix months.

The war is terminated by a treaty and arbitration.

A. D. 1500.

MAXIMILIAN was at *Lindaw* when he received the melancholy news of this misfortune, which effectually humbled his pride, and induced him to make the firſt advances to a peace, which, after ſome negotiations at *Zurich Schaffhauſen*, was at length eſtabliſhed by the mediation of the duke of *Milan*, and ſome other princes, and the articles were not very diſadvantageous to his intereſt, conſidering the ill fortune of his arms during the war. By this peace it was agreed, that the country of *Prettigaw* ſhould belong to the emperor, that the quarrel between the city of *Coire* and the inhabitants of *Tyrol* ſhould be referred to the arbitration of *Frederic* biſhop of *Augsburg*, and that all other differences ſhould, in like manner, be decided by impartial umpires. At the deſire of *Maximilian*, the houſe of *Auſtria*, the duke of *Milan*, the electors and other members of the empire, the cities of *Straſburg* and *Baſil*, with their biſhops, and the other imperial towns of *Suabia* and the *Rhine*, were comprehended in the treaty; while the *Swiſs* on their ſide included the king of *France* and his allies, the abbot and city of *St. Gall*, together with the canton of *Appenzel*[k].

The emperor makes peace with Charles *duke of* Guelderland.

THIS peace was ſucceeded by an accommodation between *Maximilian* and *Charles d'Egmont*, to whom the emperor reſtored the towns he had taken in *Guelderland*, permitting him at the ſame time to aſſume the title of duke, on condition that he ſhould acknowlege the duchy as a fief of the empire. As for the *Swiſs*, they acquired ſuch reputation by this war, which they maintained againſt *Maximilian*, that *Baſil* and *Schaffhauſen*, and afterwards *Appenzel*, engaged in their league, and completed the number of thirteen cantons which now compoſe their alliance[l].

MAXIMILIAN being freed from theſe broils, aſſembled a diet at *Augsburg*, in order to re-eſtabliſh the public peace, and reform the abuſes which had crept into the adminiſtration of juſtice; and the ſeſſion was opened with complaints touching the annates, benefices, and taxes, which the court of *Rome* exacted of the provinces, to defray the expences of a war againſt the *Turks*. The ſums thus levied had been remitted to *Cæſar Borgio*, who had ſquandered them away in debauchery; and the princes inveighing loudly againſt this abuſe, embaſſadors were ſent to complain of it to pope *Alexander*, who promiſed that ſuch profuſion ſhould be prevented for the fu-

ture. This ſtep being taken, they prolonged the league of *Suabia* for twelve years, re-eſtabliſhed the imperial chamber, which was grown into diſuſe; and, as this could be of little advantage, unleſs proper meaſures ſhould be taken to execute its decrees and ſupport its authority, the empire was divided into the ſix circles of *Bavaria*, *Franconia*, *Suabia*, *Saxony*, the *Rhine*, and *Weſtphalia*: but as the provinces poſſeſſed by the houſe of *Auſtria* in *Germany*, and thoſe of the electors, were not comprehended in theſe ſix circles, *Maximilian* formed his own *German* dominions into a circle, as an example to the other electors, and four new diviſions were added to the former ſix, namely, the circles of *Auſtria* and *Burgundy* for the provinces belonging to the houſe of *Auſtria*, that of *Upper Saxony* for the electors of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg*, and that of the *Upper Rhine* for the eccleſiaſtical electors and the *Palatinate* (I).

---

[k] KRANTZ, ubi ſup.

[l] BARRE, tom. viii. p. 824.

THE kingdom of *Bohemia* was not comprehended in this diviſion, becauſe it was not then connected with the *Germanic*

(I) Each circle choſe a director to conduct the civil affairs, and a duke or general to command in all military expeditions, and to keep the troops and fortreſſes in proper order. At firſt it depended upon the imperial court to nominate any prince it ſhould judge a proper perſon to convoke the diet and direct the affairs of the circle; but as this office was naturally beſtowed upon him who maintained the chief rank in every circle, it became hereditary in the ſequel; and it is now exerciſed in the circle of *Auſtria* by the archduke of that name; in the circle of *Bavaria* by the elector and the archbiſhop of *Saltzbourg*; in *Franconia* alternately by the biſhop of *Bamberg*, and the margraves of *Brandenburg*, *Barent*, and *Anſpach*; in *Suabia* by the duke of *Wirtemberg*, and the biſhop of *Conſtance*; in the *Upper Rhine* by the biſhop of *Worms* and the count *Palatine de Simmeren*; in the *Lower Rhine*, by the elector of *Mentz* alone; in *Weſtphalia*, by the biſhop of *Munſter*, conjunctly with the elector of *Brandenburg* and the *Palatine*, who inherited the office of director from the laſt duke of *Juliers* and *Bergue*, as part of his ſucceſſion, which was divided among them.

The directors of *Lower Saxony* are the dukes of *Magdeburg* and *Bremen* (formerly archbiſhops) and the dukes of *Brunſwic-Lunenburg*. The elector of *Saxony* is ſole director of *Upper Saxony*; and the circle of *Burgundy*, which heretofore comprehended *Franche-Comté*, and all the provinces of the *Low Countries*, was directed by the kings of *Spain*, while theſe countries were under their dominion (7).

(7) *Barre. tom.* viii. *p.* 828.

ing this engagement, which was the ſeventh battle loſt by the *Auſtrians* in leſs than ſix months.

The war is terminated by a treaty and arbitration. A. D. 1500.

Maximilian was at *Lindaw* when he received the melancholy news of this misfortune, which effectually humbled his pride, and induced him to make the firſt advances to a peace, which, after ſome negotiations at *Zurich Schaffhauſen*, was at length eſtabliſhed by the mediation of the duke of *Milan*, and ſome other princes, and the articles were not very diſadvantageous to his intereſt, conſidering the ill fortune of his arms during the war. By this peace it was agreed, that the country of *Prettigaw* ſhould belong to the emperor, that the quarrel between the city of *Coire* and the inhabitants of *Tyrol* ſhould be referred to the arbitration of *Frederic* biſhop of *Augsburg*, and that all other differences ſhould, in like manner, be decided by impartial umpires. At the deſire of *Maximilian*, the houſe of *Auſtria*, the duke of *Milan*, the electors and other members of the empire, the cities of *Straſburg* and *Baſil*, with their biſhops, and the other imperial towns of *Suabia* and the *Rhine*, were comprehended in the treaty; while the *Swiſs* on their ſide included the king of *France* and his allies, the abbot and city of *St. Gall*, together with the canton of *Appenzel*[k].

The emperor makes peace with Charles *duke of* Guelderland.

This peace was ſucceeded by an accommodation between *Maximilian* and *Charles d'Egmont*, to whom the emperor reſtored the towns he had taken in *Guelderland*, permitting him at the ſame time to aſſume the title of duke, on condition that he ſhould acknowlege the duchy as a fief of the empire. As for the *Swiſs*, they acquired ſuch reputation by this war, which they maintained againſt *Maximilian*, that *Baſil* and *Schaffhauſen*, and afterwards *Appenzel*, engaged in their league, and completed the number of thirteen cantons which now compoſe their alliance[l].

Maximilian being freed from theſe broils, aſſembled a diet at *Augsburg*, in order to re-eſtabliſh the public peace, and reform the abuſes which had crept into the adminiſtration of juſtice; and the ſeſſion was opened with complaints touching the annates, benefices, and taxes, which the court of *Rome* exacted of the provinces, to defray the expences of a war againſt the *Turks*. The ſums thus levied had been remitted to *Cæſar Borgio*, who had ſquandered them away in debauchery; and the princes inveighing loudly againſt this abuſe, embaſſadors were ſent to complain of it to pope *Alexander*, who promiſed that ſuch profuſion ſhould be prevented for the future.

---

[k] Krantz, ubi ſup.

[l] Barre, tom. viii. p. 824.

ture. This ſtep being taken, they prolonged the league of *Suabia* for twelve years, re-eſtabliſhed the imperial chamber, which was grown into diſuſe; and, as this could be of little advantage, unleſs proper meaſures ſhould be taken to execute its decrees and ſupport its authority, the empire was divided into the ſix circles of *Bavaria*, *Franconia*, *Suabia*, *Saxony*, the *Rhine*, and *Weſtphalia*: but as the provinces poſſeſſed by the houſe of *Auſtria* in *Germany*, and thoſe of the electors, were not comprehended in theſe ſix circles, *Maximilian* formed his own *German* dominions into a circle, as an example to the other electors, and four new diviſions were added to the former ſix, namely, the circles of *Auſtria* and *Burgundy* for the provinces belonging to the houſe of *Auſtria*, that of *Upper Saxony* for the electors of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg*, and that of the *Upper Rhine* for the eccleſiaſtical electors and the *Palatinate* (I).

THE kingdom of *Bohemia* was not comprehended in this diviſion, becauſe it was not then connected with the *Germanic*

(I) Each circle choſe a director to conduct the civil affairs, and a duke or general to command in all military expeditions, and to keep the troops and fortreſſes in proper order. At firſt it depended upon the imperial court to nominate any prince it ſhould judge a proper perſon to convoke the diet and direct the affairs of the circle; but as this office was naturally beſtowed upon him who maintained the chief rank in every circle, it became hereditary in the ſequel; and it is now exerciſed in the circle of *Auſtria* by the archduke of that name; in the circle of *Bavaria* by the elector and the archbiſhop of *Saltzbourg*; in *Franconia* alternately by the biſhop of *Bamberg*, and the margraves of *Brandenburg*, *Bareut*, and *Anſpach*; in *Suabia* by the duke of *Wirtemberg*, and the biſhop of *Conſtance*; in the *Upper Rhine* by the biſhop of *Worms* and the count *Palatine de Simmeren*; in the *Lower Rhine*, by the elector of *Mentz* alone; in *Weſtphalia*, by the biſhop of *Munſter*, conjunctly with the elector of *Brandenburg* and the *Palatine*, who inherited the office of director from the laſt duke of *Juliers* and *Bergue*, as part of his ſucceſſion, which was divided among them.

The directors of *Lower Saxony* are the dukes of *Magdeburg* and *Bremen* (formerly archbiſhops) and the dukes of *Brunſwic-Lunenburg*. The elector of *Saxony* is ſole director of *Upper Saxony*; and the circle of *Burgundy*, which heretofore comprehended *Franche-Comté*, and all the provinces of the *Low Countries*, was directed by the kings of *Spain*, while theſe countries were under their dominion (7).

(7) *Barre. tom.* viii. *p.* 828.

body,

Propoſes a match between his daughter and the ſon of the archduke Philip, *afterwards* Charles V.

In order to preſerve this conqueſt, and confirm the *Milaneſe* to his family, *Lewis* reſolved to cultivate the friendſhip of the emperor, and actually demanded the inveſtiture of that duchy from *Maximilian*, who was at firſt very averſe to the propoſal, becauſe a report prevailed, that *Lewis*, by the help of the pope, aſpired to the imperial crown. However, the *French* monarch ſoon undeceived him and the princes of *Germany* in this particular, by the moſt ſolemn proteſtation, and, knowing the avaritious and intereſted diſpoſition of the emperor, he conquered his reluctance with a ſum of money, and the propoſal of a match between *Charles* ſon of the archduke *Philip* and his own daughter *Claudia*. This alliance was accordingly negotiated at *Trent*, by the cardinal *d'Amboiſe*, though the parties were in their infancy: a treaty of peace was concluded between the emperor and *France*, importing that *Lewis* ſhould aſſiſt the king of the *Romans* againſt the *Turks*; maintain the rights of *Maximilian* and his ſucceſſors to the kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, after the death of *Ladiſlaus*, and facilitate his coronation at *Rome*; and, in conſideration of theſe articles, the emperor ſhould grant to *Lewis* the inveſtiture of the *Milaneſe* [p] (K).

Concludes a treaty with Maximilian. A. D. 1501.

Other additional articles of this treaty were ſigned and ratified at *Blois* in *France* by the archduke *Philip*, on his way with the archducheſs, through this kingdom to *Spain*, where they were declared the preſumptive heirs of *Ferdinand* and *Iſabella*.

Proceedings of the diet at Nuremberg. 1502.

The city of *Baſil* having joined in the league of the *Swiſs*, in diametrical oppoſition to the authority of the *Germanic* body, which had forbid the imperial towns to engage in that confederacy, a diet was convoked at *Nuremberg*, in order to concert meaſures for detaching it from that connection, as well as for preventing other cities from following its example; and it was propoſed to ſummon the citizens to abandon the *Helvetic* league, and unite with that of *Suabia*, on pain of being put to the ban of the empire; but, after much altercation and debate, they agreed to conſider *Baſil* as an imperial town, and compel it occaſionally to pay thoſe taxes that ſhould be impoſed by the diet on the other cities of the empire.

---

[p] Guicc. l. v.

(K) This article of the treaty was ſigned by *Francis* of *Valois*, preſumptive heir of the crown, the princes of the blood, and the grandees of the realm. The other articles imported, that the king ſhould reſtore to their eſtates and honours thoſe who had been baniſhed from *Milan*, that he ſhould receive from *Maximilian* the inveſtiture of that duchy, in conſideration of a hundred and twenty thouſand florins, payable in twelve months, a pair of golden ſpurs yearly on *Chriſtmas-day*, and five hundred lances to be ſent, when the emperor ſhould go to receive the imperial crown at *Rome* (8).

(8) Remarq. *ſur Heiſs, liv.* iii. *c.* 5.

Measures were likewiſe taken to reform the current coin, and raiſe the *Teutonic* order to that importance they had loſt ſince their laſt treaty with *Poland*, by which they forfeited *Pomerelia*, *Marienbourg*, *Elbing*, *Culm*, and *Oberm*, with their territories. The ſtates of the empire interpoſed their good offices in behalf of the knights, and ſent ambaſſadors to the diet which the king of *Poland* aſſembled at *Poſnau*, to terminate the diſpute; but that prince would neither reſtore the places, nor remit the homage they paid for the towns they ſtill held in *Pruſſia*; and the order, being very much reduced, was fain to wait for a more favourable opportunity[q].

The pope propoſes a cruſade againſt the Turks.

Mean while the pope ſent cardinal *Raymond* as his legate, to let the emperor know he had reſolved to publiſh a cruſade againſt the Infidels, and for that purpoſe had agreed with the ambaſſadors of ſeveral potentates, that the *Hungarians*, *Bohemians*, *Poles*, and *Germans*, ſhould carry on the war againſt the *Turks* in *Thrace*, while the *French* and *Spaniards* ſhould make their efforts in *Greece*, and his holineſs, with the king of *England*, the *Venetians*, and princes of *Italy*, would attack *Conſtantinople* by ſea. In conſequence of this reſolution, he had ſent nuncios to all the courts, to exhort the ſovereigns to compromiſe their quarrels, that they might unite their forces againſt the common enemy of Chriſtendom.

Although *Maximilian* very well knew that *Alexander*'s ſole aim in this cruſade was to amaſs money by voluntary contribution, he affected to applaud the project; but at the ſame time declared for himſelf, that his finances were by no means equal to his zeal, and therefore counſelled the legate to addreſs himſelf to the *Germanic* body.

A.D. 1504. *The electors engage in an aſſociation to furniſh troops againſt the Infidels.*

Raymond, in all probability, followed his advice, and was amuſed with ſome promiſes by the princes and towns; for the electors engaged in an aſſociation at *Gelnhauſen*, obliging themſelves to furniſh a certain proportion of troops to march againſt the Infidels; and they wrote to the kings of *France*, *Spain*, and *Denmark*, inviting them to join in the alliance. At the ſame time they repreſented to the emperor, that the erection of the aulic council, lately eſtabliſhed at *Ra-*

---

[q] Muller, l. i. c. 16.

tiſbon,

They complain of the aulic council.

tiſbon, was contrary to the laws of the *Germanic* body, as the princes of the empire had never conſented to the eſtabliſhment of that tribunal, which greatly interfered with the authority of the imperial chamber. *Maximilian*, however, paid little regard to theſe remonſtrances, which were next year repeated in an aſſembly at *Frankfort*; and the princes, on the other hand, lent a deaf ear to his intreaties, when he ſollicited them to admit his ſon *Philip* into the electoral college. His deſign was to erect *Auſtria* into an electorate; but failing in that enterprize, he reſolved to inveſt the ſovereign of that province with prerogatives that would as conſpicuouſly diſtinguiſh him from the other princes. He began by confirming the title of archduke, which had been conferred upon him by *Frederic* III. Then he decreed, that the archduke, after having three times demanded his fief of the emperor, ſhould be deemed to have obtained it, even though it had been refuſed; that he ſhould receive it with the ſword only, and that *gratis*, on the frontiers of *Auſtria*; and that he ſhould not be obliged to anſwer any challenge to ſingle combat. The electors, in order to counterballance theſe privileges, which they did not approve, renewed their aſſociation of *Gelnhauſen*, engaging to aſſiſt each other reciprocally againſt all violence, to maintain their rights, in the election of an emperor, or king of the *Romans*; to oppoſe every attempt to diminiſh the authority of the *Germanic* body; and to appear every two years, perſonally, at an appointed time and place, to deliberate upon the affairs of the empire[r].

Refuſe to admit the archduke Philip *into the electoral college.*

New prerogatives attached to the title of archduke.

The emperor concludes a treaty with Henry VII. *of* England.

After this diet *Maximilian* concluded a league of friendſhip and commerce with *Henry* VII. king of *England*, who, though he refuſed to lend the emperor a ſum he wanted to borrow, preſented him with ten thouſand pounds, as a contribution againſt the *Turks*; and about this period he was informed that *Joachim*, margrave of *Brandenburg*, had married *Elizabeth* princeſs of *Denmark*, and engaged to aſſiſt *John* king of that country againſt *Lubec* and the other hans towns of the north, which had declared for the adminiſtrator of *Sweden* againſt the ſovereign of *Denmark*. But before he denounced war, he endeavoured to detach the regency of *Lubec* from the *Swedes*, by repreſenting, that this people had ſhaken off the dominion of *Denmark*, in diametrical oppoſition to the treaty of *Colmar*, by which the three kingdoms were united under one ſovereign; and that *Suante-Sture*, the adminiſtrator, had not only made an attempt upon the life of the king, but alſo detained the queen priſoner, contrary to his own promiſe, and all the laws of hoſpitality.

---

[r] Lunig. Arch. Imper. Part. Spec. p. 238.

The inhabitants of *Lubec* paying no regard to theſe remonſtrances, *John* threatened to deprive them of their privileges, and, in the mean time, made prize of their ſhips and veſſels, a circumſtance which incenſed them to ſuch a degree, that they declared war againſt *Denmark*, and fitted out a powerful ſquadron, to annoy the *Danes* by ſea. The adminiſtrator of *Sweden* made preparations for co-operating with theſe allies, and the whole north was on the eve of being involved in a war; when *Raymond*, the pope's legate, at that time employed in preaching the cruſade through the provinces of *Germany*, uſed his beſt endeavours for diſpoſing the parties to an accommodation: the queen of *Denmark* was releaſed, and conferences were opened; but before they could agree about the articles, *Suante-Sture* died, and was ſucceeded by his ſon *Steno*. The ſenate of *Lubec* having, about this time, intailed upon themſelves a war with the duke of *Mecklenburg*, and terrified at the proſpect of falling a ſacrifice to two ſuch powerful enemies, ſent ambaſſadors to his *Daniſh* majeſty, to ſue for peace, which was granted on pretty equitable conditions.

War between the king of Denmark *and the hans towns.*

The ſenate of Lubec *ſue for peace.*

John being now at liberty to proſecute the war againſt *Sweden* with his whole force, the adminiſtrator, by the interceſſion of the envoys of *Scotland* and *Brandenburg*, obtained his conſent to the opening of conferences at *Colmar*, where the *Swedes* refuſing to appear, were convicted of rebellion, the adminiſtrator declared a traitor, deprived of his nobility, and his eſtate confiſcated; and this ſentence, being confirmed by *Maximilian*, was publiſhed through the whole empire.

This confirmation being obtained, the king of *Denmark* confiſcated all the eſtates belonging to *Swediſh* noblemen in *Denmark* and *Norway*, and gave the hans towns to underſtand, that, ſhould they continue to trade with *Sweden*, or aſſiſt that kingdom in any ſhape whatſoever, he would revoke all the privileges granted by his predeceſſors to their ſhips in the ports of *Denmark*.

The Swedes *are declared rebels to the king of* Denmark.

The *Swedes*, alarmed at the emperor's decree, as well as at his *Daniſh* majeſty's reſolution, ſent ambaſſadors to *Copenhagen* to ſue for peace; but, as they had already deceived the king, all they could obtain was a ſhort ſuſpenſion of arms[*].

---

[*] Barre, tom. viii. p. 868.

An inſurrection of the peaſants.

Rupert *count* Palatine *put to the ban of the empire.*

The emperor takes the field againſt him and

DURING theſe commotions, there was ſuch a formidable inſurrection among the peaſants in *Germany*, that it was found neceſſary to raiſe a ſtrong army, in order to bring them to reaſon; for they had reſolved, like the *Swiſs*, to ſhake off the yoke of their maſters, and live independent, in the form of a republic [t]. Scarce was this diſturbance quelled, when a new war broke out in the empire. *George the Rich*, duke of *Bavaria*, of the branch of *Landſhut*, had made his will in favour of his ſon-in-law *Rupert* count *Palatine*, ſon of *Philip* the elector; and tho' he could not prevail upon the emperor to confirm this diſpoſition, he had, ſome time before his death, not only beſtowed the vicariate of the *Lower Bavaria* upon *Rupert*, but alſo laid injunctions upon the ſtates of theſe provinces to obey that prince. At his death, *Albert* and *Wolfgang*, dukes of *High Bavaria*, his neareſt relations of the branch of *Munich*, had obtained the inveſtiture of his dominions. *Rupert* pretended to the ſucceſſion in conſequence of the will, as huſband of *Elizabeth*, daughter of duke *George*, and becauſe the greateſt part of the fiefs were allodial. *Albert* and *Wolfgang*, on their ſide, affirmed, that the will of *George* was contrary to the antient treaties of the family, by which it was ſtipulated, that if any prince of the houſe of *Bavaria* ſhould die without male iſſue, the neareſt relation of the collateral line ſhould ſucceed to his dominions. This affair was brought before the emperor, who adjudged the ſucceſſion to collateral heirs, and *Rupert*, refuſing to abide by that ſentence, was put to the ban of the empire. His father *Philip*, who was threatened with the ſame penalty, provided he ſhould eſpouſe the cauſe of *Rupert*, heſitated ſome time between his fear and paternal affection; at length, however, being encouraged with promiſes of ſuccour from *France*, he armed for the ſupport of his ſon, and underwent the ſame puniſhment from *Maximilian*. Armies on both ſides immediately took the field: the emperor, who commanded the firſt, was accompanied by *Albert* and *Wolfgang*, dukes of *Bavaria*, *Frederic* margrave of *Brandenburg*, and the biſhop of *Straſburg*; and invading the territories of duke *George*, committed great ravages, took poſſeſſion of divers cities, and meeting with a body of troops which *Rupert* had levied in *Bohemia*, cut them in pieces near *Ratiſbon*. After this action, *Maximilian* divided his forces, one half of which had orders to attack the territories of *Rupert*, while the other, headed by the emperor himſelf, marched towards *Alſace* againſt the elector *Philip*, took poſſeſſion of ſeveral places in the *Palatinate*, among others of *Kuffſtein*, and *Geroldſecke*, and compelled the elector to ſue for peace. *Udalrich* duke of *Wirtemburg*, who was at the head of a ſecond army, compoſed of twenty thouſand foot and eight hundred horſe, entered the dominions of the count *Palatine*, burned the monaſtery of *Maulbrunen*, and took poſſeſſion of ſeveral places. A third body, which had been raiſed by *Alexander* count *Palatine*, duke of *Bavaria*, and count of *Weldentz*, was no other than a number of peaſants aſſembled in a hurry, and much better adapted for plundering and ravaging the country, than for carrying on a regular war. Theſe, however, he ſent into the *Palatinate*, ſome towns of which fell into their hands; but the greateſt exceſſes were committed by the fourth corps, which deſtroyed with fire and ſword [u], under the conduct of *William* landgrave of *Heſſe*, accompanied by *Henry* duke of *Brunſwic*, *Henry* duke of *Mecklenburg*, *Emien* count of *Leinengen*, the counts of *Lippe* and *Koningſtein*, and ſeveral other noblemen, ſome of whom had voluntarily taken arms, out of hatred to the elector *Palatine*, while others engaged with a view to ſupport ſome particular pretenſions, and a third ſort embraced the ſervice for pay and promotion.

---

[t] SUR. in comment. Baſil. in ſupplem. in NAUCLER.

his father Philip.

Terrible ravages committed.

DURING theſe operations, the elector *Philip* retired to his fortreſs of *Heidelberg*, a place ſtrong by its ſituation, defended by good walls and towers, difficult of acceſs, and provided with a noble train of artillery. The town was likewiſe well fortified, ſupplied with proviſions for three years, and the garriſon compoſed of people determined to ſacrifice themſelves for the defence of their prince.

THIS invaſion of the *Palatinate* laſted five months, at the end of which *Rupert* dying, the emperor ordered both parties to lay down their arms; and that no perſon might have cauſe to complain that his rights were invaded, iſſued orders for convoking a diet at *Cologne*, where the pretenſions on both ſides ſhould be heard and conſidered, and a definitive ſentence pronounced by the princes of the empire. The elector *Palatine* repaired to this diet, and was by *Frederic* elector of *Saxony* preſented to the emperor, of whom he aſked pardon, and intreated peace. *Maximilian* received him into favour, and, with the advice of the princes of the empire, regulated the conditions of the treaty between *Philip* and the dukes of *Bavaria*. In this accommodation regard was had to the children of *Rupert*, who, beſides the treaſures of duke *George*, were left in poſſeſſion of the territories lying

Rupert *dies; and the difference referred to the deciſion of a diet.*

A. D. 1505.

---

[u] SPONDAN. Contin. BARRE, tom. ii. p. 797.

between the *Danube*, the *Nab*, and the antient limits of the *Palatinate*. His other dominions were given to *Albert* and *Wolfgang*; the old quarrel between the elector *Palatine* and the duke of *Wirtemberg* was compromiſed, and, as it was ſtipulated in the treaty, that each ſhould remain in poſſeſſion of the lands and places which he had acquired during the war, the emperor remained maſter of the fortreſſes of *Rottenberg*, *Kuffſtein*, and ſeveral other towns. Yet the articles of this peace were not fully executed till two years after this period, in the diet which was held at *Conſtance* [x].

Confirmation of the treaty of Blois.

It was now that the treaty of *Blois* was concluded, and confirmed the alliance before projected between *France* and *Auſtria*; an alliance by which, indeed, *Lewis* XII. acquired the inveſtiture of *Milan*, but importing, at the ſame time, that in caſe *Lewis* ſhould prevent the ſtipulated marriage between the princeſs *Claudia* and the archduke *Charles* of *Luxemburg*, this prince ſhould, by way of indemnification, poſſeſs the duchy of *Burgundy*, the *Milaneſe*, and the county of *Aſti*; whereas, ſhould the match miſcarry through the fault of *Maximilian* or of *Philip* prince of *Spain*, the young archduke's father, the houſe of *Auſtria* ſhould cede her pretenſions to the duchy of *Burgundy*, the *Artois*, *Charolois*, and other domains; ſo that this, at any rate, was a very impolitic agreement in *Lewis*; for by giving his daughter in marriage to *Charles*, he gave away *Brittany* as her dowry; and, by refuſing the match, he loſt the duchy of *Burgundy*, and his *Italian* fiefs. But this treaty was oppoſed by the ſtates of *France*, with the private conſent and approbation of *Lewis*, and the princeſs given in marriage to *Charles* count of *Angouleſme*, preſumptive heir to the crown.

Which is infringed by the French.

A. D. 1506.

During theſe tranſactions *Iſabella* queen of *Caſtile* dying, after having left her dominions to her huſband *Ferdinand*, *Philip* of *Auſtria* repaired to *Spain* with his wife *Jane*, in order to reign in conjunction with his father-in-law. Pope *Julius* II. who ſucceeded *Alexander*, made himſelf maſter of *Bologna*, with the aſſiſtance of *Lewis* and cardinal *d'Amboiſe*, and projected ſchemes for raiſing a new ſovereignty by force of arms.

Philip *dies, having appointed* Lewis

Mean while *Philip*, titular king of *Spain*, was overtaken by death at *Burgos*, and, to the aſtoniſhment of all mankind, appointed *Lewis* XII. tutor to his ſon *Charles*, notwithſtanding the reaſon he had to doubt the friendſhip and integrity of that monarch; but this ſtep was the conſequence of the hatred he bore to *Ferdinand*, whom he looked upon as a perfidious hypocrite; and he knew that the *Flemings* would never own the emperor as regent during his ſon's minority.

---

[x] Heiss Hiſt. de l'Emp. l. iii. c. 3.

XII. *tutor to his ſon* Charles.

A. D. 1507.

NEVERTHELESS the ſeventeen provinces, though they choſe their own governors for the ſpace of eighteen months, finding themſelves involved in a war with *Charles* duke of *Guelderland*, who made great efforts to recover the whole extent of his dominions, were at length obliged to yield the regency to *Maximilian*, who declared his daughter *Margaret* of *Auſtria* their governante [y].

Maximilian *appoints his daughter* Margaret *governante of the* Low Countries.

THOUGH the emperor had made a very good accommodation with the king of *France*, with regard to *Milan*, he could not forget the outrage which he thought he had received from the *Venetians*, by the part they acted in that affair; beſides they poſſeſſed lands in *Iſtria*, to which he had pretenſions. He therefore convoked a diet, where, though under another pretext, it was reſolved to declare war againſt the republic and her adherents [z]; and in order to execute this deſign the more effectually, he engaged in a league with pope *Julius* II. and the kings of *France* and *Spain*, who could not without regret behold the *Venetians* in peaceable poſſeſſion of ſeveral cities in the duchy of *Milan*, and in other parts of *Lombardy*, to which they had no other right than that of conqueſt. But, before this alliance was made, *Maximilian* undertook an expedition into *Italy*, in order to oppoſe the progreſs of *Lewis*, who was ſuſpected of a deſign to enſlave that country; he accordingly began his march with a contemptible number of troops, and was by the *Venetians* refuſed a paſſage through the valley of *Trent*; ſo that he was obliged to deſiſt from his enterprize, after having ſuſtained conſiderable loſs in an engagement with *Bartolomeo d'Alviano*, the general of the republic. Thus baffled, he was fain to conclude a truce; and, as he was diſappointed in the other part of his deſign, which was his coronation at *Rome*, he, by a circular letter, laid injunctions upon all the ſtates of the empire, to give him the appellation of *Roman emperor elected*, a title which hath ſince been aſſumed by all his ſucceſſors, at their election, in conſequence, however, of the pope's permiſſion.

As the *French* troops, which had joined the *Venetians*, refuſed to act offenſively againſt the dominions of the emperor, the ſtate of *Venice* were fain to liſten to the propoſals of *Maximilian*, and open a congreſs at their city, where, after

Maximilian *concludes a treaty of*

---

[y] Annal. de l'Empire, tom. ii. p. 567.

[z] TRITHEM. in Chron. Spanheim.

truce with the Venetians.

The treaty of Cambray *concluded againſt the* Venetians.

A. D. 1508.

abundance of altercation and political craft exerciſed on both ſides, a ſeparate treaty of truce was concluded between *Maximilian* and the *Venetians*, to which *Lewis* XII. had liberty of acceſſion for the ſpace of three months. The *French* king was ſo incenſed at this excluſive accommodation, that, with the help of cardinal *d'Amboiſe*, he formed the project of a league againſt the *Venetians*, in order to diveſt the republic of all the dominions ſhe had uſurped in *Italy* from the empire in *Lombardy*, from the kings of *France* and *Spain* in the *Milaneſe* and *Apuglia*, and from the pope in *Romagna*. This ſcheme was particularly reliſhed by the emperor, as it not only flattered his intereſt, but alſo his revenge; for the *Venetians*, immediately after the truce they had concluded with him, decreed a triumph to their general who had defeated his troops; an impolitic compliment, which he looked upon as an indelible affront offered to his reputation. He therefore entered into the aſſociation, which was effected by the treaty of *Cambray*, concerted between *Margaret* ducheſs-dowager of *Savoy*, ſiſter of the deceaſed archduke, and cardinal *d'Amboiſe*, who met at that place, on pretence of terminating the difference between *Charles* the emperor's grandſon and the duke of *Guelderland*[a] (L).

THIS

---

[a] Mez. Abr. Chron. tom. ii. p. 814.

(L) The treaty or league of *Cambray* conſiſted of theſe articles. The pope, emperor, kings of *France* and *Arragon*, ſhall mutually aſſiſt one another in recovering the places and dominions which the *Venetians* had uſurped or wreſted from them. *Ravenna*, *Gervia*, *Faenza*, *Rimini*, *Imola*, and *Ceſena*, ſhall be reſtored to the pope. *Roveroda*, *Verona*, *Padua*, *Vicenza*, *Treviſa*, and the *Frioul*, ſhall return to the emperor. The king of *France* ſhall retrieve *Breſcia*, *Crema*, *Bergamo*, *Cremona*, *Gieradadda*, and all the antient dependencies of the duchy of *Milan*. The king of *Arragon* ſhall be put in poſſeſſion of *Trani*, *Brindiſi*, *Otranto*, *Gallipoli*, and all the ports which the *Venetians* occupy in the kingdom of *Naples*. Becauſe the emperor is bound by a truce for three years with the *Venetians*, the pope, in order to furniſh him with a pretence for breaking that treaty, ſhall ſummon him as avoyer of the *Roman* church, to come and aſſiſt him in recovering the dominions of the holy ſee. While the three princes ſhall attack the republic with temporal arms, his holineſs ſhall preſs them to reſtore what they have uſurped, on pain of excommunication. The kings of *Hungary* and *England*, the dukes of *Savoy* and *Ferrara*, and the marquis of *Mantua*, ſhall be exhorted to engage in this league. During this war, neither the emperor, nor his grandſon the prince of *Spain*, ſhall in any ſhape moleſt

The Venetians are defeated, and abandon the continent. A. D. 1509.

THIS league was attended with all the ſucceſs that could be expected; for the emperor and the king of *France* wreſted from the *Venetians* almoſt all the cities which they poſſeſſed in *Lombardy*; nor was the pope backward in taking all that lay convenient for his purpoſe. In a word, the *Venetians* thought themſelves ſo little able to withſtand this alliance, that they abandoned all their territories upon the continent, after having loſt the famous battle of *Ghiera d'Adda*, in which their whole infantry was cut in pieces[b]. While the *French* troops, under the marſhal *de Chaumont*, reduced one town after another, *Maximilian* advanced at the head of his army towards *Inſpruck*, in order to attack the *Venetians*; and *Chriſtopher* count *Frangipani*, with the duke of *Brunſwic*, who commanded the light troops, entering *Iſtria* and *Friouli*, retook all the places which had been loſt the preceding year. The *Venetians* were now reduced to ſuch extremity, that they ſent a *charte blanche* to the emperor, and implored his clemency in the moſt ſubmiſſive and pathetic terms. But the effects of his compaſſion in favour of the republic were prevented by the remonſtrances of cardinal *d'Amboiſe*, who exhorted him to ſeize this opportunity of reducing this inſolent ſtate; and, in all probability, it would now have been enſlaved, had not the meaſures of the *French* and *Germans* been traverſed by the king of *Arragon* and the pope, who would by no means concur in the ruin of the only power which had hitherto hindered theſe nations from ſubduing all *Italy*[c].

They ſend a charte-blanche *to the emperor.*

---

[b] GUICCIARDINI, lib. viii, p. 83.

[c] MARIANA, lib. xxix.

the king of *Arragon*, with reſpect to their pretenſions to *Caſtile*. *Maximilian* ſhall again beſtow upon *Lewis* XII. the inveſtiture of the duchy of *Milan*, in which *Breſcia*, *Bergamo*, and all the other dependencies of the *Milaneſe* ſhall be included. If the republic ſhall have recourſe to the *Turks* for ſuccours, the confederates ſhall redouble their efforts, and the aſſociation ſhall thenceforward be regarded as a league againſt the Infidels. None of the confederates ſhall make peace or truce with the enemy, without the concurrence of the reſt: and, in order to prevent the differences ſubſiſting between the emperor and the king of *Arragon*, touching the poſſeſſion of *Caſtile*, from obſtructing the enterprizes of the league, commiſſaries ſhall be appointed on both ſides to terminate theſe diſputes in an amicable manner, as ſoon as the war againſt the *Venetians* ſhall be finiſhed (9).

(9) *Ser. l'Hiſt. de la Ligue de Cambray*, 2 *vol. in* 12*mo. Paris*, 1709. *tom.* i. *lib.* i. *p.* 50.

Cardinal d'Amboiſe *receives the inveſtiture of* Milan *in the name of* Lewis XII.

Mean while *Maximilian* repaired to *Trent*, accompanied by the cardinal, who there received the inveſtiture of *Milan* in the name of *Lewis* XII. The league of *Cambray* was likewiſe renewed; and an interview propoſed between the emperor and the *French* king on the frontiers of the *Milaneſe*. *Lewis* kept the appointment; but *Maximilian* ſent an excuſe: then the king of *France* repaſſed the *Alps* with part of his army, leaving the reſt under the command of *Chaumont*.

The emperor inveſts Padua, *but is obliged to raiſe the ſiege.*

He was no ſooner gone than the *Venetians* felt their courage revive. They ſurprized *Padua*, and retook ſeveral other places garriſoned by the troops of the emperor, who, being informed of theſe tranſactions, ſollicited ſuccours of his allies, and they reinforced him ſo effectually, that he found himſelf at the head of fourſcore thouſand men, with whom he entered *Lombardy* by the mountains of *Vicenza*, in ſpite of an obſtinate oppoſition he ſuſtained from the peaſants, who were devoted to the *Venetians*, and beſieged *Padua*, which was defended ſo gallantly, that he was fain to abandon the enterprize and retreat to *Inſpruck*.

He confirms the privileges of Florence.

The *Florentines*, knowing that his finances were quite exhauſted, took this opportunity of buying their peace with him; and, in conſideration of forty thouſand crowns of gold, he not only granted them an amneſty of all their revolts, but even confirmed their privileges in the moſt ample form[d].

The republic of *Venice* ſoon retrieved its loſs, and became more powerful than ever; for, when their arms failed, they had recourſe to their policy, reconciled themſelves to the court of *Rome*, and effected a breach between the king of *France* and the pope, who now openly eſpouſed their cauſe.

The pope makes unſucceſsful efforts as mediator between the emperor and the Venetians.

Julius, in order to weaken *Lewis*, counſelled the *Venetians* to accommodate matters with the emperor, and he himſelf undertook the office of mediator. The conferences were opened in a commanderie, near *Scala*; and the republic, conſcious of *Maximilian*'s avarice and poverty, offered not only to reimburſe him for the expence of the war which he had incurred, but alſo to pay him a ſum of money equivalent to what *France* had expended on the ſame occaſion. But, as they refuſed to part with *Padua*, *Treviſo*, and *Vicenza*, he rejected their propoſals, and made a merit of having manifeſted this diſintereſted conduct with the diet aſſembled at *Augsburg*, which approved of his intention to re-eſtabliſh the authority of the empire in *Italy* (M), and promiſed to ſupport him in the execution of that deſign, towards which he borrowed one hundred and fifty thouſand crowns of the king of *France*, upon a mortgage of the town of *Wallegio*.

---

[d] Brut. Florentin. Hiſt. l. i.

A. D. 1510. *The armies of the emperor and of* France *take the field in conjunction and make conſiderable progreſs.*

THEN he regulated with *Lewis* the operations of the enſuing campaign, and having, without effect, demanded ſuccours of the king of *Arragon* and the pope, as his confederates, he appointed the count *de Hanau* his general in *Italy*, and ordered a body of troops to aſſemble in the neighbourhood of *Verona*. There being joined by the *French* under the marſhal *de Chaumont*, they paſſed the *Po* and the *Adige*, and took *Vicenza*, which the inhabitants redeemed from pillage. In a word, they reduced a great number of places, and filled the whole country with carnage and conſternation; but *Chaumont* refuſed to aſſiſt the *Germans* in the ſiege of *Padua*, and a miſunderſtanding happening between *Maximilian* and *Lewis*, it was thought neceſſary to confirm their league by a new treaty, in conſequence of which the armies acted with more vigour and unanimity.

MAXIMILIAN was now ſo well convinced of the *French* king's ſincerity and affection, that he ſubmitted his diſputes with *Ferdinand* to his arbitration. This prince had, by the intrigues of cardinal *Ximenes*, ſecured himſelf in the poſſeſſion of the whole kingdom, and the emperor had no friends in *Spain* but a few noblemen who were diſſatisfied at the adminiſtration. Nevertheleſs, *Ferdinand* agreed that the king of *France* ſhould be umpire of the conteſt, which he terminated in an amicable manner; pronouncing that the king of *Arragon* ſhould govern *Caſtile* until the archduke *Charles* ſhould have attained his twentieth year; that this young prince ſhould not aſſume the title of king till the death of his mother; and that the male children which *Ferdinand* might have by his ſecond marriage ſhould have no pretenſions to the kingdom of *Caſtile*.

BY this arbitration *Lewis* thought to have attached *Ferdinand* to his intereſt, or at leaſt to have hindered him from joining the pope againſt the *French* nation. But he was de-

---

(M) It was in this aſſembly that *Hamburgh* was anew declared a free imperial town, independent of the houſe of *Oldemburg*, the pretenſions of which were referred to the deciſion of the imperial chamber. This event was the more remarkable, as the city of *Hamburgh* had, for three hundred years, diſputed the ſovereignty of its territority with the kings of *Denmark* and the counts of *Schawemburg* (10).

(10) *Dumont, Corp. Dipl. tom. iv. part i.*

The pope declares war againſt Lewis *and the duke of* Ferrara.

ceived: the king of *Arragon* had already concluded a ſecret treaty with *Julius*, who beſtowed upon him the inveſtiture of the kingdom of *Naples*, and afterwards declared war againſt *Lewis*, on pretence of his having refuſed to cede ſome towns, to which the holy ſee had ſome pretenſions; and the duke of *Ferrara*, as the *French* king's ally, was included in this declaration.

The king of France *concludes a new treaty with* Maximilian;

LEWIS, incenſed at his preſumption, as well as alarmed at his preparations, and attempts to turn upon him thoſe arms that were intended to check the progreſs of the *Turks*, allied himſelf ſtill more ſtrongly to *Maximilian* by a new treaty, concluded at *Blois*, and convoked an aſſembly of the clergy, to inquire how far he ought to reſpect the ſpiritual power of the church, which the pope exerciſed ſo unjuſtly. The aſſembly declared, that if the pope ſhould unjuſtly attack any Chriſtian prince in his temporalities, he might in conſequence defend them by force of arms; that *Lewis* might, on this occaſion, re-eſtabliſh the pragmatic ſanction, and inſiſt upon the common rights of mankind, according to the decrees of the council of *Baſil*.

who forms a deſign of ſucceeding Julius *in the papacy.*

THIS declaration was equally agreeable to the *French* king and *Maximilian*, who had projected a ſcheme for calling a general council to try and depoſe *Julius*, whom he himſelf meant to ſucceed in the papacy. In order to accompliſh this aim, he reſolved to borrow a large ſum of money from the fuggers, who were the richeſt merchants in all *Germany*, to buy the votes of the cardinals; and he propoſed to pawn his imperial ornaments, and to make over to theſe traders one third of the revenues of the holy ſee, until the whole debt ſhould be liquidated [e].

THIS ſcheme, however, he kept very ſecret from every body but a few particular friends; though that he intended to put it in execution appears from ſome of his own letters (N).

---

[e] MARIAN. lib. xxix. n. 83.

(N) In the collection publiſhed by Mr. *Godefroi*, we find a letter of *Maximilian*, writ in theſe words: "Quod, quando " ipſe intelligis, ingenti pecu- " niæ ſummâ quæ impendenda " erit, geri atque effici non " poſſe, viſum nobis eſt e re " fore noſtri propoſiti, ut car- " dinalibus & proceribus aliis " *Romanis* quos ad res noſtras " pertrahere ſatagimus, polli- " ceamur, ac ſpondeamus ter " centum millia ducatorum a " fuggeris mutuandorum & " *Romæ* ab eorundem pannel- " cha ad conſtitutum diem præ- " ſentandorum . . . . . Op- " pignerabimus autem illi (*Jacobi* fuggero ſeniori) clenodiorum

Mean while the pope proceeded to hoſtilities againſt the duke of *Ferrara*, and, being joined by troops from *Naples*, made a very conſiderable progreſs, though he ran the riſk of having his perſon ſeized, firſt by *Chaumont*, and afterwards by the chevalier *Bayard*.

The emperor and the king of *France* ſent ambaſſadors to *Burgos*, to complain of *Ferdinand*'s having infringed the league of *Cambray*, and to exhort him to join for the convocation of a council: but that prince, jealous of their power, and dreading their influence in *Italy*, anſwered very coldly on both theſe ſubjects; though he privately employed all his endeavours to detach *Maximilian* from the intereſts of *Lewis*, which he demonſtrated to be incompatible with thoſe of the emperor. Theſe ſuggeſtions had great weight with *Maximilian*, who was perſuaded to leave his cauſe to the determination of a general aſſembly to be held at *Mantua*, and he intreated the king of *France* to ſend a miniſter to that congreſs. Though *Lewis* was very much chagrined to find his ally amuſed by ſuch an expedient, in the midſt of their conqueſts in *Italy*, he did not think proper to ſignify his diſguſt, by which means he might intail the whole burden of the war upon himſelf, but ſent the biſhop of *Paris* to *Mantua*, where he found *Matthew Langh*, biſhop of *Gurck*, the emperor's plenipotentiary, accompanied by the embaſſadors of *Ferdinand*.

The emperor and the French *king make remonſtrances to* Ferdinand *king of* Arragon, *who endeavours to detach* Maximilian *from the intereſt of* France.

A congreſs at Mantua.

Julius, who was then at *Ravenna*, being deſirous of ſounding the biſhop of *Gurck*, and, if poſſible, of winning him over to his intereſt, found means, by his emiſſaries, to induce that prelate to viſit him at *Bologna*, where he employed all his artifice to engage him in his intereſt, and even cajoled him with the promiſe of a cardinal's hat; but he found *Langh* unſhaken and incorruptible: and while he amuſed him with conferences touching a general pacification, attempted to ſurprize *Genoa*, whither he ſent the biſhop of *Ventimiglia* in diſguiſe. This prelate, however, was diſcovered in driving a troop of oxen, and all his accomplices put to death. The biſhop of *Gurck*, incenſed at this perfidy, broke up the congreſs at *Mantua*, while *Lewis* purſued his advantages in *Italy*.

“ diorum noſtrorum pretioſiores quatuor ciſtas, unà pariter cum pallio inveſtiturali qui non ad imperium, ſed ad noſtram domum *Auſtraicam* pertinet, et cujus nos, poſt adeptum papatum, non amplius erit, ut opus habeamus.” &c. (11).

---

(11) *Lettres de Louis* XII, *p.* 326. *tom.* iii. & *pt.* i. *tom.* iv.

This

A council at Piſa. A. D. 1511.

THIS fruitleſs effort, however, was ſucceeded by a council at *Piſa*, convoked at the deſire of the *French* king, under the protection of the emperor, though *Maximilian* did not ſend thither any ambaſſador, nor did any *German* biſhop aſſiſt at the aſſembly. Indeed by this time the emperor was greatly cooled in his friendſhip for *Lewis*, who, though he perceived his indifference, ſtill dreaded the thought of ſeeing him among the number of his enemies; and therefore not only overlooked his neglect, but cultivated his good graces with the utmoſt aſſiduity; for, while *Ferdinand* pulled off the maſk, by ſending troops to *Naples*, in order to hinder an excluſive accommodation between *France* and the pope, *Lewis* engaged in a new treaty with the emperor, and ſent his general *la Palice*, with a body of forces, to join the imperial troops, and implicitly obey the commands of *Maximilian*, who would not head the army in perſon, but reinforced the *French* general with nine thouſand men, and deſired him to diſlodge the *Venetians* from the ſtrong poſts which they occupied. In obedience to theſe orders, he attacked and routed the enemy, compelled the towns of the *Friuli* to ſubmit, made himſelf maſter of the *Graditz*, and reduced *Caſtel Novo*, for the benefit of the emperor, who, notwithſtanding theſe conqueſts, ſeemed to be ſtill diſſatisfied, becauſe he would not undertake to beſiege *Treviſa* with ſuch a ſmall army, but retired into the duchy of *Milan*.

1512. Lewis *ſends a body of troops under* la Palice *to obey the emperor; they defeat the* Venetians, *and reduce a number of places.*

The kings of England *and* Arragon *endeavour to detach* Maximilian *from the intereſt of* Lewis.

THE kings of *England* and *Arragon*, taking advantage of his diſcontent, ſtrongly ſollicited him to join in the league which they had concluded againſt *France*; and in the mean time negotiated a truce for ten months between him and the republic of *Venice*, and promiſed to furniſh him with troops and money to conquer the *Milaneſe*, and ſubdue the duke of *Guelderland*.

He engages in a league with them aginſt France.

STAGGERED by theſe inſinuations, he induſtriouſly ſought occaſion to break with *France*: he loudly complained that he had reaped no advantage from the league of *Cambray*; that of the three towns to which he had an inconteſtable right, *Treviſa* and *Padua* were ſtill in the hands of the *Venetians*, while *Verona* was mortgaged to the king of *France*. He demanded that theſe places ſhould be conquered for him at the expence of *Lewis*; that *Renea*, the ſecond daughter of *France*, ſhould marry the infant *Ferdinand*, younger brother to the archduke *Charles*; and that *Burgundy* ſhould be diſmembered from *France*, as her dowry.. The meaning of theſe and other extravagant propoſals was plainly diſcerned by *Lewis*, who thought fit to temporize, and endeavour to amuſe *Maximilian* with a ſubſidy of fifty thouſand crowns;

notwithſtanding which, this prince engaged in the league againſt *France* [f]; ſo that *Lewis* was left alone to ſuſtain the burden of the war. Even then he made a ſtrong effort, and ſet on foot a powerful army, the command of which was given to *Gaſton de Foix*, who, upon *Eaſter-day*, obtained a ſignal victory over the confederates near *Ravenna*; but it coſt him ſo dear, that the affairs of *France* were in as bad a ſituation as if he had loſt the battle, and, to crown the misfortune, the *Engliſh* at that time declared againſt *Lewis*, who, being obliged to quit all his advantages on this ſide, in order to defend his own dominions, *Milan*, and all that he had conquered in *Italy*, fell a prey to his enemies.

Lewis *forſaken by his allies.*

Loſes Milan *and all his conqueſts in* Italy.

A.D. 1512.

FERDINAND, taking the advantage of this conjuncture, wreſted the kingdom of *Navarre* from *John* of the houſe of *Albert*, its lawful poſſeſſor, and afterwards endeavoured to find out a title to defend his uſurpation [g]. All his right, however, conſiſted in a pretended bull, which the pope had unjuſtly fulminated againſt *John*, on account of his adherence to the king of *France*, whom *Julius* had alſo excommunicated; and even this ſlender pretence was an authority *ex poſt facto*; for the invaſion happened in *June*, and the bull was not publiſhed till *July*.

Ferdinand *of* Spain *ſeizes the kingdom of* Navarre.

THE condition of *Lewis* XII. was now really deplorable: for though he found means to make peace with the *Venetians*, he was invaded on one ſide by the *Swiſs*, and on the other by the *Engliſh*, who had denounced war againſt him, at the inſtigation of *Ferdinand*, and who were joined in *Picardy* by the forces of *Maximilian*, where they obtained a victory over the *French*, well known by the name of the battle of the ſpurs [h].

THE ſucceſs of the confederates was in a great meaſure owing to a reinforcement of *Swiſs* that joined the *Venetians*, and were for this ſervice complimented by the pope with the title of *Defenders of the Holy See*: but the emperor gained very little by their good fortune; for the allies became jealous of his power, and reſolved, at all events, to exclude him from the poſſeſſion of the *Milaneſe*, which he deſtined as an eſtabliſhment for his grandſon *Ferdinand*.

The pope confers on the Swiſs *the title of* Defenders of the Holy See.

A congreſs opened at Rome.

IN vain did the biſhop of *Gurck*, at an aſſembly held in *Mantua*, diſplay his maſter's pretenſions to that duchy; the pope's deputies and the *Swiſs* inſiſted upon its being reſtored to the family of the *Sforzas*; and, after much altercation and debate, it was agreed that *Maximilian Sforza* ſhould receive the inveſtiture. But other diſputes ſtill remaining between the emperor and the *Venetians*, as well as between the pope and the emperor, touching the poſſeſſion of thoſe towns which they had ſeverally conquered during the war, a congreſs was opened at *Rome*, to terminate theſe conqueſts. The towns ſubdued by the pope in the exarchate of *Ravenna* remained in poſſeſſion of the holy ſee, qualified by a clauſe in theſe words, *without prejudice to the rights of the empire*. But the *Venetians* refuſing to do homage to the emperor for *Padua*, *Treviſa*, *Breſcia*, *Bergamo*, and *Crema*, and inſiſting upon his reſtoring the places he had conquered in their dominions, the pope declared againſt them, and entered into an aſſociation with *Maximilian*, whom he undertook to aſſiſt with ſpiritual as well as temporal arms. This affair being ſettled, the biſhop of *Gurck* imparted to *Julius* his maſter's deſign with reſpect to the papacy, and intreated his holineſs to take that prince as his coadjutor; but this propoſal the pope abſolutely rejected, although the king of *Arragon* had promiſed to ſupport *Maximilian*'s pretenſions: nor could a ſufficient party be made among the cardinals to enſure his ſucceſſion[i] (O).

---

[f] GUICC. l. x. p. 973.

[g] GUICC. l. xi. MARIANA, l. xxx. c. 8. POLYD. l. xxvii.

[h] MEZ. abreg. Chron. tom. ii. p. 827.

The emperor's miniſter ſollicits the pope to take Maximilian *as his coadjutor.*

JULIUS

---

[i] MARIAN. lib. L. c. 3.

(O) There is a letter preſerved in *Godefroi*'s collection, from the emperor to his daughter *Margaret*, in theſe terms:

“ Tres-chiere, & tres-aimée fille, Je' entendu l'avis que vous m'avez donné par *Guyllam Pengun*, notre garderobes vyeſs, dont nous avons encore mius penſé deſus.

“ Et ne trouvons point pour nulle reſun bon, que nous nous devons franchement marier, maes avons plus avant mys notre deliberation & volunté de jamés plus hanter faem nue.

“ Et envoyons demain Monſ. *de Gurce* eveſque a *Rome* devers le pape, pour trouver fachon que nous puyſſuns accorder, avec ly de nous prendre pour ung coadjuteur, afin qu'après ſa mort pourons eſtre aſſuré de avoer le papat, & devenir preſtre & après eſtre ſaint, & que yl vous ſera de neceſſité que après ma mort vous ſerez contraint de me adorer, dont je me trouverée bien gloryoes.

“ Je envoye ſur ce ung poſte devers le roy *d'Aragon*, pour ly prier quy nous voulle ayder pour à ce parvenir, dont yl eſt auſſi content, moynant que reſigne l'empire a notre comun-fils *Charl.* de ſela auſſi je me ſuis contenté. Le peuple & gentilhomes de *Rom.* ount faet ung allyance contra les *Franchoes* & *Eſpaignos*, & ſont xx m. combatans, & nous ount mandé que il veolunt eſtre pour nous, pour nous faire ung papa à ma

“ poſte

A.D. 1513.

JULIUS did not long ſurvive this refuſal, and was ſucceeded by the cardinal *de Medicis*, who aſſumed the name of *Leo* X. the great patron of the liberal arts and ſciences.

War between the king of Denmark *and the hans towns;*

MEAN while the war continued in the north of *Germany*, between *John* king of *Denmark* and the hans towns, which ſupported the *Swedes* in their revolt: he ſollicited the aſſiſtance of the kings of *England* and *Scotland*, while the regency of *Lubec* implored the protection of the emperor, who had laid injunctions upon the princes of *Lower Saxony* to defend the hans towns againſt the king of *Denmark*; and at the ſame time forbad *John* to interrupt their commerce. His *Daniſh* majeſty, however, without paying the leaſt regard to the prohibition, equipped a powerful fleet, with which he made prize of their veſſels, and they fitted out another, with which they alarmed and ravaged the coaſts of his dominions. This piratical war continued near three years, until the regency of *Lubec*, finding themſelves impoveriſhed by the interruption of their trade, ſued for peace, and the treaty was concluded at *Flensbourg*, in conſequence of which the hans towns undertook to aſſiſt *John* in aſſerting his right to the crown of *Sweden*. But that monarch died ſoon after this pacification, and was ſucceeded by his ſon *Chriſtian* III [k].

who ſue for peace.

DURING theſe commotions in the north, the pope, the emperor, and the kings of *England* and *Arragon*, formed a league againſt *Lewis*, who makes peace with the *Venetians*, and reinforces their army; and the operations of war recommenced in *Italy*, while *Henry* VIII. of *England* made a deſcent in *Picardy*, and gained the battle of *Guinegate*, at which *Maximilian* ſerved in his army as a volunteer, for one hundred crowns a day.

---

[k] HUITFELD Hiſt. Dan. tom. vii.

" poſte, & du l'empire *d'Al-*
" *maigne*, & ne voulunt avoer
" ne *Frances*, *Arragones*, ne
" mains null *Venecien*.

" Je commence auſſi practiker les cardineaux; dont ij. C. ou iij. C. mylle ducas me ferunt un grand ſervice, aveque la partialité qui eſt déjà entre nos.

Le Roi *d'Arragon* a mandé à ſon ambaxadeur, que yl veult comander aux cardinaulx *Eſpaignes*, que yl veulent favoriſer le papat à nous.

" Je vous prie tenir cette matere empu ſecret, oſſi bien en brieff jours, je creins que yl fault que tout le monde le ſache, car bien mal eſti poſſible de practiker ung tel ſy grand matere ſecretement, pour laquell yl fault avoer de tant de gens, & de argent ſuccurs & pratike; & à Diu, faet de la main de votre bon pere *Maximilianus* futur pape, le XVIII. jour de *Setembre*.

" Le papa à encore les vyevers dubls, & ne peult longement ſyvre. La ſuſcription, à ma bonne fille l'archeducheſſe *d'Oſtrice*, douariere de *Savoye*, &c. en ſes mains."

Francis I. *makes peace with* Maximilian.
A.D. 1515.

This war continued till the death of *Lewis*, when *Francis* I. who ſucceeded him on the throne, found it his intereſt to make an accommodation with the emperor; and this he the more eaſily obtained, as the diſturbances which at that time happened among ſeveral princes of the empire hindered *Maximilian* from beſtowing his attention upon foreign affairs; and he was moreover ſollicitous about the ſettlement of his family, being then actually employed in a negotiation for matching the Infanta *Mary* his grand-daughter, with *Lewis*, eldeſt ſon of *Ladiſlaus* king of *Hungary* [l]. This marriage was accordingly ſolemnized at *Vienna*, and, as the parties were very young, the conſummation was deferred until they ſhould attain a riper age.

He defeats the Swiſs *at* Marignan.

Recovers the Milaneſe *without further oppoſition.*

Francis having eſtabliſhed a good underſtanding with the emperor, he alſo concluded a treaty of peace with the *Engliſh* and the *Venetians*, and, thus ſecure from theſe quarters, he made preparations for re-conquering the *Milaneſe*, of which *Maximilian Sforza*, ſon of the late duke, had poſſeſſed himſelf, by the aſſiſtance of the *Swiſs*. Having entered *Italy* with a powerful army, he gained ſome conſiderable advantages over the enemy; and meeting the *Swiſs* army, which had come to the ſuccour of the duke of *Milan*, gave them battle near *Marignan*. The engagement was very bloody, and ſo obſtinate, that night alone could part the combatants. Next morning both ſides returned to the charge, and fought with great fury, until the *Swiſs*, hearing that the *Venetian* army was come to the aſſiſtance of the king, were ſo alarmed, that they began to give ground, and, in the confuſion which neceſſarily enſued, were all cut in pieces. Next day after this victory, *Francis* attacked and carried the city of *Milan*, but he would not make his entrance, until the duke, who had retired into the caſtle, ſhould have ſurrendered and ſubmitted to the laws of the conqueror. *Sforza* was accordingly obliged to renounce his duchy and title, in conſideration of a ſum of money and a penſion for life, to be ſpent in *France*, or whereſoever the king ſhould think fit to fix his reſidence. This treaty being ſigned, he evacuated the caſtle, and all oppoſition being now removed, *Francis* eaſily made himſelf maſter of that whole ſtate [m].

---

[l] Dubrarv. Rer. Boem. l. xxxii. Sambuc. in opp. ad. Bonfin.

[m] Guicc. l. xii. Belcar. l. xv. Angel. ep. 550, 555.

Makes an alliance with the pope.

By this rapidity of conqueſt, *Maximilian* was ſo much alarmed, that he reſolved to ſtop his progreſs, and, for that purpoſe, to march into *Italy* with an army of thirty thouſand men. *Francis*, that he might be the more able to ſuſtain this ſtorm, had recourſe to the alliance of pope *Leo* X. with whom he had an interview at *Bologna*, where a treaty of peace was ſigned, and no ſooner ratified, than the king gave the neceſſary orders for the defence of his *Milaneſe* conqueſt, and returned into *France*. The pope engaged in this league partly through fear of *Francis*, who, being victorious and formidable, was not to be refuſed, and partly becauſe *Ferdinand* king of *Spain* being infirm, and *Charles* his grandſon and heir apparent very young and unexperienced, he could not much depend upon them or their allies.

Maximilian *inveſts the city of* Milan, *and quits the ſiege.*

All that the emperor could do when he arrived in *Lombardy*, was to beſiege in the city of *Milan* the conſtable duke of *Bourbon*, whom *Francis* I. had left for the defence of his conqueſt, and who had abandoned the open fields to the emperor, and retired into the city. *Maximilian*, after having blocked the place for ſome weeks, began to be in want of proviſion. He alſo underſtood that *Ladiſlaus* king of *Hungary* was taken very ill, and that the *French* were reinforced by twelve thouſand *Swiſs*; for which reaſons he interrupted his operations, raiſed the ſiege, and returned to *Germany*[n] (P). *Ferdinand* king of *Spain* dying about the ſame time, he found it neceſſary to ſend prince *Charles*, who was then in *Flanders*, to take poſſeſſion of that kingdom, of which he was heir;

---

[n] Guicc. ubi ſupra.

(P) It was at this period that *Maximilian*, being in great want of money, began to cajole *Henry* VIII. of *England* with a promiſe of ceding the imperial throne in his favour, and actually deſired the *Engliſh* ambaſſador to let his ſovereign know, that *Maximilian* would aſſemble a diet at *Triers* to regulate this important affair, and that he would afterwards accompany *Henry* to *Rome*, where he ſhould be crowned, and aſſiſt him in conquering the *Milaneſe*. *Henry* gueſſed the meaning of theſe advances, and remitted him a ſum of money, in hope of being one day to profit by his offers: but, when he afterwards propoſed an interview with the emperor in the *Low Countries*, where this affair might be tranſacted, *Maximilian* declined the conference, and, after ſome evaſive excuſes, plainly told the *Engliſh* ambaſſadors, that he had reſolved to raiſe his grandſon *Charles* to the imperial throne (12).

(12) *Lett. de Louis* XII. *tom.* iv. *p.* 323.

and that he might have a free paſſage through *France*, *Maximilian* was adviſed to make peace with *Francis*, who, by the articles of the treaty, remained in the peaceable poſſeſſion of his *Italian* conqueſt. In this treaty, which was concluded at *Noyon* between the king of *France* and prince *Charles*, it was ſtipulated, that this laſt ſhould marry *Louiſa*, the eldeſt daughter of *Francis*, or, ſhe failing, the ſecond, provided a ſecond ſhould be born; if this ſhould not happen, he ſhould eſpouſe *Renee*, the queen's ſiſter, whoſe dowry ſhould be that part of the kingdom of *Naples* to which the king had pretenſions, with a reverſion in his favour in default of iſſue; that *Charles* ſhould pay annually 100,000 crowns for the maintenance of the princeſs, and reſtore in ſix months *Navarre* to *Henry d'Albret*, otherwiſe the king ſhould be at liberty to aſſiſt him [*].

A. D. 1517. *Accommodates matters with the king of France.*

The origin of Luther's *doctrine.*

In this place it will be neceſſary to mention the circumſtance which gave riſe to the reformation of *Luther*, which was attended with ſuch conſiderable events through the whole empire of *Germany*. Pope *Leo* X. intending to finiſh the church of St. *Peter* at *Rome*, which was begun by his predeceſſor, and being in want of money for this purpoſe, as well as for defraying the expence of a war which he had projected againſt the *Turk*, he imagined that the readieſt and ſureſt expedient for raiſing contributions among the nations of Chriſtendom, would be to grant plenary indulgences. He therefore ſent his bulls to *Albert*, elector of *Mentz*, with orders to publiſh them in *Germany*; and that prelate appointed people to diſtribute the indulgences, and receive the money, while he laid injunctions on *John Chatel*, a *Dominican*, and inquiſitor of the faith in *Germany*, and the brothers of his order, to preach up the merits of this contribution. The directors of this collection committed ſuch abuſes in diſtributing thoſe remiſſions, and the *Dominicans* behaved with ſuch exceſſive indiſcretion in magnifying their power, that the whole empire was ſcandalized at their proceedings (Q).

Abuſes committed by the Dominicans.

The

---

[*] MEZERAY Abregé Chronolog. tom ii. p. 140.

(Q) This commiſſion ought to have been granted to the *Auguſtines* of *Germany*, according to the convention which had been made among the four orders of mendicants. Notwithſtanding which agreement, *Albert*, archbiſhop of *Mentz*, whether by his own authority, or by order of the pope, beſtowed it upon the *Dominicans*. It was no longer a ſimple collection, Offices were every-where ſet up, even in the houſes of publicans,

when

The *Auguſtines*, jealous of the honour conferred upon the order of *Dominicans*, who had been preferred to them on this occaſion, and deſirous of ſharing in the profit of the contributions, openly declared themſelves againſt their proceedings, and pretended to refute what they advanced, as the effect of extravagant and miſguided zeal. *John Stulpitz*, vicar-general of the *Auguſtines*, being ſupported by the elector of *Saxony*, who had a particular regard for him, was the firſt who openly attacked the ſermons of the *Dominicans*, and the abuſes which were committed in the diſtribution of the indulgences. In order to fortify himſelf againſt ſuch a ſtrong party, he choſe for his collegue *Martin Luther*, whom he looked upon to be the moſt capable of all the monks and doctors of the new univerſity of *Wittemberg*, to which he belonged. Accordingly this new aſſociate propoſed abundance of theſes, which he ſupported with great ſpirit and ſtrength of argument againſt indulgences and the pope's authority; ſo as that his doctrines were embraced by great numbers, and the other order immediately took the alarm. Nothing more was required to form two powerful factions. *John Thetzel*, in oppoſition to *Luther*, advanced other theſes at *Frankfort* upon the *Oſder*, in defence of the pope and his proceedings, and carried things to ſuch extremity, as to condemn, in quality of inquiſitor, the writings of *Luther* to the flames. *Martin*, who was of a warm and enterpriſing temper, far from being intimidated by the conduct of the inquiſitor, maintained a literary war againſt him, while his diſciples burned, in their turn, the writings of the *Dominican* at *Wittemberg*. Thus both parties were heated into the moſt virulent altercation, though neither, as yet, withdrew themſelves from their obedience to the church of *Rome* [y]. True it is, the *Dominicans* reinforced their ſide of the diſpute with underhand negotiation, and ſtrongly ſollicited the pope to condemn their antagoniſts. *Leo*, who could not refuſe his protection to an order which had laboured ſo effectually,

John Stulpitz *openly attacks their conduct, and chooſes* Luther *for his collegue,*

whoſe writings are burnt by John Thetzel *at* Frankfort A.D. 1518.

---

[y] Idem, p. 842. SPOND. Contin. BARON. tom. iii. p. 3.

where the collectors conſumed in debauchery a great part of the money produced from this traffick of the ſacred treaſures of the church. It was, moreover, well known, that the pope applied conſiderable ſums of this money to his own particular occaſions, his own finances being almoſt exhauſted by the preſents he had made to his relations and courtiers, and the penſions he beſtowed on learned men (1).

(1) *Remarq. ſur Heiſs, liv.* iii. *c.* 3.

Pope Leo *cites* Luther *to appear at* Rome.

and with ſuch fervour, in his intereſts, ſummoned *Luther* to appear at *Rome* in ſixty days, to be tried by judges whom he appointed for the purpoſe. At the ſame time the *Dominicans* preſſed the emperor to declare againſt their adverſaries; but that prince was too buſy in finiſhing his accommodation with *France*, to intermeddle in a buſineſs, which he conſidered as a petty quarrel among monks. The troubles of *Hungary* ſeemed to him a matter of much more conſequence, and indeed demanded his whole attention in ſettling thoſe affairs that concerned the guardianſhip of king *Lewis*, who was at that time no more than ten years of age [z]. Nevertheleſs, as ſoon as the emperor had terminated theſe two negotiations, he reſolved not only to re-eſtabliſh the tranquillity of the empire, which thoſe religious diſputes had begun to ſhake, but alſo to regulate the domeſtic concerns of his own family, as he perceived his ſtrength beginning to decay.

Maximilian *deſires the pope to pronounce ſentence upon the affair of* Luther, *which is committed to the management of cardinal* Cajetan. Luther *appears at* Augſburg; *retires in the night, and appeals from the legate to the pope.*

WITH this double view he convoked a diet at *Augſburg*, where the firſt ſtep he took, was to recommend his grandſon *Charles* in the ſtrongeſt manner to the electors, whom he cultivated with all ſorts of good offices and marks of liberality, in order to engage them to chooſe that young prince for his ſucceſſor in the empire. As the *Dominicans* gave him no reſpite in the affair of *Luther*, he was obliged, in order to ſatisfy them, to ſummon *Martin* to appear at that diet; he even furniſhed him with a ſafe-conduct, without waiting for the anſwer of a letter, which, at the beginning of that meeting, he had, with the advice of the ſtates, writ to the pope, beſeeching him to pronounce a definitive ſentence, which was like to involve the empire in trouble and confuſion. The elector of *Saxony*, and the univerſity of *Wittemberg*, had alſo intreated his holineſs to retract the citation which he had formerly ſent to *Luther*, and to conſent that the buſineſs ſhould be tranſacted by cardinal *Cajetan*, who was at that time his legate in *Germany*, and actually preſent at the diet. *Luther* being thus excuſed from going to *Rome*, repaired to *Augsburg* and preſented himſelf before the cardinal, under favour of the emperor's ſafe-conduct. Then, inſtead of retracting, he undertook to defend the doctrines which he had advanced in his writings; but that his intentions might not be miſtaken, he, in preſence of witneſſes, made a voluntary proteſtation before a notary, importing, that he would ſubmit to the judgment of the church, refer himſelf to other univerſities, and retract his errors as ſoon as they ſhould appear to his own conviction. The legate, however, ſtill continuing to preſs him to a recantation, and even mixing threats with his remonſtrances, *Luther* began to be afraid of being apprehended, and retired in the night, after having, by a writing fixed up in a public place, appealed from the legate to the pope. He at the ſame time wrote to *Leo*, complaining of the harſh uſage he had received from the cardinal, who was juſtly accuſed of partiality in favour of the *Dominican* order, to which he himſelf belonged [a].

---

[z] HEISS Hiſt. de l'Empire, liv. iii. c. 3.

The emperor propoſes his grandſon Charles *for his ſucceſſor.*

In the mean time *Maximilian* canvaſſed for the election of his grandſon *Charles*; but as there was no precedent for creating a king of the *Romans* before the emperor's coronation at *Rome*, the pope was ſollicited to ſend a legate into *Germany* with the crown, and other imperial ornaments, to perform that ceremony in the name of his holineſs. Notwithſtanding the intrigues of the king of *France* among the princes of the empire, as well as his efforts with the pope, whom he endeavoured to engage in an oppoſition to this election, by repreſenting how formidable *Charles* muſt be, ſhould he ſucceed to the imperial throne; I ſay, notwithſtanding theſe endeavours, the emperor's propoſal was not rejected, but, by a decree, poſtponed to the next diet of the empire [b]. Some authors allege, that *Maximilian* at firſt intended the crown for *Ferdinand* his other grandſon; but that he was perſuaded to prefer *Charles*, as a prince who, by the vaſt extent of his dominions, would be more able to maintain the ſplendor of the houſe of *Auſtria*, and ſupport the dignity of the empire [c].

Repairs to Inſpruck, *is ſeized with a fever, of which he dies at* Wells, A. D. 1519.

The emperor did not long ſurvive the end of this diet: for having repaired to *Inſpruck*, in order to take further meaſures for the election of *Charles*, he was attacked by a ſlow fever, which, in order to diſſipate by change of air, he embarked upon the *Inn* for *Auſtria*. On his arrival at the town of *Wells*, the fever augmenting, he endeavoured to expel it by violent exerciſe; but one day returning from the chace, he ate a great quantity of melons, in order to aſſuage his thirſt, and having afterwards taken a medicine unſeaſonably, his diſorder, which was before intermittent, changed into a continual fever, and a violent dyſentery enſuing, he died in the 60th year of his age [d]. He was, in conſequence of his own deſire, interred at *Newſtadt* in *Auſtria*. He gave directions on his death-bed touching his body, which was neither embalmed nor embowelled, but the cavities were filled up with quick lime.

---

[a] SPOND. Contin. tom. iii. p. 6. [b] HEISS Hiſt. de l'Empire, liv. iii. c. 3. [c] GUIC. liv. xiii. MEZ. Abr. Chron. tom. ii. p. 843. [d] SUR. in comm. ex Jovio, lib. xix. LOCR. in Chron.

His character, and education.

HE was a prince of a very agreeable appearance, ſober, quiet, and ſo modeſt, that he was never ſeen naked by any of his attendants. He had a paſſion for letters, a ſprightly imagination, and was particularly addicted to poetry. His memory was ſo tenacious, that he never forgot the name of any man, whom he had once ſeen or heard mentioned, during the whole courſe of his life. In his youth he had applied himſelf to the warlike exerciſes; he handled his arms with great dexterity, and no perſon excelled him in horſemanſhip. He was patient in ſuffering hunger and fatigue, perſonally brave, liberal (R), magnificent, affable, and obliging. He reformed the military diſcipline among his ſoldiers with large muſkets and long pikes, and made ſeveral new military laws and regulations. But his paſſion for the chace he indulged even to the prejudice of his affairs, which he often neglected for the enjoyment of that favourite exerciſe: in the courſe of which, he uſed to purſue on horſeback the wild goats and other game among the rocks of the *Tyrol*, with ſuch temerity, that the inhabitants of thoſe countries were often obliged to lower him down with cords, half dead with hunger, from frightful precipices, among which he had engaged himſelf. Yet, with all theſe good qualities, he was inconſtant, irreſolute, and ſo profuſe, that, by ſquandering away the money which ought to have been otherwiſe employed, a great many of his moſt important affairs miſcarried, and his reign makes but an indifferent figure in the annals of the empire [e] (S).

His favourite amuſement,

and weakneſs.

---

[e] GUIC. lib. xiii.

(R) His liberality, or rather his profuſion, involved him in numberleſs difficulties and diſgraces, becauſe he was often, by want of money, obliged to abandon enterprizes of very promiſing aſpect. Yet, notwithſtanding all theſe neceſſities, he would never encroach upon the gold, ſilver, and jewels, which had been left by his own father, his father-in-law, and his grandſire. Theſe he preſerved as a ſacred treaſure, very little to the credit of his ſagacity (1).

(S) *Maximilian*'s firſt wife was *Mary* of *Burgundy*, who died of a fall from her horſe, when ſhe was big with her third child. He afterwards married by proxy the daughter and heireſs of *Francis*, duke of *Brittany*; but this marriage was never conſummated, for the reaſons mentioned above. His third match was with *Blanche Maria Sforza*, daughter of *Galeazo Maria*, duke of *Milan*, who was a ſhoemaker's ſon. She had no children, and broke her heart be-

(1) *Remarq. ſur Heiſs, liv.* iii. *c.* 3.

cauſe ſhe was deſpiſed by the emperor, and was buried in the monaſtery of *Stams* in *Auſtria*. Towards the latter part of his life, *Maximilian* was on the point of marrying *Ann*, daughter of *Uladiſlaus*, king of *Bohemia*; but he was diſſuaded from this ſcheme, and the princeſs was given in marriage to his grandſon *Ferdinand*. Of his children by *Mary* of *Burgundy*, *Margaret* alone now ſurvived. She had been firſt of all betrothed to *Charles* VIII. of *France*; but being refuſed, and ſent back to her father, ſhe was married to the infant *John*, ſon of *Ferdinand* and *Iſabella*: he dying a few months after the marriage, ſhe was again contracted to *Philibert*, duke of *Savoy*, who died before the nuptials could be conſummated. As for her brother *Philip*, the emperor's eldeſt ſon, he died twelve years before his father, leaving by *Jane*, daughter of *Ferdinand* and *Iſabella*, ſix children, namely, *Charles*, who ſucceeded his grand-father *Maximilian* in the empire; *Ferdinand*, and four daughters, the eldeſt of whom, *Eleonora*, married *Emanuel*, king of *Portugal*, by whom ſhe had one daughter, and afterwards *Francis* I. of *France*, to whom ſhe bore no children. Her ſiſter *Iſabella* was wife to *Chriſtiern*, king of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*, who was expelled from his dominions for his tyranny. *Philip*'s third daughter was *Mary*, matched with *Lewis*, king of *Hungary*, by whom ſhe had no children, and after his death ſhe obtained the government of the *Low Countries*. The fourth was a poſthumous child called *Catherine*, who was married to *John* III. king of *Portugal*. *Maximilian* had beſides a ſon called *Francis*, born at *Bruſſels*, who died within a year after his birth. He moreover left eight natural children of both ſexes; the ſons he promoted to honourable employments, the daughters he matched to perſons of the firſt quality.

The E N D *of the* TWENTY-NINTH VOLUME.